Molecular Biology of the Neuron
(Molecular and Cellular Neurobiology)
Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that the contents of this book are as complete, accurate and up to date as possible at the date of writing, Oxford University Press is not able to give any guarantee or assurance that such is the case. Readers are urged to take appropriately qualified medical advice in all cases. The information in this book is intended to be useful to the general reader, but should not be used as a means of self-diagnosis or for the prescription of medication.
Molecular Biology of the Neuron
Second edition
(Molecular and Cellular Neurobiology)
Preface

Neurones are arguably the most complex of all cells. At the current time, our knowledge of the molecular repertoire of cells is increasing at enormous speed, in the aftermath of the determination of the entire sequence of the human genome, and the genomes of a growing list of other species. It is, therefore, a challenging task to keep abreast of the many diverse advances in our understanding of how neurones function at a molecular level. The first edition of *Molecular Biology of the Neuron* was possibly unique in providing up-to-date and thorough reviews of the major classes of molecules which contribute to neuronal function. The chapters provided detailed molecular information as a valuable source of reference, while also keeping the text broad in coverage and accessible to non-specialists. This second edition provides an essential update to the original text, encompassing the many major advances in knowledge that have been made in the intervening years. As before, each chapter is written by leading researchers in the field and all provide comprehensive, yet comprehensible, coverage of the key molecules expressed in neurones, and how they act and interact.

All chapters have been rewritten to incorporate the immense amount of new molecular data about neurons that has been discovered in the past six years, since the publication of the first edition. Thus, significant new material has been added to the coverage of the regulation of neuronal gene expression, neuronal ion channels, ligand-gated ion channel receptors and G-protein linked receptors, the neuronal cytoskeleton, molecules involved in neurotransmitter release, and the molecular basis of neuronal plasticity and learning. The new review of the genetic and molecular basis of human neurological disease is perhaps the most complete and up-to-date summary of the rapidly expanding information available. New chapters have been added where appropriate, to cover fields where there was little or no molecular information six years ago. Thus there are new chapters on protein trafficking, post-synaptic density and neuronal ageing, plus additional chapters to cover signalling within neurons in greater depth: specifically, synapse to nucleus calcium signalling, signalling by tyrosine phosphorylation, and signalling by serine-threonine phosphorylation. In addition, new chapters presenting the genetic technologies of the Drosophila and mouse systems as applied to the study of neurons are included because of the ever-increasing importance of these systems to functional studies of neuronal genes and proteins.

These are exciting times for molecular studies of the nervous system. Knowing all the genes as we do, and with the pace of advance quickening daily, it is easy for students and researchers to lose track of progress outside their immediate subject area.
This book provides a platform of knowledge, which allows new advances to be put easily into context, without being an expert. Taken as a whole, we hope that this second edition of Molecular Biology of the Neuron will provide an authoritative and extremely useful overview of the molecular structure of neurones, of value to students and researchers alike.

R. Wayne Davies
Brian J. Morris

Glasgow
February 2004
Contents

List of contributors ix
List of abbreviations xi

1 Studying neuronal function using the Drosophila genetic system 1
   J. Douglas Armstrong and Stephen F. Goodwin
2 Using mouse genetics to study neuronal development and function 15
   Harald Joockusch and Thomas Schmitt-John
3 Gene expression: from precursor to mature neuron 29
   Uwe Ernsberger
4 Protein trafficking in neurons 75
   Christopher N. Connolly
5 Ion channels and electrical activity 103
   Mauro Pessia
6 Molecular biology of transmitter release 139
   Julie Staple and Stefan Catsicas
7 Molecular biology of postsynaptic structures 165
   Flaminio Cattabeni, Fabrizio Gardoni, and Monica Di Luca
8 Signal reception: Ligand-gated ion channel receptors 183
   R. Wayne Davies and Thora A. Glencorse
9 Signal reception: G protein-coupled receptors 215
   Jennifer A. Koenig
10 Synapse-to-nucleus calcium signalling 249
   Giles E. Hardingham
11 Signalling by tyrosine phosphorylation in the nervous system 267
   Jean-Antoine Girault
12 Mature neurons: Signal transduction-serine/ threonine kinases 287
   Renata Zippel, Simona Baldassa, and Emmapaola Sturani
13 The cytoskeleton 313
   Javier Díaz-Nido and Jesús Avila
14 Neuronal Plasticity 353
   Brian J. Morris
15 Genetic basis of human neuronal diseases 383  
   Mark E.S. Bailey

16 Ageing and the death of neurones 435  
   Paul Shiels and R. Wayne Davies

Index 465
Contributors

Armstrong, J. Douglas
Institute for Adaptive and Neural Computation
School of Informatics
University of Edinburgh
5 Forrest Hill
Edinburgh EH1 2QL
jda@inf.ed.ac.uk

Avila, Jesús
Centro de Biología Molecular ‘Severo Ochoa’
Facultad de Ciencias
Universidad Autónoma de Madrid
Madrid E-28049
Spain
jesus.avila@cbm.uam.es

Bailey, Mark E.S.
Institute for Biomedical and Life Sciences
Division of Molecular Genetics
University of Glasgow
Anderson College
56 Dumbarton Road
Glasgow G11 6NU
U.K.
M.Bailey@bio.gla.ac.uk

Baldassa, Simona
Department of Biomolecular Sciences and Biotechnology
University of Milan
Via Celoria 26
20133 Milano
Italy
simona.baldessa@unimi.it

Catsicas, Stefan
Institut de Biologie Cellulaire et de Morphologie
Université de Lausanne
Rue du Bugnon 9
CH-1005 Lausanne
Switzerland

Cattabeni, Flaminio
Department of Pharmacological Sciences
Center of Excellence on Neurodegenerative Diseases
University of Milano
via Balzaretti 9
20133 Milano, Italy
flaminio.cattabeni@unimi.it

Connolly, Christopher N.
Division of Pathology and Neuroscience
Ninewells Medical School
University of Dundee
Dundee DD1 9SY
c.n.connolly@dundee.ac.uk

Davies, R. Wayne
Institute for Biomedical and Life Sciences
Division of Molecular Genetics
University of Glasgow
Robertson Building
54 Dumbarton Road
Glasgow G11 6NU
wayne.davies@bio.gla.ac.uk
Díaz-Nido, Javier
Centro de Biología Molecular ‘Severo Ochoa’
Facultad de Ciencias
Universidad Autónoma de Madrid
Madrid E-28049
Spain
javier.diazmido@cbm.uam.es

Di Luca, Monica
Department of Pharmacological Sciences
Center of Excellence on Neurodegenerative Diseases
University of Milano via Balzaretti 9
20133 Milano, Italy
monica.diluca@unimi.it

Ernsberger, Uwe
Institut für Anatomie und Zellbiologie
Interdisziplinäres Zentrum für Neurowissenschaften
Ruprecht-Karls-Universität Heidelberg
Im Neuenheimer Feld 307
69120 Heidelberg
Germany
uwe.ernsberger@urz.uni-heidelberg.de

Gardoni, Fabrizio
Department of Pharmacological Sciences
Center of Excellence on Neurodegenerative Diseases
University of Milano
via Balzaretti 9
20133 Milano, Italy
fabrizio.gardoni@unimi.it

Girault, Jean-Antoine
INSERM U 536
Institut du Fer à Moulin
17, rue du Fer à Moulin
75005 Paris
France
Girault@ifm.inserm.fr

Glencorse, Thora A.
Institute for Biomedical and Life Sciences
Division of Molecular Genetics
University of Glasgow
Robertson Building
54 Dumbarton Road
Glasgow G11 6NU
t_glencorse@yahoo.co.uk

Goodwin, Stephen F.
Institute for Biomedical and Life Sciences
Division of Molecular Genetics
University of Glasgow
Robertson Building
54 Dumbarton Road
Glasgow G11 6NU
s.goodwin@bio.gla.ac.uk

Hardingham, Giles E.
Department of Preclinical Veterinary Sciences
Royal (Dick) School of Veterinary Studies
University of Edinburgh
Summerhall
Edinburgh EH9 1QH
Giles.Hardingham@ed.ac.uk

Jockusch, Harald
Developmental Biology and Molecular Pathology
University of Bielefeld
D-33501 Bielefeld
Germany
h.jockusch@uni-bielefeld.de

Koenig, Jennifer A.
Department of Pharmacology
University of Cambridge
Tennis Court Road
Cambridge CB2 1PD
jk111@cam.ac.uk
Morris, Brian J.  
Institute for Biomedical and Life Sciences  
Division of Neuroscience and Biomedical Systems  
University of Glasgow  
West Medical Building  
Glasgow G12 8QQ  
B. Morris@bio.gla.ac.uk

Pessia, Mauro  
Università degli Studi di Perugia  
Facoltà di Medicina e Chirurgia  
Dipartimento di Medicina Interna  
Sezione di Fisiologia Umana  
Via del Giochetto  
1-06126 Perugia  
Italy  
pessia@unipg.it

Schmitt-John, Thomas  
Developmental Biology and Molecular Pathology  
University of Bielefeld  
D-33501 Bielefeld  
Germany  
thomas.john@uni-bielefeld.de

Shiels, Paul  
Division of Cancer Sciences and Molecular Pathology  
Department of Surgery  
Western Infirmary Glasgow  
44 Church Street  
Glasgow G11 6NT  
P.Shiels@clinmed.gla.ac.uk

Staple, Julie  
Institut de Biologie Cellulaire et de Morphologie  
Université de Lausanne  
Rue du Bugnon 9  
CH-1005 Lausanne  
Switzerland

Sturami, Emmapaola  
Department of Biomolecular Sciences and Biotechnology  
University of Milan  
Via Celoria 26  
20133 Milano  
Italy  
emmapaola.sturami@unimi.it

Zippel, Renata  
Department of Biomolecular Sciences and Biotechnology  
University of Milan  
Via Celoria 26  
20133 Milano  
Italy  
renata.zippel@unimi.it
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aβ</td>
<td>protein fragment found in β-amyloid and neuritic plaques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A–P</td>
<td>anterior–posterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABP</td>
<td>actin-binding protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACh</td>
<td>acetylcholine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AChR</td>
<td>acetylcholine receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AChT</td>
<td>acetylcholine transporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Alzheimer's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADF</td>
<td>actin depolymerizing factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADNFE</td>
<td>autosomal dominant nocturnal frontal lobe epilepsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALS</td>
<td>amyotrophic lateral sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMPA</td>
<td>d,l-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxalone propionic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANP</td>
<td>atrial natriuretic peptide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APOE</td>
<td>apoprotein E locus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APP</td>
<td>amyloid precursor protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>androgen receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARF</td>
<td>ADP-ribosylation factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVED</td>
<td>selective vitamin E deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>βARK</td>
<td>β2-adrenergic receptor kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDNF</td>
<td>brain-derived neurotrophic factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bHLH</td>
<td>basic helix–loop–helix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMP</td>
<td>bone morphogenetic protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BoNT</td>
<td>botulinum neurotoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAM</td>
<td>cell adhesion molecule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaMKII</td>
<td>Ca^{2+} calmodulin kinase II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCK</td>
<td>cholecystokinin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChAT</td>
<td>choline acetyltransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIC</td>
<td>voltage-gated chloride channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJD</td>
<td>Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIP</td>
<td>cytoplasmic linker protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMT1A</td>
<td>Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease 1A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS</td>
<td>central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNTF</td>
<td>ciliary neurotrophic factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNTFR</td>
<td>ciliary neurotrophic factor receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMP</td>
<td>cartilage oligomeric matrix protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cox-2</td>
<td>cyclooxygenase 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cPLA₂</td>
<td>cytosolic phospholipase A₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRE</td>
<td>cAMP-response element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREB</td>
<td>cAMP-response element binding protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT-1</td>
<td>cardiotropin-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTX</td>
<td>conotoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D−V</td>
<td>dorsal–ventral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAG</td>
<td>diacylglycerol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBH</td>
<td>dopamine−β-hydroxylase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC</td>
<td>deleted in colorectal cancer (gene)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHP-R</td>
<td>dihydropyridine receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM</td>
<td>myotonic dystrophy (dystrophia muscularis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMPK</td>
<td>myotonic dystrophy kinase/myotonin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRG</td>
<td>dorsal root ganglion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPLA</td>
<td>dentatorubral-pallidolusian atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECM</td>
<td>extracellular matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGF</td>
<td>epidermal growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMSA</td>
<td>electrophoresis mobility shift assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ER</td>
<td>endoplasmic reticulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES cells</td>
<td>embryonic stem cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FALS</td>
<td>familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FFI</td>
<td>fatal familial insomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGF</td>
<td>fibroblast growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FN</td>
<td>fibronectin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRAXA</td>
<td>fragile X syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRDA</td>
<td>Friedreich's ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GABA</td>
<td>γ-aminobutyric acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDNF</td>
<td>glia cell line-derived neurotrophic factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDNFR</td>
<td>glia cell line-derived neurotrophic factor receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GluR</td>
<td>glutamate receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlyR</td>
<td>glycine receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI</td>
<td>glycosyl-phosphatidylinositol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRK</td>
<td>G protein receptor kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSS</td>
<td>Gerstmann–Sträussler–Scheinker syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD</td>
<td>Huntington's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH</td>
<td>hedgehog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOX</td>
<td>homeobox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSV</td>
<td>herpes simplex virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-HT</td>
<td>5-hydroxytryptamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyperYPP</td>
<td>hyperkalemic periodic paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypoYPP</td>
<td>hypokalemic periodic paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICE</td>
<td>interleukin-1β converting enzyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEG</td>
<td>immediate-early genes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFP</td>
<td>intermediate filament protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgSF</td>
<td>immunoglobulin superfamily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-6</td>
<td>interleukin-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-6R</td>
<td>interleukin-6 receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins(1,4,5)P₃</td>
<td>inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPL</td>
<td>intraperiod line (of myelin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAIN</td>
<td>kainate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lacZ</td>
<td>β-galactosidase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAMP</td>
<td>limbic system-associated protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCR</td>
<td>locus control region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>low density lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIF</td>
<td>leukemia inhibitory factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTD</td>
<td>long-term depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>long-term potentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>large vesicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mAChR</td>
<td>muscarinic acetylcholine receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAG</td>
<td>myelin-associated glycoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAOA</td>
<td>monoamine oxidase A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAOB</td>
<td>monoamine oxidase B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP</td>
<td>microtubule-associated protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAPK</td>
<td>mitogen-activated protein kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MARCKS</td>
<td>myristoylated alanine-rich C kinase substrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBP</td>
<td>myelin basic protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCDP</td>
<td>mast cell degranulating peptide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDL</td>
<td>major dense line (of myelin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDLS</td>
<td>Miller–Dieker lissencephaly syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MED</td>
<td>motor endplate disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mGluR</td>
<td>metabotropic glutamate receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MJD</td>
<td>Machado–Joseph disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUSK</td>
<td>muscle-specific kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAIP</td>
<td>neuronal apoptosis inhibitory protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCAM</td>
<td>neural cell adhesion molecule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ND</td>
<td>Norrie disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NDP</td>
<td>Norrie disease protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NF-H</td>
<td>neurofilament triplet protein H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NF-L</td>
<td>neurofilament triplet protein L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NF-M</td>
<td>neurofilament triplet protein M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFT</td>
<td>neurofibrillary tangles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NgCAM</td>
<td>neuron–glial cell adhesion molecule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGF</td>
<td>nerve growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGICR</td>
<td>neurotransmitter-gated ion channel receptors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ABBREVIATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NMDA</td>
<td>N-methyl-D-aspartate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>nitric oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NrCAM</td>
<td>NgCAM-related cell adhesion molecule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRSE</td>
<td>neuron restrictive silencer element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRSF</td>
<td>neuron restrictive silencer factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSF</td>
<td>N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NT</td>
<td>neurotrophin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NT3</td>
<td>neurotrophin 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBCAM</td>
<td>opioid-binding cell adhesion molecule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSM</td>
<td>oncostatin-M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0</td>
<td>protein zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAF</td>
<td>platelet-activating factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHF</td>
<td>paired helical filaments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKA</td>
<td>protein kinase A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKC</td>
<td>protein kinase C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKG</td>
<td>protein kinase G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLA</td>
<td>phospholipase A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLC</td>
<td>phospholipase C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLD</td>
<td>phospholipase D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLP</td>
<td>proteolipid protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMP-22</td>
<td>peripheral myelin protein-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNS</td>
<td>peripheral nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPV</td>
<td>plasmalemmal precursor vesicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSA</td>
<td>polysialic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAGS</td>
<td>repulsive axonal guidance signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNP</td>
<td>ribonucleoprotein particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTK</td>
<td>receptor tyrosine kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTP</td>
<td>receptor-like tyrosine phosphatases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT-PCR</td>
<td>reverse transcriptase–polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBMA</td>
<td>spinal and bulbar muscular atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA</td>
<td>spinocerebellar ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCG</td>
<td>superior cervical sympathetic ganglion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ScTX</td>
<td>scorpion toxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDS-PAGE</td>
<td>sodium dodecyl sulfate–polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHH</td>
<td>sonic hedgehog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHH-C</td>
<td>C-terminal cleavage product of hedgehog protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHH-N</td>
<td>N-terminal cleavage product of hedgehog protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMA</td>
<td>spinal muscular atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMN</td>
<td>survival motor neuron (gene)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNAP</td>
<td>synaptosomal-associated protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNARES</td>
<td>SNAP receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbr.</td>
<td>Full Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOD</td>
<td>superoxide dismutase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sPLA₂</td>
<td>secreted phospholipase A₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR</td>
<td>splicing regulatory protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SV</td>
<td>small vesicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TeNT</td>
<td>tetanus neurotoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TF</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGF</td>
<td>transforming growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH</td>
<td>tyrosine hydroxylase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TN-C</td>
<td>tenascin-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TN-R</td>
<td>tenascin-R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TN-X</td>
<td>tenascin-X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF</td>
<td>tumor necrosis factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tPA</td>
<td>tissue plasminogen activator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trk</td>
<td>receptor tyrosine kinases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSP</td>
<td>thrombospondin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSS</td>
<td>transcription start site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-TTP</td>
<td>α-tocopherol transfer protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTX</td>
<td>tetrodotoxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VACHT</td>
<td>vesicular acetylcholine transporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAMP</td>
<td>vesicle-associated membrane protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMAT</td>
<td>vesicular monoamine transporters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This page intentionally left blank
Chapter 1

Studying neuronal function using the Drosophila genetic system

J. Douglas Armstrong and Stephen F. Goodwin

1.1 Introduction

The detailed study of neuronal function, in particular the function of neurons involved in complex processing and behavioural roles, requires several factors to be controlled, measured or exploited. Of relevance to the study of neuronal function are:

1. Drosophila: the short life cycle and simple culture conditions make it easy to control external environmental variables which are often more problematic in other species. In particular, the ‘sensory’ and ‘social’ interactions of the organism can easily be monitored and/or manipulated directly.

2. Behaviour: in order to unravel the neuronal pathways underlying behaviour, it is essential to study behaviours that can be assayed both qualitatively and quantitatively. There is a range of assays that have been developed over the years for both larval and adult stages of Drosophila. These include the use of visual, olfactory, tactile and auditory cues and assessment of responses with respect to reflex reactions as well as more complex learned behaviour.

3. Neurogenetics: Drosophila is one of the longest established genetic models with a formidable array of genetic and molecular tools that can be brought to bear upon any biological research area. This organism has given us valuable insights into the molecular, cellular and evolutionary bases of behaviour. In this chapter we will restrict our attention to those particularly relevant to neuroscience research in the organism.

4. Nervous system: the detailed neuronal architecture of the nervous system needs to be known in order for pathways involving multiple neurons to be investigated; i.e. neurons act as parts in circuits and context is critical. For Drosophila, traditional neuroanatomical techniques have produced gross maps of the nervous system through development and have also contributed valuable information about single neuronal projection patterns. The use of gene expression profiles (via enhancer-traps) to unravel neuroanatomy was pioneered in Drosophila and recent techniques have refined such approaches to the extent that brain maps for Drosophila will soon be available to single neuron resolution.
5. Neurophysiology: sadly the small size of neurons in *Drosophila* makes traditional neurophysiology difficult. However, there have been advances recently with several emerging techniques that allow non-invasive recording of neuronal activity.

6. Neuroinformatics and high-throughput technologies, supporting informatics analysis toolkits and public database systems. Historically, *Drosophila* has had one of the most up-to-date and comprehensive databases describing the genetics of the organism (FlyBase: http://flybase.bio.indiana.edu) and this has been supplemented by a range of genome databases describing the sequences generated by the public and private genome sequencing projects and their annotation. In addition there are additional databases and resources of specific interest to *Drosophila* neuroscience that will be described towards the end of this chapter.

### 1.2 *Drosophila melanogaster*

*Drosophila melanogaster* (referred to here as *Drosophila*) is generally the first multicellular experimental organism that biologists are introduced to in their training. Unlike most other experimental systems in biology, their simple culture requirements are so simple and cost-effective that they can be maintained in high-school biology labs with ease. In a modern laboratory situation this makes getting started with *Drosophila* particularly easy, although as for any organism large-scale operations will require some dedicated equipment and support staff.

For the newcomer, there is a wealth of literature describing the culture requirements and the basic (and advanced) techniques possible. To begin with, we would recommend ‘*Drosophila* protocols’ (Sullivan *et al.* 2000), which is a laboratory manual (in format and weight). It describes in detail many of the common laboratory techniques including many of the recent molecular/transgenic manipulations used in *Drosophila* neuroscience, some of which we will describe in more detail here.

One of the major rate-limiting steps in modern neuroscience, particularly with regard to the adult nervous system is quite simply the life-cycle of the organism. This is one of the key advantages when working with *Drosophila*. The life-cycle is temperature dependent and varies from around 21 days at 16°C to under 10 days at temperatures over 25°C (for details, see Ashburner 1989). Moreover, their proliferation under standard conditions allows small cultures to be rapidly scaled into the thousands within two generations (2 flies → 1000s in 20 days). Experiments investigating neuronal senescence in *Drosophila* (e.g. Lin *et al.* 1998; Rogina *et al.* 2000) take somewhat longer with the average life expectancy around 100 days under optimal conditions. This still compares favourably with more complex models.

### 1.3 Behaviour

The output of a complex nervous system is manifest as the behaviour of the animal. While neuroscience research often focuses on systems at much lower levels (e.g. small groups of neurons, single neurons, molecular complexes) for a holistic understanding
of how the nervous system works it is important that we are able, at least as a research community, to bridge the system levels. This means that for a good model system, we need to make the connection between molecules, cells, tissues and ultimately behaviour and environment (Greenspan and Tully 1994).

Assayable behaviour in *Drosophila* starts around 24 hours after fertilization. At this stage, the larva starts moving and pushes its way out of the egg casing. From this stage onwards (apart from the pupal phase) *Drosophila* interacts with its environment and displays a wide range of initially instinctive behaviours, which in common with other organisms develop biologically as the animal matures and are refined by experience.

At the simple larval stage where much of the nervous system has yet to be deployed, assays have been developed to investigate movement, exploratory behaviour, phototaxis, olfactory responses, pain responses and learning amongst others (reviewed by Sokolowski 2001). In the mature adult, there is a much wider range of behaviour assays that reflect the relative complexity of the mature nervous system, its wider range of sensory inputs and wider options for motor response. Assays can be grouped according to the sensory modality they primarily use and these cover all primary senses: visual, olfactory, gustatory, tactile, gravitational and auditory.

Fruit flies can exhibit several different types of learning and memory. These include two general types of learning, non-associative and associative. Habituation (a decrement in behavioural response) and sensitization (an increment in behavioural response) are forms of non-associative learning that result from exposure only to one environmental stimulus. In contrast, associative learning results from the temporal association of two stimuli, one of which acts as a natural ‘reinforcer’ of the behavioural response. A variety of experimental paradigms, using a range of sensory modalities, have been developed that can assess the flies ability to learn and remember (reviewed by Connolly and Tully 1998).

1.4 **Neurogenetics**

1.4.1 **Overview**

From the genetic perspective, *Drosophila* has been one of the most intensely studied organisms using both classical and modern transgenic approaches. There is an extensive literature on the general techniques available and we would recommend ‘Fly pushing’ (Greenspan 2000), which describes basic culture conditions and classical genetic approaches routinely employed in *Drosophila*. This is a small and easy-to-read book — excellent for a train journey and as a primer for a new staff member or graduate.

Among the advantages that have facilitated neuroscience research in *Drosophila* is the range of targeted expression methods available to researchers. For most, if not all organisms, known gene promoter sequences can be fused to reporter constructs and inserted into the genome at the embryonic stage. For those unfamiliar with *Drosophila*, we can take this much further. Stable transgenic lines can be generated that use random
insertions close to genomic enhancers to drive subsequent transgenic constructs. The most widely used of these systems is the P[GAL4] system developed by Brand and Perrimon (1993). This is a binary system comprising an enhancer-trap element, in which expression of the yeast transcription factor GAL4 is activated by local genomic enhancers, and a secondary construct, which contains the GAL4 recognition sequence (upstream activation sequence UAS) adjacent to a cloning site upstream of any genetic construct of interest. When the enhancer is active, GAL4 is expressed and activates transcription of the construct downstream of the UAS (see Table 1.1 for some examples germane to this review). Researchers routinely use a UAS-lacZ or UAS-GFP reporter to characterize the temporal and spatial activation pattern of a new P[GAL4] insert (for review, see Brand and Dormand 1995; for examples in the adult brain, see www.flytrap.org). Once characterized, a known P[GAL4] strain can then be crossed to fly strains

Table 1.1 Fly stocks carrying GAL4-responsive genes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fly Line</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Localization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporter Genes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-nuclear LacZ</td>
<td>E.coli β-Galactosidase with a nuclear localization signal</td>
<td>Nuclear reporter protein</td>
<td>Nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-eGFPnuclear</td>
<td>Enhanced Green Fluorescent Protein (eGFP) with a nuclear localization signal</td>
<td>Fluorescent nuclear reporter protein</td>
<td>Nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-mCD8::GFP</td>
<td>Fusion protein between mouse lymphocyte marker CD8 and GFP</td>
<td>Outstanding labelling of neuronal processes</td>
<td>Membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cell Death Inducer</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-hid</td>
<td>head involution defective expression</td>
<td>Induces cell death</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-rpr</td>
<td>reaper expression</td>
<td>Induces cell death</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-p35</td>
<td>P35 expression</td>
<td>Rescues cell death induced by hid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Targeted Suppression of Neuronal Activity</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-TeTxLC</td>
<td>Tetanus Toxin light chain</td>
<td>Block synaptic vesicle release</td>
<td>Synapse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-Shi\textsuperscript{1st}</td>
<td>Temperature sensitive mutation in Shibire (Dynamin)</td>
<td>Deplete synaptic vesicles Conditional block of neurotransmission</td>
<td>Site of endocytosis Cell membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-dORKΔ-C</td>
<td>Constitutively open K\textsuperscript{+}-specific rectifier channel</td>
<td>Electrically silences neurons</td>
<td>Membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAS-dORKΔ-NC</td>
<td>Inactivated K\textsuperscript{+}-specific channel</td>
<td>Does not conduct K\textsuperscript{+} Used as control</td>
<td>Membrane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
containing any or multiple UAS constructs. Collections of P\{GAL4\} lines (for example, an adult brain collection on-line at www.fly-trap.org) can thus be reused in multiple studies.

1.4.2 Using Enhancer-trap reporters for uncovering neuronal substructures

Given that enhancer-trap constructs including the P\{GAL4\} elements described above are reporting gene-expression, they reflect functional properties of the neurons they are active in. This has been used to suggest novel functional subdivision within neural structures that is not outwardly apparent on morphological examination alone (e.g. Yang et al. 1995; Han et al. 1996). These constructs have also been used to visualize neuronal development, but in this type of study the consequences of developmental changes in gene regulation have to be taken into consideration (e.g. Tettamanti et al. 1997; Ito et al. 1997). More recently, the Luo lab developed an elegant system they call MARCM, Mosaic Analysis with a Repressible Cell Marker, to examine fundamental issues of neuronal development (for review see Lee and Luo 2001). Induction of single-cell and two-cell clones at various time points during development allows the researcher to determine the projection patterns of any neuron or group of neurons of interest, that are generated at different stages during CNS development. This strategy has been elegantly employed in analyzing the development of the antennal lobes and mushroom bodies in Drosophila (Lee et al. 1999; Jeffris et al. 2001; Marin et al. 2002).

The intrinsic biological value of a defined set of GAL4 lines is enormous. The next step is functional analysis aimed at manipulating the functioning of subsets of relevant neurons and assaying the behavioural and developmental consequences.

1.4.3 Functional analysis of neurons in the CNS

Can various steps in a behavioural pathway be assigned to specific subsets of cells in the CNS that are expressing a gene of interest? Again in Drosophila the GAL4\textendash UAS system can be exploited to ask whether particular steps in a behaviour can be associated with particular groups of neurons expressing candidate proteins. Approaches include:

- Selectively perturbing the molecular and cellular components of neurons of interest and determine how these perturbations affect its function in a given behaviour.
- Directed expression of the gene of interest in subsets of the cells in specific mutant backgrounds. Can distinct features of the mutant phenotype be rescued by wild-type expression in particular subsets of cells?

Control and experimental animals can then be assayed for the full spectrum of behavioural consequences that you are interested in e.g. circadian rhythms, learning and memory.

1.4.3.1 Targeted suppression of neuronal activity

In Drosophila it is possible to suppress neuronal activity in any neuron by inhibiting synaptic and electrical activity (review, White et al. 2001). All of these methodologies
exploit the GAL4/UAS system. Firstly, the tetanus neurotoxin light chain (TeTxLC) can block synaptobrevin-dependent neurotransmitter release (Martin et al. 2002, Keller et al. 2002) and has been used in a variety of functional studies of specific neurons and behavioural roles (Reddy et al. 1997, Tissot et al. 1998, Heimbeck et al. 1999, Kaneko et al. 2000, Blanchardon et al. 2001, Suster et al. 2003). Secondly, the shibire\textsuperscript{ts1} mutation in Drosophila, which has a temperature-sensitive block in vesicle recycling due to a defective GTPase, dynamin (Kitamoto 2001; 2002b). These are potent tools for suppressing synaptic activity. However since the latter method allows perturbation of the neuronal activities rapidly and reversibly in a spatially and temporally restricted manner, it would seem the most effective method to study the functional significance of particular neuronal subsets in the behaviour of intact flies. Indeed Waddell et al. (2000) used it to demonstrate the role of two specific neurons in memory processes. Further studies by McGuire et al. (2001) and Dubnau et al. (2001) used the same system in Kenyon Cells and confirmed their link to learning processes. Kitamoto (2002a) later applied the same techniques to the control of the male courtship ritual. However, the shibire system is not ideal under all circumstances. Firstly, we may want temporal control over other processes, not just synaptic activity. Secondly, the use of temperature as a controlling factor is not ideal in some situations. Notably, at least two Drosophila behavioural assays use temperature: the flight simulator (Wolf and Heisenberg 1990) and the ‘heat box’ spatial learning assay (Wustmann and Heisenberg 1997) both frequently use high temperature in their training modes. An alternative is provided by recent developments in enhancer-trap systems that require co-factors before becoming active (see 1.4.4).

To address the role of electrical activity of a given set of neurons in a specific behaviour, one can employ a method for neuronal electrical silencing based upon UAS/GAL4-mediated expression of either of two distinct K\textsuperscript{+} channels, UAS-dORK-DC and UAS-dORK-DNC (Nitabach et al. 2002). Such manipulations of membrane properties have been shown to be highly effective at shunting synaptic inputs and silencing activity in Drosophila excitable cells (Baines et al. 2001, Paradis et al. 2001, White et al. 2001). This approach allows one to suppress (or enhance) not only neurotransmission, but also other electrical processes involved in the modulation and integration of inputs or the encoding of outputs.

1.4.3.2 Phenocopying by RNAi

RNA interference (RNAi) can specifically inactivate a subset of proteins synthesized from genes encoding alternatively spliced mRNAs (Celotto and Graveley 2002). In theory it is possible to use an RNAi strategy to selectively degrade specific alternatively spliced mRNA isoforms. ‘Heritable’-RNAi, utilizing the GAL4/UAS system (Kennerdell and Carthew 2000, Fortier and Belote 2000), has been successfully used to investigate larval and prepupal development and more recently adult behavioural rhythms (Martinik and Young 2000, Piccin et al. 2000, Kalidas and Smith 2002). One can generate a UAS–gene-of-interest–RNAi transgenic, to further elucidate the role of your gene
in a given behaviour. More recently, Dzitoyeva et al. (2003) have demonstrated that injecting adult Drosophila intra-abdominally with dsRNA against a γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) B receptor gene, resulted in cell-nonautonomous RNAi.

1.4.3.3 Selective ablation of Drosophila neurons

In comparison to inactivation of a neuron, cell ablation may reveal different behavioural and developmental defects. To address this issue, one can use a GAL4 line in conjunction with the UAS-cell death genes reaper (rpr) and head involution defective (hid) to ablate your neuron(s) of choice (McNabb et al. 1997, Renn et al. 1999, Rulifson et al. 2002, Park et al. 2003). In addition, p35 encodes a caspase inhibitor that can rescue rpr- or hid-mediated cell death (Zhou et al. 1997).

1.4.4 Targeted expression systems requiring co-factors

A major problem associated with the GAL4/UAS system is that often early dominant effects of mis- or overexpressed transgenes can preclude behavioural analysis in adult animals. Fortunately, there are now several methods for achieving temporal control of transgene activity beyond that inherited from the donor promoter/enhancer sequences.

Roman et al. (2001) have developed a conditional system, P{Switch}, which permits temporal as well as spatial control over a given UAS-transgene (Roman et al. 2001, Osterwalder et al. 2001). For temporal control they exploit Gene-Switch; the DNA binding domain encoding region of the GAL4 gene is fused to the ligand-binding domain encoding region of the human progesterone receptor and the p65 transcriptional domain (Burcin et al. 1999). Combined with P-element enhancer detection, for spatial control, this results in a system that is inactive without the progesterone analogue RU486. Once active the expression is presumed to be efficient, since it is amplified through the UAS steps of the transgene expression process. A further alternative is the use of the GAL4 inhibitor protein, GAL80. Expression of GAL80 can be used to block GAL4 activity (Lee and Luo 1999).

1.5 Neurophysiology

One of the drawbacks of neuroscience research in Drosophila is the difficulty in performing traditional electrophysiological techniques due to the small neuron size. These techniques can be performed in Drosophila, but research is largely restricted to larger neurons and is performed by a few specialized research groups (for a more comprehensive review, see Rohrbough et al. 2003). Of course, one can use fluorescent dyes such as fura-2 that are sensitive to cellular events such as changes in calcium concentration or voltage, but these are not ideal since loading into nervous tissue is technically challenging as the dye is non selective (for some examples, see Karunanithi et al. 1997, Wang et al. 2001, Berke and Wu, 2002).

The first use of a transgenic reporter for neuronal activity in Drosophila was described by Rosay et al. (2001). They used a UAS-aequorin construct that could be targeted into
neuron groups using the P\{GAL4\} system discussed above. Aequorin is a luminescent protein that when combined with a luminophore co-factor (coelenterazine) emits photons in response to increases in calcium concentration. The technique is ideally suited to looking at slow changes (over seconds rather than milliseconds) taking place across groups or populations of neurons such as the Kenyon cells in the mushroom bodies.

Although sensitive to a relatively wide window of calcium concentration, the luminescent nature makes signal detection technically challenging, thus limiting the temporal and spatial resolution of the technique. Spatial resolution can be discarded if the GAL4 driver used is specific to the neurons of interest, and Rosay et al. (2001) describe temporal resolution of around 10Hz. With modified equipment, higher resolution (estimated around 50Hz) should be possible. If spatial resolution is required, very high sensitivity optics and imaging devices are essential and the temporal resolution drops dramatically. The technique also requires the addition of a co-factor (coelenterazine) for luminescence to occur. This was achieved in the study of Rosay et al. by adding the co-factor directly to the culture media and bathing a dissected brain, or by infusion through a small incision in the head capsule. An entirely non-invasive approach would be preferable and would potentially allow us to monitor neuronal activity in a behaving animal.

Several transgenic reporters based on modified GFP constructs that either use calcium-dependent fluorescent resonance energy transfer (FRET) or where the fluorescence of a single, modified GFP molecule is directly affected by calcium concentration, have been described in Drosophila. This technology has started to expand rapidly with the emergence of real-time calcium imaging in a variety of regions of the nervous system using transgenic chameleon constructs targeted using GAL4 to the tissue of choice in the developing and adult fly (e.g. Fiala et al. 2002, Reiff et al. 2002, Liu et al. 2003). Additional tools with altered sensitivity and alternative technical requirements (direct fluorescence measurement rather than via FRET) are also now available such as Camgaroo or G-CaMP (Yu et al. 2003, Wang et al. 2003). Key advantages over the aequorin system include the ability to report on several different molecules and a higher degree of temporal and spatial resolution as these can be viewed using fluorescent microscopy (commonly using multi-photon confocal microscopy).

1.6 Neuroinformatics and high-throughput technologies

1.6.1 Resources and Tools

One of the many advantages of using Drosophila is the wealth of informatics resources available to support established and new research projects. This is a constantly developing field but some of these resources are of particular interest to research groups in neuroscience:

1. FlyBase http://www.flybase.net/
2. BDGP http://fruitfly.org/
3. EDGP http://edgp.ebi.ac.uk/
These resources, and FlyBase in particular, also have extensive supporting documentation, data collections and links to other on-line resources. Several collections of fly strains useful to neuroscientists are available and FlyBase maintains an up-to-date set of links to these resources.

It should be noted that there is a large amount of neuroscience relevant data and resources embedded in the core genetic databases mentioned above. More specific collections and databases of enhancer-trap strains pre-screened for expression in the Drosophila nervous system exist (see www.fly-trap.org/ and Hayashi et al. 2002).

There have been several attempts at producing atlases of the Drosophila adult and pre-adult nervous systems and databases of gene expression patterns. The main on-line atlas for the Drosophila nervous system is Flybrain (www.flybrain.org), which contains an exemplary set of annotated reduced silver and autofluorescent head sections from the adult fly. Recent developments have the potential to revolutionize this aspect of research.

The Standard Brain system developed by the Heisenberg lab (Rein et al. 2002; Fig. 1.1) uses an anti-synaptic antibody to visualize the general regions of the brain. Using this information as a counter-stain for brain structure allowed them to manually segment the main brain regions in a number of genetic backgrounds. Their result was a statistical volumetric map of the key regions of the adult brain. This system facilitates the quantitative analysis of introducing mutations into the development of the brain.

![Fig. 1.1 StandardBrain representation of the adult Drosophila Brain.](image)

An example image produced by the StandardBrain package (Rein et al. 2002) in greyscale. An anti-synaptic antibody (nc82) is used to get a general overview of the nervous system, which is then mapped onto a reference volume. Key brain structures are semi-automatically segmented and statistical information displayed. Image courtesy of Arnim Jenett and Martin Heisenberg (University of Würzburg, Germany).
It also allows for a degree of automatic annotation of double-labelled brain structure. Although the current system was developed in the adult central brain and optic lobes, it is presumably applicable to other regions and stages of the *Drosophila* nervous system and the general technique ultimately to other species.

The standard brain technique is good for the synaptic neurophil (brain regions formed from dendritic and axonal processes) but is less useful for the pericarya (cell body layers). In *Drosophila*, the neuronal cell bodies form a rind on the outer surface of the brain tissue and the neurites project into the brain mass before splitting to form dendritic and axonal processes. As gene expression is generally measured at the cell body/nucleus level, methods for identifying neuronal cell bodies would clearly be very useful in this post-genomic age. A new imaging technique that combines multiple 3D image stacks taken at high resolution from a single brain by multi-photon microscopy has been developed (Ponomarev and Davis 2003, in press). This approach allows individual, neuronal cell bodies to be resolved at very high resolution.

The two techniques described above, particularly if combined, represent an unparalleled opportunity to map an entire nervous system in a relatively complex behaving animal for the first time.

### 1.6.2 Functional Genomics and Proteomics

The promise of high throughput functional genomic and proteomic approaches is just starting to materialize in *Drosophila* neuroscience. Several recent studies demonstrate the ability of microarray technology to identify new candidate genes in neuron function (McDonald and Rosbash 2001; Toma *et al.* 2002; Dubnau *et al.* 2003; Johnson *et al.* 2003). The inherent noise in this technology makes inferring gene networks/cascades directly from the data a particularly difficult challenge (e.g. Friedman *et al.* 2000). However, the long history of genetic analysis in *Drosophila* provides us with a few clues (around 10k known gene interactions — www.flybase.net) that can be used to help build, refine, and test gene network predictions.

### 1.6.3 Molecular modelling.

One of the key challenges in functional genomics and in high throughput proteomics is to understand the data produced — it is noisy and complex. The analysis tools for reconstructing gene networks given a series of microarray experiments are as yet in their infancy. Whilst some success has been achieved using probabilistic (e.g. Friedman *et al.* 2000) approaches, the assessment of derived networks is problematic. In this respect, research in *Drosophila* has an advantage. FlyBase catalogues an extensive list of known gene interactions (around 10,000 as of April 2003). Although the gene networks predicted by inference techniques are not directly comparable with the gene interactions derived from analysis of mutants, a degree of commonality should exist. Thus, the genetic interaction map for *Drosophila* could be used to assess the validity of predicted gene networks or, it could be used as prior information for supervised learning techniques.
1.7 Conclusions

Neuroscientists study the nervous system from the level of molecular genetics, to single cells (neurons), to systems, to behaviours. Molecular genetics, electrophysiology, pharmacology, anatomical techniques, microscopy, and behavioural tests are among the many approaches possible used to study the nervous system. The choice of model system in neuroscience requires a detailed analysis of the system itself, the tools available and appropriateness of the model for the study in mind. We have presented this overview as an introduction to the use of *Drosophila* as a system for studying neuroscience across multiple levels. The simple organism has some distinct advantages over many others yet at the molecular and genetic level, the nervous system shows a high degree of evolutionary conservation. There are a few technical limitations, largely in neurophysiological techniques but these are rapidly being addressed and recent transgenic developments have the potential to more than address the balance. *Drosophila* may not be ideal for every study, but where appropriate it is a fast, cost-effective, and extremely powerful model system.

References


Chapter 2

Using mouse genetics to study neuronal development and function

Harald Jockusch and Thomas Schmitt-John

2.1 Why the mouse?

Historically, the mouse has achieved the status of a genetic model for biomedical research through immunogenetics (cf. Green 1975). The role of genetics in elucidating the development and function of the nervous system seemed less obvious. Accordingly, the initial decades of neurobiology were dominated by pharmacological and surgical methods. The role of genetics in the function and long-term maintenance of the central nervous system (CNS) became evident in neuropathology, due to hereditary neurological diseases. Presently, there appear to be four main areas in which the mouse is used as a genetic system in neurobiology: (1) development of the nervous system, especially compartmentation and axon pathfinding, (2) glia–neuron interaction including myelination, (3) ion channels and signal transduction in neurological disease and (4) cognition and memory formation. All of these have important medical implications, so that a mammal seems to be the model of choice. Within the higher mammals (Eutheria), the mouse as a rodent is not particularly closely related to man, the last common ancestor being estimated to have lived 70 million years ago. However, in contrast to more closely related mammals like insectivores or primates, the mouse has unsurpassed qualities as a laboratory animal, especially for genetic analysis. There is little seasonal influence on mating, the intrauterine development takes only 19 days, litters are fairly large (6 to 14 babies), and, despite being born at a fetus-like stage, mice are sexually mature eight weeks postnatally. Thus, the life cycle can be completed within 11 weeks, and one can achieve four generations within one year. It is remarkable for a mammal, and mostly due to a continuous refinement of techniques, how well the mouse is suited for developmental and genetic manipulation. Furthermore, about 200 inbred laboratory strains are available (of which only a subset is commonly used), so that natural gene polymorphisms, the role of genetic background in phenotype expression and the influence of modifier genes can be readily studied. Lastly, sequencing of the human and mouse genomes has shown that the two species share an overwhelming fraction of genes so that functional genomics of both species support each other.
In this chapter, the methods available for the genetic analysis and manipulation of the mouse will be briefly outlined and their application to neurobiology will be illustrated by selected examples.

2.2 Methods useful for mouse neurogenetics

2.2.1 Comparative Genomics

The human nuclear genome comprises 23 chromosomes; 22 autosomes and the sex chromosomes, X and Y. The mouse has 20 chromosomes with 19 autosomes. The former has been sequenced to over 90% (as of June 2002, http://genome.ucsc.edu/), and the draft sequence for the mouse has been published (Waterston et al. 2002; http://www.ensembl.org/Mus_musculus/). The presence of several pairs of homologous genes on one given chromosome defines conserved synteny. The most striking example of conserved synteny is the conservation of gene content of mammalian X chromosomes. In any chromosomal segment of conserved synteny the local gene order is usually conserved to a high degree, making it possible to use mapping information from one species to identify a disease gene in the other species.

2.2.2 Classical mouse mutants and positional cloning

Classical mouse genetics relied on spontaneous or radiation-induced mutations (Lyon and Searle 1989) which in most cases lead to recessive ‘loss-of-function’ phenotypes, but also included cases of ‘gain of function’, i.e. dominant expression of the mutant phenotype. Radiation-induced mutations are often deletions whereas spontaneous mutations include point mutations, retroposon insertions and chromosomal rearrangements. These ‘classical’ mutations certainly represent a selective bias: lethal phenotypes early in life were likely to be overlooked, as were phenotypes which were too mild. Mutant loci were mapped using meiotic segregation in relation to markers of known position. In the early days, these were genes affecting the external appearance like coat color, or allelic forms of enzymes; in recent years, due to rapid PCR techniques, these have been replaced by DNA microsatellite polymorphisms. In order to identify the gene the tedious procedure of positional cloning, i.e. high resolution mapping followed by sequencing of sets of overlapping genomic DNA clones is necessary unless there is a physiological hint that allows one to focus on a candidate gene. The availability of a full mouse genome sequence (Waterston et al. 2002) will make this procedure much faster and easier.

In human neurological diseases such as nervus opticus atrophy and several muscle diseases, defects in mitochondrial genes play an important role. We are not aware of reports on spontaneously arising mitochondrial mutations that would cause neurological diseases in the mouse. However, methods to specifically introduce mutations into the mitochondrial genome have recently been developed (Wallace et al. 2001).

Methods to artificially induce mutations, either random or directed (Fig. 2.1) will be described in the following sections.
2.2.3 Induced random mutations: The ENU screening projects

In the course of recent genome projects the chemical mutagenesis of the mouse had an unexpected comeback. Male mice are treated with a sublethal dosage of ethylnitrosourea (ENU), one of the most powerful chemical mutagens. ENU predominantly causes single basepair exchanges (Popp et al. 1983). The offspring of ENU treated males carry multiple paternally inherited point mutations (Balling 2001). To detect neurological mutations in subsequent generations several screening protocols have been set up, such as behavioural, anxiety and pain tests. The common aim of these mutagenesis programs is to saturate the genome with an unbiased spectrum of mutants. Mutant phenotypes are described in publicly available databases (Germany: www.gsf.de/ieg/groups/enu-mouse.html; UK: www.mgu.har.mrc.ac.uk/mutabase/);
2.2.4 Transgenes

In transgenic animals genes of interest are added to the genome of a recipient animal. Expression plasmids (capacity < 20 Kb), which in the simplest case consist of a cloned cDNA downstream to a non-specific promoter, are injected into the pronucleus of a zygote. The zygotes are subsequently transferred into the genital tract of foster mothers. In about ten percent of the injected zygotes the plasmid is integrated into the genome and transgenic offspring are born. The site of transgene insertion is more or less random and usually multiple copies of the transgene are integrated in tandem arrangement. The expression of a transgene depends not only on the promoter used for the construct, but also on the copy number of insertions and on the location of the insertion. For this reason several transgenic lines usually have to be analyzed in parallel. To minimize the influence of the genetic environment on a given transgene it is preferable to insert the transgene including its normal chromosomal environment, in the form of a large genomic DNA-fragment (up to several hundred Kb). Yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs) and bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs) have been successfully used for this purpose.

2.2.5 Gene trapping—random mutagenesis of embryonic stem cells

Gene trapping is a random insertional mutagenesis method applied to embryonic stem (ES) cells. The approach is based on the insertion of a promoterless reporter gene, usually the E. coli LacZ gene coding for β-galactosidase. The expression of the reporter, being under transcriptional control of the unknown gene into which it has been inserted, mimicks and allows visualization of the expression pattern of the ‘trapped’ gene. This facilitates the screening for genes of interest. Screening can be performed on the ES cell level for genes active at that stage or — with more relevance to neurobiology — after induced differentiation of ES cells in culture. Selected ES cell clones are transferred into blastocysts, and may be screened in the resulting chimeras. If they participate in the germ line heterozygous offspring may be used for the analysis of the expression pattern in situ and homozygous mutants obtained in the following generation, in which the insertion would destroy the function of both alleles, are tested for aberrant phenotypes (review: Hill and Wurst 1993).

Skarnes et al. (1995) developed a gene-trapping approach (secretion gene trap) that allows a pre-screen of gene loci encoding membrane and secreted proteins. The vector pGT1.8tm carries, from 5′ to 3′, the engrailed 2 splice acceptor, the CD4 transmembrane domain and a β-geo (lacZ-neoR fusion) sequence (Skarnes et al., 1995). When insertions occur into genes, the transcripts of which lack a 5′ secretion signal sequence, the CD4 transmembrane domain acts as a secretion signal, leading to translocation of the carboxy-terminal end of the translation product into the
endoplasmic reticulum. In the lumen of the ER, the fusion protein is exposed to conditions, including glycosylation enzymes, which lead to inactivation of β-galactosidase activity. However, insertions into a gene encoding a signal sequence, when they occur 3′ to the signal sequence, lead to the CD4 domain acting as a simple Type I transmembrane domain, terminating further translocation into the ER. This leaves the 3′ transgene product outside of the lumen of the ER in the cytoplasm, providing an active β-galactosidase marker.

2.2.6 Site-specific deletion mutagenesis

Any point mutation, spontaneous or ENU induced, may be combined with targeted deletion mutagenesis. Two different strategies have been developed for targeted deletion mutagenesis in mouse ES cells. The first is based on the targeted insertion of two loxP sites (see 2.2.9) into a specific mouse chromosome by homologous recombination in ES cells, followed by Cre recombinase mediated deletion of the DNA segment between the loxP sites (Ramirez-Solis et al. 1995). ES cell clones transmitted to the germ line yield hemizygous ‘deletion mice’. The second approach utilizes a viral thymidine kinase as a negative selection marker, which is introduced into the genomic area of interest by homologous recombination in ES cells. Thereafter ES cells are subjected to X-irradiation induced deletion mutagenesis followed by selection for the loss of thymidine kinase (You et al. 1997). Deletions within the target region are mapped and hemizygous deletion mice are generated.

Hemizygous deletion females are mated with ENU-treated males and the F1 offspring are screened for aberrant phenotypes. Above a background of dominant gain-of-function mutations located anywhere in the mouse genome this approach allows the F1 screening for recessive mutations located within the hemizygous ‘deletion window’ (www.mouse-genome.bcm.tmc.edu/ENU/MutagenesisProj.asp).

2.2.7 Knock-outs: Artificial loss-of-function mutations of known genes

The targeted generation of null-mutations in mice (Thomas and Capecchi 1987) is based on the alteration of a known gene locus by homologous recombination in ES cells. The homologous recombination is driven by a targeting vector which comprises a selection marker (drug resistance) flanked by genomic gene-specific targeting fragments. The targeting vector is transfected into the ES cells via electroporation, resulting clones are selected for drug resistance and screened for the gene-specific homologous recombination event by genomic PCR or Southern blotting. Selected ES cells are injected into blastocysts or aggregated with morulae to yield chimeric blastocysts in culture that are subjected to the procedures described for gene trapping (Fig. 2.1). Fifty percent of the ES cell offspring should be heterozygous for the knock-out. Intercrossing yields 25% of homozygous ‘KO mice’ for phenotype analysis. Several thousands of genes have been knocked out and their phenotypes have been characterized (tbase.jax.org/). The knock-out strategy is not restricted to proper genes, but
might also be useful for the functional characterization of regulatory sequence elements and conserved non-coding sequences, the latter of which have been identified via interspecies sequence comparison (Loots et al. 2000).

2.2.8 **Knock-ins of human ‘pathogenes’**
In most cases of knock-out experiments a reporter and/or a selection gene is introduced concomitantly with disruption of the target gene. The knock-in of a ‘reporter gene’ like *LacZ* or jellyfish green fluorescent protein (GFP) and its artificial variants allows, if the promoterless reporter is correctly controlled by the target gene regulatory sequences, the analysis of the expression pattern of the target gene in situ. Apart from this somewhat artificial analytical tool, knock-in technology is used to produce accurate models of human disease. A mouse gene can be replaced by a pathogenic allele of the orthologous human gene. Alternatively an equivalent mutation may be introduced into the mouse gene by *in vitro* mutagenesis and knock-in technology.

2.2.9 **Conditional mutations**
The value of the knock-out approach for the analysis of complex physiological and behavioural capabilities of an organism has been questioned (Routtenberg 1995). A gene function represents just a node in a complicated network to which other gene functions contribute, modulated by their regulation as well as exogenous influences. If one gene function is missing during the development of an organism, the whole network might react and even compensate for the loss. Thus, the case is certainly different from a ‘minus one’ music recording. This thought was already implicit in Richardt Goldschmidt’s ‘theory of gene physiology’ (Goldschmidt 1927) long before DNA had been identified as the hereditary material. It not only implies that the loss of a seemingly important gene function may cause no overt abnormalities (“no phenotype”) but also that a single gene defect may change the expression of a host of other genes. Another complication of constitutive gene disruption is the fact that during development one and the same gene may be used at different times in different tissues in a different context. The phenotype resulting from its loss may thus be a superposition of physiologically unrelated events.

In order to avoid these complications, more specific gene targeting methods have been developed. They would either eliminate a gene function specifically in one organ or cell type or at a chosen time, or both.

For tissue specific knock-out, targeted mutagenesis in ES cells has to be silent and should not impair gene function. Usually essential exons are ‘floxed’ by flanking them with loxP sites (short oriented recognition sequences for the phage P1-derived Cre recombinase). Using homologous recombination in ES cells, the floxed exon including a floxed selection marker is introduced into the gene of interest. Targeted ES cell clones are selected and transiently transfected with a Cre-recombinase expression plasmid. Cre recombinase deletes the sequences between two tandemly arranged loxP sites and
ES cell clones have to be selected which have lost the selection cassette but not the essential exon. ES cell clones with the floxed essential exon are used to obtain homozygous floxed mice as described for conventional knock-outs. These mice are bred with Cre recombinase transgenic mice, the transgene of which is regulated by a tissue specific promoter. In Cre-transgenic homozygously floxed mice the essential exon is deleted exclusively in cells which express the Cre and the effects of the gene knock-out in specific tissues and organs can be analyzed.

Inducible knock-outs utilize “on/off” promoter systems for the expression of Cre-recombinase transgenes, which can be regulated externally e.g. by application of effector molecules like tetracycllin or steroid hormones, depending on the artificially introduced regulator system. In this case the Cre-mediated deletion of an essential exon of a gene can be induced at a specific timepoint so that critical developmental stages are overcome and acute effects of the loss of function may be studied: see e.g. the experiments of Malleret et al. (2001) and Gross et al. (2002) using tetracycline regulated systems.

2.3 Selected neurological mouse mutants

The genetic map positions of a number of spontaneous and induced neurological mutations in the mouse and their human homologs are shown in Fig. 2.2.

2.3.1 Development and Pathfinding

Neural development in all organisms studied is governed by an interplay of transcription factors, cell surface and matrix molecules and signal transduction systems (Yu and Bargmann 2001, Lee and Pfaff 2001, Monuki and Walsh 2001). A number of genes affecting the development and compartmentation of the mammalian CNS were discovered by the knock-out of genes that had been identified as homologs to *Drosophila* developmental genes.

A specific gene trap strategy for the mouse has been developed to identify genes involved in axonal pathfinding, based on the secretion gene trap approach (see 2.2.5; Skarnes et al. 1995). In a bicistronic construct, coupled to the LacZ and selection genes, a gene coding for an alkaline phosphatase with a GPI anchor was introduced (Leighton et al. 2001). Thus in transgenic animals, there was a double reporter system: the cell bodies of neurons expressed the β-galactosidase and the neurites of the same cells were labelled with the membrane-anchored phosphatase. In heterozygous animals the wild-type axon wiring pattern was visualized whereas in homozygotes, due to a complete loss of the wildtype gene, aberrant neurite orientations could be directly visualized by the phosphatase stain. Thus, among a number of surface and extracellular proteins the transmembrane protein semaphorin 6A was found to be necessary for the correct pathfinding of thalamocortical axons, and the receptor tyrosine kinase EphA4 for pathfinding and chiasma formation in the corticospinal tract.
2.3.2 Mutations affecting myelin formation and stability

Myelin, the structural prerequisite for rapid saltatory impulse conduction in vertebrates, is formed by glial cells, oligodendrocytes in the central nervous system (CNS) and Schwann cells in the peripheral nervous system (PNS). In humans and rodents, myelination occurs postnatally. Myelin deficiency may cause striking behavioral symptoms, such as ataxia and tremor, which reflect the loss of motor control. This late-onset phenotype has allowed the identification of a number of spontaneous mutations with both CNS and PNS dysmyelinations. Most of these have now been molecularly defined as mutations in genes coding for myelin-associated proteins (review: Nave 1994).

Myelin basic proteins (MBPs) are a group of small positively-charged proteins derived from an autosomal gene by alternative mRNA splicing. The shiverer mutation of the mouse is a loss-of-function deletion in the MBP gene. The shiverer defect, thin and largely uncompacted myelin, has been complemented by a wildtype MBP transgene.

The jimpy mouse (jp) is affected in the gene for proteolipid protein (PLP), which is the major integral membrane protein of CNS myelin. There is a smaller isoform...
DM-20 which is derived by alternative RNA splicing. *jp* is a point mutation leading to a fatal error of mRNA splicing and consequently to a severe CNS-specific dysmyelination (Nave 1994). Other murine alleles are point mutations causing single amino acid substitutions. Over 30 different mutations of the PLP gene have been found in human patients with Pelizaeus-Merzbacher disease. The PLP gene is X-linked in both species.

Mutations of the small glycoprotein PMP22 were first identified in the *Trembler* mouse and later in human patients with a form of Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease, type 1A (CMT1A). Homozygous *Trembler* mice have virtually no peripheral myelin (but are fully viable). CMT1A in humans is associated with a duplication of the PMP22 gene.

P0 is a highly abundant glycosylated membrane protein of 30 kD of the PNS where it fulfills functions analogous to those of MBP in the CNS. Elimination of one P0 allele in mice leads to ultrastructural abnormalities reminiscent of myelin in Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease type 1B (CMT1B), previously associated with point mutations in the human P0 gene.

The myelin mutants of the mouse thus provide a collection of genocopies for a number of human neurological diseases.

### 2.3.3 Genetics of excitability and ion channels

The cerebellar mutation ‘weaver’ (*wv*) had been classified as a developmental mutation because granule cells fail to properly migrate and subsequently degenerate; however, it turned out to be a mutation in a GTP-binding protein regulated potassium channel, GIRK-2, the human gene for which, GIRK2, was already known (Patil *et al.* 1995). This is a case where conserved synteny between mouse and human genomes (cf. Gregory *et al.* 2002, Waterston *et al.* 2002) was helpful to identify the disease gene, in this case in the mouse.

In the case of the neuromuscular mutation ‘motor endplate disease’ (*med*), several spontaneous alleles were available but finally serendipity was helpful in that an insertional mutation produced the same symptoms, mapped to the same chromosome (Chr 15) and did not complement the authentic *med* mutation. In addition, the expression of the candidate gene specifically in the brain and spinal cord supported the notion of a CNS disease. The *med* locus was cloned, was found to code for a new sodium channel subunit protein, and was therefore renamed *Scna8* for ‘sodium channel α subunit 8’ (Burgess *et al.* 1995).

Loss-of-function of inhibitory ion channels may lead to hyperexcitability, as evidenced by seizures. Mutant excitatory ion channels may also produce hyperexcitability, in a gain-of-function mode if their inactivation is delayed (review: Meisler *et al.* 2001). More than 40 genes in humans and mice have been found to be associated with CNS hyperexcitability, i.e. the symptoms of epilepsy. The ion channels found to be responsible by positional cloning range from sodium, potassium and calcium channels (Fig. 2.2) to acetylcholine and GABA receptors.

The glycine receptor of brain stem and spinal cord is a ligand-gated chloride channel consisting of three α and two β subunits, with the glycine binding sites on the
α subunits (Davies and Glencorse, this volume chapter 8). Mouse mutations in the genes for either the adult α subunit, *spasmodic*, or the β subunits, *spastic*, result in symptoms similar to those after strychnine poisoning as this alkaloid is an inhibitory analogue of glycine. A hereditary human neurological disease, startle disease (Hyperekplexia, stiff baby syndrome) is due to mutations in the gene for the glycine receptor α subunit (Fig. 2.2).

### 2.4 Hereditary neurodegenerative diseases: natural and transgenic models

In recent years it became evident that there is no common denominator for the genetic basis of neurodegenerative diseases: They may be dominant or recessive, may affect ubiquitously expressed genes, and these may code for enzymes, ion channels or hitherto unknown proteins (review: Bailey, this volume, chapter 15).

In a number of neurodegenerative diseases, e.g. Huntington’s disease (HD), spinocerebellar ataxia type I (SCA1), and spinobulbar muscular atrophy (SBMA), CAG triplet repeat expansions are found within the coding region of the mutated genes where they translate into polyglutamine (poly Q) tracts (Brooks 1995). The complete sequence of the human SCA1 gene product ‘ataxin-1’ is known and antibodies directed against it are available. Although ataxin-1 does not resemble known proteins and its cellular function remains elusive, recent experiments have contributed to the understanding of the etiology of SCA. Transgenic mice have been produced for different alleles (differing in the lengths of their CAG repeats) of the SCA1 gene, conclusively showing that the severity of the neurological symptoms in the transgenic mouse, as in human patients, correlates with the length $n$ of the trinucleotide repeat.

In the mouse *Sca1* gene, there are only two adjacent CAGs, $n = 2$. Yet, the repeat length found in normal humans, $n = 30$, is still not pathogenic in mice, but an allele with $n = 82$ that is harmful in humans also causes neurodegeneration in the mouse. Non-neural cells express ataxin-1 in their cytoplasm, and most neurons express it in the nucleus. Purkinje cells express ataxin-1 both in their cytoplasm and nuclei and their specific susceptibility to toxic influences of overlength polyglutamine tracts may be related to the localization of ataxin-1. The present evidence suggests that poly Q localized in the nucleus is toxic due to interaction with other nuclear proteins (Zoghbi and Orr 2000).

The most common human neurodegenerative disease, Werdnig–Hoffmann spinal muscular atrophy (SMA), does not have a homologous counterpart in the mouse. The human SMA gene is located on the short arm of Chr 5 (Chr 5q), and has been termed ‘SMN’ for ‘survival motor neuron (gene)’ (Lefebvre *et al.* 1995). The SMN protein is a ubiquitously expressed component of the spliceosome. There is a difference between mouse and man at this locus: whereas the human SMN locus is duplicated and contains SMN1 and SMN2, there is only one SMN gene on Chr 13 of the mouse. Its knock-out leads to early embryonic lethality (Schrank *et al.* 1997), and therefore does not provide a model for the human disease in which SMN2 usually remains intact,
whereas SMN1 is subject to deleterious mutations. However, after the introduction of human SMN2 into the mouse, Smn KO mice survived and developed symptoms similar to human SMA (Hsieh-Li et al. 2000). Recently, tissue-specific knockouts in the mouse have led to surprising results: not only does an SMN KO lead to neurodegeneration in the CNS and atrophic muscle (Frugier et al. 2000) but also the muscle specific KO has deleterious effects, confined to muscle (Cifuendes-Diaz et al. 2001).

For another human neurodegenerative disease, familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (FALS), an affected gene locus has been shown to code for the well-known enzyme cytosolic copper/zinc superoxide dismutase, SOD-1, an ubiquitously expressed enzyme thought to protect cells against oxidative stress. However, the etiology was not clear, as in most patients the catalytic activity of SOD-1 was not affected, and, again no homologous mouse mutants were available to clarify the issue. Recently, a SOD-1 KO-mouse has been produced and found to display no neurological symptoms under standard conditions. Therefore, transgenic mice bearing FALS alleles of the human SOD1 gene (i.e. a situation analogous to the SCA1 transgenic mouse) were produced. In humans the amino acid replacement glycine to alanine at position 93 does not impair enzyme activity but, in a gain-of-function mechanism, causes neurodegeneration. The same symptom was observed in mice made transgenic for this allele but not in mice transgenic for normal human SOD1 (Gurney et al. 1994, review: Julien 2001).

A number of the classical mouse disease genes that affect motoneurons such as ‘motoneuron degeneration 2’ (mnd2, Chr 6) ‘wobbler’ (wr, Chr 11), and ‘muscle deficient’ (mdf, Chr 19) still await positional cloning.

2.5 Modifier genes and quantitative trait loci (QTL)

An important issue of current genetics is that of inherited genetic risk factors which may have a dramatic effect on the severity and progression of disease symptoms. For a wide variety of complex human diseases, modifying genetically inherited risk factors have been described (Mackay 2001). These modifiers have been called ‘quantitative trait loci’ (QTL) because of their quantitative influence on certain diseases or other phenotypes. For many diseases, both inherited and acquired, modifying genes are known. Alzheimer’s disease and epilepsy (Legare et al. 2000) are modified in the severity of their symptoms by QTLs. In the mouse, the neurodegenerative disease, wobbler, can be ameliorated (Kaupmann et al. 1992) or aggravated (Ulbrich et al. 2002) by modifiers.

2.6 Genetic control of behaviour, cognitive functions and memory formation

Considering the criticisms cited above (Section 2.2.9) it might seem hopeless to unravel complex functions of the CNS with the toolbox of mouse molecular genetics.

‘The mnd2 gene has recently been identified. It codes for a serine protease (Omi) which is present in all tissues and is localized in mitochondria (Jones et al. 2003).
However, from twin studies in humans and the comparison of inbred mouse strains it seems clear that there is a strong genetic component to behaviour and cognitive functions. We know that these capabilities are the result of prenatal and postnatal elaboration of neuronal wiring, the interaction with external influences (plasticity) and acute enzyme, transmitter and hormone levels. In some cases a behavioural trait may be altered by a single biochemical change, as in the case of the increased aggressiveness of NO synthase KO mice (Nelson et al. 1995).

To distinguish between developmental influences in the history of the CNS to be studied and the acute balance of biochemical parameters in neurons, a site and time controlled genetic manipulation seems necessary. An example is the study of the influence of the kinase/phosphatase balance on memory formation in mice. The protein kinase A (PKA)/calcineurin (CN) balance was studied to test the hypothesis that the phosphatase CN would counteract protein phosphorylation by PKA, and thus suppress early steps of memory formation. This was achieved by pharmacological interference using a genetic method: a neuron-expressed transgene for a CN inhibitory peptide was introduced, which could be positively regulated by the tetracyclin-related inducer doxycyclin. When ‘switched on’ the inhibitory transgene would reversibly suppress CN activity by about 40%. It was found that long-term potentiation (LTP), and short and long-term memory, were reversibly enhanced by regulated expression of the phosphatase inhibitor (Malleret et al. 2001).

Another example for the application of a region-specific and time-controlled transgene expression is an analysis of the role of the serotonin1A receptor in anxiety-like behaviour (Gross et al. 2002). It was known that agonists of this receptor act as anxiolytics and conversely, absence of the serotonin1A receptor in knockout mice increases anxiety-like behaviour. This receptor has a restricted expression pattern in the brain, comprising the hippocampus, septum, and cortex, and the serotonergic neurons of the brainstem raphe nuclei. It was not known where and during what developmental stage of the brain the receptor exerts its function to ensure a normal anxiety level. To answer this question a tissue-specific and time-controlled transgenic rescue (as measured by a normalized anxiety level) of the knockout mouse using a tetracycline regulated construct was established. The effect of the receptor seemed to be focussed in the hippocampus and cortex but not in the raphe nuclei, and during the early postnatal period, but not in the adult.

2.7 Outlook

The future use of the mouse as a model organism for neurogenetics, both for basic research and for the understanding of neurological diseases, will be based on the progress of comparative functional genetics of mouse and man and on evermore refined technologies of genetic manipulation (Mayford et al. 1997). The only hope of elucidating brain functions would be to combine spatially controlled changes in the neuronal wiring pattern with time-controlled changes in relevant biochemical
parameters, i.e. transmitter levels, activities of ion channels and receptors, and of components of intracellular signal transduction. In the near future, transgenic or knock-in mice and the identification of modifier loci will be important for drug development and testing as well as for cell-mediated therapies.

References


Chapter 3

Gene expression: from precursor to mature neuron

Uwe Ernsberger

3.1 Introduction

Gene expression specific to neurons and their precursors allows the formation of an interconnected set of cells able to process information encoded by electrical signals. In order to realize the appropriate part of the genetic information required to properly connect neurons and to process electrical information, a succession of gene regulatory events occurs. This includes the acquisition of neuron-specific gene regulatory competence during development, the resulting mature pattern of neuron-specific gene expression, and the plasticity of the mature expression pattern under changing physiological conditions.

Neurons are characterized in a simple and unifying manner by their ability to handle electrical signals due to ionic membrane conductances and the remarkable property of propagating changes in membrane potential along neuritic processes to transmit the encoded information onto target cells. Yet, the underlying molecular mechanisms show an astonishing diversity. The genes coding for the proteins involved in the very neuronal properties generally come in families which may include several to several dozen family members, the number increasing with ongoing search for homologues in the genomes whose sequences become available. This diversity of proteins available to perform a certain or similar function with slight differences in performance properties is the founding basis for neuronal diversity. The crude estimate of the number of different neuron classes ranges from several hundreds to several thousands, and depends on the complexity of the nervous system under investigation and the stringency of the classification. The degree of diversity provided by the existence of multi-gene families coding for related proteins is amplified by the combination of protein subunits in complexes such as many ion channels involved in electrical membrane processes. In addition, the generation of different protein isoforms by differential RNA splicing and the posttranslational modification of proteins by a range of biochemical processes make the nervous system an almost endless domain of diversity. And it makes the understanding of neurons-specific gene expression a formidable task where diversity becomes one of the most prominent features.
The challenge will be to first comprehend how, on a molecular basis, the expression of neuron-specific genes is regulated. As the genes come in families whose members are differentially expressed among different neuron populations (Fig. 3.1), the next problem is to understand why a specific type of neuron expresses a certain member of a class of neuron-specific genes and not one, two or several others. Moreover, as many...
physiologically, biochemically or structurally defined neuronal properties depend on the interaction of different proteins coming from different protein families, the issue arises as to how the coordinate expression of the different genes is achieved. And again why certain representatives of the respective gene or protein families are selected.

To meet these goals, the transcription apparatus needs to target genes in a highly ordered fashion. For this purpose, the clustering of chromatin domains is thought to provide a nuclear context beyond that provided by the DNA flanking sequences of the genes (Cockell and Gasser 1999). The importance of chromatin structure is emphasized by the statement that the 'transcription apparatus deals with chromatin, not DNA' (Felsenfeld 1996). Still, the precise link between chromatin structure and gene regulation has to be established (Belmont et al. 1999). The accessibility of DNA to nucleases is increased in regions surrounding actively expressed genes. In addition, there is a correlation with histone hyperacetylation. The covalent modification of histones may affect nucleosome structure and can be directly linked to transcriptional activation (Strahl and Allis 2000). Consequently, a 'histone code' is recognized to be essential in regulating gene expression (Jenuwein and Allis 2001), and the activities of transcriptional activators and repressors in chromatin alteration by histone modification is becoming a central issue of current research.

Transcriptional activators and repressors are involved in a complex set of protein/DNA and protein/protein interactions. RNA polymerase and a group of general transcription factors (Orphanides et al. 1996) constitute the basal transcription machinery that assembles at the core promoter. This complex turns out to be insufficient to attain physiological levels of gene expression and additional activators and silencers are required which bind in a sequence-specific manner to DNA motifs which may be located in the 5′ upstream region as well as in exon or intron sequences of the gene of interest (Figs. 3.2 and 3.3). The communication between the basal transcription machinery and these activators or silencers is mediated by a third class of transcription factors, the co-activators or co-repressors (Näär et al. 2001). The combinatorial action of the transcription factors and the basal transcription machinery allows for the constitutive, inducible and tissue-specific regulation of gene expression and may mediate the functional autonomy of adjacent genes (Dillon and Sabbattini 2000). The specificity that will be of interest in the discussion of neuron-specific gene expression is expected to reside, to a large extent, in the sequence-specific activators and silencers. In addition, recent work indicates that the basal transcription machinery may also show cell type-specific properties (Verrijzer 2001), even though such a role for neuron-specific gene expression has not been demonstrated yet.

3.2 Promoter analysis for the study of neuron-specific regulatory elements

Important regulatory elements controlling gene expression located in the 5′ regions of the genes are analysed with the help of promoter/reporter DNA constructs (Fig. 3.2).
They contain promoter fragments of differing length from the gene of interest, for example a gene encoding the subunit of a neuronal ion channel, in front of a reporter gene with enzymatic activity. Frequently used reporter genes are chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT), β-galactosidase (lacZ), alkaline phosphatase (AP), and luciferase (luc). After introduction of such promoter/reporter constructs into primary cells or cell lines, the expression of the reporter gene depends on the ability of the cell’s transcriptional apparatus to interact with the promoter and actively transcribe the reporter. The interaction of the cell’s transcription factors with binding sites in the promoter of the construct is the limiting factor for reporter expression and allows the characterization of crucial promoter elements.
Such promoter/reporter constructs can be introduced transiently into cell lines of different origin. Comparing the reporter expression in non-neuronally and neuronally derived cell lines is a powerful way to indicate the presence of transcription factors limited to one type of cells, as illustrated in the following chapter. Successively restricting the length of the promoter and mutation of promoter elements can be employed to characterize critical transcription factor binding sites in the promoter. Promoter fragments including such sites can then be used to screen for the presence of transcription factors in different cell types and to clone these factors with expression strategies.

This approach can be powered up by introducing the promoter/reporter permanently into transgenic animals (Palmiter and Brinster 1986). Pronuclear injection of the construct into mouse oocytes is used to achieve chromosomal integration and the generation of transgenic mouse lines. This puts the reporter system in a close-to-normal developmental and physiological context. By standard histological techniques, the reporter expression can be monitored to determine whether a defined promoter fragment can drive expression in distinct cell types and at specific developmental stages. In this manner, it can be determined whether a particular promoter fragment, for example from a gene encoding a neurotransmitter-synthesizing enzyme, is sufficient to direct reporter expression to specifically those cells which express the gene in the normal animal. The limited length of the promoter fragments, usually below 10 kb, as well as the influence of the surroundings of the integration site which cannot be chosen in conventional transgenic approaches restrict the scope of this technology which, nevertheless, has produced many of the results discussed below. The use of artificial minichromosomes (Heintz 2000; Giraldo and Montoliu 2001) into which an order of magnitude larger DNA inserts can be included will help to overcome the size

**Fig. 3.3** Different location of RE1/NRSE motifs in different genes. Gene structure is shown schematically and exons are shown by grey boxes. Transcription and translation start sites are indicated. The position of the NRSE/RE1 in the 5' upstream region, introns or untranslated exons is indicated for the genes shown. Modified from Thiel et al. (1999), and Myers et al. (1999).
limitation but has not yet been used extensively to analyse neuron-specific gene expression.

The combination of these techniques with the biochemical analysis of protein/DNA interactions and the characterization of promoter sequences suitable for transcription factor binding provides knowledge about a range of promoter elements and transcription factors that may be involved in the expression of neuronal genes and will be discussed below. Still, the emerging complexity of the protein complexes involved in transcriptional regulation is far from fully understood and results in statements such as ‘surprisingly little is known about how individual genes are turned on or off’ (Lemon and Tjian 2000). This is illustrated by the unfolding complexity of the interaction of coactivators and corepressors with the basal transcription machinery, and also by the considerable variation of the regulatory architecture of neuron-specific genes with respect to activating and silencing elements that has been appreciated already a decade ago (Mandel and McKinnon 1993; Grant and Wisden 1997).

3.3 Regulation of neuronal gene expression by the neuron-restrictive silencer

3.3.1 The gene encoding the type II voltage-gated sodium channel — on the importance of transcriptional repression to divide neuronal from non-neuronal gene expression

Since the characterization of the role of voltage-gated sodium conductances and the underlying channel proteins in the generation of the action potential, their expression may be considered one of the functional hallmarks of neurons. Thus, the analysis of regulatory elements involved in neuron-specific expression of the genes coding for voltage-gated sodium channels promises to unravel crucial players involved in the specification of neurons by differential expression of functionally relevant proteins. The analysis of the promoter region of the type II sodium channel held this promise.

Fusing approximately 1 kb of the 5′ flanking region of the sodium channel gene to bacterial chloramphenicol acetyltransferase as reporter demonstrates that, upon transient transfection of this construct into different cell types, expression of the reporter is detectable in cells with neuronal properties but not in non-neuronal cells (Maue et al. 1990). Deletion of sequence elements within this promoter region leads to a dramatic increase of the reporter expression in non-neuronal cells and suggested that a silencer element in the 5′ flanking region of the sodium channel gene is able to suppress expression in non-neuronal cells. The regulation is mediated by a silencer element called RE1/NRSE which is active in cell lines that do not express the type II sodium channel (Kraner et al. 1992; Mori et al. 1992). Expression cloning of a protein that binds to this silencer element resulted in the identification of the zinc finger transcription factor REST/NRSF which, in the developing mouse embryo, is expressed ubiquitously outside the nervous system (Chong et al. 1995; Schoenherr and Anderson 1995). Recombinant
REST/NRSF protein silences expression from a reporter construct carrying the RE1/NRSE domain in the promoter region. Conversely, a dominant-negative form of REST/NRSF that obstructs the activity of endogenous REST/NRSF relieves silencing mediated by the native protein (Chong et al. 1995; Eggen and Mandel 1997).

Importantly, similar silencer elements were identified in a large number of neuron-specific genes (Schoenherr et al. 1996) such as those coding for neurotransmitter receptors or transmitter release-associated proteins (Myers et al. 1999; Thiel et al. 1999). In many cases they are able to bind REST/NRSF and repress expression from a promoter/reporter construct. This exciting observation led to the conclusion that REST/NRSF is a silencing transcription factor expressed specifically in non-neuronal cells that prevents the expression of a large battery of neuron-specific genes in non-neuronal cells.

### 3.3.2 The β2 neuronal acetylcholine receptor subunit gene — turning repressors into activators?

Detection of REST/NRSF expression in adult neurons (Palm et al. 1998) strongly suggests that a silencing hypothesis assuming the exclusive action of the NRSE/RE1 in non-neuronal cells may be too simplistic. Also reporter gene expression mediated by the NRSE/RE1 motif in the β2 neuronal acetylcholine receptor (nAChR) subunit promoter casts doubt on the exclusive silencing action of the motif.

The β2 subunit of the nAChR is the most widely expressed subunit in neurons (Hill et al. 1993). A β-galactosidase reporter driven by the β2 nAChR promoter in transgenic mice is expressed in the peripheral nervous system and different regions of the central nervous system such as thalamus and colliculus. Mutation of the RE1/NRSE switches off expression in most of these structures but increases expression in some others such as the colliculus (Bessis et al. 1997). This suggests an intrinsic activating or repressing activity of RE1/NRSE in neurons depending on the neuron population. Similarly, in neuronal cell lines the RE1/NRSE element may act as a silencer or as enhancer in transfection experiments. Inserting spacers of different length between the RE1/NRSE and the TATA box of the promoter/reporter construct indicates that RE1/NRSE activity depends on its position in the promoter.

These conclusions remain controversial, however. REST/NRSF functions as repressor on model promoters containing strong promoter/enhancers in addition to RE1/NRSE motifs derived from various neuronal genes including the β2 neuronal acetylcholine receptor subunit (Thiel et al. 1998). Regardless of the position of the RE1/NRSE motifs, no activator function could be attributed to REST/NRSF in these experiments. Moreover, transcriptional activation mediated by activator domains from different transcription factors is blocked by REST/NRSF independent of the RE1/NRSE position (Lietz et al. 2001). Together with these observations, the existence of different repressor domains in REST/NRSF and their recruitment of histone deacetylases provoke the question how REST/NRSF may mediate an activating function.
3.3.3 The cholinergic gene locus — modulating the silencer function by alternative splicing?

The detection of REST/NRSF splice variants and their dynamic control in neural tissue (Palm et al. 1998) adds to the complexity of transcriptional regulation by this factor. Analysis of the action of the splice variants on the ChAT promoter demonstrates their possible antagonistic interaction.

Fragments of 5′ flanking region of the ChAT gene from different mammalian species are able to direct expression of a CAT reporter gene to neuronal but not to non-neuronal cell lines (Misawa et al. 1992; Li et al. 1993; Lönnerberg et al. 1995). In non-neuronal cell lines, the RE1/NRSE motif in the proximal part of the 5′ flanking region (Lönnerberg et al. 1996) shows repressing activity which is removed by specific deletion of this motif. Expression of the REST/NRSF splice variant REST 4 in a cell line expressing endogenous full-length REST/NRSF is able to transcriptionally activate the cholinergic gene locus (Shimojo et al. 1999). A direct interaction between REST/NRSF and REST4 could be demonstrated by co-immunoprecipitation. The relatively weak binding of REST4 to the cholinergic RE1/NRSE as compared to full-length REST/NRSF (Lee et al. 2000) suggests that the derepressing action of REST4 rests on a direct interaction with the full-length protein. Using a synapsin I promoter, the derepressing action of REST4 is not confirmed, however (Magin et al. 2002). Thus, the possible antagonistic action of splice variants remains controversial.

Regulation of REST/NRSF expression and splicing via neuronal activity (Palm et al. 1998) and protein kinase-mediated signal transduction (Shimojo et al. 1999) as well as the action of neurotrophin growth factors via the RE1/NRSE motif (Brene et al. 2000) indicate that this motif and the REST/NRSF splice variants may participate in the dynamic control of neuronal gene expression. The low level of expression of splice variants such as REST4 (Palm et al. 1998) leaves open the question for their significance in vivo.

3.3.4 REST/NRSF as master regulator?

The identification of the neuron-restrictive silencer element, RE1/NRSE, and the zinc finger protein REST/NRSF mark major progress in the quest to identify molecular players involved in the regulation of neuron-specific gene expression. The characterization of this element and its activity in regulating the expression of genes such as voltage-gated sodium channels, neuronal acetylcholine receptors, glutamate receptors, synapsins, choline acetyltransferase, and the like (Schoenherr et al. 1996) pointed out a role in the specification of neuronal properties. The quasi-ubiquitous expression in non-neuronal tissues as well as the expression in undifferentiated neuronal progenitors but not differentiated neurons, as it was initially described (Chong et al. 1995; Schoenherr and Anderson 1995), shaped the hypothesis that REST/NRSF could be a transcription factor crucial for differentiating gene expression between neurons and non-neuronal cells. Thus, REST/NRSF was considered to be ‘a master negative regulator
of neurogenesis’ (Schoenherr and Anderson 1995) where the expression of neuron-specific genes marks a default pathway which is blocked in non-neuronal cells by the presence of REST/NRSF (Chong et al. 1995).

Several lines of evidence indicate that the situation is not that simple. In mice lacking functional REST/NRSF, *de novo* ectopic expression in non-neuronal tissue was observed for neuronal class III β tubulin but not for a range of other neuron-specific genes such as SCG 10, synapsin I, and neurofilament M all of which contain RE1/NRSE motifs in their promoters (Chen et al. 1998). The possibility that the mutation was hypomorphic rather than completely blocking the function of REST/NRSF seems low as no RE1/NRSE binding activity could be detected that was immunologically related to REST/NRSF. Analysis is compromised, however, by the early embryonic lethality of the mutant mice. Interestingly, derepression was achieved for more neuronal genes in the chick embryo when a dominant-negative REST/NRSF, which blocks the activity of endogenous REST/NRSF, was overexpressed (Chen et al. 1998). Irrespective of the reason for the low degree of derepression of neuronal genes in non-neuronal tissue of the mouse mutant embryos, the results demonstrate that there may be no simple unitary mechanism regulating the expression of neuronal genes, not even of those containing a NRSE/RE1 motif.

The comparatively low impact of the REST/NRSF mutation on neuronal gene expression in mice is in agreement with the expression of a lacZ reporter in transgenic mice that is driven by regulating regions of the L1 cell adhesion molecule gene (Kallunki et al. 1997) or the β2 nAChR subunit gene (Bessis et al. 1997). In particular the analysis of the β2 nAChR regulatory regions demonstrates that a mutation of the NRSE/RE1 motif does not lead to a general non-neuronal expression of the promoter except for a few oligodendrocytes. Together, the studies show that the expression of REST/NRSF by itself and the presence of the respective binding motif, RE1/NRSE, in the regulatory region of a gene may not suffice to correctly differentiate neuronal from non-neuronal gene expression.

Surprisingly, the mutation of the NRSE/RE1 motif in a β2 nAChR subunit transgene results in massive alterations in the neuronal expression of the transgene. The detection of REST/NRSF expression in neurons of different brain regions (Palm et al. 1998) strongly indicates that this factor may not only silence the expression of neuron-specific genes in non-neuronal cells but regulate, by activation or repression, gene expression in neurons. The different activity of the β2 RE1/NRSE motif in different brain regions suggests interaction with other transcriptional regulators. Alternatively different variants of REST/NRSF may be active in different brain regions.

An additional twist of complication lies in the observation that NRSE/RE1 may be found not only in neuronal genes, but also in non-neuronal genes (Schoenherr et al. 1996). Moreover, their intragenic position may be conserved between species and they may be functional in promoter/reporter constructs. This further suggests that the NRSE/RE1 motif must not necessarily result in repression of gene expression in cells expressing REST/NRSF.
3.3.5 Molecular mechanism of REST/NRSF action

Biochemical analysis begins to illuminate the mechanism by which such gene regulation may be accomplished. The important observation that REST/NRSF binds the corepressor Sin3 and recruits histone deacetylase (HDAC) into a complex (Naruse et al. 1999; Huang et al. 1999a; Roopra et al. 2000) suggests that REST/NRSF-mediated repression involves histone deacetylation. Indeed, REST/NRSF binding to RE1/NRSE is accompanied by a decrease of histone acetylation around the RE1/NRSE motif and inhibition of histone deacetylation leads to expression of neuron-specific genes in non-neuronal cells. Whereas the corepressor mSin3A/B interacts with the N terminus of REST/NRSF, another corepressor, CoRest, interacts with the C-terminal repressor domain of REST/NRSF (Andres et al. 1999). Significantly, CoRest is tightly associated with HDAC1/2 and the combination of REST/NRSF, CoRest and HDAC2 may repress the induction of type II sodium channel expression by nerve growth factor in PC12 cells (Ballas et al. 2001). These observations point out the recruitment of histone deacetylating activity by REST/NRSF and the role of corepressor proteins. On the other hand, due to the involvement of different corepressors binding to different repressor domains on REST/NRSF, the possibility arises that the successive recruitment of different corepressor complexes may help to explain dynamic versus stable, long-lasting regulation of neuronal gene expression (Griffith et al. 2001).

3.3.6 Conclusions

Currently, we have no complete picture of the functional role of the NRSE/RE1 motif and its binding factor REST/NRSF in neuron-specific gene expression. It may rather serve as a model to illustrate the complexity of protein–protein and protein–DNA interactions involved in gene regulation.

A plausible hypothesis for the role of REST/NRSF could be an early differentiation of neuronal and non-neuronal lineages and an additional, later action in differentiated neurons. Its role in non-neuronal cells may rest on an interaction with other transcription factors which differs between different genes and their regulatory regions. This may explain the non-neuronal expression of genes which despite containing the NRSE/RE1 motif are not neuron-specific.

While REST/NRSF has been analysed in vertebrates, tramtrack, another zinc finger transcription factor found in Drosophila represses neuroblast-specific genes and controls glial development (Badenhorst et al. 1996; Badenhorst 2001). This further underscores an early role of zinc finger transcription factors in lineage decisions. The comparison of vertebrate and invertebrate REST/NRSF and tramtrack homologues will show whether there is a conserved interaction or succession of such transcription factors during the early division of neuronal and non-neuronal development.

3.4 The regulation of neuronal gene expression by population-specific transcription factors

In addition to the quasi-ubiquitously expressed silencer factor REST/NRSF, analysis of promoter/reporter constructs in cell lines and transgenic animals provides evidence
for a number of activating promoter elements and the respective binding factors. These include factors which are available in many different cell types, not only neurons. And, more interestingly, transcription factors expressed specifically in neurons, and, to more precise, in neuronal subpopulations.

The characterization of Arix/Phox2 transcription factors will be discussed as a prototypic example for a neuron population-specific activator regulating the expression of the neurotransmitter synthesizing enzyme dopamine \(\beta\)-hydroxylase (DBH). It is particularly interesting as the characterization went all the way from the determination of critical promoter regions and expression cloning of binding factors to the analysis of effects of overexpression or mutational inactivation \textit{in vivo}. As a result, a family of transcription factors is described which, across different vertebrate taxa, are involved in the induction of DBH expression as part of a synexpression group of transmitter-synthesizing enzymes.

### 3.4.1 Dopamine \(\beta\)-hydroxylase — expression cloning of a population-specific homeobox-containing transcription activator

Dopamine \(\beta\)-hydroxylase (DBH) is the enzyme required for norepinephrine synthesis in noradrenergic and adrenergic neurons and endocrine cells. Analysing the regulatory elements involved in the specific expression of this transmitter-synthesizing enzyme led to the characterization of a homeobox-containing transcription factor family required for the development of certain peripheral and central neuron populations (Table 3.1).

Expression of a lacZ reporter under the control of 5.8 kb 5’ flanking sequence of the human DBH gene in transgenic mice resulted in reporter gene activity in noradrenergic and adrenergic neurons in addition to few other sites (Mercer \textit{et al.} 1991). In noradrenergic sympathetic ganglia, transgene expression was detectable at around the time when endogenous noradrenergic properties become induced (Kapur \textit{et al.} 1991). This indicates that the promoter region tested is sufficient to generate a spatial and temporal expression pattern roughly equal to that of endogenous DBH. Analysing promoter fragments after transfection into cell lines demonstrates distinct activating and repressing elements involved in cell type-selective expression of the reporter (Shaskus \textit{et al.} 1992, 1995). With expression cloning using the activating element DB1, a homeodomain-containing transcription factor called Arix was isolated (Zellmer \textit{et al.} 1995). Earlier, the same transcription factor was isolated with an expression screen using a fragment of the NCAM promoter and called Phox2a (Valarché \textit{et al.} 1993). A closely related family member called Phox2b (Pattyn \textit{et al.} 1997) has been characterized and both Arix/Phox2a and 2b are expressed in adrenergic and noradrenergic neurons and endocrine cells. The DBH promoter contains multiple Arix/Phox2 binding sites and both Phox2a and 2b activate DBH transcription \textit{in vitro} (Zellmer \textit{et al.} 1995; Kim \textit{et al.} 1998; Yang \textit{et al.} 1998). The tightly coupled expression of Phox2 transcription factors and DBH in differentiating sympathetic neurons strongly suggests that these transcription factors are required for induction of the noradrenergic transmitter phenotype (Ernsberger \textit{et al.} 2000). This is confirmed by the development of excess...
DBH-expressing cells after retrovirally mediated overexpression of Phox2a or 2b in chick embryos (Stanke et al. 1999) and the lack of DBH expression in developing sympathetic ganglia of Phox2b mutant mice (Pattyn et al. 1999). In addition, all noradrenergic centers in the brain are missing in these mice (Pattyn et al. 2000a). In the case of the Phox2a knockout, the noradrenergic cells in the locus coeruleus do not form (Morin et al. 1997).

These studies demonstrate that the homeodomain-containing Phox2 transcription factors can specifically activate DBH expression in noradrenergic and adrenergic neurons. The absence of these cells in the peripheral and the central nervous system of Phox2b mutant mice makes Phox2 transcription factors master regulators of neurons with these transmitter properties. Comparison of different species suggests that this developmental function is conserved throughout different classes of vertebrates (Guo et al. 1999; Ernsberger 2000).

The expression of Phox2 transcription factors also in cholinergic sympathetic neurons at later developmental stages (Ernsberger et al. 2000), the induction of cholinergic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Analysis performed</th>
<th>Results obtained</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DBH promoter/reporter analysis in transgenic mice</td>
<td>reproduction of the spatial and temporal expression pattern of the endogenous gene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBH promoter/reporter analysis in cell lines</td>
<td>characterization of activating and repressing promoter elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrophoretic mobility shift analysis of an activating DBH enhancer fragment DB1</td>
<td>characterization of cell type-specific nuclear proteins binding to the DB1 fragment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression cloning with the DB1 promoter fragment</td>
<td>characterization of Arix cDNAs and their identity with Phox 2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homology screen</td>
<td>characterization of Phox 2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of DBH and Phox 2a and 2b expression patterns in adult nervous tissue</td>
<td>evidence for a role of Phox 2a and 2b in the specification of the noradrenergic phenotype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of DBH and Phox 2a and 2b expression patterns during development</td>
<td>evidence for a role of Phox 2a and 2b in the induction of the noradrenergic phenotype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overexpression of Phox 2a and 2b in precursor cells in the chick embryo</td>
<td>evidence that Phox 2a and 2b are sufficient to induce noradrenergic differentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutational inactivation of the Phox 2b gene in mice</td>
<td>demonstration of the necessity of Phox2b for DBH expression in various types of neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analysis of Phox2a mutations in mice and zebrafish</td>
<td>demonstration of the necessity of Phox2a for noradrenergic locus coeruleus neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of observations in fish, chick and mouse embryos</td>
<td>evidence for an evolutionary conserved role of Phox 2a and 2b in the development of noradrenergic neurons</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
traits upon misexpression of Phox2b (Stanke et al. 1999; Dubreuil et al. 2000), and the lack of autonomic neurons irrespective of transmitter phenotype in Phox2b knockout mice (Pattyn et al. 1999) indicate that these transcription factors have other functions in addition to the regulation of DBH expression. Apart from a role in the development of cholinergic neurons which is not characterized in detail, Phox2 transcription factors are involved in the acquisition of general neuronal properties. Phox2b inactivation leads to disruption of the general neuronal differentiation program in certain populations of motoneurons (Pattyn et al. 2000b). Overexpression of Phox2a and 2b induces the development of ectopic neurons expressing different general neuronal genes such as neurofilament M or synaptotagmin I (Stanke et al. 1999; Patzke et al. 2001). As Phox2a binds to elements in the NCAM promoter (Valarché et al. 1993), the question arises whether corresponding binding elements in other neuronal genes such as those coding for neurofilaments or synaptotagmins may allow direct regulation by Phox2s. Thus, Phox2 transcription factors are not exclusively in charge of regulating a very modular aspect of neuronal differentiation, the expression of DBH. They also contribute to other aspects of differentiation in a restricted set of neuronal precursor populations. The molecular substrate of this coordinated expression of general neuronal properties and subpopulation-specific features remains to be worked out.

3.4.2 Transmitter release-related protein and neurotrophin receptor gene promoters — more evidence for regulation by subpopulation-specific transcription factors

The SNAP-25 gene encodes a protein involved in neurotransmitter release and is expressed in many neuron populations (Oyler et al. 1989). Interestingly, POU domain proteins of the Brn3 subfamily, which are restricted to certain neuronal subpopulations (Lillicrop et al. 1992; Xiang et al. 1993; Turner et al. 1994), can regulate SNAP-25 expression Cotransfection of a CAT reporter driven by some 2.1 kb of 5′ flanking region of the SNAP-25 gene with a Brn3a expression vector in ND7 cells stimulates reporter gene expression as compared to an expression vector without Brn3a coding sequence (Lakin et al. 1995). In addition to Brn3a, the closely related Brn3c is able to activate this promoter, whereas Brn3b represses activity (Morris et al. 1996). The promoter of the gene encoding the synaptic vesicle protein synapsin I is activated by all three Brn3 factors. The important topic highlighted by these studies is the role of neuronal subpopulation-specific transcription factors for the expression of genes not restricted to certain neuronal subpopulations. Evidence for a role of other transcription factors with restricted expression pattern, neurogenin1, Phox2a and Phox2b, for the regulation of SNAP-25, synaptotagmin I, and neurexin I expression has been obtained after overexpression of the transcription factors in Xenopus and chick embryos (Olson et al. 1998; Patzke et al. 2001). From these studies the question arises whether the expression of widely expressed neuron-specific genes is regulated by different transcription factors in distinct neuronal subpopulations in vivo.
Trk neurotrophin receptors are not expressed as widely as the transmitter release-related proteins but can be detected in a variety of neuron subpopulations. In Brn3a mutant mice, Trk expression is affected in a neuron subpopulation and stage-specific manner resulting in the death of certain populations of sensory neurons such as trigeminal neurons whereas dorsal root ganglion neurons are unaffected (Huang et al. 1999b). The analysis of the trkA/NGF receptor promoter demonstrates a region conserved between mammals and birds that is sufficient to direct reporter gene expression in transgenic mice with the appropriate timing (Ma et al. 2000). Mutation of distinct transcription factor binding motifs in this region demonstrates different binding sites to be required for expression in trigeminal, dorsal root and sympathetic ganglia.

These studies support the crucial role of neuronal subpopulation-specific transcription factors for neuron-specific genes widely expressed in different neuron populations. As the expression patterns of many neuronal genes do not respect the boundaries of expression of individual subpopulation-specific transcription factors, widely expressed neuron-specific genes may be regulated under the regime of different transcription factors in different neuron populations.

3.4.3 Conclusions

So far, the analysis of activating elements in the regulatory regions of neuron-specific genes has demonstrated transcriptional activation at a level specific for neuronal subpopulations and at a level which is not restricted to neurons at all. What has not been found to date is an activating counterpart to REST, namely a transactivating factor generally expressed in neurons but not non-neuronal cells. Such a factor may still appear with ongoing genomic analysis. If this will not be the case, a combination of neuron-restrictive silencing, general, not neuron-restrictive activation, and neuron subpopulation-specific activation is sufficient to drive the appropriate levels of expression for neuron-specific genes in the different neuron populations.

Importantly, neuron subpopulation-specific activation of gene expression is confirmed in vivo in mutant mice for different classes of homeobox-containing transcription factors and for neuron-specific genes as diverse as those coding for transmitter synthesis enzymes or neurotrophin receptors. These transcription factors belong to different families such as paired homeobox or POU proteins. Certain transcription factors or promoter elements may be important only during restricted periods in a neuron’s lifespan. Consequently, the question arises what developmental cascades of sequential transcription factor action are required for neuronal differentiation and specification.

3.5 Developmental acquisition of a neuronal phenotype — population-specific transcription factor cascades

Neuronal differentiation involves the acquisition of neuron-specific morphological, biochemical, and functional properties in a precursor population by specific expression
of neuronal genes. The time schedule of this differentiation process and the different stages on this path, characterized by the expression of distinct sets of neuron-specific genes, are beginning to be understood. Different transcription factors analysed in a number of neuron populations are involved and a pictures begins to unfold how the expression of distinct transcription factors at successive differentiation stages propels this developmental process.

### 3.5.1 Basic helix-loop-helix transcription factors — proneural function and neuronal subtype specification

The genes of the achaete-scute complex in *Drosophila melanogaster*, in particular the achaete and the scute genes, play a decisive role in the development of the fly peripheral nervous system (Ghysen and Dambly-Chaudiere 1988). Loss of function mutations obstruct sensory organ development such that cells normally destined to become neurons adopt epidermal fates. Gain of function mutations resulting in misexpression of achaete or scute lead to formation of sensory organs in ‘false’ positions, so called ‘ectopic’ structures. Due to their early function in singling out sensory organ precursor cells that give rise to sensory neurons, achaete and scute were called proneural genes. Importantly, they are involved in the development of specific types of sensory organs, the external sensory organs. For chordotonal organs or photoreceptors a different proneural gene, atonal, is required (Jarman *et al.* 1993, 1994). Genes in the achaete scute complex as well as atonal code for transcription factors of the basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) family. Information specifying the type of sensory organ generated may reside in the bHLH domain of the protein and involve interactions with other cofactors (Chien *et al.* 1996). Thus, this class of transcription factors plays a crucial role in the very early decisions on the way from a precursor to a neuron and, at the same time, specifies the differentiation path taken.

The demonstration of bHLH transcription factors in vertebrates and their ability to convert non-neuronal to neuronal fate establishes these transcription factors as important regulators of neuronal development throughout the animal kingdom (Lee 1997). As in *Drosophila*, vertebrate bHLH transcription factors confer not only generic but also subtype-specific neuronal properties (Brunet and Ghysen 1999). The diversity of neuronal bHLH proteins in different neuronal subpopulations and the sequence of expression during neuronal differentiation indicate that they are involved in the determination of neuronal precursors and regulate consecutive steps of differentiation. The sensitivity of their expression to lateral inhibition as well as the timing of their expressing during differentiation indicate that only some of these transcription factors qualify as proneural genes. Others are involved in more advanced events during neurogenesis.

In mouse cranial sensory ganglia a cascade of bHLH gene expression including neurogenins 1 and 2, Math3, NeuroD, and Nscl1 is correlated with different steps of development (Fode *et al.* 1998; Ma *et al.* 1998). Since this differentiation cascade and neurogenesis is blocked in neurogenin mutant mice and neurogenins are the first bHLH factors detectable, it is concluded that these bHLH transcription factors
function like *Drosophila* proneural genes. The later expressed bHLH proteins, such as neuro D, may in part be direct transcriptional targets of neurogenins and function during more downstream events of neurogenesis.

In the spinal cord, the bHLH factor olig2 is involved in motoneuron and at a later stage in oligodendrocyte development (Marquardt and Pfaff 2001). Interaction with neurogenin 2 and homeodomain proteins promotes neuronal differentiation and specification of neuron subtype identity (Mizuguchi *et al.* 2001; Novitch *et al.* 2001; Scardigli *et al.* 2001). As shown by gene mutation in mouse and overexpression in chick embryos, neurogenins together with mouse atonal homolog 1 (Math1), may specify neuron subpopulations by mutual cross-inhibitory actions and by regulation of expression of homeodomain proteins such as LIM transcription factors (Gowan *et al.* 2001) as will be discussed below.

In sympathetic ganglia, the bHLH gene Mash1 in mice and Cash1 in chick are expressed early during development (Lo *et al.* 1991; Ernsberger *et al.* 1995; Groves *et al.* 1995). Mutation in mice obstructs generation of sympathetic ganglia (Guillemot *et al.* 1993), which are populated by partially differentiating precursors expressing neurofilament but not the neuronal marker SCG10 (Sommer *et al.* 1995), indicating different requirements for the expression of distinct neuronal properties. At more advanced stages of sympathetic neuron development, the bHLH transcription factors dHAND and eHAND as well as the homeodomain proteins Phox2a and 2b are expressed in sympathetic ganglia and implicated in noradrenergic differentiation (Howard *et al.* 2000; Ernsberger *et al.* 2000). While the role of Phox2 proteins in noradrenergic induction may be direct as discussed below, the precise mechanism of the regulation of noradrenergic target genes by bHLH factors remains to be determined.

In the retina, the possibility of their direct regulation of target gene expression was demonstrated in addition to their importance for neuronal development. In the mouse retina, mutation of both bHLH factors Mash1 and Math3 leads to a complete loss of bipolar cells (Hatakeyama *et al.* 2001). Math5 is required for retina ganglion cell formation (Brown *et al.* 2001). Also in the zebrafish, ATH5 is required for retinal ganglion cell genesis (Kay *et al.* 2001) indicating that the involvement of bHLH factors of this class in eye development is conserved between vertebrate classes. As shown by promoter analysis in the chick embryo, ATH5 may regulate the expression of the β3 nACHR subunit gene which is specifically expressed in retina ganglion cells. The close correlation of β3 and ATH5 expression as well as the activation of expression from a β3 promoter by ATH5 suggest that this bHLH factors may directly regulate expression of transmitter receptor subunits as part of its role in retinal ganglion cell development. As ATH5 is expressed transiently in retinal ganglion cells, the question arises how ganglion cell-specific expression is maintained. Brn3 POU-domain transcription factors, which are also required for retinal development can be induced by chick and mouse ATH5 and may participate in transcriptional regulation in ganglion cells at more advanced stages of development (Liu *et al.* 2001).
3.5.2 LIM domain transcription factors — specifying neuronal subpopulations

In the vertebrate spinal cord, partitioning of motoneuron and interneuron populations is apparent along the antero-posterior and the dorso-ventral axes. In addition to the bHLH transcription factors discussed above, homeobox-containing transcription factors are essential for the specification of progenitor cell identity (Briscoe and Erickson 2001) and development of the differentiated neurons (Jurata et al. 2000).

The segregation of neuronal fates along the dorso-ventral and medio-lateral axes in the vertebrate spinal cord has been correlated with a combinatorial expression of LIM homeodomain proteins (Tanabe and Jessell 1996), the so-called LIM code (Lumsden 1995). In the chick spinal cord, the LIM factors Islet-1, Islet-2, Lim-1 and Lim-3 define subpopulations of motoneurons that segregate into distinct columns and select different axon pathways (Tsuchida et al. 1994). Also in zebrafish, primary motoneurons are characterized by particular LIM factor combinations (Appel et al. 1995). The lack of motor and certain interneuron populations in mice mutant for the LIM factor islet-1 demonstrates the crucial importance of these transcription factors for specific neuron subpopulations (Pfaff et al. 1996).

The homeodomain protein MNR2 is expressed in motoneuron progenitors and transiently in postmitotic motoneurons (Tanabe et al. 1998). Its expression precedes that of LIM3, Islet1 and Islet2. The induction by MNR2 overexpression of the motoneuron-specific LIM factors as well as markers of more advanced stages in motoneuron differentiation such as choline acetyltransferase demonstrates a motoneuron differentiation cascade where different transcription factors act sequentially.

Additional transcription factors such as the Nkx and Pax homeodomain proteins are involved in the patterning of the spinal cord (Briscoe et al. 1999, 2000; Sander et al. 2000). Due to mutual cross-inhibitory regulation, they help to establish sharp boundaries in transcription factor expression domains in the spinal cord (Briscoe and Ericson 2001). They are required for the commitment of progenitors to particular developmental fates and suppress genes involved in the development of neighbouring neuronal subtypes. By this means they help to segregate different neuron populations in the spinal cord. By regulating LIM factor expression, a sequence of homeodomain transcription factors together with bHLH proteins regulates the specification of neuron populations that differ in their location and connectivity. The regulation of the target genes involved in establishing axonal projections remains to be established.

3.5.3 POU domain transcription factors — regulating development and expression of function-specific genes

The family of POU domain transcription factors emerged when structural similarities between a transactivating factor involved in pituitary development and hormone expression in mammals and a protein affecting neuronal development and behaviour in *C. elegans* were observed (Schonemann et al. 1998). It was soon recognized that
POU domain proteins constitute a large protein family which is expressed in the developing brain (He et al. 1989) and plays crucial roles in pituitary and brain development (McEvilly and Rosenfeld 1999). Their action is analysed in greatest detail for Pit-1/GHF-1 and its importance for pituitary-specific gene expression.

Searching for activators of pituitary-specific growth hormone and prolactin expression led to the identification and cloning of Pit-1 also called GHF-1 (Bodner et al. 1988; Ingraham et al. 1988), a POU domain transcription factor required in somatotroph and lactotroph cells of the anterior pituitary. Pit-1 protein is able to bind cell type-specific cis-acting elements in the prolactin and growth hormone genes and to activate expression from the respective promoters (Nelson et al. 1988; Mangalam et al. 1989). The good correlation between the appearance of Pit-1/GHF-1 protein and of growth hormone expression indicates that this transcription factor is responsible for the differentiation of somatotrophic cells and hormone expression (Dollé et al. 1990).

Direct proof of the Pit-1 function \textit{in vivo} comes from dwarf mice which show disruptions of the Pit-1 gene and lack detectable expression of growth hormone and prolactin (Li et al. 1990). The additional loss of TSH expression extends the role of Pit-1 to the development of thyrotroph cells and indicates that additional factors confine prolactin and growth hormone expression to their respective cell types (Simmons et al. 1990).

Interestingly, using a Pit-1/lacZ transgene in Pit-1-defective dwarf mice demonstrates that Pit-1 expression is regulated by distinct enhancers for initial gene activation and subsequent autoregulation (DiMattia et al. 1997). This observation suggests a developmental sequence where distinct transcription factors initiate Pit-1 expression, which in turn initiates hormone production and maintains its own expression. The detection of the paired-like homeodomain transcription factor Prop-1 before the onset of Pit-1 expression and its requirement for Pit-1 gene activation illustrates such a cascade of tissue-specific regulators (Sornson et al. 1996). A range of additional transcription factors from different families are involved in different aspects of pituitary cell development (Dasen and Rosenfeld 1999). These include the LIM homeodomain factors Lhx3 and 4 as well as the Pitx homeodomain factors Pitx1 and 2 during early phases of pituitary development and nuclear hormone receptors involved in pituitary cell type-specific expression of hormone-encoding genes (Dasen and Rosenfeld 2001).

In the nervous system, POU domain proteins of the Brn3 subfamily are required for neuronal development. Targeted mutations in mice show that Brn3b and 3c are essential for differentiation and survival of retinal ganglion cells (Xiang 1998; Gan et al. 1999) and inner ear hair cells (Xiang et al. 1998), respectively. Axonal growth is affected by all Brn3 subfamily members as observed in Brn3a-deficient trigeminal neurons (Eng et al. 2001) or Brn3b and 3c-deficient retinal ganglion cells (Erkman et al. 2000; Wang et al. 2000, 2002). Whether direct regulation by Brn3 transcription factors of the SNAP-25 gene as discussed above and of GAP-43 expression as suggested by microarray analysis of cDNA from wild-type and Brn3b mutant retinas (Mu et al. 2001) are involved remains to be proven. A range of other transcription factors is affected by the
Brn3b mutation (Erkman et al. 2000) and may contribute to the altered expression of target genes and axonal outgrowth disruption.

3.5.4 Conclusions
The results from different parts of vertebrate and invertebrate nervous systems provide a first impression of transcription factor cascades involved in neuronal differentiation and specification. A general theme is the early role of bHLH proteins which may exert proneural functions and are involved in the specification of developing neurons. Cascades of bHLH proteins found in vertebrate neurogenesis indicate the diversification of their function along different stages during neurogenesis. A crucial role for the differentiation of the diverse neuronal lineages can be attributed to transcription factors of distinct homeobox protein families. There is currently no unifying concept for the relative roles played by the different homeobox factor families during differentiation of the diverse neuronal lineages.

A classical example for the combinatorial action of different homeobox transcription factors is the specification of neuron lineages in the nematode *C. elegans*. The POU domain protein unc-86 and the LIM domain protein mec-3, both homeobox-containing transcription factors, are necessary for development of distinct neurons (Finney et al. 1988; Way and Chalfie 1989). The sequential expression of unc-86 before mec-3 suggest hierarchical actions in the touch neuron differentiation cascade (Duggan et al. 1998). Their action must not be strictly sequential, however. unc-86/mec-3 heterodimers can form and bind to the mec-3 promoter (Xue et al. 1993; Rockelein et al. 2000) as well as presumed target gene promoters (Duggan et al. 1998). This illustrates how sequential activation of transcription factors may propel cell fate determination not only by successive production of distinct transcription factors but also by synergistic action of these transcription factors recruited into hetero-oligomeric complexes.

Direct target genes of the respective transcription factors are known for only a limited number of examples such as Pit-1, Phox2, Ath-5, or unc-86. Moreover, the proof that the transcription factors bind to the presumed promoter target sequences *in vivo* is, in the majority of cases, not existent. Nevertheless, the methods to undertake this analysis are available. By the combination of these approaches with the increasing knowledge of model organism genomes, we can within the foreseeable future expect to have a profound look into the similarities and differences between transcription factor cascades specifying different classes of neurons.

3.6 Organizing neuronal function at the transcriptional level — synexpression groups
Neuronal properties typically depend on the interaction of several proteins. Ion channels may be composed of several subunits, transmitter synthesis may occur along a cascade of enzymes, and transmitter release requires an intricate apparatus composed
of a multitude of proteins which belong to different protein families. Consequently, the coordinate expression of a range of proteins is necessary to enable a neuron to perform specific tasks. To achieve this goal, mechanisms exist to coordinate the expression of neuron-specific genes. Synexpression groups are groups of genes whose protein products are involved in a certain functional context and whose expression is regulated by common mechanisms (Niehrs and Pollet 1999).

3.6.1 Specifying neurotransmitter phenotypes as synexpression groups

Substantial evidence exists to indicate that neurotransmitter phenotypes are regulated as synexpression groups. The neurotransmitter phenotype is a term that describes the ability of a neuron to synthesize, store, and release a certain neurotransmitter. Neurons using glutamate as transmitter are called glutamatergic to indicate their phenotype; those which use GABA are referred to as GABA-ergic; cholinergic neurons use acetylcholine, dopaminergic neurons dopamine, noradrenergic neurons noradrenaline, and so forth. For transmitter synthesis they employ specific enzymes, and for the loading of the transmitter or its precursor into vesicles they use specific vesicular transport proteins. In addition, specific plasma membrane transporters may be expressed for reuptake of transmitter or breakdown products. Evidence has been obtained that the synthesizing enzymes and transport proteins for a certain transmitter can be expressed in coordinate manner, thus qualifying them as synexpression groups.

Coordinated transcriptional regulation has been observed for glutamic acid decarboxylase and the vesicular GABA transporter in *C. elegans* GABA-ergic neurons (Eastman *et al.* 1999). The homeodomain protein unc-30, which upon ectopic expression can induce a GABA-ergic phenotype (Jin *et al.* 1994), sequence-specifically binds to the promoters of both genes. Mutation in the unc-30 binding sites abolishes expression of reporter genes with promoters of glutamic acid decarboxylase and of the vesicular GABA transporter.

The ETS domain transcription factor Pet-1 colocalizes with serotonergic neurons in the mouse brain (Hendricks *et al.* 1999). Conserved Pet-binding sites are present in genes coding for tryptophan hydroxylase, aromatic L-amino acid decarboxylase, serotonin transporter, and 5HT-1a receptor, and are capable of supporting transcriptional activation through interaction with the Pet-1 ETS domain.

A particular interesting example is the cholinergic neurotransmitter phenotype encoded by the cholinergic gene locus (Mallet *et al.* 1998; Eiden 1998). The locus contains the genes coding for the enzyme for acetylcholine biosynthesis, choline acetyltransferase (ChAT), as well as the vesicular acetylcholine transporter (VACHt) gene (Fig. 3.4). The VACHt gene is located in the first intron of the ChAT gene, indicating that the expression of both genes may be driven by the same regulatory mechanism. Indeed, both genes can be coregulated by growth factor-treatment (Misawa *et al.* 1995, Lopez-Coviella *et al.* 2000) and by the common 5′ flanking region including the NRSE/RE1 motif (De Gois *et al.* 2000). Regulatory regions in the locus directing
expression in cholinergic cells have been identified (Lönnerberg et al. 1995, 1996; Naciff et al. 1999) but the transcription factors interacting with these sites remain to be determined.

The close packing of genes into loci such as the cholinergic one constitutes an obvious way to coordinate gene expression in a synexpression group. In the case of the noradrenergic transmitter phenotype, genes encoding two different transmitter synthesizing enzymes may be coordinately regulated (Ernsberger 2000) and, at least in humans, are located on different chromosomes (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov:80/LocusLink). Tyrosine hydroxylase, the rate-limiting enzyme in the noradrenaline biosynthesis
cascade, and dopamine β-hydroxylase, the final enzyme converting dopamine into noradrenaline, become detectable at the same time during sympathetic neuron development (Ernsberger et al. 2000). Coordinate induction by overexpression of the transcription factors Phox2a and 2b (Stanke et al. 1999) and lack of expression after functional inactivation of the Phox2b gene (Pattyn et al. 1999) strongly support the hypothesis that the two enzymes are regulated as a synexpression group in noradrenergic neuron populations. Dopaminergic neurons require TH but not DBH for transmitter synthesis. This indicates that coregulation of TH and DBH expression is not obligatory but depends on the neuron population and the respective transcription factor equipment. This may be mediated by transcription factor binding sites which in part are common and in part distinct between the genes (Fig. 3.4).

3.6.2 Coexpression of ion channel subunits — a question to be addressed

Ligand-gated ion channels such as the acetylcholine receptors or the glutamate receptors are composed of several subunits that contribute to the channel pore. In the case of the voltage-dependent ion channels, the same situation can be found for potassium-specific channels. In the case of voltage-dependent sodium and calcium channels, there is one subunit sufficient for pore formation and additional subunits may affect channel properties such as kinetic behavior. For this reason, the coordinate expression of channel subunits in individual neurons has important impact on the electrical properties of the neuronal plasmamembrane.

In the case of the neuronal AChR subunits alpha 3, alpha 5, and beta 4, the location of the genes in a cluster of 60 kb has been observed in the rat genome (Boulter et al. 1990). As there is extensive overlap of expression in the peripheral nervous system (Yang et al. 1997), this has sparked speculations on a common regulation of these clustered genes. Due to only partial overlap of the expression in the central nervous system, the issue may not have a simple solution. A reporter construct driven by a fragment spanning the region from the alpha 3 promoter to the beta 4 untranslated exon in transgenic mice results in CNS but not PNS expression (Yang et al. 1997). CNS expression is localized to a subset of CNS nuclei that expresses endogenous alpha 3, shows some overlap with beta 4 and none with alpha 5. The precise mechanism by which subunit expression is established in some neuron populations and prevented in others and the role of the clustering of genes therein still needs to be worked out.

3.6.3 Olfactory neurons — establishing neuronal identity by coordinately regulated gene expression

Analysing the regulatory region of a number of proteins specifically expressed in olfactory neurons, such as the olfactory marker protein (OMP) and components of olfactory signal transduction, identified a novel sequence motif binding specifically nuclear proteins present in olfactory neuroepithelium (Kudrycki et al. 1993; Wang et al. 1993). Olf-1, a helix-loop-helix transcription factor expressed exclusively in olfactory neurons
and their precursor cells, binds to this sequence motif (Wang and Reed 1993). In transgenic mice, a 300 bp fragment of the OMP 5’ flanking region containing the Olf-1 binding motif is sufficient for olfactory-specific expression of a reporter gene (Kudrycki et al. 1993). Surprisingly, a mutation that prevents the interaction of Olf-1 with its binding site does not alter the expression pattern of a reporter construct in the olfactory epithelium of transgenic mice (Kudrycki et al. 1998). As the mutated DNA sequence is still able to bind nuclear proteins from nervous tissue, the results are difficult to interpret.

The finding of related genes establishes Olf-1 as the founding member of the Olf-1/EBF-like HLH transcription factor family (Garel et al. 1997; Malgaretti et al. 1997; Wang et al. 1997). The expression of the Olf-1-relatives O/E2 and O/E3 in the olfactory epithelium indicates that there may be functional redundancy in their regulation of transcription (Wang et al. 1997). Their expression in other parts of the nervous system suggests that they may have additional functions in neuronal development.

Olf proteins represent transcription factors which may regulate an entire aspect of function in sensory neurons related to their stimulus transduction cascade. Still, the demonstration of their necessity in vivo is lacking due to technical difficulties. The expression of several family members in the olfactory epithelium and their possible redundant action compromises simple gene inactivation strategies. The mutation of promoter binding sites in transgene approaches is complicated by the creation of new, even more powerful binding sites due to the mutation. Thus, it still remains to be proven that a number of olfactory neuron-specific proteins involved in transduction of the sensory stimulus are regulated as a synexpression group in vivo.

3.7 Specifying neuronal functions at the transcriptional level — the choice amongst the many

The coordinate expression of neuronal genes is one important prerequisite for neuronal function in development and the mature state. As functionally relevant neuronal proteins and their respective genes typically come as families with a choice among two to dozens of homologous family members, another issue turns out to be important: the choice of expression of specific genes in neuronal subpopulations that will shape the precise function of a neuron in a neural network. Be it ion channels determining the kinetic properties of electrical membrane processes, transmitter synthesizing enzymes determining transmitter phenotype, or receptor expression determining the receptive features of a neuron, the specific function of a certain neuron not only rests on the expression of a certain set of genes but also on not expressing other, related genes. The activity of subpopulation-specific transactivating proteins may direct high level expression of defined target genes to specific subpopulations of neurons. Evidence exists that subpopulation-specific repression of neural genes may sharpen neuronal properties.
3.7.1 **Specifying transmitter phenotypes may include transcriptional repression**

In general neurons use either one of the transmitters glutamate, GABA, glycine, acetylcholine, noradrenaline, and some others, even though they may coexpress a range of neuropeptides and other mediators. In sympathetic neurons of birds and mammals, two populations of neurons exist which differ in their transmitter phenotype (Ernsberger and Rohrer 1999). A majority of neurons uses noradrenaline and is called ‘noradrenergic’, whereas a smaller population of neurons uses acetylcholine and is called ‘cholinergic’. During development cholinergic neurons may be derived from noradrenergic ones (Landis 1990), but mature neurons are characterized by the usage of one of the transmitters and by a specific expression of the respective transmitter-synthesizing enzymes.

The analysis of the 5′ flanking regions of the genes for the transmitter-synthesizing enzymes choline acetyltransferase (ChAT) and dopamine β-hydroxylase (DBH) has provided some evidence that, in addition to inducing the ‘right’ enzyme in a neuron population, the expression of the ‘wrong’ enzyme is suppressed. A luciferase reporter driven by several kb of 5′ flanking sequences of the human ChAT gene expresses differently in cholinergic and non-cholinergic cell lines (Li et al. 1993). Elements with silencer activity were characterized which repress promoter activity in an adrenergic cell line to a much higher degree than in cholinergic cell lines. One of the silencer elements contains E-box motifs required for silencing activity (Li et al. 1995). Nuclear proteins from adrenergic cells specifically bind to these E-boxes. Using 2.3 kb of 5′ flanking region of the rat ChAT gene to drive a CAT reporter demonstrates enhancer activity in cholinergic and repressor activity in non-cholinergic cell lines and targets transgene expression to cholinergic gene sites (Lönnerberg et al. 1995). The activity of a RE1/NRSE motif does not discriminate between cholinergic and non-cholinergic neuronal cells but silences activity in non-neuronal cells (Lönnerberg et al. 1996). A different part of the flanking sequences demonstrates cholinergic-specific enhancer activity and is inactive in non-cholinergic neuronal and in non-neuronal cells. These data demonstrate that there is an interaction of positive and negative regulating elements which enhance ChAT expression in cholinergic cells and represses its expression in non-cholinergic and specifically adrenergic cells. They also suggest that the RE1/NRSE may not be involved in this aspect of neuron subpopulation-specific silencing.

Analysis of 5′ flanking sequences of the DBH gene in transgenic mice complements this picture (Hoyle et al. 1994). Comparing reporter gene expression driven by 5′ flanking fragments of different length shows expression in noradrenergic and to different degrees in non-noradrenergic neuron populations. The comparison of a 1.1 and 1.5 kb fragment indicates the presence of sequences that may be responsible for the repression of expression in three sites which normally do not express DBH.

These studies illustrate the possible interaction of population-specific activation and silencing of gene expression. The proteins involved in this antagonistic regulation still
have to be determined. The Phox2 transcription factors are implicated in noradrenergic induction (Ernsberger 2000). One has to bear in mind, however, that they are also expressed in other autonomic neurons (Ernsberger et al. 2000) and may induce the expression of both noradrenergic and cholinergic properties (Stanke et al. 1999).

### 3.7.2 Specifying receptive properties in sensory cells — locus control regions

Red–green color vision is based on different visual pigments encoded by an array of genes on the human X chromosome (Neitz and Neitz 1995). Individual photoreceptor cells express typically one gene. Analysis of the DNA sequences upstream of the visual pigment genes provides evidence that a locus control region is involved in the decision as to which of the genes from the cluster to express.

5′ flanking regions of visual pigment genes fused to a lacZ reporter direct expression to cone cells in transgenic mouse retina (Wang et al. 1992). A 600 bp fragment 5′ to the human red pigment gene is essential for expression and contains sequences highly conserved between vertebrate species. In an exciting set of experiments, a minimal human X chromosome visual pigment gene array was constructed, where the red and green pigment gene transcription units were replaced, respectively, by alkaline phosphatase and β-galactosidase reporters (Wang et al. 1999). In transgenic mice, the two enzymes were in the large majority of cases expressed in different cones. More than 70% of the expressing cones showed either one or the other enzyme activity. 30% expressed both activities. A fascinating aspect of this result is that the mutually exclusive expression of the two transgenes in different cones is achieved in a dichromat mammal.

An even more demanding task is the control of odorant receptor gene expression, where some thousand receptor encoding genes are expressed in unique patterns in the sensory neurons of the olfactory epithelium (Buck and Axel 1991; Buck 1992). The receptor genes are clustered across the genome (Ben-Arie et al. 1994; Sullivan et al. 1996) and expressed in a specific mode that has been hypothesized to occur via stochastic selection (Ressler et al. 1993). Comparing sequences surrounding the β-globin locus in mice and humans shows a high degree of conservation (Bulger et al. 1999). Surprisingly, the β-globin loci turned out to be embedded within an array of odorant receptor genes, suggesting a role of the β-globin locus control region in control of these odorant receptors. Deletion of the endogenous β-globin locus control region in mice did, however, not result in altered expression of neighbouring olfactory receptor genes (Bulger et al. 2000).

### 3.7.3 Conclusions

The hierarchical action of transcription factors in cascades during the rapid progression from neuronal precursors to immature neurons leads to the expression of a number of neuron-specific genes which in a large number of cases may be restricted to distinct neuronal subpopulations. A least in part, the expression of these genes may occur in a
coordinate manner as synexpression groups. To sharpen the functional profile of a developing neuron, the induction of a certain set of genes may go along with the repression of others resulting in a mature phenotype or gene expression profile that distinguishes a certain neuronal subpopulation from others. Growth factors are involved in these induction processes. Neuronal activity may also shape gene expression profiles and contribute to plasticity in the mature nervous system.

3.8 Regulation of gene expression by growth factors — a path from development to plasticity

The alteration of gene expression by growth factors is an important way to regulate neuronal properties during development as well as in the mature organism. During development a multitude of growth factors is involved in different aspects of differentiation. The gene regulatory action of growth factors may be mediated by activation of transcription factors located in the cytoplasm as observed for the STAT (Bromberg and Chen 2001; Ihle 2001) and SMAD (Itoh et al. 2000; Massague and Wotton 2000) transcription factors after binding of neurokine and TGF\(\beta\) family growth factors, respectively. In such cases receptor binding of the growth factors leads to direct phosphorylation of the respective transcription factors and sequestration of the activated transcription factor to the nucleus to elicit alterations in gene expression. Alternatively, the growth factor signal may be transduced by cytoplasmic signalling pathways which regulate the activity of protein kinases and only indirectly, via this protein kinases, the activity of nuclear transcription factors. The neurotrophin signalling pathway acts by this second mechanism to affect gene expression in the context of neuronal differentiation, survival, and plasticity.

Already twenty years ago, the importance of neurotrophin NGF (nerve growth factor)-induced changes in gene expression for neurite outgrowth in the phaeochromocytoma cell line PC12 was recognized (Greene et al. 1982). NGF induces large numbers of genes in PC12 cells which can be grouped into immediate early genes (IEG) regulated within minutes and late response genes (LRG) regulated within hours (Bonni and Greenberg 1997). The IEGs include transcription factors such as c-fos and c-jun (Greenberg et al. 1985; Sheng and Greenberg 1990). NGF induction of c-fos in PC12 cells has been shown to be independent of new protein synthesis (Greenberg et al. 1986) and mediated by phosphorylation of transcription factors binding to c-fos promoter elements. Deletion analysis of the c-fos promoter in PC12 cells demonstrates the role of the serum response element (SRE) in the induction process (Sheng et al. 1988). In addition, the cAMP response element (CRE) in the c-fos promoter is required for NGF induction and NGF-induced phosphorylation of the CRE binding protein CREB at Ser-133 stimulates its ability to enhance transcription (Ginty et al. 1994). CRE and SRE binding factors interact to stimulate transcription (Bonni et al. 1995).

CREB, a stimulus-induced transcription factor (Shaywitz and Greenberg 1999), together with CREM and ATF-1 proteins forms a subfamily of leucine zipper-containing
proteins. By means of the leucine zipper they may dimerize and, with the help of a basic domain, bind to DNA and regulate gene expression. These structural domains characterize them as members of the bZIP superfamily of transcriptional regulators where they are more distantly related to c-fos, c-jun, C/EBP and others. CREB proteins are particularly interesting in the context of neuronal gene expression as they mediate responses to growth factors and electrical activity and play a critical role in learning processes (Silva et al. 1998, and also Chapter 14).

For c-fos induction by the neurotrophin BDNF (brain-derived neurotrophic factor) in cortical neurons, the SRE is largely dispensable (Finkbeiner et al. 1997). BDNF activates CREB by calcium influx and CaMKIV as well as the Ras/ERK pathway to induce transcription through the CREB binding site (see also Chapter 10). Inhibition of the Ras/ERK pathway attenuates the survival promoting action of BDNF on granule cells in culture (Bonni et al. 1999). Importantly, CREB mutant overexpression blocks the survival effect whereas constitutively active CREB supports survival in the absence of the growth factor. Similarly, NGF-dependent survival of sympathetic neurons in vitro is blocked by CREB mutants, for example those that prevent phosphorylation at Ser-133 (Riccio et al. 1999). Again, a constitutively active CREB supports survival after NGF withdrawal. Important progress is made by the characterization of the pro-survival factor bcl-2 as neurotrophin target gene that is regulated by a CREB-dependent mechanism (Riccio et al. 1999).

The importance of CREB in activity and calcium-dependent gene regulation (see below, and also Chapter 10) as well as in growth factor-mediated survival and differentiation provokes the question to which extent the genes regulated in these diverse conditions overlap and what mechanisms may exist to select different groups of target genes. Important hints come from the bcl-2 and the BDNF gene itself which are both targets of CREB regulation (Shieh and Ghosh 1999; Finkbeiner 2000). In both cases, upstream regulating elements binding yet unknown transcription factors are important in addition to the CRE. The characterization of these upstream binding factors and their stage and cell type-specific expression may shed light on the issue of target gene selectivity. In addition selectivity may be achieved within a given cell via recruitment of different signalling pathways and different transcriptional coregulators. Neurotrophins applied to either distal axons or the region surrounding the neuronal cell body may recruit different kinases for intracellular signal transduction (Watson et al. 2001) potentially leading to the expression of diverging sets of target genes by specific phosphorylation of distinct transcription factors.

3.9 Ca$^{2+}$-dependent regulation of neural gene expression

After neuronal precursors go through a range of differentiation steps characterized by the expression of transcription factor cascades and the successive acquisition of neuronal properties regulated by different classes of growth factors, cells reach a quasistable condition, the mature neuronal state. This state is characterized by the cell’s final
position and connectivity as well as the expression of a certain set of neuron-specific genes whose protein products contribute to the neuron’s functional properties. An essential feature of nervous tissue is that during this mature state, cellular properties and consequently network properties can be modified within certain limits to adjust to altering physiological conditions. The posttranslational modification of proteins plays a crucial role in this process, in particular on rapid timescales in the range of seconds to minutes. Adaptive alterations in the range of hours to weeks require transcriptional regulation of gene expression (Chapter 14).

Already more than 15 years ago, activation of ion channels was demonstrated to rapidly affect gene expression (Morgan and Curran 1986; Greenberg et al. 1986). Ca\(^{2+}\) permeation through ion channels plays a crucial role in this process and voltage-gated calcium channels (Murphy et al. 1991) or NMDA receptors (Lerea et al. 1992; Bading et al. 1993, 1995) are the most prominent but not exclusive channel types involved. Activity-mediated calcium influx leads to a rapid and transient transcription of immediate early genes such as c-fos, c-jun, and others (Greenberg et al. 1986; Bading et al. 1995) which does not depend on previous transcription or protein synthesis. Their gene products are transcription factors themselves which in the case of c-jun and c-fos may bind to AP1 motifs in downstream target genes to affect transcription.

The Ca\(^{2+}\) responsiveness is most thoroughly mapped in the c-fos gene (Finkbeiner and Greenberg 1998). Expression in transgenic mice of c-fos/lacZ fusion genes with mutations in distinct regulatory sequences of the c-fos gene such as the CRE, SRE, and AP-1 site demonstrates the requirement of multiple elements for full stimulus-induced activation (Robertson et al. 1995). Different signaling cascades can mediate the calcium control of expression from the c-fos promoter (Johnson et al. 1997) and may be specifically recruited by Ca\(^{2+}\) influx through NMDA receptors and L-type calcium channels (Bading et al. 1993). Interestingly, elevations in cytoplasmic and in nuclear calcium levels may act via different binding motifs, the SRE and CRE, respectively (Hardingham et al. 1997, and also Chapter 10). Blockade of nuclear but not cytoplasmic Ca\(^{2+}\) increase in the pituitary AtT20 cell line by microinjection of a non-diffusible calcium chelator demonstrates that increases in nuclear calcium concentration control calcium-activated gene expression mediated by the CRE motif.

Sustained phosphorylation of CRE-binding protein CREB is essential for regulation of c-fos expression in hippocampal and striatal neurons (Bito et al. 1996; Liu and Graybiel et al. 1996). Phosphorylated CREB interacts specifically with the nuclear protein CBP (Chriivia et al. 1993), which has intrinsic histone acetyltransferase activity (Bannister and Kouzarides 1996). In addition, CBP may associate with RNA polymerase II which recruits the polymerase to CREB in a phospho-Ser133-dependent manner as shown with nuclear extracts from Hela cells (Kee et al. 1996). Importantly, CREB phosphorylation and CREB-mediated transcription can be uncoupled by nuclear Ca\(^{2+}\) buffering or blockade of calcium/calmodulin-dependent protein kinases (CaMKs) (Chawla et al. 1998). This observation led to a 2-step model of transcriptional regulation by calcium-mediated CREB activation. The first step comprises the
phosphorylation of CREB at Ser-133 and the recruitment of CBP. CBP recruitment may be differently controlled by Ca\textsuperscript{2+} influx through NMDA receptors and L-type calcium channels (Hardingham et al. 1999). The second step required for CREB-mediated transcription includes the additional activation of CBP by CaMKs.

Calcium-dependent nuclear CREB phosphorylation in hippocampal neurons can be induced by synaptic stimuli including those that alter synaptic strength (Deisseroth et al. 1996; Hardingham et al. 2001). The signal is initiated by a highly local rise of calcium concentration near the cell membrane and leads to the activation of CaMKIV (Bito et al. 1996). A cytoplasmic signaling pathway acting through ERK/RSK2 and a nuclear signaling pathway are involved. Initially, import of calcium/calmodulin has been proposed to deliver the nuclear signal (Deisseroth et al. 1998) whereas recent experiments with hippocampal neurons demonstrate that Ca\textsuperscript{2+} release from internal stores without protein import into the nucleus may be sufficient to mediate nuclear CREB phosphorylation (Hardingham et al. 2001). The kinetically distinct signaling pathways in combination with protein phosphatase action are considered to convey information about stimulus patterns to the nucleus (Wu et al. 2001). The stimulation frequency-coding of cytoplasmic Ca\textsuperscript{2+} signals is converted in the nucleus to amplitude-coded signals which result in transcriptional responses (Hardingham et al. 2001).

Ca\textsuperscript{2+} signaling to the nucleus enables the transcription apparatus to regulate neuronal gene expression as a function of the neuronal activity pattern. Electrical stimulation of hippocampal afferents results in the expression of different immediate early genes depending on the stimulation pattern (Worley et al. 1993). Electrical stimulation of mouse dorsal root ganglion neurons shows the importance of temporal dynamics on the degree of stimulation of c-fos expression (Fields et al. 1997). In addition, expression of cell adhesion molecules such as N-cadherin, NCAM, and L1 in cultured dorsal root ganglion neurons can be differentially regulated by distinct action potential patterns (Itoh et al. 1997).

In conclusion, the sensitivity of the gene regulatory response to changing activation patterns provides neurons with the ability to integrate the spatial and temporal aspects of synaptic activation at the level of gene expression. The degree of complexity of this regulation process still remains to be uncovered. This is nicely illustrated by the characterization of calcium-responsive elements (CaREs) different from CRE in the BDNF gene and the cloning of a new transcription factor binding to CaREs, CaRF (Tao et al. 2002). The fact that CaRF shows no apparent homology to known proteins as well as the interaction between the CaRF-binding CaRF and the CRE suggest that even more transcriptional regulators and elements involved in stimulus-mediated gene expression may be uncovered.

### 3.10 Transcriptional regulation of learning processes

A remarkable feature of nervous tissue is the storage of information induced by neural activity and synaptic plasticity is considered to be the fundamental underlying
mechanism (Milner et al. 1998). Stimulation-induced long-lasting alterations in neuronal connectivity require RNA and protein synthesis as shown for sensitization and facilitation in Aplysia or long-term potentiation in mammals (Bailey et al. 1996). Key molecular players in this process have been recognised during the last decade even though the targets of the regulatory process may have to be determined in more detail.

The requirement for new protein synthesis in long-term memory formation is known since several decades (Davis and Squire 1984) and points to the importance of new gene expression in long-lasting learning processes. Comparison of learning processes in vertebrates and invertebrates strongly suggests that conserved gene regulatory mechanisms are involved (Kandel 2001). In particular CREB plays a central role in the formation of long-term memory in Aplysia, Drosophila, and mice (Yin and Tully 1996). More recent studies indicate that the bZIP transcription factor C/EBP is involved downstream of CREB in invertebrate and vertebrate learning cascades.

Sensitization, classical conditioning, and habituation in the marine snail Aplysia result from changes in the strength of synaptic connections between sensory and motor neurons (Kandel 2001). Experiments with cultured neurons, where long-term changes in synaptic connectivity may be induced by repeated puffs of the transmitter serotonin (Montarolo et al. 1986), show that the number of sensory neuron varicosities changes (Bailey et al. 1992) and that these processes depend on RNA and protein synthesis. The blockade of long-term facilitation by injection of DNA fragments containing CRE motifs (Dash et al. 1990) as well as the initiation of long-term memory processes by injection of phosphorylated CREB protein (Bartsch et al. 1998) suggests that binding of phosphorylated CREB to CRE motifs in target genes is a crucial step in these invertebrate learning processes. Interestingly, different CREB protein isoforms may affect learning processes differently (Bartsch et al. 1998). Downstream of CREB, C/EBP transcription factors may be essentially involved in learning as disruption of C/EBP function blocks long-term synaptic facilitation (Alberini et al. 1994). These observations seem to be of general importance as this cascade of transcription factors also seems to work in vertebrate long-term memory formation.

In vertebrates a number of different learning protocols are available for experimentation (Stork and Welzl 1999) and the regulation of immediate early gene expression such as c-fos is known from different brain regions studied in different species under different learning regimes (Tischmeyer and Grimm, 1999). In addition, late memory-related gene expression is under investigation with RNA fingerprinting and gene profiling (Cavallaro et al. 1997, 2001). Hippocampus-dependent learning increases CRE-dependent gene expression in CA1 and CA3 of transgenic mice carrying the lacZ gene under control of a promoter with a CRE motif (Impey et al. 1998). This indicates that the alterations in gene expression related to long-term memory may be mediated by CREB transcription factors which is corroborated by learning deficiencies observed in mice with mutation of CREB (Bourtchuladze et al. 1994). Disruption of hippocampal CREB levels by antisense oligonucleotides also may affect learning (Guzowski and McGaugh 1997). As in the learning processes studied in Aplysia, C/EBP transcription
factors play a critical role downstream of CREB in long-term memory consolidation in the mammalian hippocampus (Taubenfeld et al. 2001a, b). Since the immediate induction of CREB and the delayed induction of C/EBP β are temporally discontinuous (Carew and Sutton 2001), the precise relationship between the induction of the two transcription factor families as well as their regulation of downstream target genes remains to be uncovered.

3.11 Perspective

Two decades ago, the number of neuronally expressed genes was estimated to be around 20 000 (Sutcliff et al. 1984). Since that time, a range of transcription factors involved in the regulation of neuronal gene expression have been characterized. They belong to a variety of families with distinct structural domains such as zinc fingers, basic helix-loop-helix domains, homeo domains, leucine zippers and others. These factors control the differentiation of precursor cells into mature neurons along a series of developmental stages which have not been fully characterized yet. The succession of different transcription factors during the differentiation process is being analysed in different neuronal lineages, but no unifying picture is currently available. The progression from an early action of zinc finger proteins during segregation of neuronal and non-neuronal lineages, via bHLH and HD protein function during specification of neuronal subpopulations, to the action of bZIP factors during maturation and plasticity (Fig. 3.5) is not more than a highly simplified working hypothesis. Still, this model emphasizes an important aspect of neuronal gene expression, namely its distinct regulation during development and in the mature state. This is nicely illustrated by the expression of a reporter driven by regulatory sequences of the tyrosine hydroxylase gene in transgenic mice (Trocmé et al. 1998). While the CRE motif in this promoter is dispensable for embryonic expression, no reporter expression is detectable in adult animals when the CRE motif is mutated. An important question to be solved is the molecular characterisation of the transition from embryonic to adult gene expression which may involve alterations in chromatin structure in addition to the expression of different transcription factor combinations.

Even though an increasing number of transcription factors has been shown to act during different periods of neurogenesis, it is fair to say that we do not understand the inner grammar of neuronal gene expression. Already upon induction of general neuronal properties, subpopulation-specific features become apparent (Ernsberger 2001), and it is not yet clear how this is coordinated with the segregation of neuronal and non-neuronal pathways. Likewise, the precise molecular mechanism resulting in the diversification of gene expression patterns characterizing different neuron classes remains to be determined. Comparison of transcription factors and their function in a given neuronal population of different species will demonstrate what is indispensable for the generation of a certain class of neurons. The comparison of different neuron populations will show the prerequisites for diversification. Forced expression of
transcriptional regulators in stem cells or neuronal precursors should provide experimental proof and will be of importance in clinical application.

The complete sequencing of genomes in different species including humans will eventually enable us to paint a full picture of regulators involved in gene expression. Currently, we cannot be sure how many transcription factors in addition to those characterized are involved in the regulation of a certain gene at a certain developmental stage in the cell type under investigation. We also do not know the full account of population-specific gene expression. cDNA arrays will provide a means to screen the expression of large numbers of genes (Luo and Geschwind 2001) and thus may bridge the gap between the molecular and the systems approach in neurosciences (Geschwind 2000). This technique is being applied to developing and adult nervous tissue (Geschwind et al. 2001; Miki et al. 2001; Mody et al. 2001). Its full potential will show when purified population of primary neural cells are analysed and the sensitivity is sufficient to detect gene expression of low abundance. The combination of such

**Fig. 3.5** Transcription factors acting at different stages of neuronal development. Different families of transcription factors are observed to affect gene expression in neurons and their precursors at different developmental stages. Down-regulation of REST/NRSF and tramtrack may clear the path for a progenitor to neuronal differentiation. bHLH and HD proteins may initiate neuronal differentiation proper by regulating the expression of general and subpopulation-specific neuronal properties. During final neuronal maturation as well as for survival and plasticity, CREB and C/EBP are important.
approaches with conditional knockout strategies for transcriptional regulators can be expected to considerably further our understanding of basic principles and population-specific details in neuronal gene expression.

3.12 Acknowledgements

I wish to thank Hilmar Bading (Heidelberg), Jean-Francois Brunet (Marseille), and Gerald Thiel (Homburg) for their critical reading and helpful suggestions on parts of the manuscript.

References


Chapter 4

Protein trafficking in neurons

Christopher N. Connolly

4.1 Introduction

Neurons are the basic cellular units that comprise neural networks that are responsible for information flow in the nervous system. Information transfer between neurons is carried by chemical signals, in the form of neurotransmitters, which are released specifically (from presynaptic sites on a donor neuron) onto discrete postsynaptic sites presenting the appropriate neurotransmitter receptors on the recipient neuron. Information flow through the neuron is conducted electrically to presynaptic neurotransmitter release sites where neurotransmitter is released onto the next neuron in the pathway. However, neurons are not passive electrical cables but integrative units, collating information from multiple sources. Information received may be excitatory or inhibitory and the cumulative response to these inputs is unequivocal, to fire an action potential or to remain silent.

These processing skills require a highly organized cellular structure and consequently, neurons exhibit a remarkably complex phenotype. From a typical neuron, multiple extensions (neurites) emanate from the cell body as either dendrites or axons (Fig. 4.1). Neurons may possess multiple (1–11), relatively short (<2 mm), and highly branched (0–440 branch points) dendrites that are covered in synapses. Dendritic postsynaptic sites are responsible for receiving and processing the vast majority of excitatory inputs, with inhibitory inputs being located on both dendrites and the cell body/axonal initial segment (AIS). A single excitatory input is insufficient to activate a neuron, however, upon multiple 'hits' a significant membrane depolarization is transferred to the proximal region of the axon, where voltage-gated sodium (Nav) channels are stimulated to produce an action potential along a single axon. Unlike dendrites, that capture and collate local information, axons can extend over a metre (e.g. motor neurons) to reach their target and transfer information. In neurons where axons transmit output over such large distances, axons are ensheathed by myelin-rich Schwann cell (PNS) or oligodendrocyte (CNS) membranes. This sheath serves to reduce decay of the electrical output as it travels long distances along the axon. Furthermore, signal amplification sites exist at gaps in the myelin sheath, called nodes of Ranvier, where Nav channels respond to reinforce the signal. The action potential travels to the end of
the axon, terminating in presynaptic neurotransmitter release sites. At these locations, the action potential activates voltage-gated calcium channels (VGCCs), with the subsequent influx of calcium triggering the exocytosis of synaptic vesicles and thus neurotransmitter release (Staple and Catsicas, this volume Chapter 6).
Recent advances in molecular and cell biological technologies have enhanced our knowledge of protein trafficking in neurons. Techniques to isolate and culture many types of primary neurons have permitted long-term (several weeks) studies on neurite outgrowth and neuronal polarity. Although neurons were initially thought to be intractable to transfection, improvements in culture conditions and perseverance in the development of transfection protocols have paid off. It is now possible to culture polarized neurons and express recombinant proteins by a variety of methods including: intranuclear microinjection, DNA biolistics (DNA-gun), viral vectors, and more classical approaches such as calcium phosphate precipitation, electroporation, and liposome-based protocols. Furthermore, with the advent of optical tweezers and green fluorescent protein (and its multi-coloured derivatives) has arrived the opportunity to study protein trafficking in living neurons.

4.2 Regulated transport to the trans-Golgi network

Many ion channels are constructed from a variety of different subunits to form heteromeric quaternary structures. Recombinant expression studies have revealed that partial subunit combinations do not reach the cell surface, but are efficiently retained within the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). This mechanism is shared by metabotropic (e.g. mGluR and GABA_B) receptors and a wide variety of other multimeric proteins. For clarity, I will focus my discussion on the K_ATP channels, and the NMDA and GABA_A receptors. K_ATP channels are constructed by the co-assembly of four Kir 6.1/6.2 subunits with four SUR1/2A/B subunits (Schwappach et al. 2000), with individually expressed subunits being retained in the ER. The efficient assembly of NMDA receptors requires a combination of NR1, NR2A-D, or NR3A-B subunits (Meddows et al. 2001). Receptor assembly is particularly complex for the pentameric GABA_A receptors, which are constructed from a selection of 16 different mammalian isoforms (α1–6, β1–3, γ1–3, δ, ε, π, and θ). Although the total number of possible receptor compositions exceeds one million (16^5), only 20–30 functionally distinct receptor types are thought to be expressed commonly. Although silent phenotypes inevitably exist to direct or regulate receptor function, it is clear that pathways exist to limit receptor diversity. Indeed, an examination of the assembly of GABA_A receptors revealed that assembly occurred by defined pathways, restricting the cell surface expression to certain subunit combinations, with others being retained in the ER (Connolly et al. 1996). The identification of differential assembly signals (Bollan et al. 2003) are beginning to shed light on the basis of GABA_A receptor and K_ATP channel assembly, but do not address the mechanism of efficient ER retention.

During GABA_A receptor assembly, subunits interact with the ER chaperones, Immunoglobulin-binding protein (BiP), and calnexin (Connolly et al. 1996). Interactions with BiP are thought to result from the exposure of hydrophobic domains of incorrectly folded proteins, whereas calnexin shows specificity for glycoproteins containing partially glucose trimmed (monoglycosylated) carbohydrate side chains.
Association with these molecules results in ER retention, by virtue of specific ER retention signals (KDEL) within the chaperone proteins, until folding is complete or the subunits are degraded (Boyd et al. 2002). This quality control mechanism operates within the lumen of the ER and does not monitor the integrity of cytoplasmic domains.

However, although GABA$_A$ receptor $\gamma_2$L is efficiently retained in the ER, $\gamma_2$S (a cytoplasmic splice variant lacking 8 amino acids) can reach the cell surface as a monomeric subunit. Similarly, cytoplasmic splice variants of the NMDA receptor NR1 subunit differ in their ability to reach the cell surface. The ability to reach the cell surface suggests that these subunits are correctly folded and no longer interacting with the ER chaperones. Furthermore, the $\gamma_2$S subunit did not require oligomerization to attain this transport competence. Thus, a mechanism operating cytoplasmically must also control the export of proteins from the ER.

Recent studies have identified the presence of cytoplasmically localized ER retention/export signals in a number of proteins (Ma et al. 2001; Scott et al. 2001; Zerangue et al. 2001; Votsmeier and Gallwitz 2001; Boyd et al. 2003 and references therein). The presence of a three amino acid signal (RxR) present in the cytoplasmic domain of K$_{ATP}$ subunits, was identified as being responsible for the ER retention of Kir6.2 tetramers and SUR1 monomers. The presence of the RxR motif in all eight subunits comprising the K$_{ATP}$ channel, suggests that the subunits may be sequentially masked during assembly. Partial complexes may mask many, but not all, of the ER retention signals and would be efficiently retained in the ER. An RxR motif has also been identified within the C1 cassette of the NR1 subunit. Interestingly, this ER retention signal appears to be regulated by the presence of a PDZ-binding domain and subunit phosphorylation by PKC. In addition, AMPA receptor surface expression is regulated by RNA editing at a single site leading to an amino acid change (Q→R) from the genetically encoded DNA blueprint. This substitution produces an arginine-based ER retention signal that requires masking by its assembly with a different subunit (Greger et al. 2002). Curiously, this arginine residue is bifunctional, rendering the AMPA receptors impermeable to calcium, a critical feature of AMPA receptors required to limit excitotoxicity (Davies and Glencorse, this volume Chapter 8). These findings suggest that ER retention/export may represent a dynamic regulatory process that is not restricted to quality control monitoring, but also controlled by trafficking molecules and second messenger pathways.

The control of ER transport appears to be bidirectional. In addition to the presence of retention/retrieval signals, anterograde signals required for ER export have also been identified, including dileucine, diphenylalanine, and diacidic residues. Furthermore, the observed functioning of Yxx$\Theta$ (retrograde, where $\Theta$ represents any hydrophobic residue) and dileucine (anterograde) signals is reminiscent of signals interacting with clathrin adaptor proteins (involved in endocytosis) and serving as basolateral (MDCK cells) or somatodendritic (neurons) targeting signals (see later). The alternative use of the same signals suggests that signals may function at multiple steps in the targeting of
proteins to subdomains in the plasma membrane. There is no reason why a higher
standard of quality control should be reserved for multimeric proteins. Monomeric
proteins might be regulated in a similar way by intramolecular interactions.

The exact mechanism of ER retention may involve an interaction with an ER matrix,
failure to be recruited for transport, or retrieval from the cis Golgi. Coatamer proteins
(COPs) are involved in the selection of cargo for anterograde (COPII) and retrograde
(COPI) transport steps between organelles. That COPI binds to ER retention signals
(RK, KK but not RxR) (Zerangue et al. 2001) and COPII binds to ER forward signals
(DxE and FF) (Votsmeier and Gallwitz 2001) favours active bidirectional transport to
maintain proteins within the ER. That RxR signals do not appear to bind to individual
components of COPI suggests a different mode of interaction or a distinct mechanism
may be responsible for ER retention via this signal. Such a mechanism might involve
direct interactions between RxR signals in associated subunits, as observed for the
EGHRG motif in asialoglycoprotein receptor. Alternatively, RxR signals may interact
with other trafficking proteins responsible for recruitment into COPI-independent
vesicles for retrograde transport to the ER. In the studies discussed above, mutation of
ER retention signals leads to cell surface expression, implying that there is no require-
ment for transport signals through the Golgi. On the other hand, active export signals
have been shown to be required for the trafficking of Kir channels beyond the Golgi
(Stockklausner and Klocker 2003) suggesting the presence of ubiquitously expressed
Golgi export signals. Similarly, the mutation of an ER retention signal (RK) in the
nicotinic acetylcholine receptor α subunit releases the subunit from ER retention, only
to be captured within the Golgi. Although Golgi localization signals exist to retain
resident proteins, they have not been reported to act transiently in the transport of
cargo proteins to the cell surface.

4.3 Morphology

In polarized neurons, axons and dendrites perform different functions. These differ-
ences are reflected in their distinct molecular compositions and organization. Early
studies on the polarized trafficking of neuronal proteins were performed using polar-
ized epithelial cells as a model system. In epithelial cells, the two distinct membrane
domains (apical and basolateral) are physically isolated by tight junctions that prevent
the intermixing of proteins and lipids in the exoplasmic leaflet. Neurons do not exhibit
an obvious physical barrier, despite the fact that they exhibit a polarized distinction
between their somatodendritic and axonal membranes (Jareb and Banker 1998;
Winckler et al. 1999). Indeed, when the artificial lipid Dil is incorporated into neuronal
membranes, it does not encounter a diffusion barrier between the somatodendritic
and axonal membranes.

To investigate the mechanism segregating somatodendritic and axonal proteins
investigators concentrated on the region separating these two domains. As somatoden-
dritic proteins such as GluR1 were found to access the proximal region of the axon,
from which axonal L1 was excluded, it was concluded that any diffusion barrier must exist beyond the AIS (Winckler et al. 1999). These investigators used optical (laser) tweezers to apply antibody-coupled beads to axonal processes in order to study the lateral mobility of proteins of interest. Beads were positioned on axonal processes, allowed to bind, and physically dragged using the optical tweezers to determine tractability (and therefore mobility). Beads located on distal regions of axons (or dendrites) were freely mobile and could be dragged, on average, 3.7 µm. In contrast, beads located proximal to the AIS could be dragged only, on average, 0.3 µm. Interestingly, even GPI-anchored proteins that are exclusively within the exoplasmic leaflet appear to be restricted within the AIS, suggesting that the barrier can penetrate both leaflets to restrict proteins, but not lipids (Winckler et al. 1999).

Exogenous expression of neuron–glia adhesion molecule (NgCAM) in neurons infected with recombinant adenovirus revealed that both immobility in the diffusion barrier and NgCAM polarity required the existence of the actin cytoskeleton. An hypothesis of the physical tethering of proteins within the diffusion barrier was supported by their insolubility (non-ionic detergents) within this region, relative to other membrane or neurons with their actin cytoskeleton disrupted (Winckler et al. 1999). The specialized cytoskeletal structure formed between actin–spectrin–ankyrin at the diffusion barrier directly anchors membrane proteins such as Nav channels. Furthermore, the high concentration of proteins may itself induce a crowding effect to further reduce protein diffusion.

Beyond the AIS/diffusion barrier stretches the isolated axon (Fig. 4.1). In the myelinated axon, subdomains exist at the nodes of Ranvier, where Nav channels are clustered. Closely apposed (~5 µm) to these regions, separated by paranodes, are the juxtaparanodal regions at which voltage-gated potassium channels are clustered (Rasband and Trimmer 2001). At presynaptic terminals, synaptic vesicles and a complex exocytotic machinery, triggered by VGCCs (modulated by neurotransmitter receptors) exists.

Although the cell soma and the dendrites are thought to be continuous, they do not represent a single functional unit. On the contrary, this compartment is studded with multiple inhibitory and excitatory postsynaptic subcompartments. Inhibitory synapses found on the soma, AIS, and dendritic shafts are termed symmetrical synapses, as the electron density on both membranes (pre and post) in electron-micrographs are similar. Excitatory synapses are formed on dendritic spines of varying morphology and are called asymmetric due to their conspicuous postsynaptic density at the postsynaptic membrane. Glutamate (AMPA and NMDA) receptors are localized to excitatory synapses via PDZ-binding domains, found at receptor subunit carboxy-termini, interacting with a variety of PDZ proteins that comprise the postsynaptic density. The construction of inhibitory synapses is much less understood, particularly for GABA_A receptors in the CNS. Candidate molecules for the clustering of GABA_A receptors include: rapsyn, dystrophin, GABARAP, and gephyrin. It is at postsynaptic structures that the greatest potential for diversity exists, with distinct neurotransmitter receptors and activity-related proteins maintaining a dynamic profile. The detailed composition
and organization of postsynaptic structures is discussed by Cattabeni in Chapter 7 of this volume.

4.4 Development of polarity

The process of neurite outgrowth during development defines neuronal shape, polarity, and the formation of synaptic connections to other neurons or target tissue. Materials required (proteins and membrane) are derived from the trans-Golgi network and delivered along microtubule tracks. In keeping with membrane transport in other cell types, both vesicular and target SNAREs and Rab proteins are required for neurite outgrowth. However, the identity of the individual components of these transport proteins is unknown (reviewed by Tang 2001).

Studies on the development of neuronal polarity have been limited due to the low level of polarized endogenous marker proteins. To circumvent this problem, Silverman et al. (2001) utilized replication-defective viruses (herpes simplex virus [HSV] and adenovirus [Adv]) to recombinantly express exogenous proteins as dendritic (transferrin receptor: TfR, and low-density lipoprotein receptor: LDLR) and axonal NgCAM markers. Using these molecular tools, the authors established multiple distinct developmental stages. Developmental stage 2 is initiated as multiple non-polarized (expressing both dendritic and axonal markers) neurites extend from the neuronal cell body. Neurons cultured in vitro undergo a remarkable intrinsic programme in which multiple, apparently identical, neurites compete to become the cell’s single axon (Fukata et al. 2002; Banker 2003). At stage 3 of development (12–36 h), recombinantly expressed dendritic and axonal markers were correctly localized to the appropriate neurites. Developmental stage 4 occurred over the next few days, with the emergence of dendritic spines and the formation of functional synapses between days 5–16 (Ziv and Garner 2001).

4.4.1 Synapse formation

Previous studies have implicated a role of dendritic filopodia in synapse formation, possibly by probing the extracellular environment in search of a presynaptic partner. Using biolistic particle-mediated transfer of cDNA constructs into primary neurons, Prange and Murphy (2001) studied the role of green fluorescent protein (GFP)-tagged postsynaptic density protein (PSD-95), a major constituent of the excitatory postsynaptic densities, in synapse formation. To visualize all filopodia and developing spine synapses, the authors microinjected a second fluorescent dye (sulforhodamine) to highlight the entire cytoplasm of a transfected (GFP-labelled) neuron. Using 2-channel confocal microscopy, it was discovered that filopodia are highly motile and continually extend and retract. In the absence of GFP-PSD-95 expression, filopodia were relatively short-lived ($t_{1/2} \approx 1$ h). In contrast, filopodia expressing GFP-PSD-95 appeared stable (>$2.5$ h), with no evidence of extension or retraction. Interestingly, GFP-PSD-95 appeared to be translocated to filopodia as preassembled clusters, rather than
accumulating gradually. PSD-95 is central to the formation of the excitatory postsynaptic scaffold/signaling complex (Cattabeni, this volume Chapter 7) but cannot cluster when expressed alone (Imamura et al. 2002). Therefore, it is feasible that the observed PSD-95 clusters might represent preassembled, or partly so, postsynaptic densities. Within 45 min, the presence of AMPA and NMDA receptors can be found postsynaptically.

At the presynaptic site, the use of GFP-tagged synaptobrevin (a synaptic vesicle protein) has demonstrated that clusters of synaptic vesicles accumulate at new synapses and are capable of activity-induced exocytosis (and subsequent endocytic retrieval) within one hour of cell–cell contact. Indeed, it appears that several components of the presynaptic active zone may be preassembled and transported to presynaptic terminals within 80 nm dense-core vesicles (Zhai et al. 2001). If neuroligin were preassembled with PSD-95 within postsynaptic filopodia and neurexins preassembled with the presynaptic active zones, it might be possible for the two modular units to be rapidly slotted together like lego bricks, via neuroligin–neurexin interactions, to form immature synapses to which AMPA and NMDA receptors could be recruited.

4.4.2 Axonal development

The segregation of ion channels into distinct subcellular domains within the axon occurs early in development and is responsible for a 50-fold increase in action potential velocities (Rasband and Trimmer 2001). Nav channels appear to be excluded from regions of axoglial contact. As these gaps shorten during myelination, Nav channels are compressed into what becomes ultimately, the nodes of Ranvier. Once the mature myelinated axon is formed, new Nav channels are targeted directly to the nodes of Ranvier. The mechanism of Nav clustering and maintenance is unknown, beyond the requirement for cell–cell contact between the axon and glia, and a possible involvement of an ezrin–radixin–moesin protein complex present on the microvilli of myelinating Schwann cells (Girault and Peles 2002). However, once established, Nav channels become independent and are stable in demyelinated axons, suggesting some form of direct receptor anchoring occurs, possibly via Ankyrin G within the axon. In contrast, juxtaparanodal Kv channels in the PNS appear to cluster initially within nodes prior to lateral diffusion to their final destination. In demyelinated axons juxtaparanodal Kv channels diffuse rapidly, suggesting a requirement for axoglial junctions in maintaining Kv channel localization. In the CNS, Kv channels appear to be directly targeted to the juxtaparanode, despite the fact that the Kv isoforms are identical to those in the PNS. These observations implicate the myelinating glia (PNS: Schwann cells; CNS: oligodendrocytes) as playing a pivotal role in the clustering of Kv channels.

4.5 Polarity in mature neurons

Preliminary studies (using the targeting of viral proteins in neurons infected with vesicular stomatitis virus or influenza virus) on the polarity of neurons determined that MDCK cells and neurons share common pathways for sorting. In support of this
comparison, studies using replication-defective viruses (HSV and Adv) determined that TFR, LDLR, and pIGR (all transported to the basolateral domain of MDCK cells) were all targeted to the somatodendritic compartment in neurons (Jareb and Banker 1998; Silverman 2001). Furthermore, mutation of the basolateral targeting signals (Yxx\(\theta\) or NPxY) in these proteins, led to a non-polarized distribution in neurons. In addition, after transport to the basolateral/somatodendritic domain, pIGR was transcytosed to the apical/axonal domain, suggesting that transcytotic routes are also conserved between the two cell types. However, clear differences appeared despite this apparent conservation. In MDCK cells, the removal of basolateral signals results in apical localization, whereas a non-polarized distribution occurs in neurons, suggesting that the signals may be conserved but the mechanisms may differ.

To examine axonal targeting, three representative apical proteins were studied, HA, CD8\(\alpha\), and P75/NGFR. In contrast to the similarities between the two cell types for somatodendritic sorting, all three apical proteins exhibited a non-polarized distribution in neurons. Thus, although polarized epithelial cells have provided an invaluable model for studying neuronal polarity, it is now evident that there is a clear need to focus future studies on neurons. As discussed earlier, recombinantly expressed NgCAM is restricted to the axonal membrane. However, if the neurons were permeabilized, intracellular NgCAM localization revealed a non-polarized distribution, suggesting that NgCAM is selectively polarized only at the level of the plasma membrane. In contrast, the intracellular distribution of TFR mirrors that of surface receptors and is restricted to the dendritic cytoplasm. Thus, NgCAM is either excluded from the plasma membrane of the dendrites and cell soma or rapidly removed after insertion.

The polarized distribution of the recombinantly expressed metabotropic receptors, mGluR2 and mGluR7, are similar to the intracellular polarity observed for TFR and NgCAM. The mGluR2 is restricted to the somatodendritic compartment, whereas mGluR7 is non-polarized (Stowell and Craig 1999). Like the TFR, the mGluR2 may fail to access the axon, due to the lack of an appropriate targeting signal or the presence of an exclusion signal. The expression of a truncation mutant of mGluR2 revealed that the recombinant mGluR2 could now access the axonal plasma membrane in 65% of neurons, supporting the removal of an axonal exclusion signal. Although the presence of an axonal exclusion signal could explain the distinct localization of mGluR2 and mGluR7, it cannot result in the specific axonal targeting of molecules such as NgCAM, which are not excluded from dendrites. Curiously, the recombinant expression of a similarly truncated mGluR7 construct in neurons resulted in access to the axonal plasma membrane in only 8% of neurons. This striking observation supports the existence of an axonal targeting signal within the carboxy-terminus of mGluR7. Furthermore, when this region was fused to telencephalin to produce a chimaeric hybrid protein, the chimaera was observed in the axonal plasma membranes of 77% of neurons (0.7% for wild-type telencephalin). Thus the axonal targeting signal residing in mGluR7 appears to be both necessary and sufficient for axonal targeting. When
this region was added to the mGluR2, the axonal targeting signal dominated over the exclusion signal. However, the targeting of truncated mGluRs were not identical, as expected for the absence of both targeting and exclusion signals, suggesting that other targeting/exclusion signals may function as cryptic (that may not normally function) targeting signals.

Just as similarities and differences exist in the polarized transport of proteins between epithelial cells and neurons (Jareb and Banker 1998), the same appears to be true between different neuronal cell types as well as within an individual neuron, depending on previous activity (Agno et al. 2000). For example, the recombinant expression of mGluR5 in striatal or cerebellar granule neurons (CGNs) revealed that mGluR5 was restricted to the cell soma of CGNs, but was dendritically localized within striatal neurons. As these neurons expressed different homer proteins (mGluR-interacting proteins known to regulate ER-retention and cell surface delivery), it was hypothesized that the lack of homer 1 expression in CGNs might explain the failure to export mGluR5 from the cell soma. Consistent with this hypothesis, when homer 1b was transfected into CGNs it could be detected in dendrites. Furthermore, when co-transfected with mGluR5, both proteins were detected in dendrites, but not axons. Interestingly, when homer 1a (absent from both striatal and CGNs) was transfected into CGNs, it was found to gain access to both axons and dendrites. Upon co-transfection with mGluR5, both molecules could be detected in axons and dendrites. Similar results were observed for homer 1c in cortical neurons, which caused an increase in the dendritic trafficking of GluR1a. Homer 1a is an immediate early gene product, whose expression is induced after intense depolarization of neurons (including CGNs) and may deliver mGluRs to dendrites and axons during high-level neuronal activity, as occurs during convulsive seizures and the induction of long-term potentiation (LTP) (see Chapters 14 and 15). Homer proteins do not appear to be essential, as endogenous mGluR1a is dendritically expressed in CGNs, despite the lack of these proteins.

Two of the greatest advances in the study of neuronal trafficking must be the discovery of GFP and the ability to transfect neurons. When used together, it is possible to follow neuronal trafficking pathways, in real time, in living neurons. Apart from the breathtaking video images generated of protein trafficking within neurons (for example see: http://www.neuron.org/cgi/content/full/26/2/465/DC1), significant scientific advances are being made. In the study of Burack et al. (2000), TIR-GFP and NgCAM were observed to traffic within discrete organelles. These organelles are highly pleomorphic and dynamic, ranging from small vesicles to long (>1 µm) tubules. Movement for both proteins occurred bi-directionally in dendrites (TIR and NgCAM) and axons (NgCAM).

The trafficking of transport vesicles in both dendrites and axons was inhibited by >80% following treatment with the microtubule-disrupting agent, nocodazole, suggesting that transport occurs along microtubule tracks in both types of neurite. Microtubule tracks in dendrites exist in both orientations, with their plus and minus
ends facing away from the cell body. In contrast, microtubules in axons exhibit a uniform polarity, with their plus ends facing away from the cell body (Fig. 4.2). If carrier vesicles containing dendritic proteins, such as TfR, exclusively associate with minus end-directed microtubule motors (e.g. dynein) then they would be excluded from axons, yet be capable of bi-directional transport in dendrites. Conversely, axonal vesicles, containing molecules such as NgCAM, could associate with plus end-directed motors (e.g. kinesins), gaining them bi-directional access to dendrites, but only unidirectional (anterograde) access to axons. Although this could explain the polarized distribution of proteins discussed above, it is not consistent with the real time studies identifying bi-directional trafficking of both dendritic and axonal transport organelles.

When the chimaeric molecules, amyloid precursor protein (APP)-YFP and synaptoophysin (p38)-GFP, were recombinantly expressed in hippocampal neurons in culture and their transport along axons investigated by two-colour video microscopy, it was found that these proteins were segregated prior to transport along axons (Kaether 2000). In doubly transfected neurons, APP-YFP and p38-GFP exhibited mutually exclusive distributions. APP-YFP was transported rapidly (~4.5 \( \mu \text{mS}^{-1} \)) within elongated tubules up to 10 \( \mu \text{m} \) in length. In contrast, p38-GFP was restricted to slow (~1 \( \mu \text{mS}^{-1} \)) tubulovesicular carriers. The use of antisense oligonucleotides to block the translation of Kinesin mRNA, resulted in a disruption of APP-YFP carriers but did

**Fig. 4.2** Transport into dendrites and axons occurs along microtubules. Microtubules in dendrites are oriented in both directions, whereas the microtubules in axons are all polarized with their plus end distal to the cell body. Vesicles carrying cargo into dendrites are excluded from axons, but axonally targeted vesicles are transported into both axons and dendrites. Thus, dendritic versus axonal sorting may occur early in the biosynthetic pathway, with axonal targeting being achieved by a retention mechanism or the failure of vesicle to fuse with dendritic plasma membrane. Dendritic targeting may be achieved by exclusion from the axon.
not affect p38-GFP transport. Thus, other microtubule motors may be involved in some of these transport pathways, particularly within the axon (Diaz-Nido and Avila, this volume, Chapter 15).

4.6 Polarity signals

4.6.1 Dendrites

Basolateral targeting signals present in Tfr, pIgR, and LDLR (Yxx\(\theta\) or NPxY) have been shown to be required for the dendritic localization of these receptors in neurons (Jareb and Banker 1998). Paradoxically, a Yxx\(\theta\) motif has also been implicated in the sorting of a neuronal form of the cell adhesion molecule L1 to axonal growth cones and the NPxY for the axonal localization of Megalin. Furthermore, these basolateral targeting signals are similar, and sometimes identical, to endocytosis motifs that are responsible for the recruitment of proteins into clathrin-coated vesicles. Interestingly, another endocytosis/ER export signal, a dileucine motif, has been implicated in the basolateral/somatodendritic targeting of a glycine transporter as well as the axonal localization of Nav1.2. The similarity between sorting signals operating at diverse locations (ER, TGN, endosomes, and plasma membrane) appears incongruous with the requirement for specificity. Thus, either other proximal (or distal?) residues may be required to provide specificity, or these common motifs are required to access a common sorting compartment from which other unidentified signals may operate, failure to do so might result in non-selective transport by default. Alternatively, these signals may operate within different environments, such as secondary sorting sites.

Protein recruitment within the TGN is driven by their direct interaction with the \(\mu_1\) subunit of the AP1 clathrin adaptor complex. The role of the AP1 complex in protein targeting is further supported by the observation that most AP1-coated vesicles derived from the TGN fuse with endosomes, where their content may be resorted. Indeed, basolateral vesicles have been observed to arise from clathrin-adaptin-coated structures on endosomal tubules in MDCK cells. The \(\mu_1\) subunit of AP1 has now been directly implicated in the dendritic targeting of odorant receptors in neurons of Caenorhabditis elegans. Distinct isoforms of the \(\mu\) subunit exist, offering the potential for selectivity. However, other unidentified dendritic targeting signals, distinct from tyrosine and dileucine motifs, clearly exist and may function sequentially at multiple sorting sites.

4.6.2 Axons

As for dendrites, there appears to be little consensus on the identity and mechanism of axonal targeting. Cell adhesion molecule L1 requires the presence of a cytoplasmic Yxx\(\theta\) signal (Kamiguchi and Lemmon 1998), Nav1.2 requires a dileucine motif (Rivera et al. 2003) and Megalin requires one of its three NPxY motifs (Takeda et al. 2003) to target to axons, all of which are also required for the somatodendritic targeting of other proteins (Jareb and Banker 1998). Perhaps a resolution to this apparent lack of
specificity, is the environment in which these signals operate. In the axonally localized proteins, perhaps the somatodendritic/endocytic signals function to remove the proteins exclusively from the somatodendritic membrane, leading ultimately to axonal localization. Indeed this appears to be the case for the axonally localized VAMP2 (Sampo et al. 2003).

In contrast to the use of cytoplasmic targeting signals, APP and NgCAM require ectodomain axonal signals which, being on the luminal side of the membrane, cannot associate with soluble cytosolic sorting proteins such as the adaptor complex. An apparent third mechanism for axonal targeting involves the formation of protein–lipid complexes. Both haemagglutinin and Thy1, but not APP, associate with CHAPS-insoluble sphingolipid–cholesterol lipid rafts and become mis-sorted in sphingolipid-depleted cells.

The construction of a synaptobrevin-TfR chimaera revealed that the cytoplasmic domain of synaptobrevin contains an axonal signal capable of transporting the chimaera to presynaptic terminals. The synaptic targeting signal could not be isolated, suggesting that either the signal is dispersed, multiple signals are present, or that the overall conformation of the cytoplasmic domain is necessary. This chimaera was not appropriately targeted to synaptic vesicles, but localized to a presynaptic endosome that could recycle alongside synaptic vesicles, but not intermix. Correct localization of the synaptobrevin-TfR chimaera was achieved upon the deletion of a 10 amino acid region from synaptobrevin. Thus, synaptobrevin must pass at least three sorting tests following exit from the TGN: axonal targeting, synaptic targeting, and synaptic vesicle targeting.

Sorting signals have recently been identified in peripheral membrane proteins (cytosolic proteins associated with membranes)(El-Husseini et al. 2001). This study examined the targeting of two palmitoylated proteins, PSD-95 and growth-associated protein-43 (GAP43). Palmitate is a saturated fatty acid, linked via thioester bonds, to specific cysteine residues and is responsible for membrane association. Both PSD-95 and GAP43 are dually palmitoylated, yet targeted to dendritic synapses or axons, respectively. Differential sorting appears to be specified by the spacing of the two cysteines and the presence of local basic residues and operated, in the case of GAP43, by the incorporation into lipid rafts mediating transport into axons. However, like many axonally localized integral membrane proteins, GAP43 is also transported to dendrites. Although palmitoylation is required for PSD localization to dendritic synapses, it is insufficient by itself. It is possible that unidentified dendritic targeting/axonal exclusion signals require membrane association by palmitoylation in order to function. In contrast to the dendritic localization observed in most neurons of the forebrain, PSD-95 is highly expressed in axons of cerebellar basket cells. The axons of these neurons are unusual in that they lack microtubules. This intriguing anomaly incriminates a role of minus end motors in the axonal exclusion of PSD-95. It is tempting to speculate that in forebrain neurons, dendritic transport vesicles with associated PSD-95 (palmitoylated) that approach the AIS (Fig. 4.1) might be efficiently
captured and put on the first available minus-end motor and driven out along microtubules causing axonal exclusion. The same mechanism would serve to efficiently target the vesicles into dendrites.

4.7 Postsynaptic targeting

4.7.1 mRNA targeting

Until recently, it has been envisaged that protein localization is achieved exclusively by protein trafficking events preceding anchoring mechanisms. However, a completely different strategy, involving the targeted transport of mRNA molecules is gaining popularity (reviewed by Job and Eberwine 2001). A particular attraction of this mechanism is its economical use of cellular components, since one mRNA molecule has the capacity to produce many molecules of the protein product. The indication of localized dendritic translation of mRNA was obtained by electron microscopy by the observation of polysomes at the base of dendritic spines. Individual mRNA species (encoding MAP2, CaMKII, and glycine receptors) were subsequently identified by in situ hybridization.

The full potential for localized translation was realized by the extraction of mRNA from mechanically isolated dendrites using a patch pipette, followed by PCR amplification. Using this methodology, it was determined that, of the 10 000 mRNAs thought to be present in neuronal soma, approximately 400 were estimated to be present in dendrites. More significantly, differential display revealed that all dendrites do not contain the same complement of mRNAs, raising the possibility of differential targeting, or at least, specificity.

To date, mRNAs for structural proteins (e.g. MAP2), enzymes (e.g. CamKII), growth factors (e.g. BDNF), ligand-gated ion channels (e.g. glycine receptors), and transcription factors (e.g. CREB) have been found within dendrites. The significance of mRNA being present within dendrites was enhanced by the immunocytochemical colocalization of proteins involved in the translation process and present within the ER and Golgi, a prerequisite for the assembly and trafficking of integral membrane proteins such as ion channels (Gardiol et al. 1999).

Direct evidence that dendritically localized mRNA are actually translated locally was first obtained via the incorporation of radiolabelled amino acids into isolated dendrites. Synaptoneurosome preparations were used to detect and quantify protein synthesis. Intriguingly, a glutamate-responsive mRNA encoding an RNA-binding protein, FMR1 (Fragile-X mental retardation protein), which can regulate translation from polysomes was detected. Thus, synaptic activity may initiate local protein synthesis, ensuring a supply of required proteins exclusively to the site(s) requiring them.

Definitive proof that dendrites do possess the capacity to translate proteins came from an elegant molecular approach. Dendrites were isolated from neuronal cell bodies and transfected with a recombinantly transcribed mRNA. Consistent with dendritic translation being regulated, expression could only be detected following stimulation with growth factors (e.g. BDNF).
Given the almost infinite number of distinct synapses, it is unlikely that distinct targeting signals could exist for each. Alternatively, dendritically targeted mRNAs could be targeted to all synapses, but translated only at synaptically active sites. Combined with temporally regulated transcription in the nucleus, a simple, yet effective, mechanism for selective targeting could be achieved. As synaptic activity is known to regulate the transcription of certain genes in the nucleus, it is tempting to speculate that a mechanism could exist in which active synapses might specify the proteins that need to be recruited. Support for such an hypothesis has been provided by the discovery of the transcription factor (CREB) mRNA and protein within dendrites. More importantly, the CREB protein could be activated locally by phosphorylation (a requirement for transcription) and was capable of retrograde transport to the cell nucleus. Thus, restricted synaptic activity may initiate the local translation of proteins required within the synapse as well as those required in the nucleus for the transcription of new mRNAs. An exciting possibility is whether certain types of synaptic activity could lead to the transcription of specific genes, i.e. the provision of a shopping list, rather than just requesting ‘food’, for delivery. Of course, what is delivered by such a mechanism is the recipe, in the form of mRNA molecules.

**4.7.2 Protein targeting via lipid rafts**

It is becoming increasingly apparent that the segregation of specific proteins into sphingolipid/cholesterol-containing microdomains is a commonly used sorting mechanism operating within the exocytic and endocytic pathways (reviewed in Ikonen 2001). The role of lipid rafts in organizing the exocytotic machinery has been implicated by their association with SNARE proteins. The association of VAMP2 (a vesicular (v)-SNARE) with lubrol-insoluble lipid domains, such as are found on synaptic vesicles, suggests a role of lipid rafts in targeting. Similarly, the association of syntaxin 1A (a target (t)-SNARE) within a distinct subset of lipid rafts (based on detergent solubility characteristics) suggests that sites of exocytosis may be restricted to discrete subdomains in the plasma membrane. Although VAMP2 and syntaxin 1A are involved in the regulated exocytosis of presynaptic vesicles, syntaxin 1A and SNAP-25 also occur along the axonal plasma membrane, implicating a more general role for lipid rafts in exocytosis. Interestingly, different Kv channel isoforms show distinct localization profiles with respect to lipid rafts, with Kv1.5 in caveolar rafts and Kv2.1 in non-caveolar rafts, while Kv4.2 is not associated with any lipid rafts. Thus, distinct lipid rafts may play a critical role in determining the sites of exocytosis for different cargo proteins. Furthermore, these specialist sites may not be restricted to axonal destinations. AMPA receptors have been found to be equally distributed between lipid rafts and postsynaptic densities and may be recruited by an interaction with raft-associated GRIP, via the AMPA receptor GluR2 subunit. In addition, the α7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor localization and clustering in somatic spines of ciliary neurons requires lipid raft association. The full significance and potential of lipid rafts in protein sorting remains to be established (reviewed in Tsui-Pierchala et al. 2002).
4.7.3 Specific transport proteins and pathways

With the advent of 2-hybrid (yeast, bacterial and mammalian) screening, a molecular approach to the identification and cloning of interacting proteins, has come the identification of numerous clustering, anchoring, signaling, and transporting proteins involved in postsynaptic receptor function. This technology has been particularly fruitful in the identification of participants in the transport of GABA<sub>A</sub> and AMPA receptors to the cell surface (Kittler and Moss 2001; Sheng and Lee 2001; Malinow and Malenka 2002). Equally important has been the development of methods to transfect neurons and the application of GFP chimaeras to the study of trafficking pathways leading to synaptic targeting.

4.7.3.1 GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors

It is known, from transgenic studies, that GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor synaptic targeting at most inhibitory synapses requires both the γ subunit and gephyrin. GABARAP (GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor associated protein) was the first yeast two-hybrid hit for the GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors. GABARAP interacts with the γ<sub>2</sub> subunit of GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors, but is rarely associated with clustered GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors or gephyrin. Instead, GABARAP appears to be concentrated at transport sites on the Golgi, where it interacts with N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive fusion protein (NSF), suggesting a role in GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor trafficking. This is supported by the close structural homology of GABARAP to GATE-16 (Golgi-associated ATP enhancer) a known transport molecule. The crystal structure of GABARAP suggests the ability to bind the γ<sub>2</sub> subunit and tubulin on opposite faces. Thus, GABARAP may select vesicles (possibly even sort the receptors into vesicles) with γ<sub>2</sub>-containing receptors and transport them along microtubules to inhibitory synapses. As GABARAP is not localized to these sites, it presumably hands over the receptors to microtubule-associated gephyrin clusters and returns to the Golgi (reviewed in Kneussel 2002).

Using the large intracellular loop of the α<sub>1</sub> subunit of GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor as bait in a 2-hybrid screen revealed Plic-1 as an interacting protein capable of binding to all α and β subunits, but not γ or δ. Like GABARAP, Plic-1 is found on intracellular membranes and is not found significantly at synapses. Having identified the GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor-binding domain, the authors delivered (using the antennapedia internalization peptide) inhibitory peptide to cells. These experiments revealed a requirement for Plic-1 in the maintenance of GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors at the cell surface. As GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors constitutively recycle in neurons, Plic-1 may be required for recycling to the plasma membrane, or protection from degradation during recycling. Plic-1 is a ubiquitin-like protein and may be a negative regulator of the proteasome. It is not clear if the sole function of Plic-1 is to prevent GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor degradation, thus leaving more receptors capable of recycling back to the cell surface, or if Plic-1 may play a direct role in returning receptors. Plic-1 may also increase receptor number by protecting receptors from ubiquitin-dependent degradation within the ER during assembly. Unlike
GABARAP, Plic-1 would be capable of maintaining both synaptic and extrasynaptic surface GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors.

As mentioned above, multiple sorting stations may exist in neurons, serving to filter and direct proteins to their final destination. In addition to providing specificity, these compartments may also offer the opportunity to regulate the delivery of its cargo to the cell surface. Indeed, the exocytosis of synaptically targeted (γ subunit-containing) GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors appears to be regulated by a mechanism distinct from extrasynaptic (lacking γ subunits) GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors. In recombinant expression systems, both αβ and αβγ receptors constitutively recycle between the cell surface and peripheral endosomes. However, αβγ receptors are subsequently diverted from peripheral early endosomes and routed into a perinuclear (in fibroblasts) late endosomal compartment. Upon PKC stimulation, exocytosis from this late compartment is blocked, leading to a reduction in the surface expression of αβγ, but not αβ receptors. Such a mechanism may provide the basis for the regulation of GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor synaptic targeting (involving GABARAP?) (Kittler and Moss 2001; Kneussel 2002). The presence of a subcellular compartment from which GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors may be recruited rapidly is supported by the findings that insulin (via tyrosine kinase activity) causes the fast (<10 min) translocation of GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors to the cell surface of transfected fibroblasts or synapses in neurons. The speed of surface delivery is consistent with receptor recruitment from an endosome. Thus, kinase activity is capable of modulating the cell surface delivery of GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors by either inhibiting (PKC) or promoting (tyrosine kinase) receptor targeting from endosomes.

4.7.3.2 NMDA receptors

The delivery of NMDA receptors to the plasma membrane is also subject to kinase regulation. In contrast to the findings for GABA<sub>A</sub> receptors, PKC activation was found to promote NMDA receptor targeting to the cell surface. Importantly, endogenous levels of PKC stimulation (via mGluR1 activation) are sufficient to increase surface targeting of NMDA receptors. This targeting can be inhibited by botulinum neurotoxin A and a dominant negative mutation of soluble NSF-associated protein (SNAP-25), implicating the involvement of SNAP-25 dependent exocytosis. This PKC-dependent pathway is conserved in Xenopus oocytes, fibroblasts, and hippocampal neurons. Intriguingly, NMDA receptors are also recruited to the cell surface of Xenopus oocytes in response to insulin treatment, via a SNAP-25 dependent process. It appears that the regulated exocytosis of NMDA receptors may also occur in response to synaptic activity. In the adult (but not neonate; see below) CA1 region of the rat hippocampus, an increase in synaptic strength leads to the rapid surface expression of NMDA receptors by a PKC and tyrosine kinase-dependent mechanism (Grosshans et al. 2001). Given the opposite nature, and distinct localization of GABA<sub>A</sub> and NMDA receptors in the adult, it seems likely that at least two distinct, highly homologous, sub-synaptic endosomal sorting compartments co-exist within neuronal dendrites.
4.7.3.3 AMPA receptors

In neonates, NMDA receptors are relatively fixed components of the postsynaptic densities, whereas AMPA receptors are more loosely associated. Long-term potentiation (LTP) and long-term depression (LTD) are modifications to synaptic strength, expressed as AMPA receptor responsiveness to glutamate, and are currently the best molecular correlate of learning and memory. The modulation of synaptic strength has been perceived traditionally to reflect alterations in neurotransmitter release. However, the modulation of AMPA receptor numbers in postsynaptic membranes might also provide a powerful mechanism to modulate synaptic strength. Indeed, a large body of evidence supporting this hypothesis has emerged over the last three years (reviewed in Sheng and Lee 2001; Malinow and Malenka 2002).

The identification of a postsynaptic compartment from which regulated exocytosis might occur was achieved by loading cells with the membrane dye FM1-43. Prolonged labelling was necessary for the dye to access a compartment from which regulated exocytosis could occur, consistent with its distribution within the TGN/late endosome. The exocytotic release of FM1-43 could be induced by glutamate, electrical stimulation (50Hz), calcium and CaMKII stimulation, conditions necessary for the expression of LTP. In primary hippocampal neurons, this calcium-evoked dendritic exocytosis is only evident after 7 days in culture, unless αCaMKII (absent until day 7) was expressed using recombinant viral constructs. The requirement for postsynaptic membrane fusion was confirmed by the postsynaptic introduction (via a microelectrode) of several agents (N-ethylmaleimide, NSF-SNAP binding inhibitory peptides and botulinum toxin) that block membrane fusion events. In all cases, LTP in the CA1 region of the hippocampus was blocked, confirming the importance of postsynaptic membrane fusion in the expression of LTP at these synapses.

NSF plays a critical role in vesicle fusion with target membranes in both constitutive and regulated exocytosis. NSF is recruited to v-SNARE/t-SNARE/SNAP-25 complexes via soluble NSF-attachment proteins. It was quite unexpected, therefore, when 2-hybrid screening identified a direct interaction between the AMPA receptor GluR2 subunit and NSF. Support for the validity of this interaction was obtained by the perturbation of NSF-GluR2 interactions. The injection of inhibitory peptides (corresponding to NSF-binding site on GluR2) or monoclonal antibodies (against NSF) into postsynaptic hippocampal neurons resulted in a rapid rundown of AMPA receptor currents. Although GluR2 is clearly not a SNARE protein, it is possible that NSF may mediate conformational changes in GluR2 exposing a plasma membrane targeting signal or dissociation from an anchoring protein, such as GRIP, to initiate endocytosis.

An exciting piece of evidence in AMPA receptor trafficking was obtained from stargazer mice. The main cerebellar defect is found in cerebellar granule neurons and is expressed as a complete lack of synaptic AMPA receptors. The protein encoded by the stargazer gene, stargazin, is able to bind both AMPA receptors and PSD-95. Importantly, the lack of surface and synaptic AMPA receptors could be restored by the recombinant.
expression of wild-type stargazin in cultured neurons from these mice. In contrast, when these neurons were transfected with a mutant stargazin lacking the PDZ-binding domain, both the PSD-95 interaction and synaptic clustering were not observed. However, this mutant could still interact with, and deliver, AMPA receptors to the cell surface. This observation led to the discovery of the dual role performed by stargazin; to deliver AMPA receptors to the cell surface (at extrasynaptic sites) and following their subsequent lateral diffusion into the synapse, to hand over its charge to PSD-95 (Schnell et al. 2002).

The possibility of AMPA receptor recruitment as being the site of expression of LTP was spurred on by the identification of silent synapses. At resting membrane potentials, when NMDA receptors are blocked by Mg$^{2+}$, only AMPA receptors respond to glutamate. In the absence of functional AMPA receptors, glutamatergic synapses are therefore silent. The majority of synapses are silent at early stages of development but silent synapses are uncommon in the adult brain. A morphological correlate of silent synapses, using the immunohistochemical localization of GluR1, suggested that silent synapses may lack AMPA receptors.

Conclusive evidence that postsynaptic AMPA receptor recruitment does occur during LTP was provided by an investigation into the trafficking of recombinant GluR1-GFP. GluR1-GFP was introduced into neurons in organotypic hippocampal slice cultures by a Sindbis virus expression system. The distribution of GluR1-GFP was determined directly by GFP fluorescence and surface receptors identified using GFP antibodies in non-permeabilized cells. As for endogenous GluR1, the GluR1-GFP is predominantly intracellular. However, upon brief tetanic stimulation (LTP-inducing), GluR1-GFP is recruited to both silent and active synapses.

In keeping with a role for CaMKII in regulated exocytosis and LTP, when a constitutively active form of CaMKII (tCaMKII-GFP) is expressed in neurons, enhanced synaptic transmission and GluR1-GFP recruitment occurs. GluR1-GFP recruitment required its PDZ-binding domain implying that GluR1 recruitment as well as clustering (Cattabeni, this volume Chapter 7) requires PDZ domain proteins.

The accumulation of recombinantly expressed GluR2 requires an association with NSF, ABP (AMPA receptor-binding protein), and/or GRIP (glutamate receptor interacting protein). In contrast to the findings for GluR1, GluR2-GFP was constitutively expressed at synapses by an activity-independent mechanism. A careful examination of the synaptic targeting of recombinantly expressed GluR1 versus GluR2 revealed that GluR1 is retained intracellularly until recruited to active or silent synapses upon activation, whereas GluR2 receptors appear to be excluded from silent synapses. However, endogenous AMPA receptors are predominantly composed of both GluR1 and GluR2 subunits. The recombinant expression of GluR1/2 receptors revealed a trafficking itinerary indistinguishable from recombinant GluR1 homomeric receptors. New GluR1 or GluR1/2 receptors appear transiently as micropuncta in non-synaptic areas prior to their accumulation at synapses. In contrast, GluR2 appear to be delivered directly, and rapidly, to synapses. The initially non-synaptic targeting of GluR1-containing
receptors may be explained in one of two ways. Firstly, GluR1-containing receptors might diffuse laterally within the plasma membrane (Borgdorff and Choquet 2002) until ‘captured’ by synaptic proteins (Schnell et al. 2002). Alternatively, it is possible that synaptic localization may be achieved by random surface delivery, followed by receptor concentration into clathrin-coated vesicles, transport into a sorting endosome and subsequent targeting to synapses.

By performing these recombinant studies it has been possible to tease apart the relative subunit contributions to endogenous GluR1/2 receptor targeting. The most likely value of these differential targeting mechanisms is that GluR1 might be required for activity-dependent plasticity that recruits new receptors to silent or active synapses. Synaptic potentiation achieved in this way, may be maintained by the constitutive re-delivery of recycling receptors, by virtue of GluR2-dependent interactions. With the development of these molecular biological strategies to the study of LTP, has come the shift in popularity from the expression of LTP being exclusively presynaptic to predominantly postsynaptic. However, the pendulum of opinion may soon return to neutrality, with the discovery of an increased targeting of the presynaptic vesicle-associated protein, synaptophysin, to synapses during LTP (Antonova et al. 2001).

Thus, the enhancement of synaptic strength during LTP may be achieved by either an increase in neurotransmitter release, or a concomitant increase in AMPA receptor numbers, or both. Of course, increasing either of these components would be futile if they are already present in excess. Variability between synapses of different brain regions may account for the discrepancies observed in the relative contributions of presynaptic and postsynaptic components to LTP.

4.8 Postsynaptic removal of receptors

A commonly used strategy for neurons to reduce responsiveness to a particular environmental cue (e.g. ligand) is to remove receptors from the cell surface. There is also evidence that endocytosis of certain G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs) may be a prerequisite for the activation of some signal transduction pathways (Koenig, this volume Chapter 9).

4.8.1 Mechanism and pathways available

Internalization from the plasma membrane typically occurs by the recruitment of adaptor (AP-2) proteins to specific endocytosis signals. These adaptor proteins then recruit clathrin, to instigate membrane invagination and endocytosis. The best characterized endocytosis motifs are the tyrosine-based (YxxΦ and NPxY) and dileucine signals, which recruit μ or β subunits of AP-2 respectively. Specialist adaptors also exist, such as arrestin and ubiquitin. Arrestin binding to GPCRs appears to facilitate receptor internalization by its ability to associate with clathrin and AP-2. The role of ubiquitin in targeting surface receptors to the endocytic pathway is less clear, but may involve the recruitment of AP-2 or clathrin, the release from receptor anchoring or the recruitment
of receptors to sites of endocytosis. Neuronal endocytosis occurs at hot spots throughout the dendritic tree in young neurons. In mature dendrites, endocytosis appears to occur at fixed endocytic zones, including locations close to dendritic spines (excitatory synapses) (Blanpied et al. 2002).

Following internalization, multiple routes are available from the early endosome (Buckley et al. 2000; Kittler and Moss 2001). Receptors may be recycled rapidly to their site of origin in the plasma membrane (Fig. 4.3A) or delivered to a late endosome for sorting (Fig. 4.3B). From the late endosome, receptors may be delivered to the TGN and subsequently recycled to their original location (Fig. 4.3C) or a new location (Fig. 4.3D). The remaining receptors in the late endosome may be delivered to (or the compartment may mature into) lysosomes (Fig. 4.3E).

The endosomal system in hippocampal neurons has been studied by the recombinant expression of a syntaxin 13-GFP chimaera in conjunction with time-lapse microscopy. An extensive tubulovesicular endosomal network exists in both dendrites and axons, and comprises both mobile and stationary components. After
photobleaching of stationary compartments, new delivery of syntaxin 13-GFP was observed, supporting the dynamic intermixing of distinct endosomal elements. Furthermore, endosomal movement was microtubule-dependent, bidirectional, and occurred in a saltatory manner, consistent with the directional transport between stationary endosomes interconnected by microtubule tracks.

4.8.2 Receptor endocytosis

Agonist-dependent downregulation of GABA_A receptors has been observed following prolonged treatment with GABA, benzodiazepines, barbiturates, and neurosteroids (Barnes 1996) and has been associated with LTP_AMPA and a concomitant LTD_GABA. GABA_A receptors constitutively recycle between the cell and the endosomes in both recombinant expression systems and neurons. GABA_A receptors are recruited into endocytic vesicles via a direct interaction of their β and γ subunits with α and β adaptins of the AP2 complex (Kittler and Moss 2001). Following endocytosis, receptors containing the γ2 subunit are diverted from early endosomes to late endosomes.

The identification of specific endocytosis motifs within the GABA_A receptors has been hindered by the existence of multiple putative signals (Yxxθ and dileucine) present in both β and γ subunits. Molecular studies on the NMDA receptor NR2B subunit revealed a significant contribution of a tyrosine-based signal, but not a dileucine motif, to receptor endocytosis. However, mutant receptors were still capable of internalization at 50% of wild-type rates, suggesting the presence of other unidentified endocytosis motifs (Roche et al. 2001).

The modulation of synaptic strength by AMPA receptor recruitment (LTP) has been discussed as a molecular correlate to learning and memory. However, the traffic is not unidirectional, long-term depression (LTD) of synaptic strength can also occur by AMPA receptor endocytosis via clathrin-coated pits (Kittler and Moss 2001; Sheng and Lee 2001; Snyder et al. 2001). As we have seen for GABA_A receptors, cell surface receptor number is a balance between two competing processes, delivery and removal of receptors. Like the GABA_A receptors, AMPA receptors constitutively recycle between the cell surface and endosomes. Thus, LTD could arise by either an increase in AMPA receptor internalization or a decrease in recycling to the surface.

The observation that the perturbation of the NSF-GluR2 interaction causes a receptor rundown that occludes the expression of LTD, suggests that the same receptor pool may be involved in both forms of receptor downregulation. This hypothesis is supported by the observation that in both cases internalized AMPA receptors remain localized at synapses and are potentially available for re-insertion into the synaptic membrane should neuronal activity change. In contrast, AMPA receptors internalized in response to direct activation by AMPA, are not retained locally but transported primarily to the cell soma and degraded in lysosomes (reviewed in Malinow and Malenka 2002).

AMPA receptor downregulation can also be induced by insulin (in contrast to the upregulation of GABA_A and NMDA receptors). Consistent with the conserved use of the endocytic pathways described above, insulin-dependent endocytosis is GluR2-dependent and mutually occlusive with LTD. A potential point of convergence
of these common pathways is the retargeting of internalized receptor to the cell surface. Thus, AMPA receptors endocytose constitutively via the GluR2 subunit, whereupon recycling occurs constitutively by interactions with NSF, PICK1 (protein interacting with C kinase), ABP or GRIP (Hirbec et al. 2003). However, blocking any of these interactions with GluR2 (by PKC phosphorylation during LTD?) blocks receptor recycling in the face of continued endocytosis, leading to a rundown of surface receptors.

Given the bidirectional, activity-dependent modulation of synaptic strength and postsynaptic trafficking, an important question arises, are these mechanisms inversely regulated and controlling the same receptor pool (Fig. 4.4). An important study has correlated LTP, LTD, and the reversal of LTP by LTD (and vice versa) in vivo, with changes in AMPA receptor levels in subsequently purified synaptoneurosomes, confirming that these two inversely related processes can antagonize each other, but not that the same pool of receptors are involved. Intriguingly, the induction of AMPA receptor LTP in CA1 pyramidal cells is coincident with LTD of GABA_A receptor-mediated inhibitory postsynaptic potentials. Although it is not known how this LTD_GABA is expressed (beyond receptor dephosphorylation by calcineurin)(Wang et al. 2003), it is tempting to speculate the existence of a parallel recycling pathway for GABA_A receptors, operating in reverse, in response to the same signals controlling AMPA receptor trafficking.

4.8.3 Lateral diffusion

Although receptor anchoring at synaptic sites is now the central dogma for maintaining synaptic integrity, the interactions between receptors and the postsynaptic scaffold are recognized to be dynamic. The existence of a labile (frequently estimated to be 30–40% of total) population of receptors is observed for both GABA_A and AMPA receptors, highlighting the presence of significant population of unrestrained receptors

**Fig. 4.4** The modulation of synaptic strength by alterations in postsynaptic AMPA receptors. Early in development, the majority of glutamatergic synapses are ‘silent’ at resting membrane potentials. This results from the presence of NMDA but not AMPA receptors in the postsynaptic membrane. Synapses become activated by an NMDA receptor-dependent process, leading to the recruitment of AMPA receptors. Synaptic strength may be increased further, in response to high-frequency activity (Long-term potentiation; LTP), by the further recruitment of AMPA receptors. This process may be reversed by low-frequency activity (Long-term depression; LTD), by the removal of AMPA receptors by endocytosis.
at synapses that may also be capable of lateral diffusion. Despite the potential for receptor diffusion to synaptic membranes as a mechanism for targeting and the potential significance of receptor migration between synapses, little research has focused on this issue.

A recent advance has been made by the use of single particle tracking to follow the lateral movement of glycine receptors expressed in the plasma membrane of transfected fibroblasts (Meier et al. 2001). The authors tracked the mobility of glycine receptors in cells coexpressing the glycine receptor (myc epitope-tagged) clustering molecule, gephyrin (GFP-tagged). The glycine receptors were tracked by labelling with a large (0.5 µm) bead coated with anti-myc antibodies. Receptors were found to alternate between periods of rapid lateral movement and relative immobility when associated with gephyrin-GFP clusters. This highlights the first important point, glycine receptors are not permanently restrained within gephyrin clusters. Secondly, the particles were found to be promiscuous, moving between gephyrin clusters. These findings are likely to represent an underestimate of receptor mobility due to the binding of the bead to multiple receptors, pulling in different directions, and the requirement for only a few receptor-gephyrin interactions to immobilize the bead. Despite these technical limitations, it will be important to perform similar studies on epitope-tagged receptors in neurons. Similar studies on the AMPA receptors have yielded the same pattern of diffusion, with receptors becoming immobilized at synaptic sites as neurons mature (Borgdorff and Choquet 2002), presumably due to their interaction with PSD-95 (Schnell et al. 2002).

4.10 **Future prospects**

It is clear that multiple transport pathways and sorting stations exist within neurons. Understanding how and where distinct sorting compartments are generated and regulated will be an important future challenge. Although this is a daunting prospect, the identity of many proteins that diverge into discrete routes are known. The use of multi-coloured (GFP derivatives) protein chimaeras and fluorescence recovery after photobleaching (FRAP) in real-time studies, combined with the study of particular mutants, will help identify such pathways. Combining these approaches with fluorescent energy transfer (FRET) between CFP and YFP chimaeric proteins will enable the role of specific protein interactions to be determined. Initially, it is expected that such studies will be performed by the transfection of neurons in culture and organotypic slices. Ultimately, these studies may be repeated *in vivo* by the generation of conditional knock-in transgenic mice.

**References**


This page intentionally left blank
5.1 Introduction

Action potentials are the fundamental elements permitting the flow of electrical signals within neurons. The basic phenomena regulating action potential generation and the electrical properties of nerve cells were clarified by the pioneering work of a number of scientists, over several centuries.

Luigi Galvani, a physiologist at the University of Bologna, published the results of his famous experiments with the frog preparation between 1791 and 1797. By performing the first electro-physiological experiments he set the basis of this new science and proposed his ‘animal electricity’ theory. Stimulated by Galvani’s findings, Alessandro Volta, a physicist at the University of Pavia, invented the electrical battery. The electrical and physiological effects stimulated by Volta in tongue, skin, ears, and eyes of human beings and frog preparations, by using his newly developed physical instrument, definitively inaugurated the modern era of neurophysiology (for review, see Piccolino 1997 and 2000).

A century later Julius Bernstein hypothesized the existence of bioelectric potentials in excitable membranes and proposed that the permeability of this structure changes upon stimulation. During the late 1930s the breakthrough experiments of Kenneth Cole and Howard Curtis at Woods Hole (Massachusetts, U.S.A.) confirmed Bernstein’s theory. Indeed, by using squid giant axons they showed that the conductance of the membrane increases during an action potential (Cole and Curtis 1939). Alan Hodgkin and Andrew Huxley at Plymouth (U.K.) surprisingly observed that the membrane potential overshot zero and reversed sign during an impulse. A decade later, Hodgkin and Katz unequivocally demonstrated that the influx of sodium ions dictates the rising phase of an action potential, its overshoot to positive potentials, and its propagation (Hodgkin and Katz 1949). Soon thereafter, by using their newly devised voltage-clamp method, they successfully dissected the sodium and potassium ionic currents of axons and established their voltage-dependency, kinetic properties and role in the generation and propagation of impulses (see Fig. 5.1; Hodgkin and Huxley 1952).

Hodgkin and Huxley inferred the involvement of pore-forming proteins in the generation of electrical signals in neurons. Although, the existence of ‘pores’ was
originally proposed by Ernst Brücke in 1843, single-channel currents were not measured until the 1970s, when Erwin Neher and Bert Sakmann developed the patch-clamp technique (Neher and Sakmann 1976; Hamill et al. 1981). Thanks to these fascinating discoveries we now know that the concerted opening and closing of a number of voltage-dependent sodium, potassium, and calcium channels play key roles in neurotransmission. In particular, they generate and shape up action potentials, modulate the release of neurotransmitters, and control the excitability, electrical properties, and firing pattern of central and peripheral neurons (Hille 2001).

Most of these ion channels have been cloned during the past two decades. The wealth of information resulting from these studies inaugurated an intense period of structural and functional analysis of ion channels. In addition, the detailed elucidation of the relevant genes structure lead to the discovery of mutations that cause a number of inherited ion channel diseases. Recently, this successful era has been crowned by the original description of the crystal structure of the potassium channel KcsA, by X-ray crystallography (Doyle et al. 1998). The pore structure of the KcsA channel from Streptomyces lividans is homologous to voltage-gated channels, which allows important functional correlations to be drawn (MacKinnon et al. 1998).
This chapter aims to provide a concise description of the main structural determinants regulating the function of some voltage-gated Na⁺, K⁺, and Ca²⁺ channels and their fundamental role in cell excitability. However, it does not presume to give a comprehensive review of the large literature related to these topics.

5.2 The voltage sensor of ion channels

Voltage-dependent Na⁺, K⁺, and Ca²⁺ channels are generally closed at the resting membrane potential of nerve cells, which is approximately −60 to −70 mV. However, the transmembrane potential of neurons undergoes continuous changes that are caused by incoming stimuli. In particular, depolarizing inputs trigger the opening of voltage-gated channels, which therefore allow the flow of electrical signals throughout the nervous system. By contrast, membrane repolarization closes these channels and terminates the propagation of the impulse.

Almost 50 years ago, Hodgkin and Huxley hypothesized the presence of a voltage-sensing region within the ion channel protein that detected membrane potential changes. The molecular cloning of voltage-gated Na⁺, K⁺, and Ca²⁺ channels revealed that the fourth transmembrane segment (S4) of these channels is composed of regularly spaced positively charged arginines and lysines (see Fig. 5.2). It appeared evident to investigators that this α-helical structure could be the voltage-sensor hypothesized for such a long time. A molecular model named the ‘sliding helix’ was then proposed, whereby a rotation of the S4 segment upon membrane depolarization would open the channel (Catterall 1986). Subsequent structure–function experiments have confirmed that this segment comprises the main voltage-sensor of these channel types. However, the negatively charged residues located in the S2 and S3 segments of Kv channels also regulate this process (Papazian et al. 1995; Planelles-Cases et al. 1995).

How does the sensor really operate? The overall channel activity is determined by the probability of opening (P₀). The probability of finding a channel in the open conformation increases as the transmembrane potential is depolarized. The voltage sensor regulates this process directly. Thus, the P₀ of a given channel approaches zero at hyperpolarized potential, when the voltage-sensor is in the off position, and it is maximal (P₀ = 0.8 ± 1) at depolarized potentials, when the voltage sensor is in the on position.

The outward translocation of the positive charges associated with the S4 segment or the reorientation of a dipole, generates detectable currents named gating currents that were first predicted by Hodgkin and Huxley (Hodgkin and Huxley 1952). During the early 1970s gating currents were successfully recorded from skeletal muscle and giant axons (Armstrong and Bezanilla 1973; Schneider and Chandler 1973). More recently these tiny and transient currents have been recorded and characterized by using high-resolution techniques such as the patch-clamp and the cut-open oocyte (Taglialatela et al. 1992). These studies also permitted an accurate estimate of the number of gating charges necessary to open a channel (~12–13 e₀; Schoppa et al. 1992; Hirschberg et al. 1995).

SCAM analysis (substituted cysteine accessibility method) provided further evidence on the primary role played by the S4 segment in the gating mechanism. This method
Fig. 5.2  Schematic diagram illustrating the predicted secondary structure of voltage-gated Na⁺, K⁺, and Ca²⁺ channels. A Kv subunit is composed of a voltage-sensing region (S1 through S4) and of a pore region (S5-H5-S6). By contrast, a Kir subunit is composed of just a pore region (S1-H5-S2), which has a similar structure to the homologous region of a Kv subunit. Both the N- and C-termini reside inside the cell. Four subunits form a functional channel. Voltage-gated Na⁺ and Ca²⁺ channels are large molecules made up of four linked domains (I–IV). Nevertheless, the overall membrane topology of each domain is similar to a Kv subunit. The main voltage sensors of all these channel types are labelled S4 and the positive charges depicted point out the arginines and lysines composing this transmembrane domain. The critical residues involved in Naᵥ channel inactivation are labelled IFM (isoleucine–phenylalanine–methionine). The hinged-lid mechanism of Naᵥ channel inactivation appears to be adopted by Caᵥ channels as well. However, the intracellular loop connecting the first and second domain of the latter channel type plays a role in the inactivation process. It has been shown that this loop forms the binding site for the G-protein βγ subunits as well (DeWaard et al. 1997).
allows the detection of the state-dependent labelling of a cysteine residue by methanethiosulfonate (MTS) compounds (Akabas et al. 1992). By artificially introducing a cysteine at a specific location within the S4 segment, investigators were able to show that certain residues could be exposed and therefore labelled only upon depolarization. This result implies that the S4 segment undergoes a conformational rearrangement upon membrane depolarizations (Yang and Horn 1995; Larsson et al. 1996; Yang et al. 1996). More recently, evidence obtained by using fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) and its modified version LRET (lanthanide-based) has shown that the S4 segment undergoes a rotation of approximately 180° upon depolarization (Cha et al. 1999; Glauner et al. 1999; Bezanilla 2000).

This helical twist movement is likely to be transferred, via the S4–S5 linker, to the gates that are pulled apart and open the channel. Consequently, more than ten million ions per second flow under their electrochemical gradients. These lower gates are physically located in the cytoplasmic side of the channel (Armstrong 1966). In particular, the carboxy-terminal portion of the S6 segment contributes to form the K+ channel gates that may be opened as an iris diaphragm and give access to the central cavity (Liu et al. 1997; Yellen 1998; del Camino and Yellen 2001). This overall process is reversed by membrane repolarization that consequently stops the ion flux.

5.3 Voltage-gated sodium channels

The first biochemical identification and molecular cloning studies of sodium channels were reported in the early 1980s (Agnew et al. 1980; Beneski and Catterall 1980; Noda et al. 1984). These studies revealed that the α subunit of a Na+ channel is a large polypeptide (1681–2016 amino acids) composed of four homologous domains (I through IV), each of which contains six transmembrane spanning regions (S1 through S6; Fig. 5.2).

The H5 loops form part of the ion-conducting pore. A specific glutamate residue located within these structures forms the binding site for tetrodotoxin (TTX) and saxitoxin (STX), which block the channel by physically plugging it (Noda et al. 1989). These negatively charged residues also impart ion selectivity. Indeed, it is possible to convert a sodium channel into a calcium channel by increasing the number of negatively charged residues in the pore (Heinemann et al. 1992). Several Na+ channels, however, show resistance to TTX block. This is caused by sequence differences identified in the region preceding the selectivity filter (Backx et al. 1992). Local anaesthetics, antiarrhythmic, and anticonvulsant drugs block Na+ channels as well. But, their binding sites are located on the cytoplasmic side of the pore.

Sodium channels inactivate within 1–2 milliseconds. This process is of pivotal physiological importance as it determines the action potential duration, the termination of the signal, and regulates the refractory period of nerve cells. By using antibodies and site-directed mutagenesis, investigators have demonstrated that the Ile-Phe-Met residues located in the cytoplasmic loop linking the third and fourth domain are the
structural determinants of fast inactivation in sodium channels (Fig. 5.2; Vassilev et al. 1988; Stuhmer et al. 1989a; West et al. 1992). These residues seem to be part of a ‘hinged lid’ domain which occludes the channel after its opening by a swinging movement and by interacting with the carboxy-terminal portion of S6 in the fourth domain and with the S4–S5 linker of domains III and IV (McPhee et al. 1995; Lerche et al. 1997; Smith and Goldin 1997). This mechanism is reminiscent of the inactivation of some allosteric enzymes.

The brain sodium channel is a complex composed of a pore-forming α subunit and two auxiliary subunits: β1 and β2 (Fig. 5.3). The β1 subunit simply associates with the α subunit. By contrast, a disulfide bond anchors the β2 subunit to the α subunit. The β subunits are structurally composed of a large extracellular domain containing immunoglobulin-like folds, a transmembrane spanning segment and a short cytoplasmic carboxy terminus (Isom et al. 1995).

The β1 subunit tunes up the biophysical properties of the resulting channel. In particular, it accelerates the kinetics of fast inactivation of the α subunit, shifts the voltage dependence of inactivation to more hyperpolarized potentials and regulates its functional expression in Xenopus oocytes (Isom et al. 1992). However, the β1 and β3 isoforms may also regulate the sodium channel targeting to nodes of Ranvier (Ratcliffe et al. 2001).

Molecular cloning has identified nine different Na⁺ channel types. They have been classified by using the numerical system Naᵥyₓ wherein the prefix specifies both the permeating ion (Na) and the voltage-dependence of the channel (v). According to this nomenclature originally proposed for Kv channels by George Chandy, the nine members of the voltage-gated sodium channel have been assigned to a single family and have been classified Naᵥ1.1 through Naᵥ1.9 (Goldin et al. 2000). Other sodium-channel related proteins, not yet fully characterized, have been grouped and named Naₓ. Alternative-splicing isoforms of Naᵥ channels have also been described (Naᵥ1.3a, Naᵥ1.3p, etc.) and up to the present four β subunits have been cloned and classified as follows: Naᵥβ1.1, Naᵥβ1.1a, Naᵥβ2.1, and Naᵥβ3.1.

Skeletal muscles and heart express Naᵥ1.4 and Naᵥ1.5 channel types, respectively. The remaining members of the sodium channel family have been generally localized within the central and peripheral nervous system. In particular, the Naᵥ1.6 channel type is highly expressed at the node of Ranvier where it contributes to the saltatory propagation of signals. This localized expression involves interactions with anchoring and scaffolding molecules. Na⁺ channels are held in place by ankyrin G and form a macromolecular complex with cell adhesion molecules as NrCAM, NF186 that may regulate channel localization. Extracellular matrix components, such as tenascins and phosphacan also interact with the extracellular sodium channel domains (Srinivasan et al. 1988, 1998; Zhou et al. 1998).

Recently, the three-dimensional structure of sodium channels has been elucidated at 19 Å resolution (Catterall 2001; Sato et al. 2001). The images, obtained by helium-cooled cryo-electron microscopy, show that the channel is bell-shaped and confirm that the four homologous domains are assembled to form a tetrameric structure.
More interestingly and unexpectedly, the channel possesses several internal cavities that converge to form four extracellular orifices and several intracellular openings (Fig. 5.3). The voltage sensor S4 of each domain appear to reside in four cavities or gating pores that may co-ordinate its function. These observations also suggest that voltage-gated Na⁺, K⁺, and Ca²⁺ channels may have a similar 3D-structure.

5.4 Voltage-gated potassium channels

Voltage-gated potassium channels (Kv) play key roles in neurotransmission and nerve cell physiology. In particular, these ion channels shorten action potential duration, modulate the release of neurotransmitters, and control the excitability, electrical properties, and firing pattern of central and peripheral neurons (Hille 1992).

5.4.1 Molecular characterization of Kv channels

The Jans and their colleagues at the University of California, San Francisco, first cloned Kv channels from the Shaker mutant of Drosophila in 1987 (Tempel et al. 1987). These fruit flies are characterized by a shaking phenotype induced by ether as the relevant K⁺
channel gene is mutated (Kaplan and Trout 1969; Jan et al. 1977; Tanouye and Ferrus 1985). Since then, several other Kv channel genes have been identified from Drosophila melanogaster and vertebrates.

The predicted topology and structural features of a K⁺ channel subunit are similar to a voltage-gated sodium channel domain (Fig. 5.2). Four subunits are assembled, probably in the endoplasmic reticulum and targeted to the plasma membrane to form a functional tetrameric channel.

Cloned Kv channels have been classified in subfamilies based on sequence relatedness by using the abbreviation KvY.x (Gutman and Chandy 1993). According to this standardized nomenclature Shaker-related channels have been classified in the subfamily Kv1.x and each member numbered Kv1.1 through Kv1.9. The same criteria have been used to classify channels related to the subfamilies Shab (Kv2.1 and Kv2.2), Shaw (Kv3.1 to 3.4) and Shal (Kv4.1 to Kv4.3).

Potassium channels are the most diverse class of ion channels. They may exist as homomers, whenever four identical α-subunits are assembled. However, different types of α-subunits may heteropolymerize to form channels with properties that are different from the parental homomeric channels (Isacoff et al. 1990; Ruppersberg et al. 1990). This phenomenon greatly enhances potassium channel diversity. Notable examples are the heteromeric channels Kv1.1/Kv1.2 or Kv1.2/Kv1.4 that have been localized in several structures within the nervous system (Wang et al. 1993, 1994; Sheng et al. 1994; D’Adamo et al. 1999). Heteropolymerization has been reported to occur only among members of the same subfamily of Kv channels (Covarrubias et al. 1991). However, some exceptions have been observed amongst inwardly rectifying potassium channels (Pessia et al. 1996).

It is generally assumed that heteromeric channels are composed of two subunits of each type placed in a tandem order (e.g. A-B-A-B). However, the relative order of subunits within the channel may be different (e.g. A-A-B-B). These types of arrangements give rise to channels with different functional properties, at least in some inwardly rectifying K⁺ channels (Pessia et al. 1996). Thus, subunit position within the tetramer may confer additional functional diversity. Finally, alternative-splicing also increases Kv channel diversity by generating a series of related proteins with distinct properties. The need for such a large number of potassium channels resulting from all these regulatory mechanisms remains unclear.

5.4.2 **Xenopus oocytes as a heterologous expression system for studying cloned ion channels**

*Xenopus laevis* is a fully aquatic amphibian species native to Africa and belonging to the family of Pipidae, which are mistakenly called ‘frogs’. Thousands of oocytes might be collected from the ovaries of a female *Xenopus*. These cells may be as large as 1 mm in diameter and display morphological polarity, consisting of a yellowish vegetal pole and an animal pole, which appears dark due to the presence of pigment vesicles. Such polarity is very evident in mature oocytes (stage IV–VI).
John Gurdon originally showed that mature oocytes are able to faithfully and efficiently translate foreign genetic information. At the beginning of the 1980s, Eric Barnard and colleagues showed that *Xenopus* oocytes express ion channels on their plasma membrane after a microinjection of exogenous mRNAs into their cytoplasm (Sumikawa *et al.* 1981). Therefore, they became a useful tool for molecular neurobiology research and for the heterologous expression of ion channels.

*Xenopus* oocytes have been largely used for the structural and functional analysis of delayed-rectifying potassium channels. For instance, the injection of mRNA encoding for Kv1.1 into these cells normally results in functional channels after several hours of incubation. The potassium currents flowing through these channels can be recorded in *two-electrode voltage-clamp* mode (Fig. 5.4). On the other hand, single channel activity can be recorded by using the *patch-clamp* technique (Fig. 5.5). The biophysical properties of the channel can be determined by properly analysing these recordings.

5.4.3 Potassium selectivity of Kv channels

Molecular cloning facilitated detailed structure–function studies aimed at understanding the role played by each domain within a K⁺ channel subunit.

Yellen and MacKinnon provided compelling evidence showing that the H5 loop contributes to the ion-conducting pore (Yellen *et al.* 1991). Mutagenesis directed to the

---

**Fig. 5.4** Electrophysiological characterization of Kv1.1 channels heterologously expressed in *Xenopus* oocytes. Representative whole-oocyte current recorded in two-electrode *voltage-clamp* configuration showing the time course of activation and deactivation of Kv1.1 channels (left panel). On the top, the voltage protocol used to elicit the delayed-rectifier potassium current is reported. The panel on the right hand side shows the current–voltage relationship of Kv1.1 currents. It is generally obtained by plotting the normalized peak tail currents, recorded at −50 mV, as a function of the pre-pulse potentials. The solid line represents the fit with the Boltzmann function: $I = I_0 / [1 + \exp(-V-V_{1/2})/k]$ from which the half-maximal activation voltage of the channel ($V_{1/2}$) and the steepness of its voltage-dependence (slope factor $k$) are calculated. The inset shows the Kv1.1 tail currents recorded after 500 ms pre-pulses to different potentials.
residues ‘GYG’ in the H5 loop, recognized early on as a potassium channel signature sequence was found to alter the potassium selectivity of the channel, allowing the permeation of other cations (Heginbotham et al. 1992). The crystal structure of KcsA channels confirmed that these residues act as a potassium selectivity filter, and finally demonstrated the biophysical principle regulating potassium selectivity and permeation (Fig. 5.6). Briefly, the hydrated K+ ion located in the inner cavity is dehydrated upon entering the narrow, 12 Å long selectivity filter. At this level a K+ ion is coordinated by eight carbonyl oxygen atoms, which stabilize the ion simulating its hydrated state. The overall process is therefore energetically very favourable. Normally, two potassium ions separated by a water molecule reside within the selectivity filter. The entering of a third K+ ion within this region expels the first one, allowing ion flux (Doyle et al. 1998; Morais-Cabral et al. 2001; Zhou et al. 2001). The permeation of sodium through a K+ channel is seldom permitted, although it has a smaller ionic radius than potassium. The binding of the strongly hydrated Na+ ion

Fig. 5.5 Typical inside-out patch recording from an oocyte expressing the heteromeric channel Kv1.2–1.1. Depolarizing pulses to the indicated voltages evoke single-channel openings (holding potential of −80 mV). The traces are leak subtracted by using averaged sweeps with no opening. On the top, an electrode with an excised inside-out patch containing a single channel and a schematic representation of the Kv1.2–1.1 concatemer is shown. Ten glutamine residues (green rectangles) have been used to link both subunits tandemly (adapted from D’Adamo et al. 1999).
within this structure is predicted to be less well coordinated and therefore its dehydration is energetically unfavourable.

5.4.4 Inactivation mechanisms of $K_v$ channels

The inactivation of delayed-rectifier potassium channels is a physiologically relevant process as it controls the firing properties of neurons and their response to input stimuli (Aldrich et al. 1979).

$K_v$ channels show two principal types of inactivation, namely the N- and C-type. Hodgkin and Huxley first observed the fast $N$-type or $A$-type inactivation that is caused by a 'ball-and-chain' mechanism of pore occlusion. The studies of Richard Aldrich and his colleagues provided the first molecular confirmation of this model that was originally proposed by Clay Armstrong and Francisco Bezanilla in 1977. They were able to show that the occluding ball was indeed formed by the first 20 amino acids located in the N-terminus of $Shaker$ channels (Hoshi et al. 1990; Zagotta et al. 1990). Four inactivating particles have been found in these channels even though only one is sufficient to occlude it. The availability of four particles renders the mechanism of block very effective. Indeed, these channels show a faster time course of inactivation than those that had only one particle.

Fig. 5.6 Cartoon recapitulating the main structural changes linked to $K^+$ ion permeation. The scheme on the left shows a potassium channel in the closed state with the intracellular gates shut. Normally, eight water molecules hydrate the $K^+$ ion present in the central cavity. However, only four water molecules are shown for clarity. The selectivity filter can accommodate four $K^+$ ions. Nevertheless, only two $K^+$ ions are present within this region, separated by a water molecule. The membrane depolarization opens the intracellular gates and the $K^+$ residing in the cavity sheds its hydration water upon entering the selectivity filter (central scheme). The $K^+$ ion at the front is then forced to leave the channel and gets hydrated by extracellular water. This mechanism of conduction is very efficient and energetically favourable as the ions residing within the selectivity filter move concertedly between the positions 1,3 and 2,4. In addition, the selectivity filter undergoes conformational changes that are regulated by the $K^+$ concentration. The scheme on the right shows the non-conducting structure of the selectivity filter. The fluctuation between the non-conducting and the conducting structure (central scheme) may be regarded as the selectivity filter gating which dictates the brief closures observed in single-channel recordings (adapted from Zhou et al. 2001).
Fast inactivation, however, may be conferred to non-inactivating channels by auxiliary subunits as Kvβ1.1 and Kvβ1.2 (see Fig. 5.7; Rettig et al. 1994). The initial 20 amino acids of these subunits have the same chemical characteristics of the Shaker inactivation ball, with the first 10 amino acids being hydrophobic and the following 10 hydrophilic. Four β subunits participate in the ion channel complex. They are bound to a structure called the T1 domain that is formed by approximately 100 amino acid residues located in the N-terminus of the Kv channel α subunit. The crystal structures of both the Shaker channel T1 domain and of the β subunit have also been determined and Fig. 5.8 shows a schematic cartoon of the T1-β subunit complex (Kreusch et al. 1998; Gulbis et al. 1999, 2000).

Recently, MacKinnon and co-workers provided a complete elucidation of the fast N-type inactivation mechanism by using crystallographic data (Zhou et al. 2001). The new model shows that the inactivation particle works its way through one of the four lateral vestibules that provide the access to the central pore. Then, the flexible ball domain reaches its final binding site by sneaking into the central cavity located below the selectivity filter. The blocking process is now complete and the potassium flux then terminates (Fig. 5.8).

Interestingly, sequence analysis showed that the Kvβ subunits have an aldo-keto reductase related core region (McCormack and McCormack 1994). Indeed, X-ray
crystallography has revealed that Kvβ subunits bind nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADP⁺). The relevant biochemical role of these subunits complexed to the channel is currently under investigation.

Some Kv channels are characterized by a slower process of inactivation (e.g. Kv1.1, Kv1.2), which has been named C-type and P-type, depending on the structural determinants at the C-terminus or pore region associated with the process (Fig. 5.9). During intense neuronal activity the C-type inactivation of Kv channels can accumulate, modifying both the firing rate and the shape of the action potential (Aldrich et al. 1979). The molecular mechanism of this process involves conformational modification.

**Fig. 5.8** Schematic diagram illustrating the molecular mechanism of N-type inactivation. The intracellular gates open upon membrane depolarization and the positively charged inactivation particle blocks the channel by entering the central cavity through one of the four windows formed by the T1 domains and the T1-S1 linkers. Four ‘balls and chain’ are provided by the corresponding auxiliary subunits that are anchored to the T1 domains. However, only three of them are visible in the figure, as both the Kv subunit and the β subunit at front have been removed for clarity (adapted from Zhou et al. 2001).

5.4.5 Functional role and modulation of Shaker-like potassium channels

Action potentials propagate rapidly in myelinated axons by saltatory conduction. The velocity of signal propagation is dictated by axon insulation with a myelin sheath resulting from Schwann cells in the PNS and oligodendrocytes in the CNS. The structural organization of a myelinated axon is subdivided into several specialized domains. They include, in order, the node of Ranvier, paranode, juxtaparanode, and internode. A macromolecular membrane complex has been identified in the juxtaparanodal domain that is composed of Kv1.1, Kv1.2 heteromeric channels, their accessory subunit Kvβ1.2 and Caspr2, a contactin-associated protein (paranodin; Wang et al. 1993; Poliak et al. 1999).

Caspr2 is a new member of the neurexin superfamily that associates with the K⁺ channel through a common protein containing a PDZ motif. Indeed, Shaker-like K⁺ channels bind PSD-95, a protein purified from postsynaptic densities that belongs to the family of membrane-associated guanilate kinase (Kim et al. 1995). This protein

![C-type Inactivation](image_url)

**Fig. 5.9** C-type inactivation of Kv channels. The decaying trace shows a typical time course of slow C-type inactivation. The current has been elicited by a depolarizing pulse to +20 mV from a holding potential of −80 mV in an oocyte expressing the heteromeric hKv1.2–1.1 channels. The dashed line represents the zero current level (adapted from D’Adamo et al. 1999).
contains three PDZ, an SH3 and a guanylyl kinase domain. It has been shown that the PDZ-1 and PDZ-2 domains of PSD-95 bind the C-terminus of the Kv channel subunit (Kim et al. 1995). This protein–protein interaction results in Kv channels clustering and determine their subcellular distribution in axons, neuromuscular junction etc. (Kim et al. 1995; Tejedor et al. 1997; Zito et al. 1997). Therefore, Caspr2 and PDZ-containing proteins may promote Kv channels subcellular targeting and clustering at the juxtaparanode where they regulate membrane repolarization, resting potential, and the efficient conduction of impulses (Zhou et al. 1998). Indeed, it has been shown in a heterologous expression system that heteromeric channels composed of hKv1.1 and hKv1.2 subunits may contribute to setting the resting potential of membranes in which this conductance predominates (D’Adamo et al. 1999).

Heteromeric Kv1.1/Kv1.2 channels are expressed at the cerebellar Pinceau, a structure composed of several basket cell terminals, which embrace the Purkinje axon hillock and proximal axon segment (McNamara et al. 1993; Wang et al. 1993, 1994; Laube et al. 1996). Purkinje axons represent the only output system of the cerebellar cortex and the Pinceau may regulate the generation of action potentials at the axon hillock. Patch-clamp recordings from Purkinje cells have revealed that $\alpha$-DTX selectively blocks the Kv1.1 and Kv1.2 potassium channels from basket cell presynaptic terminals, and increases both the amplitude and frequency of spontaneous IPSCs mediated by GABA A receptor activation (Southan and Robertson 1998). These findings suggest that Kv1.1 and Kv1.2 heteromeric channels may contribute to the excitability and the rapid repolarization phase of action potentials in myelinated axons and basket cell terminals, where they modulate the release of the neurotransmitter $\gamma$-aminobutyric acid (GABA) onto Purkinje cells.

The electrical activity of neurons is also tuned up by mechanisms of ion channel modulation. Voltage-gated potassium channels can be dynamically regulated by several events, including neurotransmitter stimulated biochemical cascades mediated by G protein-coupled receptors. A number of receptors have been involved in this process, such as the muscarinic acetylcholine receptor M1, the serotonergic receptor 5-HT2C, the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF) or uncharacterized receptors responding to insulin treatment (Hoger et al. 1991; Lev et al. 1995; Holmes et al. 1996; Bowlby et al. 1997; Fadool et al. 1997; Cachero et al. 1998; Felsch et al. 1998; Imbrici et al. 2000). In particular, the activation of M1 and 5-HT2C receptors causes a suppression of Kv1.1 and Kv1.2 channel activity (Tsai et al. 1999; Imbrici et al. 2000). It has been shown that downstream effectors, such as protein kinase C (PKC), the GTP-binding protein RhoA, the protein tyrosine kinases PYK2 and Src, play an important role in suppressing Kv1.x currents (Peretz et al. 1996; Boland and Jackson 1999; Moran et al. 1991; Cachero et al. 1998; Lev et al. 1995; Holmes et al. 1996). In contrast, RPTP$\alpha$, a receptor protein tyrosine phosphatase highly expressed in the central nervous system, stimulates the activity of Kv1.2 channels. RPTP$\alpha$ physically associates with the intracellular domains of Kv1.2 reducing the tyrosine phosphorylation of the channel (Sap et al. 1990; Tsai et al. 1999).
The phosphorylation of multiple tyrosine residues has been involved in Kv channel modulation. Recently, it has been proposed that the 5-HT$_{2C}$ receptor suppresses hKv1.1 current by phosphorylating the tyrosine 120 and 149 and that this process is coordinated by RPTP$\alpha$ (Imbrici et al. 2000). Interestingly, these residues are located in a region linking the T1 domain to the first transmembrane segment (T1-S1 linker), which therefore may play a role in this phenomenon.

Several gating properties of the Kv channels may undergo modulation. ATP treatment provokes a positive shift of the voltage-dependence of activation of unidentified delayed-rectifier K$^+$ channels from squid giant axons (Augustine and Bezanilla 1990; Perozo et al. 1991a, 1991b). It has been suggested that the incorporated phosphoryl groups may interact electrostatically with the voltage sensor of the channel which therefore requires stronger depolarizations for activation (Perozo and Bezanilla 1990).

The fast N-type inactivation of Shaker-like potassium channels can also be modulated by protein phosphorylation. Several serine residues located within the inactivation particle of Kv3.4 channels may be phosphorylated by protein kinase C. The consequent formation of negatively charged phosphoserines results in structural changes that inhibit inactivation (Covarrubias et al. 1994; Beck et al. 1998; Antz et al. 1999). On the other hand, specific serine residues located in the C-terminus of Shaker-channels need to be phosphorylated by protein kinase A to insure fast N-type inactivation (Drain et al. 1994).

Cysteine oxidation also plays a role in this process. Indeed, the inactivating particle of Kv1.4 channels has a cysteine residue (C13) that may exist in the oxidized or reduced form. Normal time course of N-type inactivation is observed when C13 is in the reduced state. By contrast cysteine oxidation markedly slows the inactivation by promoting the formation of disulfide bridges. Antioxidants as dithiothreitol or glutathione readily revert this effect (Ruppersberg et al. 1991).

All these observations imply that phosphorylation mechanisms or the red-ox state of a neuron may change its electrical and input integration properties by modifying the activity and the inactivation kinetics of certain Kv channels.

### 5.5 Inwardly rectifying potassium channels and cell excitability

Inwardly rectifying potassium (Kir) channels are found in almost every cell type where they play key roles in controlling membrane resting potential, cell excitability and K$^+$ homeostasis (Nichols and Lopatin 1997; Reimann and Ashcroft 1999).

Kir subunits possess two transmembrane domains separated by the signature K$^+$ pore sequence and can assemble as both homotetramers and heterotetramers (Fig. 5.2). Since the initial isolation of Kir1.1 by Steven Hebert and his collaborators (Ho et al. 1993), a large number of clones have been identified which can be divided into seven major subfamilies, Kir1.x–Kir7.x (Doupnik et al. 1995).

Generally, a Kir channel acts as a diode. Therefore, the inward current through these channels is greater at potentials which are more negative than the $E_K$, but at more
positive potentials the outward flow is inhibited and the membrane potential is free to change. The rectifying nature of the conductance is due to a voltage-dependent block of the intracellular side of the pore by cytoplasmic polyamines and Mg\(^{++}\) ions (Matsuda et al. 1987; Lopatin et al. 1994; Lu and MacKinnon 1994; Stanfield et al. 1994).

The gram-positive bacterium *Streptomyces lividans* express KcsA, a Kir channel type highly homologous to *Shaker* channels (Schrempf et al. 1995). By using these bacteria Roderick MacKinnon and colleagues collected enough protein for X-ray crystallographic studies. In 1998 these investigators successfully described the first crystal structure of a potassium channel at 3.2 Å resolution (Doyle et al. 1998). The channel showed a tetrameric structure and a conic shape (see Fig. 5.10). The S1 and S2 segments were \(\alpha\)-helices that delimited a central cavity with a diameter of 10 Å. The 12 Å long selectivity filter was formed by the amino acids GYG, confirming previous findings, and was lined by carbonyl oxygen atoms. This narrow pore structure contained two K\(^+\) ions 7.5 Å apart and possessed an architecture designed for rapid conduction.

**Fig. 5.10** Crystal structure of KcsA channels. The cone-shaped channel possessed a wide central cavity and a narrow external pore that comprise the selectivity filter. The architecture of these channels can serve as a model for the core region of voltage-gated sodium, potassium, and calcium channels. The structural representation shows two side-subunits and was generated by using Protein Data Bank entry 1BL8 and the WebLab™ ViewerLite 3.2 software (from Doyle et al. 1998).
and high selectivity. These results represented a milestone in the field of ion channel biophysics.

Neurotransmitters such as dopamine, opioids, somatostatin, acetylcholine, serotonin, adenosine, GABA exert their inhibitory actions by activating G-protein coupled inward rectifiers. These channels belong to the Kir3.x family and regulate the excitability of the brain and heart. The heart rate slowing upon vagal nerve stimulation represents a notable example. This physiological response is due to vagal release of acetylcholine that by stimulating the atrial muscarinic receptors activate the intracellular heterotrimeric G proteins $\alpha\beta\gamma$. The dissociated $\beta\gamma$ subunits then stimulate heteromeric Kir3.1/Kir3.4 channel activity by physically interacting with their intracellular termini (Krapivinsky et al. 1995; Slesinger et al. 1995). Finally, the activation of these channels results in an outward flux of K$^+$ ions that causes membrane hyperpolarization and cell inhibition.

Receptor-operated Kir3.2 channels also modulate the electrical activity of neurons in the CNS. Indeed, the activation of Kir3.2 channels by D$_2$ and GABA$_B$ receptors hyperpolarize midbrain dopaminergic neurons and inhibit their firing rate (Guatteo et al. 2000). Interestingly, weaver mice dopaminergic neurons are excited by these neurotransmitters (Guatteo et al. 2000). This contrasting effect is due to the weaver mutation G156S located in the pore of Kir3.2 channels (Patil et al. 1995). This point mutation disrupts the potassium selectivity filter of the channel allowing the permeation of sodium and calcium ions (Slesinger et al. 1996; Tucker et al. 1996). The activation of this mixed conductance by D$_2$ and GABA$_B$ receptors, likely accounts for the membrane depolarization, increased firing activity, and degeneration of weaver dopaminergic neurons.

Another important group of inward rectifier potassium channels are the K$_{ATP}$ channels. The secretion of insulin from pancreatic $\beta$-cells is mediated by the closure of these channels caused by increased levels of cytoplasmic ATP. This class of channels has been cloned and assigned to the Kir6.x subfamily (Inagaki et al. 1995). However, a functional K$_{ATP}$ channel is formed of four Kir6.2 subunits and four sulfonylurea receptors, which confer sensitivity to drugs, and to the MgADP stimulatory effects of MgADP (Aguilar-Bryan et al. 1995; Nichols et al. 1996). By contrast, ATP inhibits the channel opening by interacting mainly with the Kir6.2 subunits (Tucker et al. 1997). K$_{ATP}$ channels are also expressed in the heart and brain where they couple the metabolic state of the cell to electrical activity.

5.6 Voltage-gated calcium channels

The activity of voltage-gated calcium channels is normally initiated by depolarizing stimuli of different degrees. The subsequent opening of these channels triggers an influx of Ca$^{++}$ that is driven by a steep electrochemical gradient. As a result, several neurophysiological mechanisms and cellular responses related to Ca$^{++}$-signalling are modulated by this ion, which is an important second messenger. Calcium current may
by itself generate and shape-up action potentials, or it may regulate the release of neurotransmitters, excitation–contraction coupling, the secretion of hormones, and gene expression.

In 1984 Curtis and Catterall first reported the purification of the calcium channel protein and showed that it was associated with some auxiliary subunits (Curtis and Catterall 1984, 1985). A few years later, Numa and his colleagues reported the cloning of the calcium channel α1 subunit (Tanabe et al. 1987). The α1 subunit is a large polypeptide that possesses a secondary structure similar to the Na⁺ channel α subunit and has both a voltage-sensing and pore-forming region (Fig. 5.2).

Voltage-gated calcium channels can be activated by weak or strong depolarizing stimuli. Therefore, they have been subdivided into two main groups named low-threshold and high-threshold Ca⁺⁺ channels, respectively. More detailed electrophysiological studies lead to the characterization of several calcium channel types named: L-, P-, Q-, N-, R-, and T-type, as listed in Table 5.1. However, molecular cloning has identified 10 α1 subunits to date and a new nomenclature was needed to classify them. Recently, an abbreviated form has been proposed for Ca⁺⁺ channels as well (Caᵥ¹y.x), which is based on the general criterion of sequence similarity and numerical system adopted for Kv and Naᵥ channels (Table 5.1; Chandy 1991; Ertel et al. 2000).

The first subfamily (Caᵥ¹1.x) identifies L-type Ca⁺⁺ channels that are characterized by a high-threshold of activation, long-lasting openings and slow inactivation. These channel types are also distinguished by susceptibility to blocking by dihydropyridines, and by protein phosphorylation as their main regulatory mechanism.

The calcium channels that are activated by large depolarizations are normally heterooligomers including auxiliary subunits. This macromolecular complex includes the α1 subunit, a transmembrane spanning γ subunit, an α₂ that is bound to a δ by means of a disulfide bridge and an intracellularly associated β subunit (Fig. 5.11).

Caᵥ¹1.1 channels are mainly expressed in skeletal muscles in which they play a role as voltage-sensors in the mechanism of excitation–contraction coupling. The cytoplasmic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel Type</th>
<th>Former Nomenclature</th>
<th>Voltage-dependence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cav 1.1</td>
<td>α₁S</td>
<td>high-threshold (&gt;−10 mV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 1.2</td>
<td>α₁C</td>
<td>L-type (25pS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 1.3</td>
<td>α₁D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 1.4</td>
<td>α₁F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 2.1</td>
<td>α₁A</td>
<td>P/Q-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 2.2</td>
<td>α₁B</td>
<td>N-type (13pS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 2.3</td>
<td>α₁E</td>
<td>R-type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 3.1</td>
<td>α₁G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 3.2</td>
<td>α₁H</td>
<td>Low-threshold (&gt;−70 mV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cav 3.3</td>
<td>α₁I</td>
<td>T-type (8pS)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
loop between domains II and III of Ca\textsubscript{v}1.1 represents the structural region that functionally couple the $\alpha_1$ subunit at the transverse tubule with the ryanodine-sensitive Ca\textsuperscript{++} release channel at the sarcoplasmic reticulum (Tanabe \textit{et al.} 1990).

In the heart, $\beta$-adrenergic receptors stimulate the activity of Cav1.2 channels, which in turn enhance cardiac contractility and excitability. However, the entry of Ca\textsuperscript{++} ions rapidly inactivates these channels. This calcium-dependent inactivation appears due to the formation of a calcium–calmodulin complex, which triggers a conformational change in the Cav1.2 channel by interacting with its C-terminal domain (Zühlke \textit{et al.} 1999).

Cav1.2 and Cav1.3 channel types are widely expressed in the brain. The excitability and plasticity of hippocampal neurons appear to be particularly regulated by these channels. Indeed, the activation of NMDA receptors in these neurons may cause a proteolytic cleavage of the Ca\textsubscript{v}1.2 C-terminus resulting in channels with an increased probability of opening (Wei \textit{et al.} 1994; Hell \textit{et al.} 1996). Cav1.3 channels also modulate the heart pacemaker activity and have been involved in the proper functioning of the inner hair cells of the organ of Corti (Platzer \textit{et al.} 2000).

The Ca\textsubscript{v}2.x subfamily includes P/Q- N- and R-type calcium channels that are mainly modulated by G proteins. Ca\textsubscript{v}2.1 channels (P/Q-type) are specifically blocked by
ω-Agatoxin IVA from the spider *Agelenopsis aperta*. They are abundantly and broadly expressed throughout the central nervous system where they regulate fast synaptic transmission, nerve cell survival, excitability, gene expression, and plasticity. In particular, they have been localized at the neuromuscular junction, in the brainstem, in the cerebellar Purkinje and granule cells and in most of the presynaptic terminals of the cerebellum (Westenbroek *et al.* 1995; Ludwig *et al.* 1997). At the presynaptic terminal, these channels play a pivotal role in the mechanisms of neurotransmitter release, as they are located within the release site and close to the docked vesicle (Wu *et al.* 1999). Indeed, the calcium-dependent direct interaction of Ca_{v2.1} and Ca_{v2.2} channels with the SNARE protein complex modulates the exocytosis of synaptic vesicles (Bezprozvanny *et al.* 1995). Recently, it has been shown that the P-type and Q-type channels are generated by alternative splicing of the α_{1A} gene (Bourinet *et al.*, 1999). This conclusion is also supported by the absence of P/Q-type currents from Purkinje and cerebellar granule neurons of mice lacking the α_{1A} gene (Jun *et al.* 1999). These animals are characterized by neurological deficits as ataxia, dystonia, and Purkinje cell death.

Ca_{v2.2} channels (N-type) are expressed in the sympathetic nervous system where they play a role in the neurotransmission of signals (Ino *et al.* 2001). The voltage-dependence of these channels is modulated by neurotransmitters via G-protein coupled receptors. Interestingly, the activation of G_{βγ} inhibits Ca_{v2.2} calcium channels (N-type) by reducing the mobility of its voltage-sensor (Jones *et al.* 1997). As a result, the currents show slower time courses of activation and reduced voltage-dependence. This channel type is blocked by ω-Conotoxin GVIA or MVIIA from the shells *Conus geographus* and *Conus magus*, respectively.

The third subfamily (Ca_{v3.x}) identifies the low-threshold T-type Ca^{++} channels, which are characterized by transient kinetics, small single channel conductance and fast inactivation. Low threshold-activated channels are normally formed by the α_{1} subunit alone.

Several auxiliary elements have been identified and assigned to three major categories: Ca_{β}, Ca_{α2δ}, and Ca_{γ} subunits. They play a role in Ca_{v} channel trafficking and modify several biophysical properties of the α_{1} subunit.

Four Ca_{β} subunits have been cloned (Ca_{β1–4}) and some of which give rise to several splice variants. These proteins interact with the linker connecting the first and second domains of the α_{1} subunit (De Waard *et al.* 1994; Pragnell *et al.* 1994). Ca_{β} and Ca_{α2δ} association increases the expression level of the resulting channel and shift its voltage-dependence to more negative potentials. In addition, Ca_{β} plays a major role in calcium channel inactivation (Lacerda *et al.* 1991). In particular, Ca_{β1b} and Ca_{β3} confer rapid inactivation properties to calcium channels. By contrast, Ca_{β2a} markedly slower this process. Lutz Birnbaumer and colleagues showed that the structural differences located in the N-terminal domains of these subunits determine the different inactivation rates of the channel (Olcese *et al.* 1994).

The α_{1} subunit possesses intrinsic voltage-dependent inactivation properties. Recently, Gerald Zamponi and colleagues proposed a model whereby voltage-gated
calcium and sodium channels possess a similar molecular mechanism of inactivation (Stotz et al. 2000). According to this model the I-II linker may function as a ‘hinged-lid’ that occludes the pore by a swinging movement (Fig. 5.2).

5.7 Channelopathies

The involvement of defective ion channels in the pathophysiology of several neurological disorders had been postulated for years. Genetic linkage studies and mutation analysis have now demonstrated that a variety of inherited diseases are indeed ion channel diseases, named also 'channelopathies' (see for review Ashcroft 1999; Lehmann-Horn and Jurkat-Rott 1999).

5.7.1 Episodic ataxia type-1, a Shaker-like K⁺ channel disease

Episodic ataxia type-1 (EA-1) is an autosomal dominant disorder affecting both the central and peripheral nervous systems (VanDyke et al. 1975; Brunt and van Weerden 1990). The hallmark of the disease is continuous myokymia and episodic attacks of spastic contractions of skeletal muscles, which often result in loss of balance. Attacks of ataxia are characterized by incoordination, impaired speech, and by jerking movements of the head, arms, and legs. They may be brought on by fever, startle, vestibulogenic stimulation, emotional stress, exercise, or fatigue. EA-1 affected patients also show constant muscle rippling (myokymia), associated with continuous muscle unit activity.

Genetic linkage studies of several EA-1 affected families led in 1994 to the localization of the disease gene on chromosome 12p13, in a region encoding a voltage-dependent potassium channel (Litt et al. 1994). The subsequent screen of the KCNA1 gene for mutations resulted in the discovery of a number of point mutations in the Shaker-related potassium channel hKv 1.1 (Browne et al. 1994). To date, 18 point mutations have been identified in several affected families (see Fig. 5.12).

The molecular pathophysiology of episodic ataxia type-1 syndrome has been investigated by determining the biophysical properties of wild-type and several mutant channels in Xenopus oocytes or in mammalian cell lines. The EA-1 mutations altered the gating and expression characteristics of the channels, which showed impaired delayed-rectifying function (Adelman et al. 1995; D’Adamo et al. 1998; Zerr et al. 1998a, 1998b; Bretschneider et al. 1999; Eunson et al. 2000; Manganas et al. 2001; Rea et al. 2002). Thus, the overall effect of these genetic mutations is a reduction of the outward flow of potassium ions that may become insufficient to repolarize the membrane potential. Therefore, the neurons expressing mutated hKv1.1 channels might be hyperexcitable and have prolonged action potentials.

EA-1 mutations also alter the function of heteromeric channels composed of Kv1.1 and Kv1.2 subunits, which are expressed in presynaptic basket cell membranes (D’Adamo et al. 1999). Therefore, it has been proposed that an increased excitability of these terminals, which might be in a facilitated state, causes an abnormal release of γ-aminobutyric acid from such terminals onto Purkinje cells, altering the output of the
entire cerebellar cortex to the rest of the brain of EA-1 patients (D’Adamo et al. 1999). These possible pathogenic mechanisms are consistent with behavioural and electrophysiological studies carried out by using Kv1.1-null mice. Indeed, these animals display overt ataxia, which begins during the third to fourth postnatal week, spontaneous seizure, altered axonal action potential conduction in sciatic nerve, and an increased GABAergic inhibition of Purkinje cells (Smart et al. 1998; Zhang et al. 1999).

5.7.2 **Episodic ataxia type-2, a voltage-gated Ca\(^{++}\) channel disease**

Episodic ataxia type-2 (EA-2) is an autosomal dominant neurological disorder characterized by attacks of generalized ataxia accompanied by nausea and vertigo. The attacks, which may last for hours or days, may be brought on by emotional stress and exercise but not by startle. Anxiety, alcohol, and coffee may increase the probability of undergoing an attack. The onset of the disease occurs in childhood, as in EA-1. However, the symptoms that clearly distinguish EA-2 from EA-1 are migraines, interictal nystagmus, and progressive atrophy of the anterior vermis, which causes permanent motor disability. The attacks of EA-2 may be effectively prevented by treatment with acetazolamide.

The locus for EA-2 was mapped to chromosome 19p13 by linkage studies (Kramer et al. 1995; Teh et al. 1995; Von Brederlow et al. 1995). Successively, mutation analysis of EA-2 families revealed two mutations in the CACNL1A4 gene, which encodes for the \(\alpha\)\(_{1A}\)-subunit of P/Q-type Ca\(^{++}\) channels (Ca\(_{2.1}\); Ophoff et al. 1996): a basepair deletion that resulted in a frame-shift and in the formation of a premature stop codon, and a splice-site mutation (Fig. 5.12). Therefore, it is expected that the calcium channel formed would be non-functional (Ophoff et al. 1996, 1998; Fig. 5.13). Although the evidence may predict an altered cerebellar neurotransmission in EA-2 syndrome, the detailed pathophysiological mechanisms of this neurologic disease remain poorly understood (Jen 1999).

Two other neurologic diseases result from mutations in the same CACNL1A4 gene. Spinocerebellar ataxia type-6 (SCA6) is an autosomal dominant disorder characterized...
by ataxia, nystagmus, and cerebellar degeneration. Affected individuals are eventually confined to a wheelchair. The genotypic analysis of a number of SCA6 patients revealed an expansion of CAG repeats in the \textit{CACNL1A4} gene. The resulting Poly-Q repeat is located within the C-terminal region of the Ca\textsubscript{v}2.1 channel (Fig. 5.12; Zhuchenko \textit{et al.} 1997).

Familial hemiplegic migraine (FHM) is also a rare autosomal dominant syndrome of childhood onset. It is characterized by migraines with aura, ictal hemiparesis lasting for hours or days, and by progressive cerebellar atrophy. Some patients report cognitive impairment particularly before attacks. Mutation analysis of FHM patients resulted in the identification of several mutations in the \textit{CACNL1A4} gene (Fig. 5.12; Ophoff \textit{et al.} 1996; Battistini \textit{et al.} 1999; Carrera \textit{et al.} 1999; Ducros \textit{et al.} 1999). Functional studies have shown that point mutations associated with FHM may cause both a gain and loss of Cav2.1 channel function, which make genotype–phenotype correlations hard to draw (Hans \textit{et al.} 1999).

The leaner mouse (Cacna1a \textit{tg}–la) phenotype is characterized by severe ataxia, stiffness, retarded motor activity, neurodegeneration of the cerebellum (loss of Golgi, Purkinje, and granule neurons), and typical intermittent seizures that resemble absence epilepsy. Recently, a splice site mutation has been found in the \textit{CACNL1A} gene of leaner mice resulting in a great decrease of Ca\textsubscript{v}2.1 current density (Fletcher \textit{et al.} 1996; Dove \textit{et al.} 1998; Lorenzon \textit{et al.} 1998). The reduction in calcium currents that results from this genetic mutation appears to be a key determinant of cerebellar neurodegeneration.

A number of neuromuscular channelopathies involving mutated sodium channels have been described. The long QT3 syndrome and febrile seizures have been associated with mutations in the Na\textsubscript{v}1.5 channel and Ca\textsubscript{v}β\textsubscript{1} subunit, respectively (Bennett \textit{et al.} 1995; Wang \textit{et al.} 1995; Wallace \textit{et al.} 1998). Moreover, mutations in the skeletal Na\textsubscript{v} channels result in hyperkalaemic periodic paralysis, paramyotonia congenita, and

\textbf{Ca\textsubscript{v}2.1}

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{fig5_13}
\caption{Genetic mutations identified in the Ca\textsubscript{v}2.1 channel. The diagram shows a Ca\textsubscript{v}2.1 channel and the position of the mutations identified in patients affected by Episodic Ataxia Type-2 (open squares), Spinocerebellar Ataxia Type 6 (SCA6, Poly-Q repeat) and Familial Hemiplegic Migraine (FHM, closed circles). The tottering mouse (diamond) and leaner mouse \textit{tg}la (*) mutations are also shown.}
\end{figure}
potassium-aggravated myotonia (see for review Cannon 1996; Ashcroft 1999; Lehmann-Horn and Jurkat-Rott 1999).

5.8 **Concluding remarks**

The work of biophysicists is shedding a new light on the molecular machinery of channel gating by using higher resolution technologies. The description of the entire structure of a voltage-gated channel, by X-ray crystallography, will be regarded as a milestone in the history of ion channels. However, the elucidation of the atomic structure of the channel in its open and closed conformation will finally provide a fascinating view of this protein in movement. Unfortunately, due to the obvious technical difficulties these results will not be achieved for quite some time.

On the other hand, physiologists and biochemists are refining their tools as well to determine the functional role played by ion channels, their modulation and protein–protein interactions. Mouse strains with inducible genes have been developed by using genetic engineering methodologies. The possibility to *turn on* and *turn off* a specific gene at any time during animal development overcomes many of the problems associated with traditional gene knockout experiments. This animal model will be particularly useful for studying the physiological role played by ion channels and the many gene products of unknown function revealed by the disclosure of the human genome. Jockusch and Schmitt-John (this volume, Chapter 2) present an overview of the use of mouse genetics in studying nervous system function.

The detailed genetic, behavioural, and electrophysiological analysis of mice carrying naturally or artificially occurring mutations in their ion channel genes is currently providing important information on the causes of several human diseases. Many new genes encoding for ion channels have been recently identified; however, their role in channelopathies awaits discovery.

While this chapter was in press a number of landmark papers appeared in the literature related to voltage-gated ion channels. Some of them include the description of the entire structure of the bacterial voltage-gated and inwardly rectifying potassium channels, by X-ray crystallography (Jiang *et al.* 2003a; Kuo *et al.* 2003). MacKinnon and his collaborators also proposed a new model by which the voltage-sensors of the potassium channel KvAP operate. Although controversial, it appears that the S4 segment does not rotate as a sliding helix, but it moves back and forth as a bird’s wing (Jiang *et al.* 2003a,b).

**Acknowledgments**

I thank Armando Lagrutta for critically reading the manuscript. The financial support of Telethon-Italy (Grant no. 1083 and GGP030159), of the MIUR-COFIN 2003 and of COMPAGNIA di San Paolo (Turin) is gratefully acknowledged. I thank Antonella Cusimano, Maria Casamassima, and Maria Cristina D’Adamo for their help in preparing this manuscript and Lucia Simigliani for the art work.
References


Tsai, W., Morielli, A. D., Cachero, T. G., and Peralta, E. G. (1999) Receptor protein tyrosine phosphatase alpha participates in the m1 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor-dependent regulation of Kv1.2 channel activity. EMBO J., 18, 109–18.


This page intentionally left blank
6.1 **Introduction**

Neurons function to receive, integrate, and transmit signals to other neurons or to nonneuronal target cells. While the process of neurotransmission appears relatively simple — neurotransmitter released from one cell binds to a receptor on another cell which results in depolarization or other effects in the target — there are many potentially regulatable components involved in each step. The characteristics of neurotransmission and the opportunities for modification of this process are the subject of intense study since it is these properties and the potential for change with experience that is believed to underlie complex cognitive functions as well as simple forms of adaptation.

6.1.1 **Historical perspective on molecular biology at synapses**

*The neuron.* The idea of the synapse necessarily implies a relation between two neurons. Although this statement may seem simplistic, it is interesting to note that it has only been 100 years since neurons were defined as individual cells. Indeed, less than 50 years have passed since synapses were first seen and the ‘neuron theory’ supported by use of the electron microscope (Palade and Palay 1954; and see Robertson 1987). As an introduction to the topic of molecular biology of synapses, a brief outline of the history of experiment and observation which led to the definition of neurons and synapses in terms of histology, physiology, and biochemistry is presented in this chapter.

The concept of the synapse was essentially dependent on the definition of the neuron in histological terms. A number of debates were waged concerning the relation of axons to cell bodies (it was not clear that these were parts of the same cells) and the relation of one neuron to another (some workers saw all neurons as interconnected, others saw them as individual cells). Steps forward in these arguments were dependent on advances in techniques of fixation and staining (especially on Golgi’s silver staining technique) as well as on increased resolution due to better microscopes. More than
150 years later, Robert Remak described for the first time the continuity of a neuronal cell body with an axon in a preparation of sympathetic ganglion.

The relationship of the axon to its own cell body having been established, the controversy which was to interest neurohistologists for 75 years came to the forefront when Joseph von Gerlach published observations of an extensive axonal and dendritic network of neuronal processes. The substance of this argument concerned the direct interconnection of one nerve cell with another ('reticular theory') as opposed to their existence as individual cells ('nerve cell theory'). Although many others supported this position, Camillo Golgi, became known as the leading proponent of the 'reticular theory'. While Golgi denied the existence of the dendritic net proposed by Gerlach, he affirmed an axonal reticular formation based on his observations using his newly developed staining technique. A major contributor to the 'nerve cell theory' was August Forel who believed that nerve cells were separate entities whose individuality was often hard to discern because of the close contacts which they made with each other. Forel based this hypothesis on the pattern of degeneration induced by axonal lesions. He saw that a specific population of cells degenerated in response to axonal injury and that this degeneration was limited in scope, which he believed would not be the case if all cells were connected directly. Santiago Ramon y Cajal, regarded as the main proponent of the 'nerve cell theory' used a modification of the Golgi stain to demonstrate instances of axonal terminations. Wilhelm von Waldeyer introduced the term 'neuron' in 1891 to describe individual nerve cells which were not directly connected to each other. High resolution pictures made possible by the advent of electron microscopy in the 1950s allowed visualization of synapses and showed the membranes that separate the presynaptic cell from the postsynaptic cell (Palade and Palay 1954; and see Robertson 1987).

The synapse. It was in the context of this neuroanatomical debate that Charles Sherrington first used the term 'synapse'.

'... we are led to think that the tip of a twig of the arborescence is not contiguous with but merely in contact with the substance of the dendrite or cell body on which it impinges. Such a special connection of one nerve cell with another might be called a synapse' (Foster 1897, p. 57).

The individual nature of neurons led to questions about how a current propagated along an axon might be transmitted to another cell. Two main theories were proposed in this context, the first being direct transmission of an electrical current and the second mediation between a neuron and its target by a molecule released from the presynaptic terminal. Evidence for the possibility that a chemical signal could ‘transmit’ information was derived especially from work on acetylcholine (ACh) and its actions both at sympathetic ganglia and at the neuromuscular junction. Otto Loewi showed that ACh was the substance which mediated the vagus nerve-induced slowing of cardiac muscle contraction. The ‘acetylcholine hypothesis’ of neurotransmission was based on a number of observations (detailed in Eccles 1937) summarized here:

(i) ACh was shown to be released after direct nerve stimulation both from preparations of sympathetic ganglia and from neuromuscular preparations.
(ii) Addition of exogenous ACh or agonists to these preparations mimics the effects on the target of direct nerve stimulation.

(iii) When a nerve is stimulated to exhaustion or when preganglionic fibers degenerate no more ACh is released.

(iv) Direct stimulation of the target itself in the absence of a motoneuron produces no ACh.

(v) Compounds which block the action of ACh, for example curare, have a similar chemical structure, providing further basis for the idea that it is ACh which is involved in neurotransmission.

The development of intracellular recording techniques allowed detailed analysis of the effects of ACh at neuromuscular junctions and showed that these were inconsistent with direct electrical transmission (Fatt and Katz 1951).

6.2 Modern concepts in neurotransmitter release

6.2.1 The synaptic vesicle

Intracellular recording techniques also identified discrete units of neurotransmission: small, stereotyped membrane potential changes known as ‘quanta’. The smallest events of neurotransmission involve membrane potential changes of single quantum size and larger events always occur as multiples of quanta. Thus, neurotransmission may involve 5 or 200 quanta, but not 2.5 or 154.2 quanta. What is the physical basis for quantal neurotransmission? Soon after the development of intracellular recording, technical advances in electron microscopy made it possible to obtain high resolution images of synapses for the first time. These images showed not only clearly identifiable presynaptic and postsynaptic elements separated by a synaptic cleft, but also a newly discovered synaptic characteristic: vesicles, which were immediately recognized as a possible basis for the release of ‘quanta’ (Fig. 6.1). Two main types of vesicles are found at synapses; small, clear vesicles of about 50 nm (SVs) and larger (~100 nm) vesicles characterized by electron-dense cores (LVs) (Fig. 6.2). These two vesicle types differ functionally as well as morphologically. SVs contain conventional transmitters such as acetylcholine, glutamate, caminobutyric acid (GABA), and glycine whereas LVs contain catecholamines and soluble peptides.

6.2.2 Aspects of neurotransmission

When intracellular vesicles fuse with the plasmalemma, the vesicle contents are secreted into the extracellular space and the components of the vesicle membrane become part of the plasmalemma. Thus, vesicle-mediated secretion plays two fundamental roles: intercellular communication and maintenance or renewal of membrane components. There are four main pathways for secretion in all eukaryotic cells. Secretory vesicles can originate from the Golgi apparatus or from endoplasmic reticulum-derived endosomes. Distinct vesicles from both origins contribute to
regulated or constitutive secretion. Constitutive fusion is, by definition, independent of extracellular signals and mediates transport and insertion of membrane components. It is thought to play a key role in membrane turnover as well as membrane insertion underlying changes in cell shape and motility (Catsicas et al. 1994). Regulated secretion occurs upon transient and often fast stimulatory events that induce a cellular response. At the synapse, regulated secretion involves SVs derived from endosomes and LVs derived from the Golgi (see Kelly 1993). Release of neurotransmitters by SVs requires sequential steps of vesicle trafficking. In the terminal, vesicles can be stored in the so-called reserve pool consisting of vesicles bound to actin filaments (Figs. 6.2 and 6.3). Vesicles in the reserve pool must be mobilized to progress towards the plasma membrane (Greengard et al. 1993). At the membrane, vesicles are docked to microdomains within the presynaptic active zones and form the ‘releasable pool’ (Greengard et al. 1993). Docking is an additional storage step as docked vesicles must be primed to become ready to fuse. Membrane fusion and transmitter release are then induced when fast and localized Ca\(^{2+}\) gradients are generated by incoming action potentials (see Hu et al. 1993). In contrast, LV progression to the membrane and subsequent fusion seems to involve a single, Ca\(^{2+}\)-dependent, cytoskeletal destabilization step (Trifaró and Vitale 1993). LVs are located at a distance from the presynaptic membrane and their progression is induced by slow and diffuse Ca\(^{2+}\) gradients through channels that are distributed more homogeneously in the membrane of the
nerve terminal (see Hu et al. 1993). Following fusion, vesicles are retrieved by specific endocytosis mechanisms. SVs remain in the terminal to be filled with transmitters and used again, whereas LVs return to the trans-Golgi network to be packaged with newly synthesized peptides (see Hu et al. 1993). Each of these steps and the main proteins known to be involved are described in the following sections.

6.2.3 Vesicle storage and mobilization

Synaptic vesicles which contain neurotransmitter are sometimes known as ‘mature’ synaptic vesicles, a term which suggests their ability to participate in exocytosis. However, since neurotransmission is highly regulated, there are mechanisms which

Fig. 6.2 Schematic representation of some basic aspects of neurotransmission. Synaptic vesicles (pale orange spheres) filled with neurotransmitter (small black circles) are present in nerve terminals as two functionally different populations. The ‘reserve pool’ of synaptic vesicles is bound to actin filaments and the releasable pool is present at the presynaptic membrane at the active zone. Following docking of vesicles, fusion of the vesicle with the plasma membrane occurs and neurotransmitter is released into the synaptic cleft. Neurotransmitter molecules then bind to specific receptors present on the postsynaptic cell (shown in solid orange) resulting in signal transmission. Large, dense-core vesicles (pictured as orange spheres with black centers) may be present in the same nerve terminals as small vesicles, though biogenesis and regulation of their fusion is distinct (see text).
restrain the process of vesicle fusion, and further steps necessary to ‘prime’ vesicles for
exocytosis. A mechanism proposed for restraint of vesicle fusion is the tethering of
vesicles to the cytoskeleton in the synaptic terminal. This attachment would prevent
vesicles from diffusing to the active zone, but keeping them close to the synapse for
recruitment from a ‘reserve pool’ when needed (Figs. 6.2 and 6.3).

6.2.4 The synapsin family of phosphoproteins
The synapsins, a family of four phosphoproteins which are associated with synaptic
vesicles, have been implicated in reversible binding of vesicles to actin filaments. These
abundant proteins, which make up approximately 0.6% of total brain protein and 9% of
synaptic vesicle protein (De Camilli et al. 1990; Valtorta et al. 1992), were first char-
acterized as neuronal substrates for cAMP-dependent phosphorylation by Greengard
and colleagues (see Greengard et al. 1993). The synapsin family consists of two homol-
ogous genes, synapsin I and synapsin II (reviewed in Südhof et al. 1989). Synapsin I
exists in two isoforms, Ia (apparent molecular weight of 86 kDa, 704 a.a. in rat) and
Ib (80 kDa, 668 a.a. in rat), which are splice products of a single gene. The synapsin II gene also encodes two alternatively spliced products, synapsin IIa and IIb, proteins of approximately 74 kDa (586 a.a. in rat) and 55 kDa (479 a.a in rat). Synapsin I isoforms have 70% average sequence identity with synapsin II isoforms over the first 420 amino acids which contain a conserved phosphorylation site and proposed actin binding domains. Comparison of the C-terminal regions of synapsins I and II shows that synapsin II isoforms are missing two Ca\(^{2+}\)/calmodulin-dependent kinase phosphorylation sites found in the synapsin I isoforms.

Experiments by Greengard and collaborators suggest that dephosphorylated synapsin I mediates the attachment of SVs to actin filaments, keeping SVs in the ‘reserve pool’ until needed. Electron microscopic and biochemical techniques have shown that synapsins are peripheral membrane proteins associated with synaptic vesicles (DeCamilli et al. 1983; Valtorta et al. 1988; Benfenati et al. 1989; Thiel et al. 1990) and, additionally, that synapsin I binds actin via specific domains (Bähler and Greengard 1987; Petrucci and Morrow 1987; Ceccaldi et al. 1995). The binding of phosphorylated synapsin I both to synaptic vesicles and to actin is reduced compared to the dephosphorylated protein (Huttner et al. 1983; Schiebler et al. 1986; Sihra et al. 1989). Since synapsin I has been shown to be phosphorylated by Ca\(^{2+}\)/calmodulin-dependent kinase II in response to various kinds of synaptic stimulation (Forn and Greengard 1978; Nestler and Greengard 1982) it has been suggested that activity-dependent phosphorylation regulates the association of SVs with actin, and allows translocation of the vesicles from the stored pool to the releasable pool, near the active zone (Fig. 6.4). Consistent with this, dephosphorylated synapsin I had an inhibitory effect on neurotransmission at intact synapses (Llinás et al. 1985, 1991; Hackett et al. 1990; Lin et al. 1990) and in synaptosomes (Nichols et al. 1992), whereas phosphorylated synapsin I had no effect on neurotransmission in these studies.

Apparently, neither synapsin I nor synapsin II is essential for transmitter release. Recent generation of mice lacking synapsin I, synapsin II or both, results in changes in short-term plasticity but no change has been found in basic neurotransmission or in the ability to induce long-term changes such as those which occur in learning and memory (see Section 6.3; Chin et al. 1995; Li et al. 1995; Rosahl et al. 1995; Spillane et al. 1995). However, altered expression of synapsin I or synapsin II has effects on both the developmental process of synaptogenesis and functional characteristics of mature synapses (Han et al. 1991; Lu et al. 1992; Ferreira et al. 1994, 1995; Chin et al. 1995; Rosahl et al. 1995). These observations are consistent with a role for synapsins in regulation of synaptic vesicle mobilization and further suggest that mobilization is a check point involved in short-term, fast actions on transmitter release, and long-term structural changes.

### 6.2.5 Vesicle docking

A number of proteins have been recently identified with suspected prominent roles in the docking process. Their functional organization is depicted schematically in
Fig. 6.4 An outline of the SNARE hypothesis depicts interactions between vesicles and release sites at the membrane which are mediated by specific proteins. An intrinsic vesicle protein (VAMP, a v-SNARE) binds to plasma membrane proteins (SNAP-25 and syntaxin, both t-SNAREs). The association of these three proteins allows binding of α/βγ SNAPs which in turn act as receptors for NSF. The hydrolysis of ATP by NSF results in the dissociation of the complex of proteins and is followed by vesicle fusion. Modified from Trends Neurosci., vol. 17, pp. 368–373, with permission from Elsevier Trends Journals.

Fig. 6.5. Bassoon and Piccolo (aka aczonin) are extremely large proteins (420 and 530 kDa) localized to active zones of most, but not all, synapses (tom Dieck et al. 1998). They contain various protein interaction domains, and are likely to act as scaffolding molecules promoting the assembly of the exocytotic multiprotein complex.

Rab3 is a small GTPase that is bound to the synaptic vesicles in the active zone, but which dissociates from the vesicles during exocytosis. Rab3 binds a protein called rabphilin, which is thought to mediate an interaction with actin. The eponymous Rab3-interacting molecules RIM1 and RIM2 (aka oboe) bind to the active (GTP bound) form of Rab3, and are suggested to be components of the scaffold that retains SVs at the active zone. Apart from Rab3, RIM1 can also interact with synaptotagmins, SNAP-25, RIM-binding proteins (which link RIMs to Ca²⁺ channels), and a class of proteins involved in active zone organization known as α-liprins. Deletion of RIM1 in mice has no gross effects on synaptic transmission, but, as observed with Rab3 deletion, impairs long-term potentiation at hippocampal mossy fiber synapses (Castillo et al. 2002).
Munc-13 is present at the majority of central synapses, and binds diacylglycerol and Ca\textsuperscript{2+}. The diacylglycerol binding activity raised the possibility that the well-known effects of phorbol esters on neurotransmitter release might be mediated via Munc-13 rather than PKC, and this has proved to be the case (Rhee et al. 2002). Diacylglycerol binding promotes the association of Munc-13 with SVs via an interaction with Doc-2, and overexpression of Munc-13 increases neurotransmitter release (Betz et al. 1998; Duncan et al. 1999). Absence of Munc-13 abolishes evoked or spontaneous transmitter release (Tokumaru and Augustine 1999), but leaves the number of vesicles in the active zone unaltered, suggesting that Munc-13 functions after the docking stage. Munc-13 binds to syntaxin, an integral protein at the active zone (Bennett et al. 1992) with a central role in SV fusion (see below), and the Munc-13-1 isoform (but not the Munc-13-2 isoform) also binds to RIM1 (Betz et al. 2001). Hence the Munc-13-1/RIM1 interaction may be critical to prime SVs ready for fusion.

As with Munc-13, absence of Munc-18 (aka nsecl, rbsec1, and msec1) results in the loss of spontaneous and evoked transmitter release. Munc-18 binds syntaxin, and is thought to prevent syntaxin functional complexes with the SVs, by binding to a region of syntaxin that overlaps with the Munc-13 binding site (see Martin 2002), hence regulating the formation of the vesicle fusion complex. Munc-18 could also retain SVs
in the vicinity of Ca\(^{2+}\) channels. A protein known as tomosyn reportedly encourages the dissociation of Munc-18 from syntaxin (Fujita et al. 1998; Masuda et al. 1998), which could then allow the fusion complex to associate.

### 6.2.6 Vesicle fusion

Vesicle fusion occurs in all cells and between many different membrane compartments. The membrane fusion machinery has been highly conserved during evolution and different cells use common general protein fusion components (Pevsner and Scheller 1994). The general machinery for intracellular vesicle fusion comprises the N-ethylmaleimide sensitive factor (NSF) and three isoforms of soluble NSF attachment proteins (\(\alpha\), \(\beta\) and \(\gamma\) SNAPs) (Wilson et al. 1992). Biochemical studies by Rothman and his colleagues (Söllner et al. 1993) showed that the integral SV protein VAMP/synaptobrevin (Trimble et al. 1988), synaptosomal-associated protein 25 (SNAP-25) (Oyler et al. 1989) and syntaxin, all act as SNAP receptors (SNARES) and thereby can form a complex with the general fusion machinery. Based on these data, Rothman and colleagues have then proposed the so-called SNARE hypothesis, which states that vesicles select their targets for fusion through specific interactions between vesicle and target SNARES (Fig. 6.4).

The SNARE hypothesis (Fig. 6.4) implies that pairing between proteins specifically expressed on vesicles and their target membranes (v- or t-SNARES) mediates selective vesicle docking and fusion (Söllner et al. 1993; Rothman and Warren 1994). Recognition between v- and t-SNARES would mediate docking while binding of SNARES to proteins involved in the membrane fusion machinery would mediate vesicle fusion. Thus, VAMP was postulated to be a v-SNARE and SNAP-25 and syntaxin t-SNARES, involved in SV docking and fusion at the presynaptic membrane.

![Fig. 6.6](Fig_6_111.jpg) Neurotransmitter transport into synaptic vesicles is dependent on two proteins. An H\(^{+}\)-ATPase (orange circle) is essential for creating a H\(^{+}\) gradient across the vesicle membrane. The neurotransmitter transporter (orange oval) is an H\(^{+}\) transmitter antiporter.
Consistent with this, under appropriate conditions, the three proteins form a stable heterotrimeric complex in vitro (Chapman et al. 1994; Hayashi et al. 1994). Functional evidence that VAMP, SNAP-25, and syntaxin are involved in transmitter release came from research on the targets of the tetanus and botulinum bacterial neurotoxins (TeNT and BoNT). TeNT and BoNT are metalloproteases that block transmitter release and induce paralysis of skeletal muscles followed by rapid death. Studies (Schiavo et al. 1992; Blasi et al. 1993), showed that blockade of transmitter release by the toxins is due to the proteolytic cleavage of each of the three SNARE proteins identified by Rothman and colleagues. TeNT and BoNT type B, D, F, and G cleave VAMP, while BoNT/A and /E cleave SNAP-25 and BoNT/C cleaves syntaxin and SNAP-25 (for review see Ferro-Novick and Jahn 1994; Montecucco and Schiavo 1994; see also Osen-Sand et al. 1996, for the role of BoNT/C). These data are consistent with the hypothesis that SNAREs are involved in vesicle fusion, and with evidence that docking can occur in the absence of the SNARES (Schweizer et al. 1995; and see Südhof 1995; Pellegrini et al. 1995; Osen-Sand et al. 1996). Hence docking and fusion require separate molecular interactions.

It is also worth noting that, in addition to their role in release, SNAP-25 and syntaxin may have a structural role in the entire axonal compartment. In differentiated neurons in vitro, VAMP or SNAP-25 cleavage with clostridial toxins causes a strong inhibition of spontaneous and evoked release, and does not result in major morphological changes. In contrast, BoNT/C, which cleaves SNAP-25 and syntaxin, induces massive disruption of the axons and neuronal death (Osen-Sand et al. 1996). The fact that cleavage of SNAP-25 by BoNT/A did not induce similar morphological effects suggests that syntaxin plays a major role in axonal maintenance and cell viability. Consistent with this, although knock-out experiments in Drosophila indicate that syntaxin 1A is not essential for cell survival at early stages (Schuize et al. 1995), lack of the protein eventually results in massive neurite disruption and degeneration of the nervous system (Schulze and Bellen, personal communication).

The fast toxic effects induced by simultaneous cleavage of SNAP-25 and syntaxin may reflect co-operativity of the two proteins for essential membrane exchanges within the axonal compartment. Consistent with this, syntaxin and SNAP-25 form a heterodimer in vitro and this association is believed to exist in vivo on the cytosolic face of the axonal membrane (Chapman et al. 1994; Hayashi et al. 1994). In fact, very recent immunochemical studies indicate an extensive co-localization of SNAP-25 and syntaxin on the plasmalemma (Garcia et al. 1995) and a widespread distribution of both proteins throughout the axon (Duc and Catsicas 1995; Garcia et al. 1995).

As noted above, SV docking does not necessarily result in fusion (see Kelly 1993). Electrophysiological evidence from time-resolved capacitance measurements in goldfish bipolar cells suggests that only a fraction of the releasable vesicles fuse in response to the rise of cytosolic Ca\(^{2+}\) generated by the action potential (von Gersdorff and Matthews 1994). These and other data suggest that only a fraction of docked vesicles are ready (primed) to fuse. An additional problem that neurons must face is that secretion (fusion) must be highly regulated in time. The rapid arrest of release following the
drop of cytosolic Ca\(^{2+}\) at the end of the action potential implies the presence of a low affinity Ca\(^{2+}\) sensor within the microdomains where fusion occurs (Almers 1994). Several independent approaches indicate that synaptotagmin, another integral synaptic vesicle protein (Matthew et al. 1981), is a possible Ca\(^{2+}\) sensor. Ca\(^{2+}\) binds to synaptotagmin and its binding regulates the capacity of the protein to bind phospholipids (Brose et al. 1992) and RIMs. This could in turn affect the possible role of synaptotagmin in fusion. In addition, and most importantly, synaptotagmin can bind to the SNARE complex formed by VAMP, SNAP-25, and syntaxin, and competes with a-SNAP for a common site on the complex (Söllner et al. 1993). a-SNAP can displace synaptotagmin which allows binding of the NSF to the complex and vesicle fusion (Söllner et al. 1993). One possible interpretation of these data is that synaptotagmin acts as a negative regulator, preventing fusion in the absence of appropriate signals. Consistent with this hypothesis, analysis of synaptotagmin mutants of *Caenorhabditis elegans* and *Drosophila* shows that although the protein is not essential for release, it has modulatory functions (DiAntonio et al. 1993; Nonet et al. 1993). There is also additional indirect evidence that Ca\(^{2+}\) may regulate protein–protein interactions within the fusion complex, since syntaxin can interact with N-type Ca\(^{2+}\) channels (Bennet et al. 1992). Taken together, these studies suggest that synaptotagmin is a Ca\(^{2+}\)-dependent regulator of release efficiency, acting downstream of SV docking.

6.2.7 **Membrane retrieval and neurotransmitter loading**

While the cellular mechanisms involved in vesicle docking and fusion are the focus of many studies of neurotransmission, they represent only the initial steps of the exocytic/endocytic cycle. Following neurotransmitter release, SVs which fuse with the synaptic membrane do not generally become a permanent part of the plasma membrane (but see Section 6.3). Instead, SV membrane is retrieved to re-form vesicles which are then re-filled with neurotransmitters and take part in further rounds of synaptic activity. The molecules involved in these phases of synapse function have begun to be characterized: a selection of them are described in the following sections.

**Membrane retrieval following fusion.** The specific mechanisms of vesicle retrieval remain a matter of debate. The two main hypotheses involve the formation of clathrin coats and subsequent endocytosis, or the rapid opening and closure of a transient exocytotic fusion pore (reviewed by DeCamilli and Takei 1996). A role for clathrin-coated vesicles in vesicle retrieval seems likely since the number of clathrin-coated vesicles increases after stimulation and these vesicles contain synaptic vesicle proteins (Heuser and Reese 1973; Maycox et al. 1992). Recently, some of the molecules involved in formation of clathrin-coated pits have been characterized (see DeCamilli and Takei 1996).

Clathrin coats are formed from heavy (180 kDa) and light (35–40 kDa) clathrin chains, and assembly particles (340 kDa, composed of two copies of three proteins) which form characteristically shaped hetero-oligomers called triskelia. While the
components of clathrin coats are found at the plasmalemma as well as in the trans-Golgi network, there are proteins particular to each compartment. A heterotetrameric protein complex, AP2 [comprised of two 100–115 kDa subunits (a and b) and two subunits of 50 and 17 kDa, respectively], functions at the plasmalemma, possibly as an adaptor between clathrin triskelia and membrane proteins (see DeCamilli and Takei 1996). In addition, synaptotagmin I has been shown to have a role in endocytosis (Fukuda et al. 1995; Jorgensen et al. 1995) and to bind AP2 (Li et al. 1995) suggesting that there are neuron-specific membrane proteins involved in clathrin-mediated vesicle retrieval at synapses.

As indicated above, the initial steps of vesicle endocytosis involve recruitment of clathrin coat components to the synaptic plasma membrane and formation of invaginations. A subsequent step has been identified in which these invaginations break off from the membrane to complete the endocytotic event. A neuron-specific molecule, dynamin I, has been implicated in this process at synapses. Dynamin was first identified as a neuronal microtubule-binding protein which has GTPase activity (Shpetner and Vallee 1989; Obar et al. 1990). The protein is phosphorylated by protein kinase C (PKC) and it is dephosphorylated in response to neuronal stimulation (Robinson et al. 1993). A number of functional studies, as well as its concentration in nerve terminals (Takei et al. 1995), suggest that dynamin has a major role in endocytosis (for recent review see DeCamilli and Takei 1996). Dynamin is a mammalian homolog of shibire, a Drosophila protein. Mutations of shibire cause arrest of endocytosis after formation of coated pits and subsequent paralysis (Koenig and Ikeda 1989). Further evidence for the involvement of dynamin in mammalian endocytosis comes from studies of the GTPase activity of this protein. When GTPase-defective mutants of dynamin are transfected into mammalian cells, endocytosis is blocked (Vallee and Okamoto 1995). Ultrastructural studies of shibire mutants show numerous invaginations with electron dense ring-like structures around a narrow neck (Koenig and Ikeda 1989). Dynamin has been shown to self-assemble into rings in vitro (Hinshaw and Schmid 1995), and similar structures which are immunopositive for dynamin form when synaptosomes are treated with GTPγS (Takei et al. 1995). Finally, it appears that separation of an endosomal pit from the plasma membrane is due to a concerted conformational change in the molecules forming the dynamin ‘collar’, (Sweitzer and Hinshaw 1999).

Various dynamin-interacting proteins containing SH3 domains, such as amphiphysins, endophilins, and syndapins, have also been implicated in endocytosis of clathrin-coated pits. Their roles include stimulation of GTPase activity of dynamin via SH3 domain binding, scaffolding structures, and targeting of dynamin to clathrin. In particular, interference with the normal function of endophilins impairs endocytosis and depletes SVs (Ringstad et al. 1999; Schmidt et al. 1999), while syndapins inhibit endocytosis through their SH3 domain interaction with dynamin, and may also link endocytosed vesicles with the actin substructure (Qualmann and Kelly 2000).

**Vesicle loading by neurotransmitter transporters.** Following exocytosis and membrane retrieval, newly formed vesicles must be reloaded with neurotransmitter. Two classes of
neurotransmitter transport activities have been characterized at synapses. These are a family of plasma membrane transporters which move neurotransmitters from the synaptic cleft to the synaptic cytoplasm, and a distinct family of transporters which take up neurotransmitters from the cytoplasm and concentrate them in synaptic vesicles. The plasma membrane transporters were extensively characterized earlier than vesicular transporters (for review see Borowsky and Hoffman 1995) due to the difficulties involved in obtaining pure synaptic vesicles. Following improvements in isolation techniques, vesicular transport has been demonstrated in synaptic vesicles from various sources for many transmitters, including ACh (Parsons and Koenigsberger 1980; Toll and Howard 1980; Anderson et al. 1982), monoamines (Johnson et al. 1978), glutamate (Shioi et al. 1989; Tabb et al. 1992), GABA (Fykse and Fonnnum 1988; Hell et al. 1988), and glycine (Kish et al. 1989). Vesicular transport is dependent on ATP and a proton gradient across the vesicle membrane (Naito and Ueda 1983; Maycox et al. 1988; Tabb et al. 1992). This dependence highlights the fact that two independent proteins are involved in vesicular neurotransmitter transport (Fig. 6.6).

The first protein needed is a proton pump which generates an electrochemical gradient across the vesicle membrane. The vesicular H⁺-ATPase has been characterized and shown to be similar to the vacuolar H⁺-ATPase (see Gluck 1993). The second protein necessary for vesicular neurotransmitter transport is a neurotransmitter-H⁺ antiporter (see Schuldiner et al. 1995; Usdin et al. 1995). The transport activities of the vesicular monoamine transporter, and the vesicular GABA and glutamate transporters reside in single polypeptides (Maycox et al. 1988, 1990; Carlson et al. 1989; Hell et al. 1990).

The sequences of a number of vesicle transporters have been isolated. These proteins share a generally similar structure with a large number of transport proteins, including bacterial drug-resistance genes, sugar transporters, plasma membrane neurotransmitter transporters, and the vesicular membrane protein SV2, although sequence homology between these widely differing transporter types is limited. Two vesicular monoamine transporters (VMATs) have been identified (Erickson et al. 1992; Liu et al. 1992), which have overall identity of 62% (Schuldiner et al. 1995) and are encoded by distinct genes. Sequence and hydropathy analyses predict 521-amino acid proteins with 12 putative transmembrane segments which differ mostly between the first and second transmembrane domains and at the amino and carboxyl terminals. Functional studies of the two isoforms were performed in stable transfectants of Chinese hamster ovary cells and showed that VMAT2 has a higher affinity for all the monoamines (Peter et al. 1994). VMAT clones from species other than rat are more similar to VMAT2 than VMAT1 based on sequence comparisons (Vandenburg et al. 1992; Erickson and Eiden 1993; Peter et al. 1993; Howell et al. 1994).

A vesicular ACh transporter (AChT) cDNA has been isolated from Torpedo marmorata, C. elegans, rat, and human (Alfonso et al. 1993; Erickson et al. 1994). The clone predicts a protein of 532 amino acids, including 12 transmembrane domains, with 40 and 38% identity to VMAT1 and VMAT2, respectively (Usdin et al. 1995). Interestingly, the vesicular AChT is encoded within the same gene as an enzyme.
involved in ACh synthesis, choline acetyltransferase, suggesting that the regulation of
transmitter synthesis and transport may be closely related (Usdin et al. 1995). It is not
known whether similar mechanisms may be involved for other transmitters.

More recently, the sequences of a GABA transporter (vGAT) (McIntire et al. 1997),
and two glutamate transporters (vGlut1 and vGlut2) (Fremeau et al. 2001) have also
been identified. They possess 10 (vGAT) or 8 (vGlut1 and vGlut2) potential trans-
membrane domains. The closer sequence homology between the VMAT and VACHT
vesicle transporters defines these proteins as a family, more distantly related to vGluts
and vGAT, and to other transporters, including those neurotransmitter transporters
found at the plasma membrane.

6.3 Learning and synapses

6.3.1 The neuronal software

The amount of transmitter released at a given synapse may change according to
previous ‘experience’ of the synapse. This parameter is commonly defined as synaptic
strength. It is clearly very tempting to relate this adaptive property of the synapse to
high order functions of the nervous system. Indeed, learning has now been associated
in a variety of systems and animal models with changes in the strength of connections
between neurons (Hawkins et al. 1993). Such changes are often referred to as ‘synaptic
plasticity’. To date, two main types of synaptic plasticity have been identified. Although
both types of plasticity can occur at the same synapses, they involve distinct cellular
and molecular mechanisms. Short-term changes in synaptic efficiency involve
strengthening of existing connections, possibly through modification of the structure
and function of pre-existing proteins, such as ion channels, protein kinases, and recep-
tors (Hawkins et al. 1993). The resulting effects include activation of postsynaptic
receptors and modulation of transmitter release itself (see Chapter 14). These adapta-
tions can occur rapidly and usually last for hours but sometimes for days. Long-term
changes involve structural modifications of existing synapses or formation of new
ones. This type of adaptation has been suggested as one of the possible cellular mecha-
nisms that contributes to the storage of memory. Long-term changes seem to rely on
the activation of gene expression and new protein synthesis (see Chapter 14).

Changes in the efficiency, size, and number of synapses imply that the adult nervous
system is a dynamic network where new terminals can grow and where synapses can be
activated, added, or removed in response to behavioral experience (Hawkins et al.
1993). Are there common effectors for short- and long-term synaptic plasticity? Are
some of the mechanisms involved in synaptic plasticity similar to those that regulate
axonal growth and synaptogenesis during development? Both questions are still
unanswered, but transmitter release and growth of new connections have at least one
mechanism in common: membrane fusion. Indeed, membrane fusion is necessary for
vesicle secretion and it is also necessary in order to add new patches of membrane
(a prerequisite for growth). The possible relevance of the mechanisms that control
membrane fusion events in synaptic plasticity has been clearly demonstrated by the work of Kandel and his collaborators. Figure 6.7 summarizes the different stages that lead to a plastic response of a synapse and each stage that can involve membrane fusion is schematically illustrated. According to this model, modulation of transmitter release is the first step of a cascade leading to changes in gene expression and redistribution of membrane components that result in new synapse formation (Bailey et al. 1992; Hu et al. 1993). Each step of vesicle trafficking and fusion described in the previous chapters could contribute to regulated changes of transmitter release.

6.3.2 Functional synaptic plasticity

Altered efficacy of existing synapses is often referred to as functional synaptic plasticity. One of the most impressive example is long-term potentiation (LTP). Bliss and Lomo, discovered that brief high frequency trains of action potentials produced an increase of synaptic strength in synapses of the hippocampus that use glutamate as a transmitter (Bliss and Lomo 1973). This was the first demonstration that synaptic strength could change as a function of previous experience. LTP can last for hours or even days and seems to depend on both postsynaptic and presynaptic events. At the level of the postsynaptic cell, high levels of presynaptic stimulation result in the activation of
glutamate receptors that are functionally blocked under normal conditions. At the level of the presynaptic cell, LTP involves an increase in transmitter release. This increase is likely to be at least partially the result of a retrograde signal originating from the postsynaptic cell. However, the possibility that covalent modifications of the proteins involved in vesicle trafficking and fusion could play a role is also under extensive study. For example, as mentioned in Section 6.2.4, studies on the synapsins indicate that vesicle mobilization may contribute to the number of vesicles available for release. Regulating synapsin function may therefore have an indirect effect on synaptic strength. Also, the function of proteins such as Rab3 and RIM1 is clearly important for some forms of LTP (see Section 6.2.5). Data by Staple and colleagues (Staple et al. 1995) suggest that the relative ratio of proteins involved at different stages of transmitter release can vary in different synaptic boutons of the same neuron and that this variability correlates with synaptic strength.

6.3.3 Morphological synaptic plasticity

Long-term memory has been clearly associated with changes in synaptic structure in a variety of experimental systems (Wallace et al. 1991). Quantitative ultrastructural analysis indicates that four basic morphological parameters of the synapse are strongly correlated. These are total vesicle number, active zone size, presynaptic bouton volume, and postsynaptic spine volume (Pierce and Mendell 1993; Pierce and Lewin 1994). Interestingly, co-ordinated increases in size of pre- and postsynaptic elements have been reported after LTP in the dentate gyrus. These experiments have shown expansion of the average active zone and apposed surface areas, as well as synaptic bouton volume (see Wallace et al. 1991). These increases imply the fusion and incorporation of new membrane into the synaptic structure. What are the mechanisms involved? There are at least two possibilities. Net changes in presynaptic surface could arise from any imbalance between the amount of membrane that is fused and then retrieved during transmitter release and vesicle recycling. Consistent with this, ultrastructural analysis of the synapses of the shibire mutant (the Drosophila homolog of dynamin, which has a defect in vesicle endocytosis, see Section 6.2.7) shows enlarged synapses. However, the observation that membrane retrieval is stimulus dependent (von Gersdorff and Matthews 1994) suggests that it may be regulated in response to previous signals received by the neuron. This would provide a mechanism of activity-dependent (or use-dependent or experience-dependent) control of membrane surface. The data showing that dynamin (see Section 6.2.7) is phosphorylated by PKC and dephosphorylated by electrical activity (van der Bliek and Muncrowitz 1991; Robinson et al. 1993), is also consistent with this hypothesis.

An alternative way to increase synaptic surface would be the fusion of membrane vesicles other than SVs. Pfenninger and colleagues have shown that plasmalemmal expansion involves the fusion of large clear vesicles that were identified as plasmalemmal precursors (PPV) (Pfenninger et al. 1991). These vesicles accumulate in the growth cones of developing axons (Pfenninger and Friedman 1993). Interestingly, data
obtained with a cell-free growth cone-expansion assay suggest that PPV fusion with the plasma membrane is controlled by Ca\(^{2+}\) influx (Lockerbie et al. 1991), thereby providing an activity-dependent mechanism of membrane expansion. If the same mechanism was maintained in adult neurons, growth of new connections, or morphological changes of existing ones, could be activated by stimulating the membrane-expansion pathway. If this hypothesis is correct, the cell must be capable of regulating vesicle fusion for release and vesicle fusion for expansion through distinct mechanisms. Of particular relevance to these observations, is the finding that SNAP-25 is involved in both transmitter release and in axonal growth. Inhibition of SNAP-25 expression with antisense oligonucleotides prevented neurite outgrowth in PC12 cells and cortical neurons in vitro, and in chick retina neurons in vivo (Osen-Sand et al. 1993). These effects could result from inhibition of transmitter release, but it is also possible that SNAP-25 is involved in the fusion of PPV. Very recent studies support the latter interpretation. Using clostridial toxins on primary neurons in vitro, Osen-Sand et al. (1996) showed that the fusion machineries for transmitter release and axonal growth involve common but also distinct SNARES. The v-SNARE VAMP was found to be exclusively involved in transmitter release, whereas the t-SNARES SNAP-25 and syntaxin have a role in release and growth. These data suggest that transmitter release (and SV fusion) is not necessary for axonal growth and that additional v-SNAREs must be involved in vesicle fusion for membrane expansion.

In addition to changes in synaptic size, the structural rearrangements that occur during morphological synaptic plasticity involve the formation of new synapses and are likely to involve the co-ordinated action of genes that regulate membrane expansion as well as vesicle storage and fusion. Consistent with this, candidate plasticity genes encoding products involved in the endo- and exocytotic pathways have been isolated following stimulation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors in rat hippocampus (Nedivi et al. 1993), during long-term facilitation in Aplysia (Hu et al. 1993) and during synapse formation in the developing chick retina (see Osen-Sand et al. 1993, and in preparation). These findings demonstrate the importance of the fusion machinery during nerve terminal remodeling in the adult and suggest that the mechanisms involved are also at work during development. Studies of SNAP-25 isoform expression support this hypothesis. SNAP-25 exists in at least two alternatively spliced variants, differentially regulated during development (Bark 1993; Bark and Wilson 1994a; Bark et al. 1995; Boschert et al. 1996). SNAP25a mRNA is highly and transiently expressed during axonal growth, while SNAP25b is induced during synapse formation and its levels are maintained throughout adulthood (Bark 1993; Bark and Wilson 1994b; Bark et al. 1995; Boschert et al. 1996). Further to these observations, Boschert and colleagues (1996) have shown that SNAP-25a (but not b) expression is induced in the adult hippocampus following lesions that are known to induce reactive sprouting. Although indirect, these observations suggest that the two SNAP-25 isoforms may have different roles in transmitter release and membrane expansion. The regulated expression of the two SNAP-25 isoforms, and of additional SNARES, may provide a molecular framework for differential
use of the fusion machinery during specific stages of maturation of the terminal. However, Roberts et al. (1998) have demonstrated increased SNAP-25 gene expression in hippocampal granule cells following the induction of LTP in the afferent synapses, with both isoforms being affected.

6.4 Concluding remarks

Fusion and re-uptake of specialized membrane is involved in a number of processes which affect neuronal morphology and function including, intracellular vesicle trafficking, neurotransmitter release, and membrane expansion. We are only beginning to understand the molecular mechanisms of exocytosis/endocytosis which occur at synapses and the role of regulation of these steps on complex cellular behaviors. Our increasingly better understanding of these phenomena will have considerable implications for the molecular basis of synaptic adaptation.

References


This page intentionally left blank
Chapter 7

Molecular biology of postsynaptic structures

Flaminio Cattabeni, Fabrizio Gardoni, and Monica Di Luca

Synapses are specialized sites of communication between neurons in the brain that are vital for interneuronal signaling and necessary for the processing and integration of information. Efficient and plastic signal transduction at synapses is critical for the correct functioning of the synapse and information processing in the nervous system. The strength of individual central nervous system (CNS) synapses is thought to be controlled by signaling machinery that regulates the number and activity of postsynaptic receptor ion channels.

The neurotransmitter glutamate mediates the majority of excitatory synaptic transmission in the brain. Excitatory glutamatergic synapses feature a prominent thickening at the cytoplasmic surface of the postsynaptic membrane at sites of close opposition to the presynaptic terminal for which the term Post Synaptic Density (PSD) was coined. Electron-microscopy studies have identified in the 1950s the PSD as an electron-dense structure beneath the postsynaptic membrane in register with the active zone of the presynaptic compartment (Palay 1956). The thickness and density of PSD is variable and falls into two categories: type I, where PSD is electron dense and its size exceeds that of nerve terminals (excitatory glutamatergic synapse); it can be described as a kind of web adhering to the postsynaptic membrane; type II, where PSD is less electron-dense and its size is similar to the presynaptic thickening (GABAergic synapse).

7.1 Structural features and components of the excitatory PSD

Type I isolated PSD (and from now on the term PSD will be referred only to type I PSD) appears as semicircular bands about 400 nm long and 40 nm wide. In the 1970s two groups of cell biologists, one led by P. Siekevitz (Carlin et al. 1980), and the other by Cotman et al. (1974), developed methods for the isolation of subcellular fractions that were enriched in structures that appeared to be PSDs by morphological criteria.

Preparation of the PSD fraction is now a relatively simple procedure that involves first the purification of synaptosomes or synaptic membranes, followed by extraction of the membranes with detergents to dissolve lipids. The extraction leaves behind disk-shaped protein structures with the apparent shape, size, and morphology of the PSD.
PSDs isolated by Cotman et al. (1974) were purified from synaptosomal membranes washed with 3%-N-lauroyl sarcosinate, and contain approximately 10–15 protein bands visible on Coomassie blue stained polyacrylamide gels. The PSD fraction isolated by Siekevitz’s group was purified from synaptosomes washed with 0.5% Triton X-100, a milder detergent than sarcosinate, and has a more complex protein composition, consisting of about 25–30 protein bands.

Biochemical fractionation showed that the PSD structure includes four major classes of components (see Table 7.1): i) plasma membrane proteins such as ionotropic and

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Binding partners</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AMPA</td>
<td>SAP-97, GRIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mGluR</td>
<td>Homer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurologin</td>
<td>SAP-97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDA</td>
<td>CaM, α-CaMKII, PSD-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actin</td>
<td>α-actinin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-actinin</td>
<td>NMDA, actin, CaMKII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectrin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calmodulin</td>
<td>CaMKII, NMDA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaMKII</td>
<td>NMDA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fyn-Src</td>
<td>PSD-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP3</td>
<td>Homer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nNOS</td>
<td>PSD-95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ras</td>
<td>SynGAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SynGAP</td>
<td>PSD-95, Ras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GKAP</td>
<td>PSD-95, Shank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRIP</td>
<td>AMPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homer</td>
<td>mGluR, IP3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSD-95</td>
<td>NMDA, nNOS, GKAP, SynGAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAP-97</td>
<td>AMPA, Neurologin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shank</td>
<td>GKAP, Homer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yotiao</td>
<td>NMDA, PP1, PKA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
metabotropic glutamate receptor subunits (Kennedy 2000), and neuroligins (Kennedy 1997), ii) signalling proteins such as Ca\(^{2+}\)/Calmodulin-dependent kinase II (CaMKII; Kennedy et al. 1983), tyrosine kinases, i.e. Fyn and Src (Ellis et al. 1988) and SynGap (Chen et al. 1998; Kim et al. 1998), iii) cytoskeletal proteins such as actin, spectrin, tubulin (Kelly and Cotman 1978; Carlin et al. 1980), and iv) linker proteins such as members of PSD-95/SAP family (Gomperts 1996; Sheng and Kim 1996). Hence the PSD contains the receptors with associated signalling and scaffolding proteins that organize signal transduction pathways near the postsynaptic membrane (Fig. 7.1).

7.1.1 Plasma membrane proteins
The ionotropic glutamate N-Methyl-d-Aspartate (NMDA) and 1-\(\alpha\)-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazole propionic acid (AMPA) type receptors are concentrated in the PSD of excitatory synapses (Kennedy 2000). More controversial is the presence in the PSD structure of mGluR1\(\alpha\) and mGluR5 subunits of metabotropic glutamate receptors.

7.1.1.1 NMDA receptors
NMDA receptors are oligomeric complexes formed by the coassembly of members of 3 receptor subunit families: NR1, NR2 subfamily (NR2A–D; Hollman and Heinemann 1994), and NR3A (Das et al. 1998). One of these, the NR1 subunit, is a ubiquitous and necessary component of functional NMDA receptor channels. Diverse molecular forms of the NR1 subunit are present and generated by alternative RNA splicing;
differential splicing of three exons generate at least eight NR1 splice variants; the spliced exons encode a 21 amino acid sequence in the N-terminus domain (N1) and adjacent sequences of 37 and 38 amino acids in the C-terminus (C1 and C2 respectively). Splicing out the exon segment that encodes for the C2 cassette removes the first stop codon resulting in a new open reading frame that encodes an unrelated sequence of 22 amino acids (C2′) before a second stop codon is reached. These alternative splice processes cause alteration of the structural, physiological, and pharmacological properties of NR1. Additional diversity is given by the multiplicity of NR2 subunits composing the receptor. There are four species of the second subunit type, NR2A–D, each encoded by a different gene. The different NR2 subunits are differentially expressed during different stages of development and in different tissues (Monyer et al. 1994). Each subunit possesses a large extracellular N-terminal domain and four membrane (M) regions — the M-2 region contains a membrane-reentrant hairpin structure that contributes to the receptor channel pore. The N-terminal domain, which is large, glycosylated, and extracellular, contributes to the agonist-binding site. NMDA receptors bind two agonist ligands: glutamate and the coagonist, glycine. The NR1 subunit contains the binding site for glycine and the NR2 subunit, the binding site for glutamate.

NMDA receptors respond to agonists more slowly than AMPA receptors, and require greater than 2 ms to open. However, they have a higher affinity for glutamate, and their currents persist longer than AMPA receptor currents. The NMDA receptor admits both Na\(^+\) and Ca\(^{2+}\) ions. At the resting potential of the cell, a Mg\(^{2+}\) ion blocks the NMDA receptor pore, but the Mg\(^{2+}\) ion is released from the pore upon cell depolarization. Therefore, opening of the channel requires binding of ligand and simultaneous depolarization of the cell. The channel thus operates as a coincidence detector that admits current only when agonist binding and cell depolarization take place simultaneously.

NMDA receptors display activity-dependent current decreases of several types, two of which are ligand dependent. One of these, glycine-dependent desensitization, occurs following receptor stimulation by glutamate when glycine concentrations are subsaturating, in the nanomolar range. The second, glycine-independent desensitization takes place in the presence of saturating glycine, at concentrations in the micromolar range. When glutamate binds to the receptor in the presence of low concentrations of glycine, the receptor rapidly enters a desensitized (low-conductance) state. This desensitizing transition is blocked by glycine. NMDA receptor desensitization may limit receptor currents during persistent stimulation by glutamate. Domains of NR2 that influence receptor desensitization characteristics have been defined. A different activity-dependent NMDA receptor current decrease is Ca\(^{2+}\)-dependent inactivation. Ca\(^{2+}\)-dependent inactivation may be induced by increases in intracellular [Ca\(^{2+}\)] that follow activity-dependent fluxes of Ca\(^{2+}\) through the receptor. The increase in intracellular [Ca\(^{2+}\)] triggers biochemical modifications of the receptor that decrease receptor mean opening time. It has recently been shown that Ca\(^{2+}\)-dependent inactivation results from
binding of Ca\textsuperscript{2+}-calmodulin to the membrane proximal region of the C-terminal domain of the NR1 subunit.

7.1.1.2 **AMPA receptors**

AMPA receptors are complexes of four subunit types, GluR1–4, which may be homomeric or heteromeric. AMPA receptors account for the great majority of fast excitatory CNS synaptic transmission. AMPA receptors have a lower affinity for glutamate than NMDA receptors, and their currents are typically rapid, rising within less than 1 ms. AMPA receptor channels that contain GluR1, GluR3, or GluR4 subunits, or subunit GluR2 that is encoded by an unmodified GluR2 mRNA, can admit both Ca\textsuperscript{2+} ions and Na\textsuperscript{+} ions. RNA editing of GluR2 mRNA changes the structure of the GluR2 subunit by replacing glutamine with arginine at the “Q/R site” in the pore filter region, at the apex of the M2 hairpin. AMPA receptors containing GluR2 subunits encoded by edited mRNA are impermeable to Ca\textsuperscript{2+} ions. The effect of an edited subunit is dominant, such that inclusion of a single edited GluR2 subunit in an AMPA channel prevents Ca\textsuperscript{2+} entry through a receptor otherwise composed of GluR1, -3, -4, or unedited GluR2 subunits.

7.1.1.3 **Metabotropic glutamate receptors**

A third class of glutamate receptors present at many excitatory synapses is the metabotropic or heterotrimeric GTP-binding protein-linked glutamate receptors (mGluRs). Subtypes mGluR1 and mGluR5 are concentrated around the outer rim of glutamatergic PSDs as well as in decreasing concentration in the spine membrane as a function of distance from the PSD. A lattice of scaffold proteins may link the cytoplasmic face of mGluRs to IP3 receptors in the spine apparatus. The lattice may also be connected to PSD-95 and thus to the NMDA receptor complex.

In this aspect, the Shank protein family consists of proteins — core components of PSD structure — sharing a domain organization consisting of ankyrin repeats near the N-terminus followed by SH3 domain, PDZ domain, and a SAM domain at the C-terminus (Naisbitt \textit{et al.} 1999). Consistent with a scaffolding function, Shank mediates multiple protein interactions: the PDZ domain binds the GKAP family of PSD-95 binding proteins, thereby linking Shank to NMDA receptor complexes, while two other distinct PDZ domains of Shank form the binding sites for Homer, which in turn binds mGluR1 and IP3 receptors. From these interactions Shank is acting as a glue between ionotropic and metabotropic receptors in the postsynaptic compartment.

7.1.2 **Signaling proteins**

PSDs contain different classes of enzymatic systems, most of which are responsible for regulating the phosphorylation state of several PSD substrates: CaMKII represents the most abundant signaling protein in the PSD fraction. There, the enzyme is ideally positioned to play a major role in synaptic plasticity events (Kennedy \textit{et al.} 1983).
CaMKII is a target for transient Ca\(^{2+}\) entry through the NMDA channel and is necessary for normal synaptic plasticity in pyramidal neurons (Silva et al. 1992). CaMKII is a multisubunit protein having 8–12 subunits assembled in stochastic combinations from two closely related catalytic subunits, alpha and beta (Hanson and Schulman 1992). In the forebrain, the alpha subunit is about three times as abundant as the beta subunit.

A large body of evidence suggests that αCaMKII is a critical player in Long Term Potentiation (LTP), and it has special properties that make it an attractive candidate for exhibiting persistent changes and serving as a memory molecule (Lisman 1994). A simple and direct role for CaMKII in triggering and perhaps maintaining LTP is supported by studies in which CaMKII activity was acutely increased either with viral transfection (Pettit et al. 1994), or injection of calcium and calmodulin. In these cases synaptic transmission is enhanced and LTP is occluded. An important property of CaMKII is that when autophosphorylated on Thr286, its activity is no longer dependent on Ca\(^{2+}\)-calmodulin (CaM). This allows its activity to continue long after the Ca\(^{2+}\) signal has returned to baseline (see also Chapter 12). Biochemical studies have demonstrated that this autophosphorylation does in fact occur after triggering LTP (Liu et al. 1999). That CaMKII autophosphorylation is required for LTP was convincingly demonstrated by an elegant use of molecular genetic techniques in which replacement of endogenous CaMKII with a form of CaMKII containing a Thr286 point mutation was capable of shifting LTP towards LTD (Mayford et al. 1995). A final important piece of evidence implicating CaMKII in LTP is that it can directly phosphorylate the AMPA receptor subunit, GluR1, in situ, and this has been shown to occur following the generation of LTP.

The cytosolic tails of the NR2A/B subunits of the NMDA receptor bind to CaMKII and thus can serve as docking sites for it in the PSD (Gardoni et al. 1998; Strack and Colbran 1998). In addition, both the NR2A and NR2B subunits are phosphorylated by CaMKII (Omkumar et al. 1996; Gardoni et al. 2001). Docking of CaMKII to the tail of the NMDA receptor would position its catalytic domains near the receptor mouth, ideally located for activation by Ca\(^{2+}\) flowing through the channel.

In the PSD fraction, phosphotyrosine-mediated pathways interact both physically and biochemically with NMDA receptor (Tetzuka et al. 1999). The NMDA receptor NR2B subunit is the major synaptic phosphotyrosine peptide of the excitatory synapse, although the precise effect of tyrosine phosphorylation on NR2B function at the synapse is not yet known.

However, the receptor associates via PSD-95 with Syn-GAP, a PSD protein with a GTPase-activating domain that induces hydrolysis of GTP in complexes with the G protein Ras (Chen et al. 1998). Ras, in its active, GTP-bound state transduces signals from a large number of tyrosine kinases. One of these, Src, is a nonreceptor tyrosine kinase that is abundant in the brain. A related kinase, Fyn, is also found in the PSD.

SynGAP is specifically expressed in neurons and is highly concentrated at synaptic sites in hippocampal neurons, where it is tightly colocalized with PSD-95 (Kim et al. 1998). SynGAP is almost as abundant in the PSD fraction as PSD-95 itself, suggesting
that many synaptic PSD-95 molecules are bound to at least one copy of SynGAP.

The function of RasGAPs is to accelerate the intrinsic guanosine triphosphatase (GTPase) activity of Ras, thus accelerating the rate of inactivation of the GTP-bound form of Ras. Because the most common downstream effect of GTP-Ras is activation of the MAP kinase (ERK 1 and ERK 2) cascade, RasGAPs can be thought of as brakes on the MAP kinase pathway. How might the function of SynGAP be linked to the NMDA receptor? The RasGAP activity is strongly inhibited by phosphorylation of SynGAP by CaMKII, an early target of calcium flowing through the NMDA receptor. Hence, activation of the NMDA receptor may lead directly to inhibition of SynGAP and release of the brake on the MAP kinase pathway. An important missing link in this scheme is the nature of signaling pathways at glutamatergic synapses that can activate Ras. Possible candidates include Src or Fyn, which can activate Ras through the N-Shc adaptor protein, or the BDNF and Ephrin/EPH pathways (see Chapter 11). Postulated dendritic targets for regulation by MAP kinase include A-type K⁺ channels that modulate the sizes of EPSPs and of back-propagating action potentials and MAP2, which may mediate cellular remodeling.

Neuronal NOS, a Ca²⁺-activated form of NOS, can bind to PSD-95 through a class III PDZ domain interaction in which its own amino-terminal PDZ domain binds to a PDZ domain of PSD-95 (Sattler et al. 1999). Neuronal NOS is not abundant in the PSD fraction and is not expressed at high levels in pyramidal neurons. However, it is highly expressed in certain γ-aminobutyric acid-containing neurons, which also express members of the PSD-95 family. Therefore, PSD-95 may concentrate nNOS near the NMDA receptor at postsynaptic sites in these neurons.

Biochemical and pharmacological evidence indicates that a number of other signaling complexes are located in spines within or near the PSD. For example, AMPA receptors may be bound to their own unique set of signaling complexes. In addition, the cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) signaling pathway is implicated in the regulation of glutamatergic transmission. cAMP potentiates induction of LTP in the Schaeffer collateral pathway. The favored mechanism involves a regulatory cycle first postulated in liver and muscle and now well documented in dopaminergic transmission. Activated cAMP-dependent protein kinase phosphorylates a protein called Inhibitor-1 (DARPP-32 in the dopaminergic pathway). Upon phosphorylation, Inhibitor-1 becomes an inhibitor of protein phosphatase-1. This inhibition potentiates phosphorylation of proteins that can be dephosphorylated by protein phosphatase-1. In Schaeffer collateral synapses, the cAMP pathway ‘gates’ autophosphorylation of CaMKII and subsequent induction of LTP.

Phosphatase-1 and the cAMP-dependent protein kinase can be complexed with the NR1 subunit of the NMDA receptor by the scaffold protein Yotiao, a splice variant of a family of AKAP (A-kinase-associated protein) proteins that target the cAMP-dependent protein kinase to subcellular compartments (Westphal et al. 1999). Yotiao and a second AKAP, AKAP75/150, which targets protein kinase A (PKA), protein kinase C (PKC), and the Ca²⁺-dependent protein phosphatase calcineurin to dendritic
microtubules, can be detected by immunoblot in the PSD fraction and in immunopre-cipitates of the NMDA receptor. Their relatively low abundance in the PSD fraction suggests that they may be present in a subset of PSDs in the brain. Differential distribution of AKAPs could alter the forms of synaptic plasticity displayed by different synapses.

Pharmacological evidence also indicates that PKC and the MAP kinase pathway participate in postsynaptic regulation of synaptic plasticity at glutamatergic synapses. The structural basis for their localization in spines is not yet firmly established. Just as for protein kinases, appropriate location and regulation of protein phosphatases are crucial for proper metabolic control. The calcium-dependent protein phosphatase calcineurin is localized in dendritic spines, perhaps by AKAP75/150. Both Yotiao and the neurban/spinophilin family of proteins could target protein phosphatase-1 (PP1) to dendritic spines where it can dephosphorylate a variety of substrates. The ubiquitous protein phosphatase 2A (PP2A) is regulated and targeted by tissue-specific subunits; its brain-specific regulatory subunits have just begun to be studied.

7.1.3 Cytoskeletal proteins

The major cytoskeletal components in PSD are actin, α-actinin, spectrin, tubulin, and an homologue of the neurofilament NF-L subunit. A close link between cytoskeleton and glutamate receptors is present in PSD. In fact, the rundown of NMDA channel activity can be prevented by the presence of the microfilament-stabilizing drug, phalloidin. In addition, NMDA currents are increased in hippocampal neurons lacking gelsolin, an actin-severing protein. A direct molecular binding exists between α-actinin and C-terminal domains of NMDA receptor subunits (Wyszynski et al. 1999). Inside the PSD, also brain spectrin, or fodrin, are able to interact directly with NMDA receptor complex. Actin filaments bind directly to the PSD cytoplasmic face and associate with PSD components. The integrity of microfilament web secures the synaptic localization of ionotropic glutamate receptors; dissolution of microfilaments within the dendritic spines shifts a portion of NMDA clusters from a synaptic to a non-synaptic localization over a 24 h period.

7.1.4 Linker proteins

Linker proteins belong to a family of synaptic proteins homologous to the product of the Drosophila gene disc large and comprises four closely related proteins called PSD-95 protein family (sometimes also MAGUK proteins), each of which contains five protein-binding domains (Cho et al. 1992). Three amino-terminal PDZ (PSD-95, Discs-large, ZO-1) domains are followed by an SH3 domain and a GK domain homologous to yeast guanylate kinase but lacking enzymatic activity. The first and second PDZ domains bind tightly to the tails of the NR2 subunits of the NMDA receptor. The three PDZ domains each have slightly different binding specificities and can interact with a variety of different neuronal membrane proteins. The tight colocalization of NMDA receptors and PSD-95 at synapses and the abundance of both proteins
in the PSD fraction suggest that in the forebrain, many synaptic NMDA receptors are attached to the PDZ domains of PSD-95 or one of its family members.

Neuroligin is an adhesion molecule that is present throughout the soma and dendrites of many neurons and has been localized to the synaptic cleft and the postsynaptic density of some neurons. It has not been detected in substantial amounts in the PSD fraction; thus, its association with PSD-95 may be transient, or more easily disrupted, than that of other proteins by extraction with detergent during purification of the PSD fraction (Irie et al. 1997). Alternatively, it may associate with PSD-95 in a relatively small proportion of synapses. The recent finding that expression of neuroligin in heterologous cells can induce clustering of presynaptic vesicles in contacting axons suggests that neuroligin may help to induce synapse formation at potential postsynaptic sites that contain NMDA receptor-associated signaling complexes.

7.2 Functional interactions between PSD components

The vast array of cytoskeletal and regulatory proteins found in the PSD interact to constitute the glutamatergic postsynaptic signal transduction machinery, coordinating activity-dependent changes in postsynaptic structures, including LTP and LTD, the cellular bases for learning and memory. The picture emerging from studying these interactions is that these molecular components are essential for (i) clustering glutamate receptors just opposite to the presynaptic active zone, (ii) modulating glutamate receptor sensitivity, and (iii) inducing long-lasting modifications in preactivated synapses.

In PSD, NR2A and B subunits directly interact with PSD-95 (Kornau et al. 1995), and other members of the MAGUK family (Kim et al. 1996; Lau et al. 1996) through their intracellular extended COOH sequence. In particular, NR2A C-terminal motif tSDV is mandatory for efficient binding to PSD-95 PDZ domains (Bassand et al. 1999). The interaction with the PSD-95 protein family induces the clustering of the channel proteins, thus playing an important role in the molecular organization of NMDA receptors although more recent findings demonstrate that postsynaptic NMDA receptor clustering does not solely depend on PSD-95 family (Migaud et al. 1998). In addition, PSD-95 appears to be important in coupling NMDA receptor to biochemical intracellular pathways controlling bi-directional synaptic plasticity (Tezuka et al. 1999). Nevertheless, although it has been reported that the molecular interactions involving PSD-95 and the NMDA receptor are modified by pathological insults such as an ischemic challenge, the physiological conditions influencing association/dissociation of specific proteins to and from NMDA receptor are not yet fully understood. NR2 subunits are not solely associated to PSD-95: indeed the NMDA receptor complex has been also shown to bind αCaMKII (Strack and Colbran 1998; Leonard et al. 1999). Furthermore, the αCaMKII association to NR2A can be affected by activation of the NMDA receptor in vitro either by pharmacological tools or by induction of LTP. The increased αCaMKII binding to the receptor entails the
detachment of PSD-95 from tSDV-NR2A both in vitro and ex vivo (Gardoni et al. 2001). NR1, in turn, provides a direct link to cytoskeletal proteins through the interaction with α-actinin-2 and other two-filamentous proteins.

AMPA receptors have been found able to bind PDZ 4 and 5 domains of GRIP probably through GluR2/3 subunits; PDZ 1 and 7 domains of GRIP seem to be anchored to cytoskeletal elements (O’Brien et al. 1998). On the other hand, GluR1 associates specifically with another member of the PSD-95 family, SAP-97.

The PSD-95 protein family has another important role: they bind other PSD components such as enzymes and modulatory molecules. Indeed, PSD-95 binds neuronal NO synthase via a PDZ–PDZ interaction holding NOS in the appropriate position to sense the calcium influx through NMDA receptor channel opening. The third PDZ domain of PSD-95 binds SynGAP (Chen et al. 1998) providing a link between the NMDA receptor and the mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway.

### 7.3 Proposed functions of the PSD

Proposed functions for PSD proteins include regulation of adhesion between presynaptic and postsynaptic membranes, control of postsynaptic receptor clustering and function (Sheng and Kim 1996; Ziff 1997; Meyer and Shen 2000), and signal transduction in response to receptor activation (Kennedy 2000).

Study of the proteins of the PSD fraction provides a unique and useful view of the glutamatergic synapse. It has already contributed to the characterization of at least one major mechanism of assembly of postsynaptic machinery and promises to reveal others. The PSD is formed very early during synaptogenesis of the CNS and little is known about its precise role in synaptogenesis or in the medically important process of regeneration. The identification of its molecular constituents will permit studies of these issues.

Interestingly, it has been observed that synaptic activity affects PSD morphology, by inducing its perforation and duplication, indicating that long-lasting biochemical events triggered by glutamate receptors activation entail mechanisms influencing not only signal transmission but also structural remodeling of synaptic components, such as the PSD.

### 7.4 The PSD in synaptic plasticity

The AMPA and NMDA receptors display different topologic distributions in the postsynaptic membrane. Electron microscopy of immunogold-labeled synapses has shown that NMDA receptors tend to be clustered near the center of the synapse, while AMPA receptors are distributed more uniformly across the postsynaptic membrane. This difference may reflect association of the two receptor types with different subsynaptic structures. NMDA receptors and AMPA receptors show other differences at synapses. They are transported to synapses at different times during development.
(as measured for cultured primary neurons); and once installed at the synapse, they
differ in their ease of extraction by detergents, with the NMDA receptor being more
firmly attached. Furthermore, a significant proportion of excitatory synapses lacks the
AMPA receptor. This finding is important in view of the influences that one receptor
type can exert on the other receptor’s function. Opening of the NMDA receptor channel
requires cell depolarization, which may arise when currents flow through the AMPA
receptor. Thus, NMDA receptors may be inactive at synapses that lack functional AMPA
receptors, unless depolarization is provided by some other means, such as by depolar-
ization of a neighboring synapse that does contain functional AMPA receptors.

Recently synapses have been described that lack functional AMPA receptors, but for
which AMPA receptors may be activated by tetanic stimulation. This finding has led to
the formulation of the ‘silent synapse’ hypothesis. In this hypothesis, synaptic strength
is increased by recruitment of AMPA receptors to synapses that lack functional forms
of the AMPA receptor, a process sometimes called ‘AMPAfication.’ The hypothesis has
provoked much interest in the mechanisms that govern the abundance of functional
AMPA receptor at the synapse. Silent synapses are converted to ‘talking’ synapses by
tetanic stimulation of the sort that induces LTP. Ca²⁺ fluxes through NMDA receptors
following tetanic stimulation of silent synapses may induce biochemical pathways that
trigger synaptic plastic changes. This may lead in turn to AMPA receptor functional
activation. The mechanisms that govern AMPA receptor abundance at the synapse are
not known. Recently, it has been shown that the N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive fusion
(NSF) protein makes a specific complex with the GluR2 C-terminal domain. NSF is a
chaperonin, which modulates protein–protein interactions. Electrophysiologic studies
suggest that NSF function may be required to maintain AMPA receptor currents. NSF
plays an important role in dissociating SNARE protein complexes following vesicle
fusion with target membranes and may mediate protein interaction with GluR2,
although its precise role with the AMPA receptors is not yet known.

The rapid increase in our understanding of molecular and cell biologic features of
ionotropic glutamate receptors holds great promise for the field. We may anticipate a
corresponding increase in our grasp of receptor function in all respects, from the
molecular to the system levels.

7.5 PSD structure and pathophysiology of the CNS

From the studies described above, it has become increasingly evident that the PSD
structure in general, and ionotropic glutamate receptor complexes in PSD in particu-
lar, are intimately involved in the regulation of synaptic plasticity events. On the other
hand, recent findings showed a role for the macromolecular complex of the PSD in the
dynamic regulation of different insults in the brain. In fact, because many of the initial
events (i.e. activation of Glu receptors, Calcium influx, NOS activation) occur at/or in
the vicinity of the PSD this appears to be a likely site for the pathogenic biochemical
cascade that leads to neuronal cell death in numerous neurodegenerative disorders.
On this basis, several groups have described alterations of PSD structural organization in some models of CNS disorders.

### 7.5.1 Cerebral ischemia

In recent years, it has been shown that loss of calcium homeostasis may be an important mechanism of ischemic brain damage. Most of the studies focused on ischemia-induced changes in the PSD structure because of its temporal and spatial proximity to initial events which occur after an ischemic challenge. Changes in the composition and morphology of forebrain PSD have been reported to occur after an ischemic challenge. Ischemia has been shown to decrease CaMKII activity most likely due to selective post-translational modification of the enzyme leading to its inhibition (Aronowsky and Grotta 1996). In addition, molecular interactions involving PSD-95 are modified by an ischemic challenge, in the PSD of the most vulnerable CA1 region of the hippocampus. Ischemia also resulted in a decrease in the size of protein complexes containing PSD-95, but had only a small effect on the size distribution of complexes containing the NMDA receptor, indicating that molecular interactions involving PSD-95 and the NMDA receptor are modified by an ischemic challenge (Takagi et al. 2000). Furthermore, ischemia differentially affects the association of different tyrosine kinase with the PSD (Cheung et al. 2000): the level of PSD-associated PYK2 and trkB increased during the ischemic episode whether FAK levels decreased. Src and Fyn levels appear increased with a short delay after reperfusion.

### 7.5.2 Experimental models of impaired long-term potentiation and learning tasks

It has been mentioned previously that knock outs for CaMKII and protein tyrosine kinases abolish or impair certain forms of LTP and LTD, that induction of LTP promotes CaMKII activation (Barria et al. 1997) and constitutive activation of CaMKII changes the frequencies inducing LTP and LTD (Mayford et al. 1995). But there is also evidence that pathological changes of the CNS involving impairments of cognitive tasks and LTP have a counterpart in changes of CaMKII activity and NMDA receptor phosphorylation in the postsynaptic compartment.

### 7.5.3 Streptozotocin-diabetic rats

Moderate disturbances of learning and memory have been reported as a complication of diabetes mellitus in patients. In animal models of the diabetic pathology, such as the streptozotocin-diabetic rat, spatial learning impairments associated with changes in hippocampal synaptic plasticity have been reported, including an impaired expression of LTP and enhanced expression of LTD (Gispen and Biessels 2000). In situ hybridization histochemistry revealed that mRNA levels of NR2B in hippocampus of diabetic rats were reduced when compared to control rats (Di Luca et al. 1999). In addition, PSD-associated CaMKII activity as well as CaMKII-dependent phosphorylation of both NR2A and NR2B subunits of NMDA receptor were reduced in hippocampal PSDs of streptozotocin-diabetic rats as compared with controls.
7.5.4 Prenatal ablation of hippocampal neurons

To examine the implication of PSD proteins in synaptic plasticity an animal model characterized by developmentally induced targeted neuronal ablation within the cortex and the hippocampus and lack of long-term potentiation was used (Methylazoxymethanol treated rats; Cattabeni and Di Luca 1997). In this model the lack of long-term potentiation is due to a partial prenatal ablation of CA1 neurons, obtained by exposing embryos to the antiproliferative agent methylazoxymethanol acetate through their mothers at gestational day 15. The offsprings show a marked cellular ablation in the intermediate layers of the cortex and in the CA region of the hippocampus, in agreement with the neurogenetic gradient in rodents. Methylazoxy-methanol (MAM) treated rats develop normally, but in adulthood they show impairment of learning and memory. Interestingly, these neuroanatomical, behavioral, and electrophysiological abnormalities have their counterpart, at the molecular level, in a consistent increase of PKC localized in the membrane compartment of hippocampal synaptosomes (Di Luca et al. 1995; Caputi et al. 1996). As a consequence of the alteration in basal PKC translocation, a parallel increase in calcium-dependent glutamate release in MAM treated rats was observed (Di Luca et al. 1997). Moreover, long-term potentiation could be restored by D-serine (Ramakers et al. 1993), an agonist at the glycine site of NMDA receptors.

At the postsynaptic level, a marked decrease in CaMKII-activity and CaMKII-dependent phosphorylation of both NR2A and NR2B subunits of NMDA receptor are present when compared to controls, although the concentration of the enzyme in PSD is not altered (Caputi et al. 1999). The activity of CaMKII was reconstituted by incubating hippocampal slices with D-serine, a treatment previously shown to rescue long-term potentiation in MAM treated rats (Ramakers et al. 1993). D-serine acts as an agonist at the glycine site of NMDA receptors and, as mentioned previously, is able to prevent NMDA receptor desensitization in mouse hippocampal cultures (Vyklicky et al. 1990). These data taken together point to an important role of postsynaptic CaMKII activity in modulating synaptic plasticity through phosphorylation of NMDA receptors. Its physical association with NR2 subunits, as discussed above, places it in the core of the action responsible for the long-lasting changes associated with synaptic plasticity.

7.6 Conclusions

Progress in understanding the biochemical and structural basis of synaptic regulation has been rapid and exciting over the past few years. It has been fueled by the recognition among cell biologists that signaling specificity results from the formation of protein complexes that respond locally and discretely to signals from the membrane surface. A few synaptic signaling ‘machines’ have now been identified, but many more remain to be characterized before we unravel the intricacies of signal processing in the brain. We face two major challenges. The first is to understand to what extent the presence
and organization of signaling machinery varies among different synaptic types. This information is crucial because the complement of signaling complexes at a synapse determines the rules by which it integrates and encodes information. The second challenge is to understand how the different signaling pathways interact with and feed back on each other to maintain homeostasis while processing, integrating, and storing rapidly changing information. Efforts to meet this challenge will be aided by promising new strategies for creating and testing spatially accurate computer simulations of complex biochemical signaling machinery. We have come a long way toward understanding how synapses work, but we still have far to go.

References


### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AKAP</td>
<td>A-kinase-associated protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cAMP</td>
<td>cyclic adenosine monophosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMPA</td>
<td>1-alpha-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazole propionic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Cornu Ammonis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAM</td>
<td>Calmodulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaMKII</td>
<td>Ca2+/Calmodulin-dependent kinase II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS</td>
<td>Central Nervous System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GKAP</td>
<td>Guanylyl kinase associated protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRIP</td>
<td>Glutamate Receptor Interacting Protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTD</td>
<td>Long Term Depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>Long Term Potentiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGUK</td>
<td>Membrane-associated guanylyl kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAM</td>
<td>Methylazoxymethanol acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDA</td>
<td>N-methyl-D-aspartic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOS</td>
<td>Nitric oxide synthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSF</td>
<td>N-ethylmaleimide sensitive fusion protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDBu</td>
<td>Phorbol 12, 13-dibutyrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDZ</td>
<td>PSD-95 Discs-large ZO-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKA</td>
<td>Protein kinase A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKC</td>
<td>Protein kinase C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP1</td>
<td>Protein phosphatase 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP2A</td>
<td>Protein phosphatase 2A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSD</td>
<td>Post Synaptic Density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAM</td>
<td>Sterile alpha motif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAP</td>
<td>Synapse Associated Protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDS-PAGE</td>
<td>Sodium dodecylsulfate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SynGAP</td>
<td>Synaptic Ras-GTPase-activating protein</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This page intentionally left blank
8.1 Introduction

Fast synaptic transmission is crucial for real-time functioning of the brain. All the receptor molecules that mediate fast transmission events are also ligand-gated ion channels, i.e. they are ion channels that undergo allosteric structural changes on binding a particular neurotransmitter molecule, resulting in the opening of the channel, the entry of selected ions into the neuron and subsequent signalling events. Their primary function is to receive signal input at postsynaptic membranes, where some also play central roles in synaptic plasticity. However, they are also found in postsynaptic membranes outside synapses, and in presynaptic terminals (MacDermott et al. 1999), where they are involved in the control of transmitter release.

The neurotransmitters that mediate fast synaptic transmission through these receptors are: glutamate, γ-amino butyric acid (GABA), glycine, serotonin (5HT, 5-hydroxytryptamine), acetylcholine and ATP. Since most of these neurotransmitters also act on G-protein linked receptors, the terms ionotropic and metabotropic receptor are used, respectively, for ligand-gated ion channel receptors and G-protein linked receptors that are activated by a particular neurotransmitter. Fast excitatory transmission is mediated primarily by glutamate receptors throughout the CNS, while fast inhibitory transmission is mediated primarily by GABA receptors of type A (termed GABA(A) receptors; GABA(B) receptors are metabotropic, and GABA(C) receptors are ionotropic but have a very limited distribution) in the CNS and by glycine receptors in the spinal cord. The other types of receptors have more restricted distributions in the CNS, and are likely to act as modulators rather than as primary receivers of fast transmission information (Role and Berg 1996). The postsynaptic membranes of excitatory synapses involving glutamate receptors are characterized by an electron-dense 30–40 nm disc-like thickening termed the postsynaptic density, which is a subcellular microdomain that contains all the proteins involved in synaptic plasticity as well as simple information transfer (review: Sheng 2001). Postsynaptic membranes of inhibitory synapses do not show such a microdomain, although the receptors are also known to be part of a protein
complex. It appears that the excitatory and inhibitory protein complexes involving ligand-gated ion channel receptors are very, perhaps completely, different, since none of the proteins known to be involved in inhibitory protein complexes were detected among the proteomic analysis of the protein complex associated with the NMDA-type glutamate receptor (Husi et al. 2000).

All these receptors fall into three distinct molecular groups. All the proteins in each group are clearly evolutionarily related and each group probably derives from a single common ancestral gene and protein by gene duplication, genetic drift, and selection (Schofield et al. 1987). The three groups are: the glutamate receptors; the GABA(A) receptor group, traditionally exemplified for historical reasons by nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (nACh receptors; muscarinic acetylcholine receptors are G-protein linked) and P2X ATP receptors. The glutamate receptor group has three subdivisions, based historically on pharmacological distinctions but clearly reflecting both distinct molecular and functional categories. Because of the pharmacological classification, these subgroups of glutamate receptors have been named AMPA (affinity for \( \alpha \)-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methylisoxazole-4-propionate), KAIN (affinity for kainate), and NMDA (affinity for \( N \)-methyl-D-aspartate). The GABA(A)R or nAChR group consists of all types of GABA(A) receptors, GABA(C) receptors, all glycine receptors (GlyR), all types of neural and muscle nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, and the 5HT3 class of serotonin receptor. This group is sometimes called the Cys-loop superfamily, because they all have two conserved cysteine residues in the N-terminal extracellular domain, which form a disulfide bridge and define a subdomain, the Cys-loop. As an example of the degree of evolutionary relationship found, all GABA(A) subunit isoforms (e.g. \( \alpha_1 \), \( \alpha_2 \) etc.) exhibit >70% primary sequence identity, while different GABA(A)R subunits (e.g. \( \alpha_1 \), \( \beta_3 \), \( \gamma_2 \) etc.) show between 35% and 50% identity. The sequence identity to subunits of different receptors in the same family is, for example, 34% with the GlyR \( \alpha_1 \) subunit (Grenningloh et al. 1987) and 20% with the nAChR \( \alpha_1 \) subunit (Noda et al. 1983). Arbas et al. (1991) proposed that the acetylcholine-gated ion channel was first to diverge from the ancestral form, followed by the GABA/glycine receptor divergence. Subsequently, the primordial channel subunit gene of each class duplicated and diverged to give the current set of genes encoding subunit classes and subunit isoforms. Recent genomic sequence data shows that this divergence occurred a long time ago, since the fish Fugu has the same set of genes as man and rodents.

Molecular biological studies have established that each class of ion channel receptor is actually a complex set of multimeric molecules. While the final ion channels are tetrameric or pentameric (the number of subunits in P2X channels are unclear, but is at least three; Khakh 2001), there are more than four or five genes encoding subunits for each type of channel. There are, for example, seventeen genes in seven gene families encoding subunits of glutamate receptors (Dingledine et al. 1999), and sixteen genes for GABA(A) receptor subunits: six \( \alpha \), three \( \beta \), three \( \gamma \), and one each for \( \delta, \pi, \Theta, \) and \( \varepsilon \). The distinct subunit classes and subunit isoforms of each ion channel class have been identified, and the most important of these are shown in Table 8.1 (see also Boess and Martin 1995;
### Table 8.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receptor family</th>
<th>Number of genes</th>
<th>Selectivity and ions gated</th>
<th>Natural ligand</th>
<th>Pharmacology: agonists</th>
<th>Pharmacology: antagonists</th>
<th>Associated diseases and therapeutics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nAChR (neuronal)</td>
<td>α2-9 β2-4</td>
<td>Nonselective cation channel Na⁺ K⁺ Ca⁺⁺</td>
<td>Acetylcholine</td>
<td>Nicotine Cysteine</td>
<td>α-bungarotoxin Atropine (+)tubocurarine (channel block)</td>
<td>Targets for local anaesthetics, sedatives, and hallucinogenic drugs. Nicotine enhances attention, diminishes anxiety, improves acquisition and retention of short-term memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GABA(A)R</td>
<td>α1-6 β1-3(4) γ1-3(4) δ ε θ π</td>
<td>Anion channel Cl⁻ HCO₃⁻</td>
<td>γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA)</td>
<td>Muscimol</td>
<td>Bicuculline Flumenazil</td>
<td>Targets for anaesthetics and sedatives Anxiety Epilepsy Cleft palate Prader–Willi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GABA(C)R</td>
<td>ρ1-2</td>
<td>Anion channel Cl⁻ HCO₃⁻</td>
<td>Glycine</td>
<td>B-alanine Taurine Proline</td>
<td>Strychnine</td>
<td>Deficiency on GlyR leads to spasticity and loss of motor control. Mutations cause hyperekplexia, spastic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlyR</td>
<td>α1-4 β</td>
<td>Anion channel Cl⁻ HCO₃⁻</td>
<td>Glycine</td>
<td>B-alanine Taurine Proline</td>
<td>Strychnine</td>
<td>Deficiency on GlyR leads to spasticity and loss of motor control. Mutations cause hyperekplexia, spastic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5HT3R</td>
<td>5HT3</td>
<td>Nonselective cation channel Na⁺ K⁺ Ca⁺⁺</td>
<td>Serotonin (5HT, 5-hydroxytryptamine)</td>
<td>2-methyl-5-hydroxytryptamine</td>
<td>Zacopride Ondansetron Granisetron Tropisetron</td>
<td>Emesis (general) Anxiety Anti-nociceptive Anti-psychotic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Table 8.1 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receptor family</th>
<th>Number of genes</th>
<th>Selectivity and ions gated</th>
<th>Natural ligand</th>
<th>Pharmacology: agonists</th>
<th>Pharmacology: antagonists</th>
<th>Associated diseases and therapeutics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ATPR</td>
<td>P2X1-7</td>
<td>Nonselective cation channel Na⁺ K⁺ Ca²⁺</td>
<td>ATP</td>
<td>2-methyl-thioATP</td>
<td>Suramin Stilbene isothiocyanate (+)tubocurarine</td>
<td>Nociception Primary afferent neurotransmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GluR: NMDAR</td>
<td>NMDAR1 NMDAR2A-2D</td>
<td>Cation channel Na⁺ K⁺ Ca²⁺ Mg²⁺ voltage dependent channel block</td>
<td>Glutamate Glycine = co-agonist</td>
<td>NMDA Aspartate</td>
<td>D-AP5 MK801 (dizocilpine)</td>
<td>LTP/LTD Learning and memory Neuronal plasticity Kindling (epilepsy) Anxiogenesis Ischaemia damage (local)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GluR: AMPAR</td>
<td>GluR1-4</td>
<td>Cation channel Na⁺ K⁺ (Ca²⁺)</td>
<td>Glutamate</td>
<td>AMPA Domoate Quisqualate Kainate</td>
<td>NBQX CNQX Potentiators: Cyclothiazide Concanavalin A</td>
<td>LTP/LTD Learning and memory Neuronal plasticity Kindling (epilepsy) Anxiogenesis Ischaemia damage (global)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GluR: KAINR</td>
<td>GluR5-7 KA1-2</td>
<td>Cation channel Na⁺ K⁺ (Ca²⁺)</td>
<td>Glutamate</td>
<td>Kainate Domoate Quisqualate</td>
<td>NBQX CNQX NS-102 Potentiator: Concanavalin A</td>
<td>LTP/LTD Learning and memory Neuronal plasticity Kindling (epilepsy) Anxiogenesis Ischaemia damage (global)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CNQX, 6-cyano-7-nitroquinoxaline-2,3-dione; D-APS, D-2-amino-5-phosphopentanoic acid; mCPBG, meta-chloro-phenylbiguanide; NBQX, 6-nitro-7-sulfamobenzoxo-f-quinoxaline-2,3-dione; Ro15-4513, ethyl-8-azido-5,6-dihydro-5-methyl-6-oxo-4H-imidazo[1,5-a] [1,4] benzodiazepine-3-carboxylate; TBPS, t-butylicyclophosphorothionate.
Fredholm 1995; Lindstrom et al. 1995; McKernan and Whiting 1996 and Dingledine et al. 1999). The task of defining the functional ion channel receptor proteins that are found in particular neurons and at particular synapses is massive and complex, and is still at an early stage for technical reasons. However, great strides forward have been made towards understanding how these molecules are assembled, transported, and maintained at the synapse and other membrane sites.

The complexity of these molecules and their transmembrane location has made the study of structure–function relationships very difficult and slow. However, significant steps forward have been made recently with the determination of atomic structures of extracellular domains of both nAChR and GluR by X-ray crystallography, and the determination of overall nAChR structure to 4.6 Å by electron crystallography. Together with a myriad of site-specific mutagenesis, pharmacological and functional studies, these data provide a basis for new insights into the molecular basis of the key functions of these molecules — ligand recognition, ion permeation, gating, and desensitization.

We present an overview of current knowledge of the molecular biology of these receptors. Since we intend to illuminate principles rather than cover all receptors in detail, we will use as examples whichever receptor has yielded the most appropriate data in each area of molecular characterization.

8.2 The receptor molecules

Ligand-gated ion channel receptors are multimeric transmembrane proteins, composed of more than one type of subunit, i.e. they are heteromeric. A few native receptors are homomeric, such as the GABA(C) receptor which is homomeric for the ρ subunit, the foetal spinal cord GlyR, which is a homomeric Glyα2 molecule (Takahashi et al. 1992), and the P2X7 channel. Some subunits can be assembled into homomorphic receptors in cell culture or Xenopus oocytes (e.g. rat nAChR α9, GlyR α1, AMPA and kainate receptor subunits, all P2X subunits except P2X6), but this seems to occur rarely in vivo. NMDA glutamate receptor subunits do not form homomeric receptors, even artificially. Even in cell culture, subunits of a protein family will usually only assemble with a subunit of the same family.

Receptors of the nAChR/GABA(A) group are pentameric, with the five subunits in a quasi-symmetrical arrangement, based on data from Torpedo nAChR (Unwin 1989, 1993, 1995). Glutamate receptors were also thought to be pentameric for some time, but recent evidence (Schorge and Colquhoun 2003) has confirmed other studies (e.g. Laube et al. 1998) indicating that they are tetrameric. Electrophysiological studies indicate that P2X receptors are at least trimeric (Khakh et al. 2001). The molecules are built on a modular basis, with each subunit having a similar overall structure, together surrounding a central channel, providing extracellular binding sites for their neurotransmitters and other ligands, and intracellular structures for protein interaction and regulation.

The subunit composition of native receptors is difficult to determine precisely. In some cases, such as muscle nAChR, only one combination of subunits is found
but generally receptors of any given type occur with different combinations of subunits and subunit splice variants, even in the same cell. NMDA glutamate receptors always have one or more NR1 subunit splice variant combined with a variety of subunits of the NR2 class, usually at least two different ones. Schorge and Colquhoun (2003) showed that the subunit arrangement of NMDA receptors was 1,1,2,2 rather than alternating. Among AMPA receptors there are preferential associations of subunits, such as GluR2/GluR1 and GluR2/GluR3 in the hippocampus (Wenthold et al. 1996). GABA(A) receptors have the potential for immense diversity of subunit combinations (Whiting et al. 1995), but in vivo the diversity is significantly restricted, although more than twenty receptor subtypes (distinct subunit combinations) are known. The predominant GABA(A) stoichiometry is $2\alpha,\beta,2\gamma$, with mixtures of different $\gamma$ or $\alpha$ subunits occurring. The $\delta$, $\pi$, $\epsilon$ and $\theta$ subunits appear to replace $\gamma$ subunits. Predominant subunits in adults are $\alpha1,\beta2$, and $\gamma2$. GABA(A) receptors targeted to synapses always contain a $\gamma$ subunit, usually $\gamma2$, (or a $\gamma$-replacement subunit such as $\epsilon$), but pure $\alpha\beta$ receptors are found extrasynaptically.

Each subunit of the nAChR/GABA(A)R group has a large N-terminal extracellular domain, a series of four transmembrane segments called M1–4 with an extracellular loop between M2 and M3, and a short extracellular C-terminal sequence: intracellular parts of the receptor are the large loop between M3 and M4, where all protein–protein interaction and phosphorylation occurs, and the short M1–M2 loop (Fig. 8.1). In contrast, the glutamate receptor subunits only have three true transmembrane segments M1, M3, and M4, and a cytoplasm-facing re-entrant loop M2 which lines the channel (Fig. 8.1: Kuner et al. 1996, 2001). Thus glutamate receptor subunits have two major extracellular regions, the N-terminal segment and the M3–M4 loop. The primary intracellular sequence of these receptors for interaction with other proteins and intracellular regulation is the C-terminal segment, and there are also small intracellular M1–M2 and M2–M3 loops. The topology of ATP P2XR is the same as that of sodium channels, with two transmembrane segments, cytoplasmic amino and carboxy-terminal end domains, and an extracellular-facing re-entrant loop (Fig. 8.1). Correct topology is determined not only by the transmembrane domains, but also by charged residues flanking the transmembrane domains. For example, in the GlyR $\alpha1$ subunit, a cluster of six charged amino acids (RFRRKRR) in the M3–M4 loop is important for topology since neutralization of one or more of these charged residues (but not of charged residues elsewhere in the M3–M4 loop) leads to aberrant translocation of the M3–M4 loop into the ER lumen (Sadtlter et al. 2003).

### 8.3 Molecular diversity and its control

Each class of ligand-gated ion channel receptor is found in many neurons, and in order to fulfill the precise functional requirements in each cell type and circuit, great variety in the detailed action of the receptor is necessary. This is achieved by the generation of molecular diversity at several levels, and its control by gene regulation, assembly and delivery requirements and post-translational controls.
8.3.1 Genes and gene expression

All the ion channel receptor genes in man and the mouse are now known, given the completion of the DNA sequences of these species, and may be identified using the online resources at the National Centre for Biotechnology Information website (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov). Many were identified earlier by cDNA clone isolation, sequencing and cross-hybridization. Glencorse and Davies (1997) provide a list of the genes encoding common subunits, with their map locations, and many details are provided by Conley and Brammar (1999). The sets of gene families encoding an ion channel receptor correspond to the sets of protein subunits of the same functional class, while other subunits occur in classes with single members and single genes (e.g. GRIN1 encoding the NMDA glutamate receptor NR1 subunit). Thus there are gene families for the major \( \alpha \), \( \beta \), and \( \gamma \) subunit groups for GABA(A) receptors, and for the GluR1–4 (AMPA), GluR5–7 (Kainate), KA-1 and KA-2 (Kainate), and NR2A–D (NMDA) glutamate receptor subunits. In general the genes for each receptor class are scattered over many chromosomes, with occasional clusters, e.g. the human GABA(A) receptor \( \alpha 1 \), \( \alpha 6 \), \( \beta 2 \), and \( \gamma 2 \) genes are all close together at q31–35 on chromosome 5.

Ion channel receptor genes are standard eukaryotic genes containing introns. Gene structure can be conserved between genes encoding different subunits of the same functional class.
family, and even between families and species as for the mouse GABA(A) receptor δ-subunit gene (Sommer et al. 1990a) and the human β1-subunit gene (Kirkness et al. 1991). Thus the genes encoding glycine receptor subunits have remarkably similar genomic structures to GABA receptor genes, differing only in that they lack the intron that in GABA(A) receptor genes splits the exon that encodes the M2 transmembrane domain (Matzenbach et al. 1994). However, there is no conservation of the lengths of introns at any site, so that the size of a gene can vary significantly; e.g. the gene encoding the mouse GABA(A) receptor δ subunit is about 14 kb long, but the β1 subunit gene, which has the same intron–exon structure, is 65 kb long. In contrast to GABA(A) and glycine receptor genes, there is considerable variation in intron–exon structure among nACh receptor encoding genes. While the α2–α5 and β1–β3 subunit genes do all have the same pattern of six exons, the α7 encoding gene has ten exons, four of which are conserved with respect to other subunit genes, and the α9 subunit gene has five exons in a quite distinct pattern. The structure of the gene encoding the serotonin 5HT3 receptor most closely resembles the nACh receptor α7 gene, suggesting an evolutionary relationship.

Transcriptional control is the most fundamental of the processes ensuring that these molecules are present in neurons in the correct spatiotemporal pattern. The aspect of transcriptional control that has received most attention to date is its involvement in system establishment, such as the timing of gene expression during development, the mechanism of restriction of gene expression to neurons and types of neurons, and the regulation of receptor gene expression during synapse formation. However, little is known about the mechanism by which receptor gene expression responds to environmental signals impinging on an individual neuron. In addition to their role in maintaining information transfer, these mechanisms are of great importance for learning and memory, and for responses to exposure to artificial agonists or potentiator compounds (such as alcohol and benzodiazepines for GABA(A) receptors and nicotine for nACh receptors) leading to addictive behaviours.

As for all protein-encoding eukaryotic genes, ion channel receptor gene expression requires the assembly of a multiprotein core transcription complex composed of RNA polymerase II and auxiliary factors (Gill 1994). In many genes this complex binds at a sequence called the TATA box, which lies about 30 bp upstream of a transcription start, but many other genes do not have TATA boxes and use other initiator elements. The formation of the core complex on the TATA box is usually insufficient in vivo to reach physiological levels of transcription, and additional sequence-specific interactions of various transcription factors with cis-acting enhancer and silencer elements are required. There is a lot of evidence for a role for silencing in neurons, acting at two levels. First, there is global silencing of neuronal genes in non-neuronal cell types, and second there is silencing at a fine tuning level to restrict expression of neuronal genes to a subset of neurons. One sequence element that occurs in many neuron-specific genes and is involved in the inhibition of expression in non-neuronal cells is the neural restrictive silencer element (NSRE or NSR), also known as restrictive element-1 (RE-1)
(Grant and Wisden 1997). This sequence is recognized by a zinc finger transcription factor with homology to the GLI-Krüppel family (Schoenherr and Anderson 1995), and known as NSRF or REST. This protein is expressed in a wide range of non-neuronal tissues but is absent from fully differentiated adult neurons. There is evidence (Naruse et al. 1999) that NSRF acts in a complex with mSin3 to bind and activate histone deacetylase 1, indicating that NSRF-mediated silencing involves local deacetylation of histones. Neuronal cell-type specific expression is directed by a combination of multiple positive and negative regulatory cis-acting elements and their corresponding transcription factors. Many of these elements are found 5’ to the transcription start, but they can reside within introns as for the nestin gene (Zimmerman et al. 1994) or in the 3’ untranslated region. The details of these and their functional roles need to be determined separately for each gene.

Preliminary characterization of the 5’ flanking regions of a number of ion channel receptor subunit genes has been carried out, with the greatest effort on glutamate receptor genes. The NR1 (Bai and Kusiak 1995; Bai et al. 1998), NR2A (Desai et al. 2002), NR2B (Sasner and Buonanno 1996; Klein et al. 1998), NR2C (Suchanek et al. 1995, 1997), GluR1 (Borges and Dingledine 2001), GluR2 (Myers et al. 1998), and KA2 (Huang and Gallo 1997) glutamate receptor subunit genes have been studied. The promoters of these genes share several characteristics. They do not have TATA or CAAT sequences, they are GC-rich and have multiple transcription start sites within a CpG island. In most cases the promoters contain overlapping Sp1 and GSG recognition sites near the major transcription start sites, and an NSR silencer. Other regulatory sites are found, both up and downstream of the principal transcription start, in introns (Huang and Gallo 1997) and in exons (Tintrup et al. 2001). For several of these promoters, sequences from 800 bp down to 150 bp in length have been shown to confer neuron-specific expression in transgenic mice, but the mechanism of this specificity of expression is not understood. The NSR sequence in the NR1 and GluR2 genes has only a small modulatory effect with respect to neuronal specificity of expression (Bai et al. 1998; Myers et al. 1998). Indeed, the GluR2 NSR sequence is a site of mediation of the stimulatory effects on gene expression of the signalling pathways initiated by neurotrophic factors GDNF and BDNF (Brene et al. 2000), indicating a quite different role for this element in this gene at least. Sp1 elements have also been shown to play a role in neuronal specificity of expression of the glycine receptor β subunit gene (Tintrup et al. 2001).

Lüscher and coworkers (1997) used transgenic mouse lines carrying a lacZ gene driven by GABA(A)R δ subunit gene sequences to analyse promoter activity, showing that a 6.4 kb fragment determined correct adult but not developmental gene expression, and that in vitro a 267 bp minimal neuronal promoter could be defined. Mu and Burt (1999) studied promoter regions of the mouse and human GABA(A)R γ2 subunit genes. They showed that, like glutamate receptor genes, this gene had multiple transcription start sites (two of which are major), no TATA or CAAT box and a NRSE sequence, which lies within the first intron. In cell lines the NRSE played a role in
suppressing expression in non-neuronal cells, and a 24 bp portion of the 5′ UTR preferentially promoted expression in neuronal cell lines. Fuchs and Celepirone (2002) showed that the GABA(A) receptor α2 subunit gene has three promoter regions, each 5′ proximal to a different first non-coding (5′ UTR) exon. Two of these three promoters lack TATA or CCAAT boxes, and all have multiple transcription initiation sites.

There are several well-established switches of ligand-gated ion channel subunit gene expression during development. Examples are: the replacement of the nAChR foetal γ subunits by functionally homologous ε subunits in muscle cells; the switch from foetal expression of only GlyR α2 subunits to adult expression of only GlyR α1 and α3 subunits in the spinal cord, which underlies the differential strychnine sensitivity of neonates and adults because of the different strychnine affinities of the respective GlyR subtypes; and the switch from NR2B to NR2C glutamate NMDA receptor subunits in cerebellar granule cells about two weeks after birth. The molecular basis of these switches remains unknown.

A particularly important stage in nervous system development is the formation of functional synapses, and the induction of ligand-gated ion channel gene expression in response to growth cone arrival is an important component of synapse development. A clear example of this is the dependence of nAChR gene expression on agrin and other factors such as neuregulin. Both neuronal and muscle nAChR genes are not expressed in mice lacking a functional agrin gene (Gautam et al. 1996a), while rapsyn is essential for receptor clustering (Gautam et al. 1996b). Swope (2002) reviews the extensive knowledge of muscle AchR gene expression and assembly at the neuromuscular junction.

### 8.3.2 Alternative splicing

Alternative splicing is not very widespread among the RNA transcripts of ligand-gated ion channel receptors, but does occur, giving rise to further structural and functional diversity. There are several examples of differential localization of alternatively spliced mRNAs and of splice variant derived proteins, and of differential developmental timing of splice variants, indicating specific functional roles for some splice variants (e.g. Glencorse et al. 1992; Paupard et al. 1997; Weiss et al. 1998). However, in most cases the functional differences remain to be elucidated.

In some cases, alternative splicing controls the presence or absence of a short amino acid sequence that contains a phosphorylation site, and may thus confer different responsiveness to the regulatory and cellular localization effects of phosphorylation. For example, the splice variant α1ins of the GlyR α1 subunit has an 8 amino acid insertion containing a potential phosphorylation site, and the important γ2 subunit of GABA(A) receptors occurs in two splice variants that differ only in the presence (γ2L) or absence (γ2S) of a short 8 amino acid exon encoding a protein kinase C phosphorylation site.

The GABA(A) receptor α2 gene produces six alternatively spliced transcripts, differing only in the 5′UTR region (Fuchs and Celepirone 2002), with the differential
inclusion of all or part of three alternative non-coding exons, which have both internal and external splice donor sites. The multiple promoters and splice variants of the transcripts from this gene may enable differential activation and subunit delivery in various cell types during development, when this gene is primarily expressed.

Each of the four AMPA glutamate receptor subunits occurs in two alternatively spliced versions, called flip and flop. These correspond to the alternative inclusion of either of two adjacent exons (exons 14 and 15 in the GluR2 gene), which lie just N-terminal to the M4 transmembrane domain (Sommer et al. 1990b; Monyer et al. 1991). In this case there is good evidence for a functional difference: the flip forms of most subunits desensitize more slowly and to a lesser extent than the flop forms, and this process is affected differentially by various pharmacological agents (Dingledine et al. 1999). C-terminal splice variants are also found in AMPA genes GluR2 and GluR4 and in all the kainate receptor subunits. It is thought that alternative splicing at the C-terminus may influence intracellular targeting via altered interactions with targeting proteins. There is a PDZ protein recognition site (S/TXV/L) right at the C-terminus: in GluR1 this sequence is TGL. The intracellular C-terminal sequence is known to play an important part in determining cycling of AMPA receptors in and out of the synapse, as discussed below. The NR1 subunit of glutamate NMDA receptors has three alternatively spliced exons, resulting in eight splice variants. Variants involving different combinations of the two C-terminal exons have different receptor clustering properties (the C1 exon interacts with neurofilaments and the yotiao protein (Ehlers et al. 1998; Lin et al. 1998)), while only NR1 variants with the C2′′ cassette interact with the postsynaptic density. Recombinant NR1 receptors lacking exon 5 show different Zn⁺⁺ and proton sensitivity: when expressed without NR2 subunits Zn⁺⁺ potentiates, but when expressed with NR2 subunits Zn⁺⁺ blocks these receptors at a lower concentration compared with NR1exon5 receptors.

8.3.3 RNA editing

Nascent mRNAs transcribed from genes of members of the glutamate AMPA and kainate gene families (only) are subject to the process of RNA editing (Seeburg 1996), whereby selected adenosine residues are oxidatively deaminated to inosine. Inosine effectively base pairs like guanosine, thus changing the codon and resulting in the insertion of a different amino acid in the translated protein. RNA editing is carried out by either or both of two dsRNA adenosine deaminase enzymes ADAR1 and 2, previously known as dsRAD and RED1 (Rueter et al. 1995), and depends on the formation of double-stranded structures involving an intronic sequence (ECS: editing complementary site) which base pairs with the exonic sequences to be edited (Higuchi et al. 1993: Fig. 8.2). Other unknown protein factors have been implicated because some cells express the ADAR enzymes but cannot edit (Lai et al. 1997).

There are four sites of RNA editing. In the AMPA GluR2, GluR5, and GluR6 mRNAs, editing at the Q/R site (Fig. 8.2a) results in the replacement of a glutamine codon...
(CAG) by an arginine codon (CIG = CGG) and the insertion of Arg (R) into the M2 transmembrane domain. The AMPA GluR2, 3 and 4 mRNAs also undergo editing at the R/G site in exon 13, just N-terminal to the flip-flop region of alternative splicing (Fig. 2b).

The other two editing sites occur in mRNAs of the kainate receptor subunits GluR5 and GluR6. These sites are known as the I/V and Y/C sites, and both result in amino acid substitutions in the M1 transmembrane domain.

GluR2 with R at the Q/R site in M2 has low calcium permeability, low single channel conductance, and linear rectification properties (Hume et al. 1991; Verdoorn et al. 1991; Swanson et al. 1996). In KAIN receptors, Q/R site editing in GluR6 also controls anion permeability (Burnashev et al. 1996). R/G site editing in GluR5 and 6 has been shown to reduce desensitization and speed up recovery (Lomeli et al. 1994).

These functional properties are important — indeed the R insertion at the Q/R site is essential for life. Concomitantly, this is the most extensively edited site, with editing levels over 99% in rat GluR2 AMPA receptor mRNA after day E14 of gestation. Removal of the ECS reduced the efficiency of Q/R site editing by about 25%, and resulted in epilepsy and premature death (Brusa et al. 1995). It is not clear that the unedited Q form has any remaining role, since mice made permanently R were phenotypically normal (Kask et al. 1998). It is not clear why a mutation has not evolutionarily replaced the need for Q/R editing in GluR2. The introduction of an arginine residue has two important functional effects: it makes the AMPA receptors impermeable to calcium, which is critical because it limits excitotoxicity; and it determines a new

Fig. 8.2 RNA editing of the GluR2 pre-mRNA. (a) Q/R editing: The pre-mRNA is edited at the Q/R site and other sites (+4, +60 and +262 -4) in exon 11 and intron 11. (b) R/G editing at this and the -1 site in exon 13. Editing at all sites involves the oxidative deamination of adenosine to inosine. Editing frequencies at the site shown and other low-frequency sites vary with experimental conditions. Edited As are indicated by triangles and by bold letters in the corresponding nucleotide sequence. Small open circles indicate Watson-Crick or G:U base pairing. Reprinted with permission from *Nature* vol, 380, pp. 391-392. © 1996 Macmillan magazines Ltd.
endoplasmic reticulum retention signal, which must be masked by the assembly of GluR2 with a different subunit, thus driving the formation of heteromeric receptors (Greger et al. 2002). The extent of editing is lower at the other sites, resulting in a large number of functional variants. Editing at these sites increases gradually during development, reaching levels in the adult of between 50% and 80% depending on the subunit and species studied.

Q/R editing of kainate receptor subunits is not so extensive, and is subject to developmental regulation. For example, only about 50% of GluR5 transcripts are edited in the adult rat brain (Sailer et al. 1999), while both GluR5 and GluR6 are unedited in the rat embryo with editing setting in before birth (Bernard and Khrestchatisky 1994). There is also regional regulation of the extent of kainate receptor editing in the brain, and significant changes in editing occur after seizures (Grigorenko et al. 1998; Bernard et al. 1999). Vissel et al. (2001) generated mice deficient in GluR6 Q/R site editing by deleting the intronic ECS site. In these mice, NMDA receptor-independent long-term potentiation (LTP) could be induced at the medial perforant path–dentate gyrus synapse. This does not occur in the wild-type, indicating that GluR6 editing suppresses this mechanism of synaptic plasticity, and that regulation of editing will result in differences in LTP. In addition, it was shown that mice deficient in editing were more susceptible to seizures, so that Q/R edited GluR6 is important for the suppression of seizure occurrence.

8.3.4 Translational control

In vitro experiments have shown that regulation of the NR2A and GluR2 subunits of glutamate receptors can occur at the level of translation. Many of the glutamate receptor RNAs possess quite long stretches of 5’ UTR upstream of at least some transcription start sites e.g. 772 bp upstream of the major start site in NR2C mRNA (Suchanek et al. 1995). For NR2A mRNA it has been shown that removal of a 15 bp sequence in the 5’ UTR that is involved in a putative stem-loop structure resulted in significant disinhibition of translation in rabbit reticulocytes and Xenopus oocytes (Wood et al. 1996). In NR2A and GluR2 mRNAs, removal of most of the upstream 5’ UTR resulted in about 100 fold and 30–60 fold disinhibition, respectively (Wood et al. 1996; Myers et al. 1998). Translational suppression of GluR2 mRNA was largely due to a broad region containing a repeat sequence near the 5’ end of the mRNA, which may affect various transcription start sites differentially. The alternative AUG start codons upstream of the major start site did not play a large role in either mRNA. Translational suppression is likely to involve specific mRNA secondary structure and proteins as yet unknown.

It is not known how widespread this phenomenon is among ligand-gated ion channel subunits. However, it is clear that levels of protein subunits should not necessarily be inferred from levels of mRNA. Most importantly, translational disinhibition is a potentially powerful way to deliver large amounts of a receptor subunit quickly to a synapse, since large amounts of mRNA can be held locally in the inactive form until required.
8.3.5 **Post-translational modification**

Ligand-gated ion channel subunits are extensively phosphorylated and glycosylated. These post-translational modifications play important roles in receptor assembly and delivery, and in the case of phosphorylation, a myriad of function modulation roles (reviewed by Dingledine *et al.* 1999; Swope *et al.* 1999). These receptors are phosphorylated by protein kinase A (PKA: cAMP-dependent protein kinase), protein kinase C (PKC) and calcium/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II (CAMKII), while tyrosine phosphorylation also occurs, probably by a variety of tyrosine kinases such as Src (GABA(A)R γ2 subunit: Brandon *et al.* 2001). Tyrosine phosphorylation has been implicated in the clustering of nACh receptors.

All phosphorylation sites on nAChR and GABA(A)R have been mapped to the large intracellular loop between transmembrane domains M3 and M4, in agreement with the standard topology model. For glutamate receptors, most of the phosphorylation events occur in the intracellular C-terminal domain. The situation with glutamate receptor phosphorylation was confused for some time because of reports that PKA, PKC, and CAMKII phosphorylation occurred in the loop between M3 and M4, which must now be regarded as incorrect. For many years, glutamate receptors were expected to have the same topology as nAChR and GABA(A)R, but subsequently it became clear that this was not so, and that the M3–M4 loop was extracellular and thus very unlikely to be phosphorylated. There had been early reports of non-phosphorylation of this loop by PKA (Moss *et al.* 1993; Tan *et al.* 1994) which are now seen to be correct, and it has now been shown that the putative M3–M4 CAMKII phosphorylation site at Ser627 is not actually phosphorylated (Yakel *et al.* 1995; Roche *et al.* 1996). In fact, Ser831 in the C-terminus of GluR1 is the site of CAMKII action (Roche *et al.* 1996; Mammen *et al.* 1997). Thus current evidence for the location of actual rather than potential phosphorylation sites is in agreement with the membrane topology models for these receptors.

Clear effects of phosphorylation state on channel function or delivery have been found in a number of cases. PKA phosphorylation potentiates native AMPA receptors in cultured neurons, apparently by increasing channel open time (Greengard *et al.* 1991) or the probability of the channel open state. Early evidence showed that phosphorylation of AMPA receptors by CAMKII and probably PKC is generated by electrical stimulation that induces LTP. Phosphorylation of AMPA receptors by CAMKII correlates temporally with increasing synaptic responses mediated by AMPA receptors (Barria *et al.* 1997). Thus phosphorylation by CAMKII (at least) is very likely to play a role in synaptic plasticity.

One role that has emerged is activity-dependent recruitment of glutamate receptor subunits to the synapse. AMPA receptors are heterooligomeric proteins formed by combinations of the subunits GluR1,2,3, and 4. These subunits have either long (GluR1 and GluR4) or short cytoplasmic tails. Receptors with only short cytoplasmic termini cycle continuously in and out of the synapse, while those with long cytoplasmic termini are driven into synapses by strong synaptic activity (Hayashi *et al.* 2000; Zhu *et al.* 2000; Passafaro *et al.* 2001; Shi *et al.* 2001). GluR1-containing receptors are
driven into synapses by LTP or CAMKII activity (Shi et al. 1999; Hayashi et al. 2000). However, the CAMKII effect is mediated indirectly through phosphorylation of proteins other than GluR subunits (Hayashi et al. 2000), since mutations in the CAMKII site of the GluR1 subunit do not block. Recent work by Esteban et al. (2003) has shown that PKA phosphorylation of the AMPA receptor subunits GluR1 and GluR4 does directly control the incorporation of AMPA receptors containing these subunits into synapses. They showed that in organotypic slices of rat hippocampus, activity-dependent PKA phosphorylation of GluR4 was necessary and sufficient to relieve a retention interaction and drive receptors into synapses. If the GluR4 PKA site at Ser842 is deleted, the receptor is incorporated into synapses in an activity-independent manner. An explanation is that the hydroxyl group of Ser842 is necessary for retention of the receptor away from the synapse by association with unknown factors, and that phosphorylation by PKA breaks this interaction, liberating the receptor. The situation with GluR1 receptors is different. In this case the evidence suggests that PKA phosphorylation at Ser845 (the equivalent residue to Ser842 in GluR4) is necessary but not sufficient for receptor incorporation, and that CAMKII activity, working through an independent pathway not involving GluR1 phosphorylation, is required as well. There is evidence that PDZ-domain proteins are important for AMPA receptor delivery, and that the CAMKII effect works via these proteins. Thus, when GluR1 subunits with a mutation in the PDZ recognition sequence in the C-terminal tail were expressed in hippocampal slice neurons, the CAMKII effect on synaptic response amplitude and rectification were completely blocked (Hayashi et al. 2000).

It is now clear that ion-channel receptors are found in large molecular complexes, together with the signalling enzymes that regulate their activity. The efficiency of phosphorylation (and dephosphorylation) is dependent on the formation of these complexes, so that proteins that enable complex formation are often found to stimulate receptor phosphorylation and its functional consequences. For glutamate receptors the MAGUK protein PSD-95/SAP97 is important for clustering, while AKAPs (A-kinase anchoring protein) such as AKAP 79/150 anchor kinases and phosphatases to the complex. Phosphorylation of AMPA receptors is enhanced by a SAP97–AKAP79 complex that directs PKA to GluR1 (Colledge et al. 2000). AKAP 79/150 has also been shown to be critical for PKA-mediated phosphorylation of GABA(A)R subtypes containing a β1 or β3 subunit (Brandon et al. 2003). Similarly, PKC phosphorylation of GABA(A)R at Ser409 in β subunits is stimulated by the PKC targeting protein RACK-1, which binds to β subunits of the receptor at a different site from PKC (Brandon et al. 2002). This phosphorylation event is increased by activation of G-protein linked acetylcholine receptors, providing a molecular basis for functional receptor cross talk.

The extracellular regions of all ligand-gated ion-channel receptors are glycosylated, with both N- and O-glycosylation occurring (e.g. GABA(A)R α5, Sieghart et al. 1993). In glutamate receptors glycosylation occurs on the N-terminal extracellular domain and on the M3–M4 loop. AMPA receptors contain 4–6, kainate receptors 8–10, and NMDA receptors 6–12 glycosylation sites (Everts et al. 1997). Indeed, about 20 kD of
the 120 kD NR1 and 180 kD NR2 proteins is carbohydrate, and 10 kD of the other
NR2 subunits (Kawamoto et al. 1995a; Laurie et al. 1997), and glutamate receptors are
major glycoproteins of the postsynaptic density (Clark et al. 1998). The carbohydrate
side-chains on glutamate receptors are predominantly neutral oligosaccharides, 50 %
of which are oligomannosidic glycans with from 5 to 9 mannoses and Man 5 being the
major glycan, and much or the rest is complex oligosaccharides (Clark et al. 1998).

Glycosylation has been shown to increase the efficiency of receptor assembly and
cell-surface delivery of GABA(A) receptors (Connolly et al. 1996), but it is not essen-
tial for these processes. It is strongly required for ER exit of assembled GlyR (Griffon
et al. 1999) and nAChR (Gehle and Sumikawa 1991), and it appears that glycosylation
plays a similar quality control role for all receptors. Apart from this, there does not
seem to be a clear general role for glycosylation, with effects varying from protein to
protein and dependent on the cellular system used to study the effects. In addition to
protein trafficking, effects of glycosylation have been observed on ligand-binding
affinity, channel function, and susceptibility to allosteric modulation (reviewed for
glutamate receptors by Standley and Baudry 2000). Considerable attention has been
given to the proposal that N-glycosylation is required for the formation of functional
ligand-binding sites, because of the conservation of glycosylation sites (e.g. AMPA
receptors have two conserved N-glycosylation sites in the ligand-binding domains)
and other evidence (e.g. Kawamoto et al. 1995b). However, unglycosylated extracel-
lar domains of GluR2 were crystallized successfully with kainate bound (Armstrong
et al. 1998), and mutant GluR4 receptors with the conserved glycosylation sites at
N407 and N414 eliminated showed no differences in ligand-binding properties,
channel properties, or indeed surface delivery (Pasternack et al. 2003). However,
lectins like ConA do have modulatory effects on channel properties that depend
on binding to carbohydrate side chains (Everts et al. 1997), which must exert some
influence on protein function.

There have also been reports of palmitoylation (Pickering et al. 1995), and calpain
proteolysis (Bi et al. 1997, 1998), but the functional relevance of these modifications is
unknown.

8.4 **Receptor assembly and trafficking**

Assembly of ligand-gated ion channels is a multistep process, involving folding
reactions and post-translational modifications following polypeptide synthesis and
insertion into the endoplasmic reticulum. This process displays strict selectivity in that
only certain combinations of subunits are oligomerized and targeted to the plasma
membrane via the Golgi. All ligand-gated ion channel polypeptides have N-terminal
signal sequences that direct ER insertion. Protein folding occurs with the assistance of
chaperone proteins, such as calnexin for nAChR subunits (Gelman et al. 1995) and BiP
and calnexin for GABA(A) receptor subunits (Connolly et al. 1996). Association
between N-terminal domains may be initiated before folding is complete in some
cases, occurring as chaperone molecules like calnexin dissociate (Gelman et al. 1995). Assembly is driven by specific interactions between the ER-internal (extracellular) domains of different subunits, leading to correct stoichiometry and nearest-neighbour relationships. Each receptor assembles through a series of assembly intermediates. These have been reasonably well characterized for the muscle nAChR, which is a single molecular subtype with four subunits in the stoichiometry \(\alpha,\alpha,\beta,\gamma,\delta\). The conformationally mature \(\alpha\) subunit oligomerizes with either of the \(\delta\) or \(\gamma\) subunits to form \(\alpha\delta\) or \(\alpha\gamma\) heterodimers. These then associate with one another and the \(\beta\) subunit to form \(\alpha_2\beta\gamma\delta\) complexes (Blount et al. 1990; Gu et al. 1991). Other evidence has suggested that \(\alpha\beta\gamma\) trimers form and recruit first \(\delta\) and then the final \(\alpha\) subunit (Green and Claudio 1993). For Gly receptors (Griffon et al. 1999) the \(\alpha\) subunits are able to form homomeric receptors when expressed by themselves, but the \(\beta\) subunit cannot. The presence of \(\beta\) subunits overrides the homomeric \(\alpha\) assembly, and only receptors with the stoichiometry \(\alpha_3\beta_2\) are assembled, via \(2(\alpha\beta) + \alpha\). Particular N-terminal amino acid sequences, called assembly boxes, and subunit surface structures are important for these intersubunit interactions. Analysis of an assembly box in GABA(A) receptor \(\alpha_1\) subunits (Bollan et al. 2003) showed that amino acids 57–68 are required absolutely for assembly of \(\alpha\beta\) receptors, and that the motif GKER in subunit \(\beta_3\) is able to direct assembly of \(\beta\gamma\) receptors. Using site-directed mutagenesis and expression in Xenopus oocytes, Griffon et al. (1999) identified eight amino acid residues within the N-terminal region of the GlyR \(\alpha_1\) subunit that are required for the formation of homomeric channels. Some of these residues, and some of those known to be important for nAChR assembly (Kreienkamp et al. 1995) also occur in the intersubunit interface, but otherwise there is no correlation between the assembly boxes of different receptor families. These parts of the N-terminal domain have diverged to gain specificity, while the ligand-binding regions retain structural similarities (Devillers-Thiéry et al. 1993).

Another crucial level of sorting occurs between the ER and the plasma membrane, and only certain combinations of subunits are able to make this passage. This is driven by interactions between sequences on the receptor subunits and accessory proteins. Exit from the ER is also subject to a quality control step involving recognition of glycosylation of certain sites in the N-terminal domain. GlyR \(\alpha_1\) mutant subunits that are not glycosylated are retained in the ER (Griffon et al. 1999), and are rapidly degraded. This glycosylation-dependent exit applies to all receptors of this superfamily at least, although the stringency may vary. There are also ER retention signals in some subunits. The best example is the AMPA GluR2 subunit, where Q/R editing introduces an arginine at position 607, creating an ER retention signal. This has to be masked by assembly with other subunits to allow exit from the ER (Greger et al. 2002).

As they move from ER to Golgi and on to the plasma membrane, the receptors become associated with proteins that play key roles in targeting the receptors to the correct sites in the cell (reviewed by Connolly, this volume Chapter 4; Chapters on each ion-channel receptor family in Moss and Henley 2002; Kittler and Moss 2001;
Sheng and Lee 2001; Malinow and Malenka 2002; Kneussel 2002). An example of such a protein is GABARAP (GABA(A) receptor associated protein), which is found primarily at transport sites in the Golgi, interacts with NSF (N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive fusion protein), and plays a key role in synaptic vesicle fusion with target membranes. GABARAP associates specifically with γ subunit proteins of GABA(A) receptors, primarily γ2 which is the most common, and is also able to bind tubulin. Thus GABARAP probably selects vesicles with γ2-containing GABA(A) receptors and enables transport along microtubules to the synapse. GABA(A) receptors lacking a γ subunit are localized extrasynaptically, and must use a different molecular mechanism for transport. The AMPA receptor subunit GluR2 also interacts with NSF, this time directly. The stargazin protein plays a key role in AMPA receptor delivery, both to the plasma membrane in general, and via a PDZ-binding domain, in handing over receptors to the synapse complex. These transport processes are linked to receptor recycling and storage, and are regulated by signalling pathways acting through PKC and tyrosine kinases. It is to be expected that there is a specific component to each receptor family and mode of transport. Membrane delivery can be direct to the synapse, as for GABA(A) receptors containing γ subunits and for GluR2, or indirectly via random surface delivery followed by capture at the synapse or delivery to the synapse via clathrin vesicles and sorting endosomes, as for GluR1-containing glutamate receptors.

At the synapse, ligand-gated ion channel receptors are held in a dynamic relationship (30–40 % of synaptic GABA(A) and AMPA receptors are capable of lateral diffusion) with a protein complex by multiple interactions, with certain proteins playing key roles in receptor clustering and retention. The best characterized of these are gephyrin, the GlyR clustering protein, and rapsyn, the nAChR clustering protein. Rapsyn associates with the intracellular M3–M4 loop of nAChR (Unwin 1993), and mediates the action of the agrin-stimulated signalling pathway that drives nAChR into synapses (Gautam et al. 1996). GlyR and AMPA receptors have been shown in tracking experiments (Meier 2001; Borgdorff and Choquet 2002) to alternate between periods of movement in the membrane and of relative immobility at cluster sites together with the clustering protein.

Once at the synapse, the receptors become involved in extensive protein complexes with scaffolding proteins, signal transduction proteins, and cytoplasmic anchoring proteins linked to the cytoskeleton. This complex is particularly striking for excitatory synapses, where it is termed the post-synaptic density (review: Sheng 2001). NMDA receptors are relatively more fixed components of the synaptic complex than AMPA receptors, which move in and out all the time. These two families of glutamate receptor are involved in distinct protein sub-complexes. These differential protein interactions underlie the differential regulation of synaptic targeting of AMPA and NMDA receptors. PSD-95, a MAGUK family protein with multiple PDZ domains, binds the ESDV or ESEV motif in the intracellular C-terminal tails of NMDA receptor subunits, anchors the receptor to the cytoskeleton and couples the receptor to cytoplasmic...
signalling pathways such as calcium signalling acting via neuronal nitric oxide synthase, and also to adhesion molecules, receptor tyrosine kinases and ion channels. The NMDA synaptic complex has been isolated and studied by proteomic approaches (Husi et al. 2000).

Receptors are also removed from the cell surface and from synapses, and this is used to regulate responsiveness to environmental signals as well as for receptor husbandry. This typically occurs by the signalled recruitment of adaptor proteins, e.g. AP-2, arrestin, ubiquitin. These then recruit clathrin, which instigates membrane invagination and endocytosis, forming early endosomes. From there, receptors can be recycled rapidly to the plasma membrane or delivered to a late endosome for sorting; after sorting receptors may be recycled via the trans-Golgi network to the plasma membrane, or sent to lysosomes for degradation. These trafficking events all require protein–protein interactions, most of which have not been discovered. One possible example is the interaction of GABA(A) receptors with Plic-1, which only binds α and β subunits. Plic-1 is required for maintenance of cell surface receptor levels, but may achieve this indirectly by protecting receptors from degradation, either by blocking ubiquitination or by channelling them into recycling. All of these trafficking events are subject to regulation. For example, αβγ-containing GABA(A) receptors recycle continuously between plasma membrane and internal compartments, and are routed through a late endosomal compartment, from which they can be recruited rapidly by insulin stimulation via tyrosine kinase activity, which can be blocked by PKC activation (Connolly, this volume Chapter 4).

8.5 3D Structure and the molecular basis of receptor properties

Knowledge of the 3D structure of ligand-gated ion channels is fundamental to understanding the properties of these important molecules, and how to modulate those properties with drugs. However, their complexity, the fact that they are membrane proteins, and some mistaken assumptions, notably that all such receptors would resemble the nAChRs, have made progress slow. Nevertheless, very significant progress has been made recently. In this brief discussion we will base our statements on physical data or 3D modelling data wherever possible, rather than on the immense body of site-directed mutagenesis and chimaeric receptor data. Effects of amino acid substitutions can be specific local effects of the amino acid exchange and/or effects on overall structure, and we have no way of deciding which pertains. It is helpful when considering the structure of nAChR and GluR to view each subunit as having a modular structure, with the extracellular module forming the agonist-binding site and directing subunit assembly, and a membrane/C-terminal module that forms the ion channel and links to intracellular structures and regulatory processes. Support for the modular concept is provided by the generation of functional chimeras between the GABA(C) ρ subunit
extracellular domain and the glycine receptor membrane-spanning domain (Mihic et al. 1997), and between 5HT3 and nAChR α7 subunits (Eisele et al. 1993).

8.5.1 nACh receptor group structure

The nAChR is still assumed, probably correctly, to be a prototype for all receptors of the Cys loop, nAChR/GABA(A)R superfamily. Many years of electron crystallographic work by Unwin and coworkers on tubular crystals of Torpedo postsynaptic membranes, which are spectacularly enriched in a lower vertebrate nAChR, has given us an overall picture of the distribution of peptide backbone and side-chain densities throughout an entire receptor down to 4.6 Å resolution, and provided a framework for the interpretation of all other experiments (Unwin 1989, 1993, 1995, 1996; Miyazawa et al. 1999). More precise information about the structure of the extracellular domains of nAChR class receptors was obtained by the determination by X-ray crystallography of the 3D atomic structure of an acetylcholine-binding protein from glial cells of the snail Lymnaea stagnalis (AchBP; Brejc et al. 2001; post-structure review, Karlin 2002), and by the fitting of the electron data to the crystal structure (Unwin et al. 2002).

The nAChR is a large (~290 kDa) glycoprotein with five ~160 Å long rod-shaped subunits. The five subunits are arranged around a pseudo 5-fold axis, form a cation-selective pathway across the membrane when the channel is open, and form a robust barrier to ions when it is closed. The clockwise order of the subunits in the Torpedo receptor is γαβδα. The two α subunits are identical in sequence but slightly different in structure when assembled into the mature receptor. They are termed α(γ), which lies between γ and β, and α(δ) respectively. The cation-conducting pathway lies centrally along the axis of the receptor for most of its length. There are ~20 Å wide vestibules on either side of the membrane, and the pore is open and gets gradually wider towards the extracellular side, but is closed off at the cytoplasmic end both by the combined M3–M4 cytoplasmic loops and by the accessory protein rapsyn.

The primary feature of the cytoplasmic portion of each subunit is a 30 Å α-helical rod. The five rods come together beneath the receptor to form an inverted pentagonal cone. Thus cytoplasmic ions cannot access the cation channel directly, but must pass through narrow transverse openings, which are about 15 Å long and not more than 8 Å wide in order to access the channel: extracellular ions must take this route in reverse. The two major openings lie between the 30 Å α-helical rods of the α(δ) and δ subunits and between the α(γ) and β subunits. The amino acids lining these channels may play a role in cation selectivity. A conserved α-helical region (which is likely to be part of the 30 Å rod) in the M3–M4 loop near to M4 contains a set of charged amino acids. These amino acids are negatively charged in nAChR subunits but positively charged in GlyR subunits, and the overall net charge of the M3–M4 loop is negative for cation–conducting receptors and positive for the anion-conducting glycine and GABA(A) receptors. About 40 Å from the cytoplasmic membrane surface the pentagonal features cease to be discernable, and the remainder of the density is due to bound rapsyn.
The gate in the receptor is of particular interest. In the closed state, a narrow strip of density can be seen to close the pore. This is close to the middle of the membrane, almost 15 Å away from the cytoplasmic membrane surface. The width of the bridging density is only a fifth of the separation of the phospholipid headgroups (i.e. <6 Å), suggesting that it is made of no more than one or two rings of side chains. Cysteine-substitution mutagenesis experiments have indicated a more cytoplasmic location for the gate (Akabas et al. 1994; Wilson and Karlin 1998), and these experiments have not yet been reconciled with the physical data. The gate could be made of any non-polar amino acid, since in the absence of polarizable groups to provide electrostatic stabilization, the ion would retain its hydration shell but there would be restricted space for water, and the ion would be unable to pass through the central hole in the closed state. Unwin (1993) initially suggested that the set of Leu251 side chains in the M2 segments of the subunits could form the gate with a leucine-zipper effect, but more recently has proposed that a hydrophobic girdle of leucine and valine side chains constitutes the gate.

All the mutagenesis evidence (Karlin 2002) indicates that the M2 transmembrane segment is the primary pore-lining segment in all receptors of this class (e.g. 5HT3, Reeves et al. 2001; GABA(A), Xu and Akabas 1996), and that it is largely α-helical in structure. In agreement with the topology model, four rod-like densities perpendicular to the membrane are seen arranged in a diamond-shaped grouping with one corner density next to the pore (Unwin et al. 2002). These densities can be presumed to correspond to the four α-helices of the transmembrane domains M1 to M4. From other evidence (Karlin 2002), M2 is closest to the pore, and M4 furthest away. There is a kink of M2 into the pore at or close to the level of the gate. Although M2 residues line the pore, some residues in other transmembrane domains are water accessible; for example, some residues in M3 of the α1 subunit of GABA(A) receptors are accessible in the absence of GABA, others only when GABA is present (Williams and Akabas 1999, 2000).

The structure of the extracellular domain is defined by the atomic structure of AChBP (Brejc et al. 2001), which has 20–23% sequence identity with the N-terminal 200 or so residues of nAChR subunits. The nAChR sequence can be fitted to this atomic structure, and the observed densities at 4.6 Å fit closely for the β, γ, and δ subunits and for α subunits when an agonist is bound (i.e. in the open state) (Unwin et al. 2002). The core of this structure is organized around two sets of β-strands, forming ‘Greek key’ motifs, which are linked together through the Cys-loop disulfide bond and folded into a curled β sandwich, consisting of inner and outer sheets. The sandwich is staggered, so that towards the synaptic cleft, only the ‘inner’ β-sheet is still present. Connecting loop structures are not conserved. In cross-section, the five subunits are seen to be relatively well separated and distinguishable close to the membrane, but their densities blend into a uniform ring further out where only the inner sheet is present.

The two ACh binding sites, one per β subunit, lie at the α(δ)–δ and α(γ)–γ interfaces on chemical labelling and mutagenesis evidence. A transverse channel in the extracellular domain that could accommodate an ACh molecule is found only in the
α subunit, and has been suggested to be the ACh binding pocket (Miyazawa et al. 1999).

The α subunits are unique and play a crucial role. Their activated conformation is like that of the other subunits, and like AChBP. However, in the resting, closed channel state, they are distorted, presumably by intersubunit interactions in assembly. The binding of ACh results in the relaxation of these distortions, and the receptor takes up a more symmetrical and uniform structure. This is analogous to the conversion from T state to R state in allosteric proteins. How this occurs awaits higher resolution data, but it may be that the binding of ACh draws the C-loop inwards close to its position in AChBP, allowing the outer β-sheet to be reoriented and stabilized in its configuration prior to intersubunit interactions. This relaxation involves a 15–16° clockwise rotation of the inner β-sheet about an axis normal to the membrane, and 11° changes in tilt of the outer β-sheet. It is presumed that this structural change has transmitted effects on the transmembrane domains and the gate, leading to channel opening.

What is observed is that when ACh binds (i.e. comparing open to resting states) there is a rotation of the (putative) M2 transmembrane rod, so that the central kinks in the barrel of five M2 helices are rotated out of the pore, widening the aperture. The open pore has a tapered shape, narrowing towards the intracellular membrane surface, with a minimum diameter of ~10 Å. It now seems clear that the rotational relaxation of the α subunits is the key event, and that this conformational change is transmitted in turn to the M2 transmembrane domains. It is not known how the coupling of these two events is achieved, but the M2–M3 loop plays a crucial role in both muscle ACh receptor (Grosman et al. 2000) and GABA(A) receptor gating (Bera et al. 2002).

8.5.2 Glutamate receptor structure

Glutamate receptors appear to be built of a pore-forming transmembrane module with similarities to the structure of potassium channels in this region (Doyle et al. 1998; Kuner et al. 2003), and extracellular domains that in part resemble bacterial periplasmic amino acid binding proteins. Many useful models of extracellular structure were built by fitting to the bacterial protein structure, but a more definitive 3D structure was provided by Armstrong et al. (1998) who determined the atomic structure of the ligand-binding domain of GluR2 complexed with the agonist kainate. The N-terminal 400 amino acids play no role in ligand binding. The amino acid binding pocket is formed from amino acid side chains of two globular domains (S1 and S2) drawn from the sequence adjacent to the M1 domain and from the M3–M4 loop (which is extracellular in these receptors). Unlike nAChR, the binding site is completely contained within a single subunit. The two globular domains have been compared to the two parts of a clamshell. The ligand binds deep within the pocket between S1 and S2, and stabilizes the closed form of the clamshell. As for ACh receptors, the conformational change occurring on clamshell closure is presumably transmitted to the transmembrane domain, which then also undergoes a conformational change resulting in channel opening. The cytoplasmic vestibule, the inner half of the pore, and a central
constriction are all provided by amino acids in the ascending or descending parts of the M2 segment. The M2 ascending limb is $\alpha$-helical, while the descending limb has an extended structure (Kuner et al. 1996). This segment provides the functional gate of the channel, which is located at or just below the turn of the re-entrant loop with asparagine residues playing a key role. They also affect other key properties such as calcium permeation and voltage-dependent magnesium block of NMDA receptors. The outer half of the pore and extracellular vestibule are provided by the C-terminus of M3 and the N-terminus of M4, supported structurally by the sequence preceding M1 (Beck et al. 1999). Clearly, there is a more intimate relationship between the ligand-binding domain and the pore domain in these receptors.

8.5.3 P2X receptor structure

We do not have three dimensional structure information for P2X receptors. However, there is evidence that ATP binds to the region just extracellular to TM1 (Ennion et al. 2000; Jiang et al. 2000), and causes an unknown conformational change which in turn results in movement of TM1 (Haines et al. 2001; Jiang et al. 2001) with respect to TM2, thus opening the pore. The evidence that TM2 residues line all or most of the pore is that mutations in TM2 affect ion permeability (Khakh et al. 1999; Virginio et al. 1999) and that cysteine substitution mutants in TM2 are modified by chemical agents when the channel is open (Rassendren et al. 1997). The gate is likely to be near the conserved glycine G342 (Egan et al. 1998; Migita et al. 2001), while a conserved aspartate residue (D349) is internal to the gate. There is evidence for two open states I1 and I2, with the I2 pore being 60–75 Å greater in cross-sectional area than the I1 pore, and about 3 Å greater (14 Å) in diameter. These state changes of the pore are regulated by the disposition of side chains in the cytosolic C-terminal domain, and possibly by other protein partners (Kim et al. 2001), and lead to different permeability properties for the channel (Eickhorst et al. 2002).

8.6 Outlook

There is now some realistic hope that we can understand ligand recognition, ion permeation, gating and desensitization of ligand-gated ion channels. There is now a firm atomic structural foundation for the study of ligand binding, and the binding sites for the large number of natural modulators (such as glycine acting on the M3–M4 loop of NMDA receptors) and pharmacological agents can now be delineated in three dimensions. Further structural and mutagenesis work should throw light on how various types of potentiation and inhibition occur at the atomic level. Further attempts to understand ion-selectivity and permeation can be made; for example, in the nAChR class of molecules, the contributions of both pore-lining amino acids and the amino acid side chains lining the transverse pores described by Unwin can be studied using mutagenesis and functional analysis. Our understanding of gating and desensitization is basic and descriptive (Dingledine 1999), but progress can now be made using
pharmacology and mutagenesis on a known 3D framework. Many investigators are studying the cell biology of these receptors, their roles in synaptic plasticity (Morris BJ, this volume Chapter 14) and in nervous system function and disease. Successful modulation of the functions of these receptors continues to depend on increasing our comprehension of how these amazing molecules work at the level of atomic structure and biophysics.

References


9.1 Introduction

9.1.1 The G protein-coupled receptor (GPCR) superfamily

The G protein-coupled receptor (GPCR) family is the largest known receptor family comprising more than 1% of the human genome (Bockaert and Pin 1999) and contains receptors for molecules as diverse as small neurotransmitters, odorants, lipids, neuropeptides, and large glycoprotein hormones. Setting aside the odorant receptor family which contains hundreds of genes, there are nearly 300 mammalian GPCR; genes which can be separated into three main subfamilies (Table 9.1): (1) the rhodopsin-like group which includes the majority of the GPCRs; (2) the glucagon-like group; and (3) the metabotropic glutamate (mGlu) and GABAB receptor family (Bockaert and Pin 1999). The inclusion of a receptor in a subfamily requires the presence of an overall percentage amino acid identity (>20%) and not any discrete motif. The rhodopsin-like subfamily has been sub-classified further based on common biochemical and pharmacological properties (Flower 1999; Gether 2000). Databases for the classification of receptors into subfamilies, phylogenetic trees, chromosome localization, ligand binding constants, and receptor mutations can be found at www.gpcr.org/7tm.

Almost all of these receptors comprise a number of subtypes; for example, there are five subtypes of dopamine receptors, 13 subtypes of 5HT receptors, eight subtypes of mGlu receptors, and five subtypes of muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. These receptor subtypes have been defined by their pharmacological and functional characteristics rather than strict sequence homology since some receptors for the same ligand can show remarkably little homology (e.g. histamine H3 and H4 have the lowest recorded homology (~20%) to other histamine receptors, H1 and H2).

Each of the GPCR families contains a number of so-called orphan receptors which have been identified as members of the GPCR superfamily by homology cloning but whose activating ligand is unknown (Stadel et al. 1997; Marchese et al. 1999). Recent developments in the use of high-throughput screening technology have allowed great
### Table 9.1 GPCR subtypes and their associated G protein pathways

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receptor</th>
<th>Family #</th>
<th>Subtype</th>
<th>Predicted G protein partners</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetylcholine (muscarinic)</td>
<td>1/amine</td>
<td>M₁, M₃, M₅</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M₂, M₄</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adenosine</td>
<td>1/nucleotide-like</td>
<td>A₁, A₃, A₂ₐ, A₂₉</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adrenergic - α₁</td>
<td>1/amine</td>
<td>α₂ₐ, α₁ₙ, α₁₀</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adrenergic - α₂</td>
<td>1/amine</td>
<td>α₂₉, α₂₈, α₂₆</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiotensin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>AT₁, AT₂</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bombesin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>BB₁, BB₂</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradykinin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>B₁, B₂</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cannabinoid</td>
<td>1/cannabis</td>
<td>CB₁, CB₂</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemokine</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>CCR₁–CCR₁₀, CXCR₁–CXCR₅, CX₃C</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemoattract peptide</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>C₃₅, C₅₅, fMLP</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystokinin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>CCK₁, CCK₂</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dopamine</td>
<td>1/amine</td>
<td>D₁, D₅, D₂, D₃, D₄</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endothelin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>ETₐ, ETₐ</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>galanin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>GAL₁, GAL₃, GAL₂</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gonadotropin releasing hormone</td>
<td>1/GnRH</td>
<td>GnRH</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glycoprotein hormone</td>
<td>1/protein hormone</td>
<td>FSH (follicle stim. hormone), LSH (lutropin), TSH (thyroid stim. hormone)</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>histamine</td>
<td>1/amine</td>
<td>H₁, H₂, H₃, H₄</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-HT (serotonin)</td>
<td>1/amine</td>
<td>5-HT₁ₐ, 5-HT₁ₙ, 5-HT₁₀, 5-HT₂₂ₐ, 5-HT₂₂₉, 5-HT₂₂₆, 5-HT₂₂₈, 5-HT₇₉, 5-HT₇₇</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leukotriene</td>
<td>1/leukotriene</td>
<td>BLT, CysLT₁, CysLT₂</td>
<td>Gₛ, Gₛ/G₁₁, Gₒ/Gₒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receptor</td>
<td>Family #</td>
<td>Subtype</td>
<td>*Predominant G protein partners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lysophospholipid</td>
<td>1/lyso-phospholipid</td>
<td>edg1, edg2, edg6, edg8</td>
<td>$G_s$ ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>edg3, edg4, edg7</td>
<td>$G_{q/11}$ ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>edg5</td>
<td>$G_{q/11}$ ✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melanocortin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>MC1–MC5</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melatonin</td>
<td>1/melanotin</td>
<td>MT1, MT2</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurokinin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>NK1, NK2, NK3</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tachykinin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuropeptide Y</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>Y1–Y5</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurotensin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>NTS1</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opioid</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>µOR, δOR, κOR, N/OFQ</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platelet activating factor</td>
<td>1/PAF</td>
<td>PAF</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prostanoid</td>
<td>1/prostanoid</td>
<td>DP, IP</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FR, TP</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EP1</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EP2</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EP3</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EP4</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protease activated</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>PAR1–PAR4</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purinergic</td>
<td>1/nucleotide-like</td>
<td>P2Y1, P2Y2, P2Y4, P2Y6</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P2Y11</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P2Y12</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somatostatin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>SST1–SST5</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thyrotropin releasing hormone</td>
<td>1/protein hormone</td>
<td>TRH</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urotensin II</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vasopressin</td>
<td>1/peptide</td>
<td>V1A, V1B</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>V2</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OT</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcitonin</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calcitonin gene related peptide (CGRP)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corticotropin-releasing hormone</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>CRF1, CRF2</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>growth hormone releasing hormone</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
advances in the speed at which the activating ligand can be identified (Howard et al. 2001; Kostenis 2001).

9.1.2 The receptor–G protein cycle

G protein-coupled receptors (GPCR) reside in the plasma membrane of neuronal cells and transduce the binding of extracellular neurotransmitters or hormones into changes in the activity of intracellular effector proteins. The G protein is the intermediary in this process. After binding of the ligand, the receptor catalyses the exchange of GTP for GDP on the G protein causing the receptor/G protein complex to dissociate (Fig. 9.1). Both the activated α subunit bearing GTP and the βγ dimer can act upon one or more of a variety of effector molecules which may result in changes in the intracellular levels of second messengers such as cyclic AMP, cyclic GMP, inositol phosphates, calcium, and arachidonic acid. These second messengers can generate changes in neurotransmitter release, hormone secretion, protein phosphorylation, cytoskeletal structure, and gene transcription. G proteins also regulate the function of ion channels including voltage-gated calcium channels, potassium channels, and ligand-gated ion channels such as the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor. GPCRs have been implicated in the regulation of growth, synaptogenesis, and differentiation. The activity of the G protein α subunit is terminated by its intrinsic GTPase activity which converts

Table 9.1 (continued) GPCR subtypes and their associated G protein pathways

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Receptor</th>
<th>Family #</th>
<th>Subtype</th>
<th>* Predominant G protein partners</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glucagon</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secretin</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vasoactive intestinal peptide</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>VPAC1, VPAC2, PAC1</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GABA A</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>GABA A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glutamate</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>mglu1, mglu4, mglu2, mglu3, mglu4, mglu6, mglu7, mglu8</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The table lists receptors for which the G protein partners are well-established as indicated in the following sources.
The IUPHAR Compendium of Receptor Characterization and Classification 1998.
Other GPCR sequences also exist and are listed in the website www.gpcr.org
#The three main families are 1: rhodopsin-like, 2: secretin-like, 3: metabotropic glutamate-like. Classification into the three main families (and subfamilies where indicated) is based on the website www.gpcr.org
Fig. 9.1 The G protein cycle. Drug (D) binding to the receptor (shown in yellow) causes release of GDP from the $\alpha$ subunit of the heterotrimeric G protein. The resulting receptor-GTP-liganded G protein complex is transient and dissociates rapidly. The released $\alpha$-GTP and $\beta\gamma$ subunits are then able to interact with effectors. The intrinsic GTPase activity of the $\alpha$ subunit converts the GTP to GDP and the $\alpha$-GDP is unable to interact with effectors. The $\alpha$-GDP and $\beta\gamma$ subunits reform the heterotrimeric G protein which is then able to rebind the receptor.

9.1.3 Types of G proteins and their second messenger pathways

G protein-coupled receptors can couple to one or more different types of G proteins which are classified by their $\alpha$ subunits, including $G_s$, $G_i$, $G_o$, $G_q$, $G_{11}$, $G_{12}$, $G_{13}$, $G_t$, and $G_{olf}$ (reviewed in Morris and Malbon 1999). $G_t$ and $G_{olf}$ are found predominantly in visual and olfactory systems respectively. Generally, activation of $G_s$ or $G_{olf}$ causes stimulation of adenylyl cyclase and regulation of calcium channels via $\alpha_s$. Cholera toxin is often used as a diagnostic experimental tool for the identification of $G_s$ pathways since it catalyses ADP-ribosylation of the $\alpha_s$ subunit. This causes the GTPase activity of $\alpha_s$ to be turned off and therefore results in continuous activity. Activation of $G_q$ or $G_{11}$ causes stimulation of phospholipase C via $\alpha_q$. In contrast, activation...
of G\textsubscript{i} or G\textsubscript{o} can influence multiple second messenger systems, including inhibition of adenylate cyclase, activation of cyclic GMP phosphodiesterase, and regulation of potassium and calcium channels. Pertussis toxin is commonly used as a diagnostic tool for identifying pathways involving G\textsubscript{\alpha\textsubscript{i1}}, G\textsubscript{\alpha\textsubscript{i2}}, G\textsubscript{\alpha\textsubscript{i3}}, G\textsubscript{\alpha\textsubscript{o1}}, G\textsubscript{\alpha\textsubscript{o2}}, and G\textsubscript{\alpha\textsubscript{t}} since it catalyses the irreversible ADP-ribosylation of their C-terminal cysteine resulting in inactivation of the G protein. While these are general rules, GPCR can also activate other signalling pathways such as tyrosine kinases (Bence \textit{et al.} 1997; Diverse-Pierluissi \textit{et al.} 1997), protein kinase B, and MAPkinase (Gutkind 1998; Lopez-Ilasaca 1998; Gudermann \textit{et al.} 2000) and small, monomeric G proteins (Hall \textit{et al.} 1999; Seasholtz \textit{et al.} 1999).

9.1.4 Non G protein-mediated pathways

In the last few years, evidence has been accumulating for the existence of a number of G protein-independent signalling pathways (reviewed in Heuss and Gerber 2000). Many of these involve arrestin binding subsequent to receptor phosphorylation (see Section 5.2.2). In this paradigm arrestin acts as an adaptor protein, linking the receptor to activation of the non-receptor tyrosine kinases of the SRC family (Luttrell \textit{et al.} 1999) and thus to regulation of MAPkinase and nuclear transcription. GPCR can interact with PDZ domain-containing proteins such as PSD-95 through variants of the T/S-x-V motif in their C-terminal tails (Hall \textit{et al.} 1999). For example, the \beta\textsubscript{2}-adrenergic receptor binds the Na\textsuperscript{+}/H\textsuperscript{+} exchange factor (NHERF) in an agonist-dependent fashion (Hall \textit{et al.} 1998). mGluR bind members of the Homer family of EVH domain-containing proteins through a polyproline rich region in the C-terminal tail and this facilitates a functional interaction between mGluRs and ER-based IP\textsubscript{3} receptors (Brakeman \textit{et al.} 1997; Bockaert and Pin 1999). Other candidate proteins for direct receptor interaction are eNOS, calmodulin, and the small G proteins ARF and RhoA (Heuss and Gerber 2000).

9.2 Overall structural features

The defining characteristics of this large superfamily of receptors are the seven transmembrane domain structure with an extracellular N-terminus and intracellular C-terminus and an ability to activate heterotrimeric G proteins. Until recently, structural modelling has been based on the structure of bacteriorhodopsin, a light-activated proton pump found in photosynthetic bacteria, which also has a seven transmembrane structure. Although GPCR and bacteriorhodopsin appear to share a similar overall morphology, bacteriorhodopsin is not a GPCR and there is little actual sequence homology. More recently, the crystal structure of rhodopsin has been determined to be 2.8 Å resolution (Palczewski \textit{et al.} 2000) and this structure, combined with the results of site-directed mutagenesis studies (e.g. Meng and Bourne 2001; Savarese and Fraser 1992), and extensive molecular modelling (Ballesteros \textit{et al.} 2001; Gershengorn and Osman 2001; Lu \textit{et al.} 2002) has refined our understanding of the molecular function of GPCR (see also www.gpcr.org/7tm). As a result there is considerably more known
about the structure of family 1 GPCR than for the other GPCR families. In general, the
sequence similarity between the different GPCRs is in the transmembrane segments
while most of the variability resides in the size of the N-terminal extracellular domain,
the third intracellular loop, and the C-terminal domain.

9.2.1 **Family 1 — rhodopsin family**

The main structural features of a ‘generic’ G protein-coupled receptor of family 1 are
illustrated in Fig. 9.2. Remarkably, even within a family, GPCR share little sequence
homology but there are a small number of highly conserved residues such as the
‘DRY’ (Asp-Arg-Tyr) motif found in all family 1 GPCR which is important in the con-
formational changes which lead to G protein activation (see below). It is thought that,
at least for rhodopsin, the helical structure of transmembrane domains five and six
(TM5 and TM6) may extend into the cytoplasm from the membrane (Ballesteros
et al. 2001). The three-dimensional shape (Fig. 9.2B) resembles that of a distorted,
pear-shaped barrel lined by TM3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 and closed off on the intracellular side
by the tilted TM3. The seven transmembrane domains are linked by H-bonding net-
works and Van-der-Waals contacts which stabilize the ground-state structure (Lu
et al. 2002). The transmembrane helices are arranged in a counterclockwise fashion
(looking from the extracellular side) with TM3 almost in the centre (Fig. 9.2B).

All GPCR contain many post-translational modifications. Two cysteine residues in
extracellular loops 1 and 2 are highly conserved and are important for stabilization of
receptor conformation (Bockaert and Pin 1999). In many family 1 GPCR, there is a
fourth intracellular loop, consisting of an amphiphilic helical structure, linking the
cytoplasmic end of TM7 to a point where it is anchored to the membrane by palmitoy-
lated cysteine residues (Lu et al. 2002). Agonist-driven depalmitoylation has been
demonstrated for some receptors but it has been suggested that repalmitoylation may
be affected by desensitization mechanisms (Loisel et al. 1999 and references therein).
Palmitoylation is thought to be important in regulating G protein coupling, receptor
phosphorylation, and internalization (ibid). There are glycosylation sites on the
N-terminal domain, some of which are important for efficient expression at the
plasma membrane (Benya et al. 2000; Deslauiers et al. 1999). There are a number of
potential phosphorylation sites which are generally located in the C-terminal tail and
the second and third intracellular loops. These phosphorylation sites are important in
regulating receptor responsiveness (see below).

9.2.1.1 **Heterodimerization**

Traditionally GPCR have been viewed as single entities which interact with G proteins
in a 1:1 ratio. However, since the first demonstration of dimer formation of β2-adrener-
gic receptors in 1996 (Hebert et al. 1996), there has been accumulating evidence for the
formation of both homo- and heterodimers from cross-linking studies (e.g. AbdAlla
et al. 1999), co-immunoprecipitation experiments (e.g. Jordan and Devi 1999;
Fig. 9.2 A diagrammatic view of a 'generic' family 1 GPCR. (A) A two-dimensional view shows the major conserved features within this family. The seven transmembrane domains (TM1–TM7) are shown in grey in the lipid bilayer shown in blue. The N-terminus is extracellular and the C-terminus is intracellular. There are glycosylation sites (shown as y) on the N-terminal domain and multiple potential phosphorylation sites on the C-terminal domain as well as the 2nd and 3rd intracellular loops. There is a highly conserved cysteine disulfide bridge connecting extracellular loops one and two. Many receptors contain cysteine residue(s) in the C-terminal domain which are palmitoylated and thus provide for a potential fourth intracellular loop. The highly conserved 'DRY' motif is important for the conformational change leading to G protein activation. (B) A three-dimensional view looking from the cytoplasmic side (reproduced from Bockaert and Pin (1999) with permission) shows the arrangement of helices. Upon agonist activation the conformational change involves tilting of TM3 and TM6 away from each other and rotation of TM6. This allows the exposure of previously hidden sequences in the intracellular loops and possibly within the transmembrane helical bundle which are required for G protein interactions.
Zeng and Wess 1999), and FRET (fluorescence resonance energy transfer, e.g. Rocheville et al. 2000) or BRET (bioluminescence resonance energy transfer, e.g. Angers et al. 2000). In some cases, disulfide bond formation is thought to play a key role in dimer formation (Jordan and Devi 1999; Zeng and Wess 1999) but in many cases the molecular mechanism is unclear since various regions of the GPCR structure can be involved (e.g. the amino terminus for the B2 bradykinin receptor, AbdAlla et al. 1999 or the seventh transmembrane domain for the β2-adrenergic receptor, Hebert et al. 1996). The functional effects of dimerization vary between receptor combinations. For example, co-expression of β2-adrenergic receptors with δ-opioid or κ-opioid receptors does not affect ligand binding or G protein coupling but does alter the ability of the receptors to be internalized (Jordan et al. 2001). In contrast, D2-dopamine receptor and sstr5 somatostatin receptor heterodimers showed unusual pharmacological properties with somatostatin and dopamine agonists acting synergistically in both ligand binding and second messenger activation (Rocheville et al. 2000).

9.2.1.2 Genetic polymorphisms

Recently an increasing number of genetic polymorphisms in genes encoding GPCRs have been identified and this area is expanding rapidly (reviewed in Rana et al. 2001). In such cases multiple allelic forms occur in the population at frequencies above the background mutation rate, indicating that functional differences between the encoded proteins may have selective significance at the population level. The encoded variations in receptor structure can reflect subtle but important changes in ligand recognition (Bond et al. 1998; Compton et al. 2000), G protein signalling (Small and Liggett 2001), and regulation of plasma membrane receptor density (Green et al. 1994). Associations have been made between receptor gene polymorphic alleles and the probability of developing specific disease states. For example, the human D4 receptor has two high frequency alleles in the population, differing in the number of repeats of a sequence that encodes a 16 amino acid segment in the 3rd intracellular loop (Sealfon and Olanow 2000). This repeat number has been correlated with novelty-seeking personality traits and increased delusions in psychotic individuals. Mutation in the orexin B receptor gene in dogs is related to canine narcolepsy (Howard et al. 2001).

9.2.2 Family 2 — glucagon-like family

These receptors show some overall morphological similarity to family 1 receptors but have a much larger N-terminal domain which contains multiple potential disulfide bridges (Gether 2000). Except for the conserved disulfide between the 1st and 2nd extracellular loops, this family does not contain any of the structural features described for family 1 (Gether 2000). Most of the ligands acting at these receptors are peptides or glycoprotein hormones, typically 30–40 amino acids, and are likely to interact with the receptor over large surface areas. These receptors are often described as having two halves, an exodomain that consists of the N-terminal extracellular hormone binding
domain and an endodomain that is the C-terminal, seven transmembrane signal generating domain (Zeng et al. 2001). The exodomain is entirely responsible for hormone binding and the resulting hormone–exodomain complex adjusts its conformation and interacts with the endodomain.

9.2.3 Family 3 — mGluR/GABA_B family
The major characteristic of this family is the extremely large N-terminal extracellular domain which bears some resemblance to bacterial periplasmic binding proteins. This domain is thought to contain the binding site for transmitter amino acids glutamate and GABA (Gether 2000). The third intracellular loop is very short and highly conserved within this family. The seven transmembrane domain shows very little sequence similarity with receptors of family 1 (~12%) but it is thought that the overall topology is probably similar since family 3 receptors contain the conserved cysteines making the disulfide bond between extracellular loops one and two (DeBlasi et al. 2001).

Family 3 receptors appear to form dimers but do so in quite different ways. The GABA_B receptor forms heterodimers between GABA_B1 and GABA_B2 through coiled-coil regions in the C-terminal tails and this dimerization is required for efficient cell surface expression and signalling (Marshall et al. 1999). In contrast, metabotropic glutamate receptor dimerization is stabilized by disulfide bonds in the amino-terminal extracellular domain (DeBlasi et al. 2001).

9.3 Receptor–Ligand interactions
9.3.1 Rhodopsin-like subfamily
The ligand binding site for small molecule neurotransmitters is in a pocket in the transmembrane region and involves amino acids from helices 3, 5, 6, and 7 (reviewed by Savarese and Fraser 1992; Strader et al. 1994; Gether and Kobilka 1998; Ji et al. 1998; Gether 2000; Lu et al. 2002). While the actual amino acid residues involved in ligand binding are different for the different small molecule receptors, the topological location of these residues shows remarkable similarity. In the case of the β-adrenergic receptor, mutagenesis studies have identified a small number of transmembrane residues that are important in catecholamine binding (shown diagrammatically in Fig. 9.3) including Asp113 in TM3, two serines in TM5 (Ser204 and Ser207), and Phe290 in the TM6. These serines and phenylalanine residues are present in all GPCRs that bind catecholamines but not in other GPCRs. In contrast, the histamine receptor contains an Asp186 and Thr190 in analogous positions to the Ser204 and Ser207 of the β-adrenergic receptor and an interaction of these residues with the imidazole ring of histamine has been suggested. The muscarinic receptor contains Thr231 and Thr234 in the analogous part of the TM5 which might interact with the ester group of acetylcholine. The aspartate in TM3 is conserved among the biogenic amine receptors and is also important in forming
Fig. 9.3 The ligand binding site for isoproterenol (isoprenaline) at the β<sub>2</sub>-adrenergic receptor. There are five major points of interaction. The aspartate (D) in TM3 forms an ionic interaction with the protonated amine group of the agonist. Two serines (S) in TM5 form hydrogen bonding interactions with the hydroxyl groups of the catechol moiety. A phenylalanine (F) in TM6 has hydrophobic interactions with the benzene ring. An asparagine (N) in TM6 has hydrogen-bonding interactions with the aliphatic hydroxyl group.

Salt-bridge interactions with the positively charged head groups of dopamine, serotonin, histamine, and acetylcholine.

Although this simplistic picture holds for the well-studied β-adrenergic and muscarinic receptors, the binding sites for other neurotransmitters and peptides clearly do not involve the same distribution of amino acids (Savarese and Fraser 1992; Strader et al. 1994; Gether and Kobilka 1998; Ji et al. 1998; Gether 2000). In the neurokinin receptor (NK1), peptide agonists bind to residues in the amino terminus, extracellular loops 1 and 2, and a residue at the top of the TM7 and as yet there is little evidence for interaction of peptide agonists with regions deep in the transmembrane domains (Gether 2000). Other peptide hormones, however, bind both with the extracellular domains and in the transmembrane cleft (e.g. angiotensin II, endothelin, somatostatin, opioids, and bradykinin). Although the actual residues for interaction differ between the peptides, they all appear to be located on the surface of the predicted binding crevice illustrating the concept that there is a high degree of structural similarity of the receptors even though they bind quite chemically diverse ligands using chemically different interacting amino acids.
Non-peptide agonists generally bind within the transmembrane domains and do not require residues in the extracellular loops. Thus the subtype selectivity of the dopamine D2 and D4 receptors is determined by residues in TM2, 3, and 7 (Simpson et al. 1999). However, mutagenesis studies have shown that the binding sites for a number of different classes of drugs at the same receptor do not necessarily include the same set of amino acids. In some cases, a single amino acid substitution can decrease the binding affinity for one class of drugs but not another (Strader et al. 1994). This implies that several different combinations of interactions with different parts of the transmembrane region can collectively induce a conformational change sufficient to activate a G protein.

Similarly, there are no hard and fast rules as to which residues are important in antagonist binding. By definition, antagonists bind to the receptor and prevent agonist binding but do not cause a conformational change required for G protein activation. For the β-adrenergic receptor, the aryloxyalkyamine antagonists such as alprenolol and propranolol bind to some of the same residues as the agonists but have an additional contact with an asparagine in TM7 (Gether 2000). In the case of peptide agonists and non-peptide antagonists of the NK1 receptor and the angiotensin II receptor, agonists and antagonists do not interact with the same set of amino acids (Strader et al. 1994; Ji et al. 1998; Gether 2000). Given that at least part of the agonist binding site is located in a pocket in the bilayer region, it is likely that binding of antagonists while not inducing a conformational change, could sterically block access of the agonist to its binding site since they often bind with residues closer to the surface of the membrane (Gether 2000).

9.3.2 mGluR family — receptor ligand interactions

Modelling, mutagenesis, and more recently crystallographic studies of the extracellular domain revealed that the binding site for glutamate was within a cleft between the two globular lobes of the large extracellular domain (DeBlasi et al. 2001). Exactly how the binding of agonist in the extracellular domain can be transmitted to cause G protein activation is still unclear but it has been proposed that dimerization may be important (ibid). There are a number of compounds which are structurally related to the amino acid agonist transmitters which bind competitively within the extracellular domain. In contrast, a group of novel allosteric antagonists has been identified which bind entirely within the transmembrane domains, particularly interacting with residues in TM3 and TM7 of the mGlu5 receptors (Spooren et al. 2001).

9.4 Receptor-G protein interactions

9.4.1 How are receptor-G protein interactions measured?

Receptor activation of G protein-mediated pathways can be measured by assaying for accumulation of second messengers such as cAMP, inositol phosphates and calcium, or modulation of ion channels using electrophysiological techniques. It is also possible to measure further ‘upstream’ using the binding of $^{35}$S-GTPγS and
recent developments have used antibodies selective for the different Gα subunits to determine incorporation of ^{35}S-GTγS into particular subtypes and isoforms of Gα (e.g. Carruthers et al. 1999).

Another method for examining receptor–G protein interactions is to measure the effect of G proteins on the binding of agonist to its receptor (reviewed in Birnbaumer et al. 1990). When the G protein is bound to the receptor, the receptor–G protein complex has a high affinity for agonist. Once the G protein is activated and released from the receptor, the receptor converts to a conformation with low affinity for agonists. This conversion requires the presence of magnesium ions and GTP to allow activation of the G protein (Birnbaumer et al. 1990). Ligand binding assays are usually performed with well-washed membrane preparations under equilibrium conditions so that, in the absence of GTP, both high- and low-affinity states are measured. In the presence of GTP and magnesium, only the low-affinity state is measured since binding of agonist rapidly induces the change from high to low affinity. The interaction of G proteins with the β-adrenergic receptor can be mimicked by the action of synthetic peptides based on regions of the α subunit of Gs but not with peptides derived from Gi or Go (Rasenick et al. 1994). Binding of agonists to intact cells generally shows only low-affinity characteristics since intracellular levels of GTP are naturally high. Antagonist binding generally does not show this sensitivity to G protein binding since antagonists do not promote the active conformation of the receptor and do not cause dissociation of the receptor–G protein complex.

\[ \text{high affinity} \quad \text{low affinity} \]
\[ \begin{align*}
\text{i.e.} & \quad \text{RG}_{(GDP)} \quad \text{R} + \text{G}_{(GTPγS)} \\
\text{GDP} & \quad \text{GTPγS}
\end{align*} \]

### 9.4.2 Structural features of receptors involved in G protein activation

#### 9.4.2.1 How does agonist binding cause receptor conformational change?

Historically there has been a clear distinction made between the concepts of affinity and efficacy. The affinity of the drug–receptor interaction describes how tightly the drug binds and efficacy describes how well the drug causes the conformational change required to activate G proteins. The simplest models of receptor function incorporate two receptor states, an inactive conformation which is in equilibrium with an active conformation. Although it is likely that there may be multiple active conformations (see below), only one will be assumed for the purpose of this discussion. Thus a strong agonist will bind and cause a conformational change leading to maximal active state probability. A partial agonist may bind with high affinity but will only be able to promote a submaximal active state probability. In contrast, an antagonist may bind with high affinity but will cause no conformational change, i.e. have no efficacy.
How do we turn this theoretical description into a 'visual' representation of what is happening at the molecular level? From Section 9.3 above, it is clear that agonists can interact with receptors in many different ways to cause G protein activation but it seems that the mechanism of the conformational change may be highly conserved. There are constraining intramolecular interactions which keep receptors preferentially silent in the absence of agonist and stabilizing interactions have been proposed particularly between TM5 and TM6 as well as between TM3 and TM7 (Bourne 1997; Gether and Kobilka 1998; Gether 2000; Lu et al. 2002). For members of the rhodopsin family, conformational changes upon agonist activation are thought to be transmitted by the highly conserved ‘DRY’ motif at the cytoplasmic side of TM3 (Fig. 9.2) (Bourne 1997; Gudermann et al. 1997; Gether and Kobilka 1998; Gether 2000). The arginine in this motif is constrained within a hydrophilic pocket formed by residues from other transmembrane helices. Upon receptor activation, the aspartate is protonated causing movement of adjacent residues and tilting of the transmembrane helices which leads to exposure of previously hidden sequences in the intracellular loops which interact with G proteins. The exact molecular mechanism and the role of specific amino acid residues is still a matter of debate and at least two molecular modelling solutions have been proposed (Gether 2000; Lu et al. 2002).

There is, however, considerable experimental evidence for the tilting of the transmembrane helices. Site-directed mutagenesis has been used to engineer either cysteine–cysteine or zinc–histidine bridges between the helices in strategic locations which could prevent receptor activation (Meng and Bourne 2001). Another experimental approach has been to introduce site-specific pairs of sulphydryl-reactive spin labels or fluorophores and to measure helical interactions by either EPR spectroscopy or fluorescence spectroscopy respectively (Gether and Kobilka 1998). It has been proposed that activation of the receptor requires the cytoplasmic ends of TM3 and TM6 to move away from each other and TM6 to rotate slightly (Bockaert and Pin 1999; Gether 2000). These movements of the helices causes conformational changes in the intracellular loops leading to exposure of previously hidden sequences which can then interact with G proteins. A major interaction site on the G protein is in the last seven amino acid stretch of the C-terminal and it is this region which is thought to predominantly determine receptor specificity (Bourne 1997; Kostenis 2001) although other regions of the G protein, including the N-terminus, may also play an important role (Lu et al. 2002). Other contact points, particularly those with the βγ subunit are less well established (Bourne 1997; Hamm 1998). It is clear though, that the nucleotide binding domain of the α subunit is some distance away (~30 Å) from the membrane and therefore the receptor must act at a distance to induce GDP release. Molecular modelling has been employed to explore potential hypothetical mechanisms and one proposal has been that movement of the helices may open a crevice in the receptor into which the C-terminal portion of the G protein may move (Iiri et al. 1998) but this field remains speculative (Bourne 1997; Lu et al. 2002).
Considerable effort has been put into identifying the exact sequences in the receptor which are necessary for directing specificity of receptor–G protein interaction. Generation of chimeric β-adrenergic and muscarinic receptors has identified multiple separate small stretches of amino acid residues in the second intracellular loop and in the N- and C-terminal portion of the third intracellular loop which act in a co-operative fashion to dictate G protein coupling specificity (Gudermann et al. 1997; Wess et al. 1997). In the muscarinic receptors, a four amino acid motif has been identified (‘VTIL’) which is located at the third intracellular loop – TM6 junction which can direct G protein specificity (Wess et al. 1997). However, despite extensive mutagenesis work, it has proven difficult to predict general rules for G protein specificity of receptor from primary structure. This has led Bourne (1997) to propose that activated receptors can take on a restricted set of conformations that can mould to interact with certain G protein subtypes. In contrast, an alternative approach incorporating data-mining and pattern recognition has identified some sequences from receptors with known G protein coupling which can predict the coupling specificity of newly-cloned receptor sequences (Moller et al. 2001).

9.4.2.2 Constitutive activity

Until recently, models of receptor function assumed that, in the absence of agonist, all receptors existed in the inactive conformation and that addition of agonist shifted the equilibrium towards the active conformation (Leff et al. 1997; Strange 2002). The increasing use of transfected cell systems containing high receptor density led to the realization that basal levels of receptor activity could be measured in the absence of agonist and that antagonists were actually able to decrease this basal activity (deLigt et al. 2000; Gether 2000; Newman-Tancredi et al. 2000). It has since been realized that some receptors do show constitutive activity even when expressed at ‘physiological’ levels and these include rat dopamine D1, rat and human histamine H2, human dopamine D3, human serotonin 5HT1a, human cannabinoid CB1 and CB2 (deLigt et al. 2000; Pan et al. 1998). Many antagonists have been renamed ‘inverse agonists’ to reflect their ability to decrease basal activity, since by definition an antagonist is a drug which binds but has no efficacy. Several antipsychotic drugs have been reclassified as inverse agonists rather than antagonists (Weiner et al. 2001) and now much drug discovery work is focused upon distinguishing between antagonist and inverse agonist drugs since it is likely that this will be of great therapeutic importance.

A number of mutations were identified which served to increase the level of basal activity without affecting the ability of agonists to further activate the receptors (e.g. Greasley et al. 2001). Most of these mutations were initially identified in the C-terminal end of the third cytoplasmic loop but more recently mutations in other regions of the structure can cause constitutive activity. This underlines the idea that there are many stabilizing interactions between helices that hold the receptor in an
inactive state and that interfering with these interactions, either by mutation or by agonist activation can lead to activation of G proteins.

9.4.2.3 **Multiple active conformations — stimulus trafficking**

Although it is widely accepted that proteins can take on multiple conformations, most of the available experimental data suggests that these multiple conformations are indistinguishable experimentally and models describing receptor function with just one active and one inactive state are sufficient. However, there are some reports which suggest that there may be multiple active conformations and that certain drugs can induce formation of certain conformations: this has been termed 'stimulus trafficking' (Kenakin 1995; Watson et al. 2000). This means that different drugs are able to promote distinct receptor conformations which interact with different G proteins resulting in activation of distinct signalling pathways. Experimentally this is observed as a reversal in the order of potency of agonists. For example, PACAP27 is more potent than PACAP48 in stimulating cAMP production via the PACAP receptor but less potent in stimulating inositol phosphate accumulation (Spengler et al. 1993). Differential stimulation of inositol phosphate and arachidonic acid second messenger systems has also been demonstrated for a series of partial agonists at the human 5HT2A and 5HT2C receptors (Berg et al. 1998).

9.4.3 **Cell-type specific factors**

The central question considered here is how cells, which might contain multiple receptor subtypes and G proteins (α and βγ) control the ultimate functional response which is produced. At first glance, one could expect to answer this by finding out which receptor subtypes activate which G proteins and which G proteins activate which effectors. However, this approach was stymied by the finding that in purified systems, the receptor–G protein interactions are remarkably non-specific. This has led to the realization that there are more subtle controls within the cell that determine the signalling pathway(s) that respond to activation of a given receptor and that these controls will vary from one cell to another. Some examples to illustrate this are given below and are most certainly not exhaustive.

9.4.3.1 **Receptor splice variants**

A number of receptors show functional diversity due to the existence of splice variants which exhibit distinct patterns of tissue distribution. Most of these receptor isoforms have structural differences in the intracellular loops and C-terminal tail and therefore show different patterns of G protein coupling (Kilpatrick et al. 1999). For example, the two isoforms of the dopamine D2 receptor differ by a 29 amino acid insert in the third intracellular loop and show signalling through distinct G proteins (Monsma et al. 1989). Sometimes the effect is less clear cut and may be observed as differences in the strength of coupling to G proteins as shown in the four isoforms of the prostanoid receptor EP3 which differ in their C-terminal tail (Sugimoto et al. 1993).
9.4.3.2 Levels of receptor expression and signal amplification

Signals generated by activation of GPCRs undergo varying degrees of amplification depending upon the nature of the system under study. In a system with high receptor density which shows strong coupling to a particular G protein pathway, the concentration of drug required to generate second messengers may be very much less than the concentration required to occupy a significant fraction of receptors and this system will show a large amount of signal amplification. This is also termed 'receptor reserve', 'spare receptors', or 'strong coupling'. This signal amplification has important physiological consequences illustrated in Fig. 9.4. For a response to be generated quickly upon release of neurotransmitter, the binding interaction needs to reach equilibrium quickly. The rate at which a reaction reaches equilibrium depends upon the rate constants for association and dissociation and for low-affinity interactions such as those of acetylcholine or noradrenaline (binding...
affinities in the μM to mM range) equilibrium can be reached very quickly. Furthermore, once the transmitter is removed from the synapse, dissociation occurs equally quickly. The amount of transmitter released into the synapse may be significantly lower than the concentration required to reach high levels of receptor occupancy. Therefore, if there is a large amount of signal amplification, a low concentration of transmitter can bind and reach equilibrium quickly but also create a strong signal within the cell. Peptide hormones generally have much higher affinities (in the nM–pM range) and take much longer to reach equilibrium and to dissociate. Thus the temporal characteristics of their responses will be quite different to those of neurotransmitters with lower affinities.

Levels of receptor expression can vary widely between cell types and typically the receptor density in a stably transfected cell line may be ten to a thousand times higher than that found in a cultured cell line endogenously expressing the receptor (Kenakin 1997). The coupling strength of two different G protein-mediated pathways activated by the same receptor may differ widely. For example, muscarinic m2 receptors generally couple only in a negative manner to adenylate cyclase via G1. However, when the receptor is expressed at high levels, stimulation of phospholipase C is also observed (Vogel et al. 1995 and references therein). The concentration of agonist required to activate the G1 pathway may be much lower than that required to activate the phospholipase C pathway. This suggests that, although the receptor is actually able to couple to both, at normal expression levels only the stronger signal is observed.

The observed strength of coupling could also be determined by the efficacy of the agonist. If a receptor has a greater ability to stimulate one G protein (G1) than another (G2) then a full agonist could theoretically produce enough activated G1 and G2 to activate both pathways whereas a partial agonist might only produce enough activated G1 to produce a measurable response. An example of this occurs with the μ-opioid receptor where morphine is a partial agonist and etorphine is a full agonist. In transfected cells, there is strong coupling of the μ-opioid receptor to inhibition of adenylyl cyclase via G1 and in this system, both morphine and etorphine appear to show similar maximal responses — i.e. they both behave as if they are full agonists (Arden et al. 1995; Blake et al. 1997; Keith et al. 1996). However, receptor phosphorylation and internalization are much less well coupled and morphine appears to have no activity while etorphine does. Overexpression of GPCR kinase reveals that morphine can indeed promote receptor phosphorylation but requires a higher proportion of kinase relative to receptor density (Zhang et al. 1998). This underlines the concept that an agonist may be able to promote formation of the active conformation of a receptor, but being able to observe a resulting response depends upon the levels of
9.4.3.3 Specificity of receptors for G protein subtypes

Some receptors can show selectivity for a certain \(\alpha\) subtype and if a cell line does not contain the subtype required then the appropriate response will not be seen even though it might be present in another cell type. For example, somatostatin receptors transfected into CHO-DG44 cells do not show inhibition of adenylate cyclase whereas their transfection in CHO-K1 cells does reveal the appropriate response (Patel et al. 1994). There are other examples where receptors appear to show a great degree of selectivity even though several G protein isoforms may be present. For example, both somatostatin and muscarinic receptors regulate calcium channel function in GH3 cells via different variants of the same G protein subtype (Kleuss et al. 1992). The exact mechanism underlying this selectivity is not yet clear.

\[
\begin{align*}
R\text{ (muscarinic)} & \rightarrow G(\alpha_{01}/\beta_3/\gamma) & E\text{ (calcium channels)} \\
R\text{ (somatostatin)} & \rightarrow G(\alpha_{02}/\beta_1/\gamma)
\end{align*}
\]

9.4.3.4 Restricted localization

For many years, various models of GPCR signalling have visualized the receptor, G proteins, and effectors floating in a sea of membrane and that agonist-occupied receptors couple transiently to and activate G proteins which are then released to interact with effectors (Chidiac 1998; Ostrom et al. 2000). More recently, developments in experimental technologies for measuring protein–protein interactions, such as yeast two-hybrid and immunoprecipitation of fusion proteins, has led to an accumulating mass of information that suggests that signalling molecules are found in complexes held together by scaffolding proteins (reviewed in Pawson and Scott 1997; Ranganathan and Ross 1997; Ostrom et al. 2000; Sheng and Sala 2001; Michel and Scott 2002). The true state of affairs is probably somewhere between the two extremes. Compartmentation of signalling pathways is an attractive explanation for the apparent specificity of interactions that occurs within intact cells but not with purified proteins in vitro.

Receptors, G proteins, and effectors are often localized to particular parts of the cell membrane and are generally not found to be uniformly distributed (Hopkins 1992; Mellman et al. 1993; Wozniak and Limbird 1996; Yeaman et al. 1996). The mechanisms involved in this targeting are often not clear and may involve interaction with specific protein partners such as scaffolding proteins or may result from continual trafficking of the protein between the plasma membrane and internal compartments such as
endosomes. A review of protein trafficking in neurons is given by Connolly (this volume, Chapter 4). Targetting motifs are beginning to be identified, for example domains within the intracellular loops of the mGlu7 receptor are thought to provide a signal for axonal targetting in neurons (Dev et al. 2001). Several GPCR contain PDZ domains at their C-terminus and this is thought to be important for interaction with NHERF (Na⁺–K⁺ exchange regulatory factor) and endosomal sorting of receptors (Cao et al. 1999; Tsao et al. 2001). In Drosophila eye, the scaffolding protein INAD associates with PDZ domains on a calcium channel (TRP), phospholipase C β, and protein kinase C (PKC) and this helps to organize the signalling pathways downstream of rhodopsin activation (Pawson and Scott 1997). Although AKAPs and RACKs are important scaffolding proteins for protein kinase A (PKA)- (Michel and Scott 2002) and PKC- (Mochly-Rosen and Kauvar 1998) mediated signalling respectively, they do not appear to hold the GPCR or G protein in these supermolecular complexes.

The mGlu receptors (mglu1 and mglu5) contain proline-rich sequences (PPxxFR) at their extreme C-termini which interact with the Homer class of proteins. Some Homer proteins can dimerize via coiled-coil domains and thus may link the mGlu receptors to IP₃ receptors which also bind Homer via their PDZ domains (Dev et al. 2001). The intermediate early gene Homer 1a, which is induced upon excitatory synaptic activity, can disrupt this interaction since it does not allow dimerization. This may provide a mechanism for temporal regulation in response to activity (Xiao et al. 1998).

Organization of signalling pathways within membrane microdomains or lipid rafts has received much recent attention (Ostrom 2002; Zajchowski and Robbins 2002). The best studied form of lipid raft are caveolae which are flask-like invaginations of the plasma membrane enriched in the protein caveolin, cholesterol, and sphingolipids (Ostrom et al. 2000; Shaul and Anderson 1998). Caveolae are thought to be involved in endocytosis and transcytosis. They are also enriched in many signalling molecules such as GPCR, G proteins, tyrosine kinase receptors as well as downstream effectors such as adenylyl cyclase, PKA, PKC, nitric oxide synthase, mitogen-activated protein kinase and the small G proteins, Ras, Rac, Raf, and Rho. There is increasing evidence for a role of caveolae in the formation of microdomains within the plasma membrane that concentrate the components of the signalling pathways.

### 9.5 Regulation of G protein-coupled receptor function

#### 9.5.1 Desensitzation/resensitization

Desensitization can be manifest as a decrease in responsiveness during continuous drug application (e.g. adrenergic receptor regulation of calcium channels, Diverse-Pierluissi et al. 1996) or as a shift in the concentration–effect curve such that higher concentrations for drug are required to achieve the same response (e.g. adrenergic receptor regulation of cAMP formation, Oakley et al. 1999). After removal of drug, the receptor activity recovers, although the speed and extent of this resensitization can
depend on the duration of agonist activation. Rapid desensitization, which occurs within seconds or minutes, is thought to result from receptor phosphorylation, arrestin binding, and receptor internalization into an intracellular compartment. Long-term desensitization, or down-regulation, may involve changes in receptor and/or G protein levels. There may also be changes in the expression and stability of mRNA (reviewed in Morris and Malbon 1999). Long-term changes in the levels of GPCRs and their accessory proteins are known to be induced by chronic drug treatment and are involved in a number of pathological states (e.g. Aguirre et al. 1997; Chen et al. 1997; Bloch et al. 1999).

9.5.1.1 Phosphorylation

Receptors can be phosphorylated either by a second messenger kinase (protein kinase A, PKA; protein kinase C, PKC) or by a G protein receptor kinase (GRK, previously known as βARK) (reviewed in Morris and Malbon 1999; Ferguson 2001). For receptors coupled to $G_s$, such as the β-adrenergic receptor, agonist binding results in an increase in cAMP levels which activates PKA which, in turn, phosphorylates the receptor on serine residues located in the third intracellular loop and the C-terminal tail (Clark et al. 1989; Hausdorff et al. 1989). The concentration of agonist required to phosphorylate a substantial proportion of receptors will reflect the concentration required to maximally activate adenylate cyclase (Hausdorff et al. 1989), which will depend on both the receptor density and the coupling efficiency (reviewed in Clark et al. 1999). This concentration may be quite low. PKA-mediated desensitization is an example of heterologous desensitization since stimulation of other receptors that activate $G_s$ will also activate PKA. An analogous mechanism can occur for receptors coupled to $G_q/11$ which ultimately activate PKC and can be phosphorylated by PKC at quite low concentrations of agonist (e.g. Balmforth et al. 1997).

In contrast, the GRKs specifically recognize the agonist-occupied form of the receptor. The agonist-dependent nature of this phosphorylation could explain homologous desensitization. There are at least six distinct isoforms of GRK (reviewed in Carman and Benovic 1998; Bunemann and Hosey 1999; Ferguson 2001) with GRK1 being mainly responsible for phosphorylation of rhodopsin. GRK2 and 3 were previously known as βARK1 and 2 and contain a βγ-binding domain and a PH, PIP$_2$-binding domain which are both implicated in targetting to the plasma membrane. GRK4 and 6 are palmitoylated and this is thought to aid in membrane targetting. Most GRKs show fairly wide tissue distribution with the exception of GRK1 which is restricted to photoreceptor cells and GRK4 which is mainly found in the testis.

9.5.1.2 Arrestin

Mutagenesis of phosphorylation sites on the intracellular loops and C-terminal domain and the use of inhibitors of PKA and GRK have demonstrated that phosphorylation plays an important role in desensitization of many GPCR including
the β-adrenergic receptor (Hausdorff et al. 1989; Lohse et al. 1990; Premont et al. 1995). However, in vitro studies using purified proteins have shown that phosphorylation alone does not decrease the GTPase activity stimulated by activated receptor (Lohse et al. 1992) and that β-arrestin is also required. This suggested that agonist-occupation of the receptor allows phosphorylation of the receptor by GRK, and that this enhances the binding of β-arrestin to the receptor complex thereby preventing interaction between the receptor and G protein. Therefore, the arrestin-bound phosphorylated receptor is thought to represent a desensitized form. This has been demonstrated for β2-adrenergic and muscarinic acetylcholine receptors and it is assumed that the same mechanism applies for other GPCR. There is some receptor selectivity for the different isoforms of arrestin. Visual arrestin showed the greatest affinity for phosphorylated rhodopsin with very little binding to the adrenergic or muscarinic receptors; β-arrestin had greater affinity for the adrenergic than the muscarinic receptor while arrestin-3 had similar affinity for these two receptors (reviewed in Ferguson 2001).

The absolute requirement of phosphorylation for desensitization is still a matter of controversy. Several studies have demonstrated that mutation of many if not all phosphorylation sites or truncation of the C-terminal tail does not prevent desensitization (e.g. Seibold et al. 1998). This may result from the observation that arrestin can bind to unphosphorylated receptors but often with lower affinity (Gurevich et al. 1995). Therefore, the effect observed experimentally is likely to depend upon the relative concentrations of kinases and arrestins expressed in each cell type and agonist-independent β-arrestin association may be observed (Anborgh et al. 2000). Alternatively, the sites of phosphorylation identified in vitro may not reflect those which are important in vivo and it is possible that phosphorylation of other sites may compensate for the loss of sites removed by mutagenesis.

A major difficulty in elucidating the relative importance of GRKs is the lack of selective inhibitors. Heparin has been used to inhibit GRK (e.g. Lohse et al. 1990) and has been shown to decrease agonist-induced desensitization of the α2A-adrenergic receptor (Liggett et al. 1992). However, heparin is not very selective for GRKs and is believed to interact with a number of growth factor receptors and extracellular matrix proteins (among others) due to its strongly anionic nature (reviewed in Tyrrell et al. 1995). Overexpression of GRKs results in increased desensitization of many receptors including adenosine receptors (Palmer et al. 1996), the α1A-adrenergic receptor (Diviani et al. 1996) and the dopamine 1A receptor (Tiberi et al. 1996). A decrease in desensitization after overexpression of a dominant negative mutant of GRK2 is often used as a diagnostic for a GRK-mediated desensitization mechanism (e.g. Mundell et al. 1997). Injection of purified GRKs into sensory neurones enhances the desensitization of α2-adrenergic receptor mediated calcium channel inhibition (Diverse-Pierluissi et al. 1996).

9.5.2 Receptor trafficking

Most GPCRs undergo agonist-induced internalization of receptor (and possibly ligand) into an endosomal compartment (reviewed in Bohm et al. 1997; Koenig and
Edwardson 1997, shown diagrammatically in Fig. 9.5). For small molecule GPCR such as the adrenergic and muscarinic receptors, internalization is usually measured as a loss of hydrophilic antagonist ligand binding (e.g. Koenig and Edwardson 1994). On the other hand, the internalization of peptide receptors is usually demonstrated as internalization of a labelled agonist ligand into an acid-wash resistant internal compartment (e.g. Koenig et al. 1997). It is assumed that the receptor and ligand are internalized together in a one-to-one ratio, but this has not been directly demonstrated. Significant reduction in surface receptor number can occur within a few minutes for some receptors, while other receptors show much slower kinetics. The rate and extent of internalization can depend as much on the cell type as the receptor type (Koenig and Edwardson 1996). After removal of agonist, receptors are generally recycled back to the plasma membrane. However, there are a few exceptions for some peptide hormone receptors (see below). Kinetic analysis of the trafficking of muscarinic receptors in neuroblastoma cell lines (Koenig and Edwardson 1994) has shown that 12–30% of surface receptors are internalized in the first minute.

**Fig. 9.5** Mechanisms of receptor regulation. Agonist activation of receptors results in G protein activation (1) and phosphorylation (2) of the receptor at sites on the intracellular loops and C terminal domain. Arrestin then binds to the phosphorylated form of the receptor (3) preventing G protein binding and thus this represents the desensitized form of the receptor. Arrestin also binds clathrin and the receptors cluster in clathrin-coated pits (4). The receptors are endocytosed into clathrin-coated vesicles (5) and the vesicles uncoat and fuse with endosomes. In the acidic environment of endosomes (6) agonist dissociates, the receptor is dephosphorylated and sorting events occur to determine whether the receptor is to be returned to the plasma membrane via the recycling pathway (7) or sent to lysosomes for degradation (8).
After 20–30 min of incubation with agonist, when a steady state has been reached, the rates of endocytosis and recycling almost balance each other, with a turnover of 5–7% of receptors/min.

9.5.2.1 Molecular mechanisms of internalization

Arrestin has been shown to interact with both receptors and clathrin and has been proposed to function as an adaptor protein in endocytosis. Clathrin-mediated endocytosis is a widely used mechanism and is blocked by agents which inhibit the formation of clathrin-coated pits such as hyperosmolar sucrose (e.g. Garland et al. 1994; Pippig et al. 1995; Koenig et al. 1997). Involvement of the cytoskeleton also appears to be important since, in some cells, internalization can be blocked by agents which disrupt the cytoskeleton for example, colchicine (e.g. substance P receptor, Garland et al. 1994 and references therein).

Some receptors can be internalized via both clathrin-coated and smooth pits although this is likely to be dependent on the cell type under study (e.g. CCK receptor, Roettger et al. 1995). After internalization receptors have been observed in the same endosomal compartment as transferrin (Garland et al. 1994; Ashworth et al. 1995; Fonseca et al. 1995) suggesting that GPCRs undergo similar trafficking to a number of other cell surface proteins.

9.5.2.2 Physiological role of receptor trafficking

The question of whether internalization can account partly or fully for the observed rapid or long-term desensitization has been hotly debated for a number of years. The short answer is probably that it is partly responsible for short-term desensitization for some receptors under certain conditions but it is not the primary mechanism in most cases. A more complete answer involves understanding some of the following issues.

Is the receptor separated from G protein upon internalization? Under what circumstances is the ligand internalized with the receptor and, if the ligand is internalized with the receptor, does the receptor continue to generate a signal whilst in endosomes? How quickly is the internalized receptor recycled? When the recycled receptor reaches the cell surface again, is there a delay before recoupling to G protein and effector?

Answers to most of these questions are at best sketchy. Recent attention has focused on the observation that there is greater phosphatase activity in isolated light vesicles containing sequestered receptor and that the phosphatase activity is increased by the acid environment of the endosome (Sibley et al. 1986; Krueger et al. 1997). A number of groups have now shown that receptors which are not internalized, as a result of either mutation or prevention of clathrin-coated pit formation, also show an inability to recover from desensitization (β2-adrenergic receptor, Yu et al. 1993; α1B-adrenergic receptor, Fonseca et al. 1995; neurokinin receptors, Garland et al. 1996). Further, inhibition of phosphatases with calyculin A blocked β2-adrenergic receptor resensitization (Pippig et al. 1995).
It remains debatable whether the internalized receptor does still generate second messengers in endosomes. There is evidence that neuropeptide receptor/ligand complexes (e.g. Beaudet et al. 1994 and references therein) and G proteins (e.g. Hendry and Crouch 1991) undergo retrograde axonal transport but the functional significance remains unknown. In the case of neuropeptides, a perinuclear localization of the ligand has been demonstrated (Beaudet et al. 1994) which may reflect accumulation in late endosomes (Gruenberg and Maxfield 1995). A role in the nucleus has been suggested and GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors have been found to associate directly with nuclear transcription factors (reviewed in Milligan and White 2001). Internalization may be involved in the removal and degradation of neuropeptide transmitters (Beaudet et al. 1994 and references therein).

The fate of endocytosed peptide hormone agonists is important in determining the subsequent activation of receptors. Although several peptide hormones have been shown to colocalize with lysosomal markers in confocal microscopy studies (e.g. angiotensin II, Hein et al. 1997) quantitative studies with radiolabelled metabolically stable analogues of somatostatin have shown that the agonist is recycled, but then rebinds and re-endocytoses with its receptor unless measures are taken to prevent rebinding (such as extensive washing or the inclusion of saturating concentrations of unlabelled agonist or antagonist) (Koenig et al. 1998). Sufficient agonist can be recycled to continue to activate second messenger responses and prevent recovery of surface receptor number (ibid).

9.5.3 **Mechanisms of long-term down regulation**

It is clear that long-term (>1 h) treatment with agonist induces the loss of total cellular receptor number in addition to the decrease in surface receptor number. This is an important mechanism in the response to chronic drug treatment. For example, chronic treatment with antidepressants such as fluoxetine, which elevate synaptic levels of 5HT, induces a decrease in the density of 5HT receptors (Sleight et al. 1995). Amino-terminal (i.e. extracellular) polymorphisms of the human β<sub>2</sub>-adrenergic receptor lead to increased down-regulation (Green et al. 1994). This was proposed to be due to an increased degradation rate rather than effects on synthesis or agonist-induced internalization.

The most widely accepted current model is that when receptors are endocytosed, there are specific interactions between proteins involved in sorting and motifs in the C-terminal tail of the receptors which determine whether receptors enter the recycling pathway or the lysosomal pathway. Two distinct motifs have so far been identified and these are both located right at the end of the C-terminal tail. One is a PDZ-domain which interacts with NHERF (also known as EBP50) in a phosphorylation dependent manner (Cao et al. 1999). The other motif is a short sequence which regulates interaction with NSF (N-ethylmaleimide sensitive factor, Cong et al. 2001). Arrestin binding is also thought to be important for recycling since the V2 vasopressin receptor, which
continues to bind arrestin whilst in endosomes, does not show recovery of receptors back to the plasma membrane (Oakley et al. 1999).

5.4 Regulation at the level of the G protein

The regulator of G protein signalling (RGS) family of proteins, which contains more than 20 members, are responsible for regulating the rate of hydrolysis of GTP in the \( \alpha \) subunit of the G protein and are thus sometimes known as GAPs or GTPase activating proteins (reviewed in Berman and Gilman 1998; Hepler 1999; DeVries et al. 2000). RGS proteins can also attenuate G protein actions that are mediated by \( \beta \gamma \) subunits since they may alter the number of \( \beta \gamma \) subunits available by enhancing the affinity of \( \alpha \) subunits for \( \beta \gamma \) subunits after GTP hydrolysis thus accelerating the reformation of the heterotrimer (ibid). The action of RGS proteins is important in regulating the temporal characteristics of G protein actions. For example, RGS proteins play a role in accelerating the decay of agonist-induced activation of GIRK (G protein regulated inward rectifying potassium channels, Doupnik et al. 1997) and accelerate desensitization of adrenergic receptor induced N-type calcium channel currents (Diverse-Pierlussi et al. 1999). Effectors such as phospholipase C\( \beta \) may act as GTPase activating proteins and decrease the lifetime of the activated G protein (Rhee and Bae 1997).

9.6 Conclusions

G protein-coupled receptors transduce extracellular signals into a multitude of intracellular changes including changes in electrical activity, levels of second messengers, secretion, morphology, growth, and differentiation. Understanding how the common structural features of these receptors allow such controlled yet complex signalling patterns is a fundamental question in neurobiology. Over the last few years most of these receptors and their intracellular effector enzymes have been identified and cloned. Now the challenge is two-fold. First to understand how the receptor changes its conformation in order to transmit the signal. This will await a full three-dimensional structure of a number of different receptors along with further mutagenesis experiments and structural modelling. The second, and arguably more difficult challenge, is to understand the cell biology involved. We need to know how the direction and amplification of signal transmission is controlled by different cells under different conditions and how the receptors interact with the rest of the cellular machinery.

References


---

**THE G PROTEIN-COUPLED RECEPTOR (GPCR) SUPERFAMILY**


10.1 Introduction

Many extracellular stimuli result in an elevation of intracellular calcium concentration. Calcium ions act as messengers, coupling many external events or stimuli to the cell’s responses to those stimuli. Calcium has a central role to play in the nervous system, as well as mediating other important processes such as activation of the immune system and fertilization.

For a variety of reasons, the calcium ion has been ‘selected’ by evolution as an intracellular messenger in preference to other monatomic ions that are abundant in the cellular environment. The reasons why this is the case essentially centre around the need for an intracellular messenger to bind tightly and with high specificity to downstream components of the signalling cascade (often enzymes) and for the capacity for the concentration of the messenger to vary considerably between elevated and basal levels in a manner that is as energetically efficient as possible. The doubly charged Ca\(^{2+}\) ion binds strongly to target proteins and is thus a more appropriate messenger than the monovalent sodium, potassium, and chloride ions. It is also more flexible than the smaller divalent magnesium ion and so is able to coordinate more effectively with protein-binding sites. A complete discussion of these issues can be found elsewhere (Carafoli and Penniston 1985).

In addition, it is energetically favourable to utilize calcium as a second messenger. Basal levels of free calcium in the cell are necessarily very low (∼10\(^{-7}\) M) as higher levels would combine with phosphate ions in the cell to form a lethal precipitate. The very low basal levels of intracellular calcium compared to other ions (e.g. ∼10\(^{-3}\) M for magnesium) make it energetically efficient to use it as a second messenger — a relatively small amount of calcium needs to pass in to the cytoplasm to increase the concentration of the ion severalfold and similarly, relatively little energy need be spent pumping it out again to return the concentration to basal levels.

This review will address how calcium acts as a second messenger in mammalian neurons to couple synaptic activity to gene transcription. Such new gene expression has an important role to play in triggering long-term changes to neuronal physiology, function, and fate.
10.2 Calcium as an intracellular second messenger

Many cell types rely on an elevation of intracellular calcium to activate essential biological functions. This elevation can occur via either influx of calcium through proteinaceous channels into the cell from the extracellular medium, or through the release of calcium from internal stores (typically the endoplasmic reticulum).

Calcium influx is a critical step in communication between neurons. An action potential, travelling the length of a neuron, will arrive at the axon terminal and trigger calcium entry into the terminal through voltage-dependent calcium channels. This in turn results in calcium-dependent neurotransmitter release into the synaptic cleft. This neurotransmitter causes an electrical change in the post-synaptic neuron through the activation of neurotransmitter-gated ion channels. Thus, calcium is responsible for coupling action potentials to neurotransmitter release and enabling information to be passed on from neuron to neuron.

However, as well as contributing to the nuts and bolts of inter-neuronal communication, synaptically evoked cellular calcium transients activate signalling pathways in the cell and so are responsible for much intra-cellular communication as well. The predominant excitatory neurotransmitter in the central nervous system is glutamate and when released at the synapse it acts on glutamate receptors located on the post-synaptic membrane. Calcium influx is mainly mediated by the NMDA subtype of ionotropic glutamate receptors. Although some forms of non-NMDA receptors also pass calcium, it is more often than not that NMDA receptors mediate the calcium influx at the post-synaptic membrane that activate intracellular signalling pathways. This calcium influx can be augmented by release from intracellular stores, for example release from inositol triphosphate-sensitive stores via the activation of certain metabotropic glutamate receptors or via simple calcium-induced calcium release via ryanodine receptors (Berridge 1993a, b, Bockaert and Pin 1997; Verkhratsky and Petersen 1998; Emptage et al. 1999a, b).

10.3 Synaptic plasticity in the nervous system

An important characteristic of an animal’s nervous system is that it adapts in a structural and functional way in response to certain patterns of synaptic stimulation (Bliss and Collingridge 1993). The mature animal depends on this activity-dependent plasticity to change neuronal connectivity and strength in ways that enable the process of learning and memory (Malenka 1994). It is therefore a fundamental goal of neurobiologists to understand how electrical activity results in these long-lasting changes.

Synaptic plasticity can be split into three phases (see Chapter 14). During the early phase, seconds to minutes after electrical activity, changes in neuronal connections take place via the modification of existing proteins, particularly ion channels, for example by phosphorylation or delivery to the post-synaptic membrane (Robertson et al. 1996; Braithwaite et al. 2000; Malinow et al. 2000). In the later stages (minutes
to hours), synthesis of new proteins (phase II) or new gene expression and subsequent protein synthesis (phase III) converts these initial transient changes into long-lasting ones. In the mammalian brain these changes in gene expression are primarily triggered by calcium influx into neurons and involve the activation of intracellular signalling pathways (Bading et al. 1993).

The hippocampus has long been the focus of studies into memory formation in mammals since clinicians observed that patients with hippocampal lesions could not form new memory, suffered anterograde and retrograde amnesia, and were deficient in spatial learning tasks (Milner et al. 1968; Nadel and Moscovitch 1997; Whishaw et al. 1997). The phenomenon of hippocampal long-term potentiation (LTP) is an extensively studied model for learning and memory. LTP is an activity-dependent increase in synaptic efficacy that can last for days to weeks in intact animals (Bliss and Lomo 1973; Bliss and Collingridge 1993). It is induced in the postsynaptic neuron by repeated, high-frequency stimulation of presynaptic afferents. LTP is characterized by an early, protein synthesis independent phase and later phases whose establishment is blocked by protein synthesis inhibitors (Frey et al. 1993) and, for the longest-lasting phase, requires a critical period of transcription after the LTP-inducing stimuli have been applied (Nguyen et al. 1994). Critically, its induction was found to be dependent on an elevation of post-synaptic calcium (Lynch et al. 1983).

The changes in calcium following LTP-inducing stimuli elicit the rapid induction of a number of immediate early genes (IEGs—see also Chapter 14). Wisden et al. (1990) and Cole et al. (1989) showed a correlation between LTP and the induction of zif268 transcription. Later Worley et al. (1993) showed that stronger stimuli could also induce c-fos and c-jun and that such stimulus-induced gene expression was dependent on activation of NMDA receptors. IEGs are genes whose transcription can be triggered in the absence of de novo protein synthesis and many are transcription factors. These transcription factors likely contribute to secondary waves of transcription, leading to the structural and functional changes to the neuron required for the maintenance of LTP, although the exact mechanisms underlying this are unclear. Since these early studies, many genes up-regulated by LTP-inducing stimuli have been implicated in the maintenance phase of LTP such as tissue plasminogen activator (Baranes et al. 1998) and activity-regulated cytoskeleton-associated protein (Guzowski et al. 2000). These aspects of synaptic plasticity are discussed in Chapter 14.

Thus, the activation of gene expression in electrically excitable cells has been the subject of much recent research. Below is a brief overview of the essentials of transcriptional activation — the point at which gene expression is most often regulated.

10.4.1 Control of gene expression

The control of gene expression (at the protein level) can occur at many stages in the process; at transcription initiation and elongation, RNA processing (including alternative splicing), mRNA stability, control of translation, and of protein degradation. By far the commonest point of regulation is in transcription initiation. The synthesis of mRNA
is catalysed by RNA polymerase (pol) II but a large number of additional proteins are needed to direct and catalyse initiation at the correct place.

A DNA sequence near the transcription start site, called the core promoter element, is the site for the formation of the pre-initiation complex (PIC), a complex of RNA pol II and proteins called basal transcription factors (Roeder 1996). RNA pol II and the basal transcription factors are sufficient to facilitate a considerable amount of transcription in vitro (called basal transcription). However, in vivo, basal transcription levels are often extremely low, reflecting the fact that in vivo the DNA containing the core promoter is associated with histones and subsequently less accessible to incoming factors. For transcription to take place, other accessory factors, called activating transcription factors (hereafter known as transcription factors) are required. These factors bind to specific DNA promoter elements, located upstream of the core promoter and enhance the rate of PIC formation by contacting and recruiting the basal transcription factors, either directly, or indirectly via adapters or coactivators (Ptashne and Gann 1997). They can also modify or disrupt the chromatin structure (for example by histone acetylation) to make it easier for other factors to come in and bind.

The ability of many transcription factors to influence the rate of transcription initiation can be regulated by signalling pathways. This provides a mechanism whereby a stimulus applied to the cell that activates a signalling pathway can result in the specific activation of a subset of transcription factors. These signalling mechanisms often involve regulatory phosphorylation events at the transcription factor level that control, for example, DNA binding affinity, subcellular localization, or its interactions with the basal transcription machinery (Hunter and Karin 1992; Hill and Treisman 1995a; Whitmarsh and Davis 2000). Genes whose promoters contain binding sites for these signal-inducible transcription factors are transcribed as a result of signal-activating stimuli. There are several well-characterized DNA elements that act as binding sites for transcription factors that are regulated by calcium-activated signalling pathways, some examples of which are listed below.

10.4.2 Calcium-responsive DNA regulatory elements and their transcription factors

The cyclic-AMP Response Element (CRE) was first identified in the promoter of the somatostatin gene as the element required to confer cAMP inducibility on the gene (Comb et al. 1986; Montminy et al. 1986). The CRE was subsequently found in a number of other genes and is a 8 bp palindromic sequence, 5′-TGACGTCA-3′. The calcium-inducibility of the CRE was demonstrated first in PC12 cells (Sheng et al. 1988; Sheng et al. 1990). Bursts of synaptic activity strongly activate CREB by triggering synaptic NMDA receptor dependent calcium transients (Hardingham et al. 2002) and the CRE is activated by stimuli that generate long-lasting LTP in area CA1 of the hippocampus (Impey et al. 1996). The transcription factor that can mediate activation via the CRE, CRE binding protein (CREB) was isolated as a phosphoprotein that bound the CRE on the mouse somatostatin gene (Montminy and Bilezikjian 1987).
and was cloned by Hoeffler et al. (1988). In neurons, calcium activation of CREB is mediated by the CaM kinase and Ras-ERK1/2 signalling pathways (see below).

The **Serum Response Element (SRE)** was identified as an element centred at −310 bp required for serum induction of c-fos in fibroblasts (Treisman 1985). The SRE comprises a core element 5′-CC[A/T]6GG-3′ that is the binding site for serum response factor, SRF (Treisman 1987; Schröter et al. 1987; Norman et al. 1988). In addition, the SRE contains a ternary complex factor (TCF) binding site, 5′-CAGGAT-3′, situated immediately 5′ to the core SRE, which is bound by TCF. TCF is an umbrella name for a group of Ets domain proteins, SAP-1, Elk-1, and SAP-2 (Price et al. 1995). These proteins cannot bind the SRE on their own but recognize the SRE/SRF complex. Like the CRE, the SRE is a target for calcium signalling pathways, and can confer calcium inducibility onto a minimal c-fos promoter in response to activation of L-type calcium channels (Bading et al. 1993; Misra et al. 1994; Johnson et al. 1997) and NMDA receptors (Bading et al. 1993). Calcium-dependent synaptic activation of the SRE in hippocampal neurons is mediated by the ERK1/2 pathway (Hardingham et al. 2001a).

The **Nuclear Factor of Activated T cells (NFAT) Response Element** is another well-characterized calcium-response element (Rao et al. 1997). NFAT activity is regulated by the calcium-activated phosphatase calcineurin at the level of subcellular localization (Crabtree and Clipstone 1994; Rao et al. 1997). Calcineurin dephosphorylates the normally cytoplasmic NFAT, which exposes a nuclear localization signal and leads to its active transport into the nucleus. In the absence of continuing elevated levels of calcium (and calcineurin activity), NFAT becomes rephosphorylated by glycogen synthase kinase 3 (GSK3) and is re-exported to the cytoplasm. While these mechanisms were primarily characterized in T-cells, they also apply to neurons (Graef et al. 1999).

The next section of this review will focus on the mechanism of calcium-dependent CREB activation. The importance of CREB-dependent transcription on various aspects of neuronal physiology make it an extensively studied transcription factor.

### 10.5 The physiological importance of CREB

The study of the calcium activation of CREB-mediated gene expression bears considerable neurophysiological relevance. CREB seems to have an important role in the establishment of long-term memory in a variety of organisms (Silva et al., 1998). Genetic and molecular studies of learning paradigms in the marine snail, *Aplysia californica* and the fruit fly, *Drosophila melanogaster* have shown that modulating CREB levels or affecting CREB-dependent transcription severely affects the long-term, protein synthesis-dependent phase of the learning paradigm studied (Dash et al. 1990; Bailey and Kandel 1994; Tully et al. 1994; Yin et al. 1995a, b). In the mammalian central nervous system CREB was also found to play a role in information storage. The intrahippocampal perfusion of antisense oligonucleotides designed to bind and trigger degradation of CREB mRNA achieved a transient decrease in CREB
levels in the hippocampus, an area of the brain needed for certain spatial memory tasks. This strategy blocked the animal’s long-term memory of these spatial tasks without affecting short-term memory (Guzowski and McGaugh 1997). Mice deficient in alpha and delta forms of CREB have defective long-term (but not short-term) memory (Bourtchuladze et al. 1994).

There is also considerable evidence that CREB has a role in other aspects of neuronal physiology including drug addiction (Blendy and Maldonado 1998), circadian rhythmicity (King and Takahashi 2000; Gau et al. 2002) and neuronal survival (Walton and Dragunow 2000). Mice deficient in CREB exhibit excess apoptosis in sensory neurons (Lonze et al. 2002) and CREB mediates many of the pro-survival effects of neurotrophins (Riccio et al. 1999; Finkbeiner 2000; Walton and Dragunow 2000).

One mechanism by which the calcium-mediated activation of CREB modulates neuronal functions may involve BDNF, the activation of which is controlled at least in part by a CRE/CREB-dependent mechanism (Tao et al. 1988; Shieh et al. 1998). BDNF plays an important role in the survival and differentiation of certain classes of neurons during development (Ghosh et al. 1994; Schwartz et al. 1997) and is also implicated in the establishment of neuronal plasticity (Thoenen 1995). Other CREB-regulated genes that are implicated in maintaining changes in synaptic strength and efficacy include nNOS (Sasaki et al. 2000) and tissue plasminogen activator (Baranes et al. 1998). Apart from BDNF, CREB-dependent pro-survival genes include bcl-2, mcl-1, and vasoactive intestinal peptide (Wilson et al. 1996; Hahm and Eiden 1998; Wang et al. 1999).

10.6 The mechanism of CREB activation

10.6.1 CREB activation requires a crucial phosphorylation event

CREB can bind to the CRE even prior to the activation of CRE-dependent gene expression, indicating that regulation of its activity is not via the control of its DNA-binding activity (Sheng and Greenberg 1990; Sheng et al. 1990). CREB binds the CRE as a dimer, mediated by a leucine zipper motif (Yamamoto et al. 1988). To activate CREB-mediated transcription, CREB must become phosphorylated on serine 133 (Gonzalez and Montminy 1989).

Sheng et al. (1990) showed that elevation of intracellular calcium, following depolarization of PC12 cells, resulted in CREB phosphorylation on serine 133 and activation of CREB-mediated gene expression (Sheng et al. 1991). CREB-mediated gene expression was abolished by mutating serine 133 to an alanine, underlining the importance of the site as a point of control by calcium signalling pathways. These results showed that CREB is a calcium-responsive transcription factor and led to the assumption that CREB-mediated gene expression was triggered solely by phosphorylation of CREB on serine 133. Calcium-activated phosphorylation of CREB was subsequently shown in neurons of several types (Ginty et al. 1993; Bito et al. 1996, 1997; West et al. 2001).
10.6.1.1 Calcium-dependent signalling molecules capable of phosphorylating CREB on serine 133

10.6.1.1.1 **CaM kinases and their role in calcium-activated, CRE-dependent gene expression** CREB phosphorylation on serine 133 can be mediated by a number of protein kinases, including the multifunctional calcium/calmodulin dependent protein kinases (CaM kinases) II, IV and the less well studied CaM kinase I (Sheng *et al.* 1991; Matthews *et al.* 1994; Sun *et al.* 1994). CaM kinases play a role in diverse biological processes such as secretion, gene expression, LTP, cell cycle regulation, and translational control (for a review, see Schulman 1993). A role for CaM kinases in the calcium activation of *c-fos* expression (which contains a CRE and a SRE) was indicated by the attenuation of L-type calcium channel-activated *c-fos* expression in neurons by the CaM kinase inhibitor, KN-62 (Bading *et al.* 1993), and by the blocking of calcium-dependent *c-fos* expression by the calmodulin antagonist, calmidazolium (Morgan and Curran 1986; Bading *et al.* 1993). CaM kinase II is a protein highly expressed in the nervous system (Lin *et al.* 1987). CaM kinase IV is similar in sequence to CaM kinase II’s catalytic domain (Ohmstede *et al.* 1989). It is expressed in some cells of the immune system but also in neuronal cells, including the cerebellum and the hippocampus and has been shown to be mainly localized to the nucleus (Jensen *et al.* 1991; Bito *et al.* 1996).

Regulation and structural organization of CaM kinases II and IV are broadly similar (Schulman 1993; Ghosh and Greenberg 1995; Heist and Schulman 1998; Hook and Means 2001; Soderling and Stull 2001). Both have a N-terminal catalytic domain and a central calcium/calmodulin binding regulatory domain. Note that the kinase itself does not bind calcium, activation of the enzyme occurs when calcium complexed with a small protein, calmodulin, binds and displaces an auto-inhibitory domain that otherwise occludes the catalytic site. Despite their structural similarities and their ability to phosphorylate CREB on serine 133, CaM kinases II and IV have very different effects on CRE/CREB-mediated gene expression. Matthews *et al.* (1994) showed that a constitutively active form of CaM kinase IV, but not an active form of CaM kinase II could activate CREB-mediated transcription. This is because CaM kinase II also phosphorylates CREB at an inhibitory site, serine 142 (Sun *et al.* 1994).

Thus CaM kinase IV appears to be a prime candidate for the activation of CREB-mediated gene expression by nuclear calcium signals, being located largely in the nucleus and able to efficiently activate CREB. Indeed, antisense oligonucleotide-mediated disruption of CaM kinase IV expression suppressed calcium-activated CREB phosphorylation in hippocampal neurons (Bito *et al.* 1996) and calcium-activated CREB phosphorylation is impaired in neurons cultured from mice deficient in CaM kinase IV (Ho *et al.* 2000; Ribar *et al.* 2000; Kang *et al.* 2001). As would be predicted from the importance of CREB in long-term synaptic plasticity, CaM kinase IV is critical for long-term hippocampal LTP (Ho *et al.* 2000; Kang *et al.* 2001). Mice deficient in CaM Kinase IV exhibit defective cognitive memory related to a noxious shock (fear
conditioning, (Wei et al. 2002)) and while the same mice showed no obvious defects in spatial learning (Ho et al. 2000), a study that employed a more subtle technique (expressing a dominant interfering mutant of CaM kinase IV only in the post-natal forebrain) did find defective consolidation/retention of hippocampus-dependent long-term memory. In another well-studied paradigm for synaptic plasticity, cerebellar long-term depression (LTD), both inhibition of either CREB function or CaM kinase IV blocked the late phase (but not induction) of long-term depression in the cerebellum (Ahn et al. 1999; Kang et al. 2001).

10.6.1.1.2 The Ras-ERK1/2 (MAP kinase) cascade

The role of the ERK1/2 pathway in signalling to CREB was characterized first in the context of growth factor stimulation. Growth factors such as nerve growth factor (NGF) can activate CREB phosphorylation by a mechanism mediated by the Ras-ERK1/2 pathway. NGF treatment of PC12 cells resulted in the Ras-ERK1/2 dependent activation of a CREB kinase (Ginty et al. 1994) found to be a member of the previously identified pp90 RSK family, RSK2 (Xing et al. 1996). RSK2 was able to mediate CREB phosphorylation in vivo and in vitro. The fact that NGF cannot efficiently activate CRE-dependent transcription (Bonni et al. 1995; Johnson et al. 1997) demonstrates that CREB phosphorylation on serine 133 is not sufficient to activate CREB-mediated gene expression — additional activating steps are required (see below).

The Ras/MAP kinase (ERK1/2) pathway is also activated by calcium (Bading and Greenberg 1991; Rosen et al. 1994) and so RSK2 is activated by calcium signals as well as growth factors. This pathway is involved in both the induction and maintenance of LTP and other memory paradigms (Impey et al. 1999; Adams and Sweatt 2002).

10.6.1.2 Parallel activation of CaM kinase and ERK1/2 pathways by synaptic activity

At first glance it may appear that there is a certain degree of redundancy in the parallel activation of both the CaM kinase and ERK1/2 pathways when it comes to phosphorylating CREB. However, both pathways have critical roles to play. While CaM kinase IV itself is calcium dependent, ERK1/2 and RSK2 are not (the calcium-dependent activation step is far upstream) and so they are activated slower than CaM kinases and, importantly, their activity remains long after synaptic activity has ceased. Thus, while the CaM kinase pathway mediates CREB phosphorylation within the first few seconds of calcium influx, and both pathways contribute to CREB phosphorylation at intermediate time points, the ERK1/2 pathway is needed to prolong CREB phosphorylation after activity has ceased (Hardingham et al. 1999; Hardingham et al. 2001a; Impey and Goodman 2001; Wu et al. 2001) which is important for robust activation of CREB-dependent gene expression (Bito et al. 1996; Impey and Goodman 2001).

The importance of CaM kinase IV comes from its role in not only phosphorylating CREB, but in carrying out a 2nd critical activating step.....
10.6.1.3 Uncoupling of CREB phosphorylation from CREB-mediated transcription

CREB phosphorylation on serine 133, while necessary for CREB to function as a transcriptional activator, is not sufficient for full induction of gene expression. A wide variety of extracellular signals lead to CREB phosphorylation on serine 133, but many of them, including stimulation with nerve growth factor (NGF) or epidermal growth factor (EGF), which rely solely on the ERK1/2 pathway to trigger phosphorylation, are poor activators of CRE-mediated transcription (Xing et al. 1996). Further experiments demonstrate that serine 133 phosphorylation is not sufficient for calcium-induced CREB-mediated transcription: CaM kinase inhibition blocks CRE-mediated gene expression without inhibiting CREB phosphorylation (Chawla et al. 1998; Hardingham et al. 1999) showing that the remaining ‘CREB kinase’ pathway (the ERK1/2 pathway) is unable to activate CREB-dependent gene expression. Thus, CRE-dependent transcription requires additional activation events that are provided by CaM kinase activity but not, for example, by NGF or EGF treatment, activators of the Ras-ERK1/2 kinase pathway. This fact is further reinforced by the observation that both acutely activated CaM kinase IV and activated Ras trigger CREB phosphorylation but that only CaM kinase IV could activate CREB-mediated transcription (Chawla et al. 1998).

10.6.2 The role of CREB Binding Protein (CBP) in CREB-mediated transcription

10.6.2.1 Phosphorylated CREB activates transcription by recruiting its coactivator CREB binding protein, CBP

As stated earlier, CREB is regulated by modification of its transactivation domain, rather than its subcellular localization or DNA-binding activity. For CREB to activate transcription it must be associated with its coactivator, CBP, via the inducible part of the CREB transactivation domain, the kinase inducible domain (KID). CBP and p300 (a closely related protein) function as coactivators for many signal-dependent transcription factors such as c-Jun (Arias et al. 1994; Bannister et al. 1995), interferon-α signalling through STAT2 (Bhattacharya et al. 1996), Elk-1 (Janknecht and Nordheim 1996a, b), p53 (Gu et al. 1997), and nuclear hormone receptors (Chakravarti et al. 1996). The association of CBP with CREB is dependent on CREB being phosphorylated on serine 133 (Chrivia et al. 1993; Parker et al. 1996).

CBP’s ability to stimulate transcription may be due to its ability to recruit to the promoter components of the basal transcription machinery — it has been reported to associate with TFIIB, TATA-binding protein (TBP), and RNA polymerase II complex (Kwok et al. 1994; Swope et al. 1996; Nakajima et al. 1997). In addition, CBP has an intrinsic histone acetyl transferase (HAT) activity (Ogryzko et al. 1996; Bannister and Kouzarides 1996) as well as being able to associate with other HAT proteins, p/CAF and SRC1 (Yao et al. 1996; Chen et al. 1997).
10.6.2.2 A Model for nuclear calcium-regulated transcription: regulation of CBP

The purpose of CREB phosphorylation on serine 133 appears to be to recruit the transcriptional coactivator, CREB binding protein (CBP) to the promoter (Chrivia et al. 1993). However, evidence described above suggests that this is insufficient to activate transcription fully. This pointed to the possibility that the second regulatory event critical for transcriptional activation may involve the activation of CBP. This was indeed found to be the case. CBP’s transactivating potential is positively regulated by calcium, acting via CaM kinase IV (Chawla et al. 1998; Hardingham et al. 1999; Hu et al. 1999). CaM kinase IV-dependent enhancement of CBPs activity occurs predominantly via a phosphorylation event on serine-301 (Impey et al. 2002). In addition, recent use of a mutant form of CREB that constitutively binds CBP showed that in hippocampal neurons this mutant, while modestly active, is nowhere near as active as wild-type CREB activated by calcium signals and could itself be further activated by calcium signals and CaM kinase IV (Impey et al. 2002). Thus, the critical role for CaM kinase IV in calcium-activation of CREB-dependent transcription is in activating CBP, while the ERK1/2 pathway is responsible for ensuring prolonged CREB phosphorylation (and thus association of CREB with CBP, see Fig. 10.1).

As mentioned earlier, CBP/p300 acts as a coactivator for a large number of transcription factors. Thus, the fact that CBP is subject to calcium-dependent regulation means that calcium could potentially regulate transcription mediated by many of these factors, either on its own or in conjunction with other signals. Indeed, the calcium-dependent activation of the CBP-interacting transcription factor c-Jun has been reported (Cruzalegui et al. 1999) that can occur independently of what were hitherto thought to be crucial regulatory phosphorylation sites (targets of stress activated protein kinases).

10.7 Decoding the calcium signal

Until a few years ago there was little evidence to suggest anything other than the idea that elevated levels of intracellular calcium activate a specific set of ‘calcium-responsive genes’ to a greater or lesser extent, depending on the level of calcium concentration in the cell. This was in contrast to the apparent complexity of the processes that calcium was mediating. However, evidence is mounting that intracellular signalling pathways in neurons are laid down in a very sophisticated manner to enable cells to distinguish between calcium signals of differing properties. These properties include the amplitude of the signal (Hardingham et al. 1997), its temporal properties (including oscillatory frequency (Hardingham et al. 2001b), its spatial properties (Hardingham et al. 1997; Hardingham and Bading 1998; Hardingham et al. 2001a), and its site of entry (Bading et al. 1993; Hardingham et al. 1999, 2002; Sala et al. 2000). The subcellular localization of calcium-responsive signalling molecules points to different spatial requirements for calcium. For example, CaM kinase IV is predominantly nuclear,
Cytoplasmic Calcium

Ras
ERK 1/2
RSK 2

Nuclear Calcium

CaM Kinase IV
P (Ser 301)

CBP
(Ser 133)

CREB
CRE

Fig. 10.1 Calcium-activation of the transcription factor CREB. Synaptically evoked calcium transients trigger two parallel pathways that result in CREB phosphorylation on serine 133 (necessary for CBP recruitment); the Ras-ERK1/2 pathway and the CaM Kinase IV pathway. The Ras-ERK1/2 pathway that activates the CREB kinase RSK2 is in particular responsible for the prolonged phosphorylation of CREB. CaM kinase IV carries out the second critical activation step targeting CBP; this includes a phosphorylation event on serine 301. Note: the spatial requirements for calcium activation of these pathways is different (see Section 10.7).
which reflects the fact that nuclear calcium transients are necessary for the activation of CREB-dependent transcription and sufficient to activate CaM kinases in the neuronal nucleus (Hardingham et al. 1997, 2001b). As well as elevation of nuclear calcium being triggered by electrical activity, translocation of the calcium-sensing protein calmodulin into the nucleus has also been described (Deisseroth et al. 1998; Mermelstein et al. 2001). Were this to happen in neurons where nuclear calmodulin concentration is limiting this would assist in the activation of nuclear CaM kinases. Thus, an elevation of nuclear calcium is necessary for triggering the crucial 2nd CREB-activating step; activation of CBP (Chawla et al. 1998; Hardingham et al. 1999; Hu et al. 1999; Impey et al. 2002).

In sharp contrast, many components of the Ras-ERK1/2 pathway (including putative calcium-dependent activators of the pathway, PYK2 and synGAP) are contained within a protein complex with the NMDA receptor at the membrane (Husi et al. 2000). Calcium requirements for activation of this pathway are very different; increased calcium levels just under the membrane near the site of entry are sufficient to activate the ERK1/2 pathway (Hardingham et al. 2001a). Thus, relatively weak or spatially restricted calcium signals would be able to activate this pathway, which acts on the SRF/TCF transcription factor complex (Janknecht et al. 1993) and is responsible for prolonged CREB phosphorylation (though is unable to carry out the crucial 2nd activation step).

Many proteins located at the cytoplasm are of course not tethered near the membrane. For the freely diffusible cytoplasmic signalling molecule calcineurin, submembranous calcium elevation is not enough — it requires a global increase in cytoplasmic calcium concentration to be appreciably activated in order to trigger NFAT nuclear translocation (Hardingham et al. 2001a). Continued nuclear localization would then rely on active calcineurin in the nucleus (and therefore an elevation in nuclear calcium).

The ability of spatially distinct calcium signals to differentially activate transcription naturally only has relevance if scenarios exist in the neuron whereby nuclear, cytoplasmic, and submembranous calcium levels change to differing degrees. In neurons, isolated synaptic inputs can yield extremely spatially restricted calcium transients (Emptage et al. 1999a). However, where synaptic inputs are stronger or repetitive, global calcium transients can result (Alford et al. 1993). Also, where synaptic inputs contribute to causing the postsynaptic cell to fire action potentials, synaptic inputs can co-operate with back-propagating action potentials to yield global calcium transients (Magee and Johnston 1997; Emptage 1999b). Thus, differing patterns of electrical activity can in theory recruit different calcium-dependent signalling modules, which would have a qualitative effect on the resulting transcriptional output (Fig. 10.2).

Differing buffering capacities or calcium clearance mechanisms of different areas of the cell can also lead to transient subcellular differences in calcium. The nucleus appears to be particularly suited to the propagation and prolongation of calcium signals.
Fig. 10.2 Successive recruitment of signalling modules by three spatially distinct calcium pools may underline differential gene expression by synaptic activity. The figure shows three independent calcium-regulated signalling pathways, each with distinct functions in gene regulation, that are differentially controlled by spatially distinct calcium pools. Submembranous calcium influx via synaptic NMDA receptors is sufficient to activate the Ras-ERK1/2 (MAP Kinase)-RSK2 cascade, which induces TCF/SRF-mediated transcription and is important in prolonging the activation state of CREB. Synaptically evoked calcium influx can further invade the cytoplasm, recruiting the calcineurin signalling module that triggers NFAT nuclear translocation. Nuclear calcium elevation is sufficient for CaM Kinase IV-dependent CREB/CBP activation. Successive recruitment of signalling pathways allows different electrical impulse patterns to be converted into unique transcriptional responses providing a means for storage of activity pattern-specific information in the nervous system. The electrical inputs are coming in via a schematic glutamatergic synapse releasing glutamate (marked red) onto the postsynaptic neuron.
The absence of calcium buffering ATPases (which take calcium up into the ER/intermembrane space) on the inner nuclear membrane (Humbert et al. 1996) is thought to be behind the striking ability of elementary calcium release events proximal to the nucleus to trigger global increases in nuclear calcium concentration which last long after the cytoplasmic elementary ‘trigger’ has died away (Gerasimenko et al. 1996; Bootman et al. 1997; Lipp et al. 1997; Nakazawa and Murphy 1999). This property of nuclei applies to primary neurons where the nucleus is able to integrate synaptically evoked global calcium transients of quite low frequencies to give an elevated calcium ‘plateau’ (Hardingham et al. 2001b) ideal for the activation of nuclear events (for example via CaM kinase IV).

10.8 Concluding remarks

Activation of transcription by synaptic activity is an important adaptive response in the mammalian CNS. The neuron is wired in a sophisticated way to respond differently to different calcium signals. While much remains undiscovered, the molecular mechanisms of transcription factor activation and the basis for differential genomic responses to different calcium signals are becoming clearer. Such knowledge, coupled with an understanding of the physiological role of synaptically evoked transcription, means that a bridge between molecular and cellular events, and physiological behaviour, is slowly being built.

References


Chapter 11

Signalling by tyrosine phosphorylation in the nervous system

Jean-Antoine Girault

Introduction

Phosphorylation is a universal mode of regulation of protein properties, which plays a central role in all living cells. This reversible post-translational modification is a key part of virtually all intracellular signalling pathways (Fischer 1993; Krebs 1993). In vertebrates the amino acid residues that are the substrates of regulatory phosphorylation are serine, threonine, and tyrosine. In normal cells phosphotyrosine accounts for less than 1% of all the phosphorylated residues in proteins. This explains why tyrosine phosphorylation was discovered much later than serine and threonine phosphorylation. The first protein tyrosine kinases to be identified were v-Src, the product of an avian oncogene, coded by the Rous sarcoma virus, and its cellular counterpart, c-Src (Martin 2001). At about the same time the ability of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) to phosphorylate tyrosine was discovered (Ushiro and Cohen 1980). Thus, from the onset it appeared that tyrosine phosphorylation was involved in the control of cell growth, either in the context of tumor formation or in the action of growth factors. In fact, subsequent investigations have confirmed this initial impression, but have also substantially widened the scope of cellular functions in which tyrosine phosphorylation is involved. Studies in many different species have shown that, although phosphotyrosine can be found in bacteria as well as in eukaryotic cells, specific regulated tyrosine phosphorylation appears to be an evolutionary ‘invention’ of metazoans, i.e. multicellular animals. Generally, tyrosine phosphorylation is involved in cell–cell interactions, regulating cell growth, migration or shape in response to cell contacts or to soluble extracellular messengers. Because of its close relationship with cell growth, tyrosine phosphorylation initially did not attract much interest from investigators concerned with the mature nervous system. However, this interest changed when it was shown that neurotrophin receptors were tyrosine kinases (the Trk family), or associated with tyrosine kinases (e.g. receptors for glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) and ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF)). Moreover, work over the last ten years or so has shown that non-receptor tyrosine kinases play a critical role.
role in the nervous system, including during adulthood, regulating functions that are often seen as specific for neurons such as synaptic plasticity, learning, and memory. In this chapter we will first describe the most important features of the structure and function of the protein tyrosine kinases and phosphatases and we will then examine their role in neurons at different stages of development, in the adult as well as their role in glial cells and in pathological conditions. All tyrosine kinases are characterized by a conserved catalytic domain that is also highly related to that of serine/threonine kinases (Hanks and Hunter 1995). However, the rest of the peptide chain is composed of very diverse domains that provide specific means of targeting, regulation and interactions. Tyrosine kinases can be conveniently divided into receptor tyrosine kinases, which have an extracellular region, and non-receptor tyrosine kinases.

11.1 Receptor tyrosine kinases

A recent survey of putative tyrosine kinases encoded in the human genome identified 90 unique kinase genes and 5 pseudogenes (Robinson et al. 2000). Of the 90 tyrosine kinases, 58 are receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) distributed into 20 subfamilies. RTKs are type 1 transmembrane proteins, i.e. with an extracellular N-terminus, a single transmembrane domain and an intracellular C-terminus. The tyrosine kinase catalytic core corresponds to all or most of the intracellular domain. The extracellular region is much more diverse and encompasses various domains, depending on the receptor, which include the ligand-binding domain. RTKs are classified into several groups, according to the nature of their extracellular domains (Fig. 11.1).

The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) group is characterized by two cysteine-rich domains in the extracellular region. It contains the receptor for EGF itself, and the ErbBs which are receptors for the neuregulins. Neuregulins (NRG-1–4), coded by at least four different genes, encompass EGF-like domains and exist under various forms due to alternative splicing and promoter usage (Buonanno and Fischbach 2001). Neuregulins 1–3 are expressed in the nervous system and play a role in neuronal development and in the adult. ErbB 2–4 are enriched at neuromuscular junctions, and at the level of postsynaptic densities in adult brain. ErbB receptors are also involved in myelinating cell differentiation.

The insulin and IGF-1 receptors have a distinct organization among RTKs inasmuch as the precursor peptide chain is cleaved during its processing into two different chains (α and β). The mature receptor is an heterotetramer (α2β2) in which the β subunits are linked with each other and with α chain by disulfide bridges (Fig. 11.1). The extracellular α chain contains a cysteine-rich domain involved in ligand binding and the β chain crosses the membrane and encompasses the intracellular catalytic domain.

Several subfamilies of RTKs are characterized by an extracellular region encompassing several immunoglobulin-like (Ig) domains. The kinase domain of these receptors is interrupted by a peptide termed ‘kinase insert’. These subfamilies include those of PDGF-R, FGF-R, and Flt-1, which differ by the number of Ig domains. The extracellular
region of the FGF-R group is interrupted by a sequence rich in acidic residues. The 3-D structure of the FGF-R has been determined and has revealed that this acidic region is involved in the binding of a mucopolysaccharide, such as heparin, which forms a ternary complex with the FGF and its receptor (Pellegrini 2001).

The Trk subfamily plays a particularly important role in neurons since it encodes the high-affinity receptors for neurotrophins. NGF activates TrkA, BDNF and NT-4/5 activate trkB, and NT-3 activates TrkC. Their extracellular region contains cell adhesion motifs with three tandem leucine-rich motifs flanked by two cysteine clusters, as well as two Ig domains (Patapoutian and Reichardt 2001). The Ig domain proximal to the membrane is essential for the binding of the neurotrophin (Wiesmann et al. 1999).

Trk can associate with another protein, named p75NTR, which belongs to the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor family. p75NTR is a low-affinity receptor for neurotrophins, capable to mediate its own signal transduction, but which further increases the affinity of Trk for neurotrophins (Hempstead 2002). Since the signals mediated by Trk or by the Trk- p75NTR complex lead to cell survival, whereas those generated by p75NTR alone can be pro-apoptotic, the ratio of the expression of these molecules is clearly an important parameter for the cellular responses to neurotrophins.

One transmembrane tyrosine kinase deserves special attention since it plays an important role in the action of some neurotrophic factors. It is the product of the proto-oncogene c-Ret. While Ret by itself has no ligand-binding domain, it interacts with a group of proteins called GDNF-family receptors-α (GFRα), which are receptors for glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) and related factors (neurturin, artemin and persephin) (Airaksinen and Saarma 2002). The GFRα do not possess a transmembrane domain but are attached to the membrane by a glycosylphosphatidylinositol
(GPI) that concentrates them in specific membrane regions that are rich in sphingolipids and cholesterol, and are called lipid rafts. Each subtype of GFRα interacts with Ret and the complex forms an active GDNF receptor.

The Eph receptors constitute the largest subfamily of RTKs and are particularly important in the nervous system, both during development and adulthood. Eph receptors are receptors for ephrins, a group of GPI-anchored (ephrins A) or transmembrane (ephrins B) ligands (Mellitzer et al. 2000; Klein 2001; Kullander and Klein 2002). There are at least 14 Eph receptors and 8 ephrins in humans. In general, EphA receptors bind ephrins A, whereas EphB receptors bind ephrins B. Eph receptor extracellular domain encompass a short cysteine-rich region and fibronectin type III domains. Two Eph receptors bind two ephrin molecules forming a functional tetramer (Himanen et al. 2001). Interestingly both the ephrins and their receptors are capable of transducing signals, providing a bidirectional exchange of information at zones of cell contacts where these two proteins interact.

There are several additional classes of RTKs among which several are expressed in the nervous system. Among these we can mention the Axl-UFO-Tyro 3 subfamily which is characterized by the presence of both Ig and fibronectin type III domains. These kinases are receptors for protein S and Gas6. Receptors and ligands are expressed in many cell types including those in the nervous system, but their function remains to be determined.

### 11.2 Mechanisms of activation and signalling of receptor tyrosine kinases

How can the binding of a ligand to the extracellular domain alter the activity of the intracellular tyrosine kinase? This question was initially very puzzling when one considers that the two domains of an RTK are linked by a single transmembrane region. Studies from many groups have shown that activation of such receptors involves dimerization (Weiss and Schlessinger 1998; Schlessinger 2000). Depending on the receptors, this may take different paths. In some cases, such as the insulin receptor, the receptor is already an oligomer in the absence of ligand. Insulin binding is thought to trigger a conformational change of the oligomer which results in a modification of the respective position of the two catalytic cores, and allows them to phosphorylate each other. In other cases, such as the FGF receptor, the receptor is thought to preexist as a monomer. In that case binding of the ligand, in interaction with a third molecule, a mucopolysaccharide (see above), promotes the formation of a dimer of two ternary complexes. Whatever the mechanism of interaction between the ligand and the extracellular region of the receptor, the formation of a dimer triggered on the extracellular side of the membrane, alters the position of the intracellular catalytic domains relative to each other and enables them to phosphorylate each other (trans-phosphorylation) on tyrosine residues. This reaction is the trigger for the signalling cascades activated by the receptor.
One major effect of the tyrosine phosphorylation is that it allows the recruitment of proteins that possess domains that bind to specific peptide sequences that encompass a phosphorylated tyrosine (Fig. 11.2). Such domains include Src-homology 2 (SH2) and phosphotyrosine-binding (PTB) domains. The important point is that these domains bind to the growth factor receptor only when it is phosphorylated on tyrosine. The proteins that contain SH2 domains belong to several categories. Some are themselves enzymes such as phospholipase Cγ (PLCγ) and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3-K). Their binding to the receptor brings them in the vicinity of their substrates that are membrane lipids. PLCγ cleaves phosphatidylinositol 4,5 diphosphate (PIP2) into diacylglycerol (DAG) and inositol triphosphate (IP3). IP3 releases Ca²⁺ from intracellular stores, which in combination with DAG activates protein kinases C (PKC), a group of enzymes that phosphorylate their substrates on serines or threonines. PI3-K, on the other hand, phosphorylates the inositol moiety of PIP2, generating PIP3 (phosphatidylinositol 3,4,5 trisphosphate). PIP3 provides an anchoring site at the membrane for the pleckstrin homology (PH) domain of two serine threonine kinases, PKB/Akt and its activating kinase PDK1. This translocation results in the activation of Akt, which is a major effector of growth factor receptors.

A different type of proteins that are recruited on tyrosine-phosphorylated growth factor receptors are adaptor molecules. One such protein, Grb-2, has a SH2 domain that binds to the receptor, and two Src homology 3 (SH3) domains that bind to specific proline-rich sequences (usually two proline residues separated by two other amino acids). Through its SH3 domains Grb2 is associated with an enzyme called SOS that belongs to the category of the guanine nucleotide exchange factors. These enzymes act on small GTP binding proteins of the Ras family and help them to release GDP and to exchange it for GTP, putting them in an active conformation. Since Ras is itself attached to the inner face of plasma membrane through a lipid anchor, the recruitment of Grb-2-SOS to the activated receptor places it in the vicinity of its substrate, and

![Fig. 11.2](https://example.com/fig11_2.png)  
**Fig. 11.2** Schematic representation of the activation of a tyrosine kinase growth factor receptor. Some of the proteins that can be recruited to the phosphorylated receptor through their SH2 domain are schematically indicated.
triggers the formation of Ras-GTP. Ras-GTP is recognized by proteins which have a Ras-binding domain, a major one being the protein kinase Raf-1. In fact there are several different isoforms of Raf, one of which, B-Raf, is highly enriched in neurons and has properties slightly different from those of Raf-1. Raf-1 is activated by its binding to Ras-GTP and by concomitant phosphorylation, and becomes capable of activating the extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) pathway, also called mitogen-activated kinase (MAP-kinase) pathway (Derkinderen et al. 1999). This is achieved by phosphorylation and activation by Raf-1 or B-Raf of a protein kinase termed MEK (MAP-kinase/ERK kinase). MEK is an unusual kinase which is capable of phosphorylating ERK on both threonine and tyrosine residues. This results in the activation of ERK, a serine/threonine kinase.

In the case of some RTKs, Grb-2 does not bind directly to the phosphorylated receptor and additional adaptor molecules are involved, such as insulin receptor substrate (IRS) and Shc, which bind to the phosphorylated receptors by a PTB domain, becomes phosphorylated on tyrosine and allow the recruitment of Grb-2 or of other proteins. An additional important type of enzyme that can be recruited to activated RTKs are tyrosine kinases of the Src family (see below) that phosphorylate neighboring proteins, including Shc, and amplify the signals generated by the receptor. Interestingly, protein tyrosine phosphatases (the enzymes that dephosphorylate tyrosine residues) that possess SH2 domains, such as SHP-2, can also be recruited to the activated receptors (Tonks and Neel 2001). These phosphatases can have both a positive and negative feedback role.

The important point in understanding the signalling generated by RTKs is that their activation triggers directly or indirectly the recruitment to the membrane of a number of enzymes which are capable of activating a variety of signalling pathways. Many of these enzymes are physically associated, directly or indirectly, with the receptor, forming large multimolecular signalling complexes. Each RTK can bind a specific combination of signalling molecules and, although there is a considerable overlap between receptors, each of them activates a selective combination of signalling pathways. Besides these binding specificities, another important difference between receptors is their different kinetics of activation. Upon ligand binding some RTKs remain active for a long time, while others are only transiently activated. This can have important consequences on the type of cellular responses that are generated. The importance of the duration of activation has been well demonstrated in the case of PC12 cells differentiation, a classical model of study of NGF (Traverse et al. 1992). In this model, although both EGF and NGF activate the ERK pathway, only stimulation by NGF is sufficiently prolonged to trigger differentiation. Interestingly, in neurons the signalling complexes including Trk can be endocytosed and appear to remain active at the surface of vesicles that are retrogradely transported to the cell body (Ginty and Segal 2002). This is likely to be one of the mechanisms by which survival signals generated at the contact of specific targets are retrogradely conveyed to the neuronal cell body.
A remarkable feature of the various signaling pathways triggered by RTKs is that they lead to the activation of several serine/threonine protein kinases with a wide variety of substrates, such as PKC, Akt, and ERK. These kinases can phosphorylate substrates in the vicinity of their site of activation and exert local effects. This is probably an important aspect in the action of growth factors when they are located on dendritic spines or shafts or on nerve terminals. But the activated serine/threonine kinases have also the important capacity to alter gene expression. For example, active ERK can translocate to the nucleus where it phosphorylates and activates a transcription factor named Elk which is part of a ternary complex that controls the transcription of specific genes. Although RTKs are usually low-abundance proteins, their activation exerts major effects due to the simultaneous activation of several signaling pathways that are often synergistic and result in enhanced survival and growth. Of course, cells normally possess several means to control the level of activation of these pathways and limit in time their action. These include several mechanisms including desensitization and degradation of receptors, and dephosphorylation of tyrosines, as well as serines and threonines under the action of protein phosphatases (see below). However, sometimes molecules in the pathways summarized above escape these controls because of mutation and become constitutively activated. This is a major factor in the apparition of cancer (Hunter 1997).

11.3 Non-receptor tyrosine kinases

Non-receptor tyrosine kinases (NRTK) are a rather heterogeneous group of enzymes that have in common a conserved tyrosine kinase catalytic domain and a lack of extracellular ligand-binding domain. There are at least 32 non-receptor tyrosine kinases in humans distributed into 10 families (Robinson et al. 2000). These families have various domains in addition to their tyrosine kinase domain (Fig. 11.3) and their functions in cells are also diverse.

![Diagram of non-receptor tyrosine kinases](image)

**Fig. 11.3** Examples of non-receptor tyrosine kinases. The conserved catalytic tyrosine kinase domain is in black. SH2: Src-homology 2, SH3: Src-homology 3, DNA-b: DNA binding, ABD: actin-binding domain, FERM: four-point-one, ezrin, radixin, moesin, FAT: focal adhesion targeting. Note that in JAKs, only the C terminal tyrosine kinase domain is catalytically active.
Janus kinases (JAKs) are so named because they have two kinase domains like the two-faced Roman God. Only one of these domains is active, however. The N-terminus of JAKs is related to FERM (four-point-one, ezrin, radixin, moesin) domains, which are present in a number of proteins capable of interacting reversibly with membrane proteins (Girault et al. 1999a). The JAKs do have the very important property of interacting with a group of transmembrane proteins known as the cytokine receptors. When the cytokine receptors bind their cognate ligands (cytokines), they dimerize and activate the JAKs that phosphorylate themselves and the associated receptors on tyrosines. Phosphorylation of the receptor provides a docking site for transcription factors of the STAT family (signal transducer and activator of transcription) which possess an SH2 domain. The STAT molecules are then phosphorylated by JAKs and dimerize (Fig. 11.4). The resulting STAT dimers are no longer bound to the receptors and translocate to the nucleus where they activate directly the transcription of specific genes. The complex between JAKs and cytokine receptors closely resemble RTKs in their ability to transduce signals in response to direct activation by extracellular messengers. However, the cytokine receptors/JAKs complex have an original signalling mechanism, which involves a direct control of gene transcription through STATs. Cytokine receptors that play an important role in nerve cells include the receptor for ciliary-derived neurotrophic factor (CNTF) and the receptor of leptin, a polypeptide involved in the control of food intake and body weight.

The Src family is the archetype of NRTKs, which comprises at least 8 members in humans. These kinases encompass two conserved domains in addition to their catalytic domain (Fig. 11.3), referred to as Src-homology 2 and 3 (SH2, SH3), capable of binding specific peptides containing a phosphorylated tyrosine or a proline-rich sequence, respectively (Thomas and Brugge 1997). Src family kinases are usually membrane attached, due to the presence, at their N-terminus, of a covalently bound myristic acid, a 14-carbon saturated fatty acid. Myristoylation enriches Src kinases in membrane rafts. Src kinases are maintained in an inactive state by several intramolecular interactions: the SH2 domain binds to a phosphorylated tyrosine located at the C-terminus, while the SH3 domain interacts with a specific sequence in the linker region between the catalytic and SH2 domains. This organization allows to understand how Src kinases are regulated and how they become activated following disruption of their intramolecular interactions (Fig. 11.5). The phosphorylation of the C-terminal tyrosine which is the intramolecular ligand of the SH2 domain, is an important parameter. The C-terminal tyrosine is phosphorylated by a specific enzyme, termed C-terminal Src kinase (Csk), which acts on all members of the Src family and has a critical regulatory role. Conversely, dephosphorylation of this tyrosine is catalysed by several tyrosine phosphatases whose action result in Src activation. This is an unusual situation in which a tyrosine phosphatase can activate a tyrosine phosphorylation pathway. Another means of activation of Src is the displacement of its SH2 domain from the C-terminal phosphorylated tyrosine by a competing phosphopeptide.
Fig. 11.4 Schematic representation of the activation mechanism of a cytokine receptor coupled to JAK tyrosine kinases and of STAT.
This occurs for instance when Src binds to a phosphorylated RTK. Similarly Src activation can be prompted by the binding of its SH3 domain to a proline-rich sequence in an interacting protein. In addition, it should be mentioned that, like many other tyrosine kinases, Src is capable of autophosphorylation on a tyrosine residue located in the activation loop of the kinase domain, and that this autophosphorylation enhances its catalytic activity. Neurons express several members of the Src family such as c-Src or its neuronal splice variant n-Src, Fyn, Yes, and Lck. Using various combinations of the mechanisms described above, these kinases can be activated in neurons through several pathways including recruitment to activated growth factor receptors through its SH2 domain, or in response to G protein-coupled receptors (Pierce and Lefkowitz 2001).

Focal adhesion kinase (FAK) and the closely related PYK2 (proline-rich tyrosine kinase-2 also termed CAKB or CADTK or RAFTK) form a distinct group of NRTK (Girault et al. 1999b). In cells in culture FAK is enriched at focal adhesions, where integrins attached to extracellular matrix components are concentrated and form points of anchorage for the actin cytoskeleton. FAK contains a central kinase domain, a C-terminal focal adhesion targeting (FAT) domain, and an N-terminal FERM domain, related to that of JAKs (Fig. 11.3). FAK mediates adhesion-dependent survival signals. It is also involved in cell motility by controlling the turnover of focal adhesions. FAK is activated following integrin engagement and in response to G protein-coupled receptors. Its activation corresponds to its autophosphorylation on a tyrosine located at the junction between the N-terminal domain and the kinase domain. This provides a binding site for Src and Fyn, as well as for PI3-kinase. Recruitment of these proteins triggers signalling pathways reminiscent of those activated by growth factor receptors. Neurons express alternatively spliced isoforms of FAK with an increased autophosphorylation activity. In hippocampal slices

---

**Fig. 11.5** Schematic representation of the regulation of Src family kinases. These kinases are attached to the membrane through an N-terminal myristic acid. They are maintained in an inactive state by intramolecular interactions that can be alleviated by the indicated mechanisms.
FAK can be activated by various neurotransmitters, including glutamate, and by neuromodulators, such as endocannabinoids (Girault et al. 1999b). PYK2 has properties quite similar to FAK, although it generally does not respond to cell adhesion, but is rather activated in response to signals that raise intracellular Ca^{2+} through a mechanism that is not fully understood. PKC seems to be involved in PYK2 regulation in some cells but not in others. In neurons PYK2 is exquisitely sensitive to depolarization and stimuli which increase Ca^{2+}. Both FAK and PYK2 provide means for activating Src family kinases and other signalling pathways in response to neurotransmitters in brain.

Other NRTK well studied in neurons include Abl, and Arg, the product of the Abl-related gene. Abl has attracted attention as a clinically efficient target for anticancer drugs (Druker and Lydon 2000), but it is also important for normal cell functions including during the development of the nervous system (Van Etten 1999). In addition to SH3, SH2, and kinase domains Abl contains an actin-binding domain and a DNA-binding domain at its C-terminus (Fig. 11.3). These features account for the nuclear and cytoplasmic locations of the enzyme, and its involvement in the control of actin cytoskeleton.

11.4 Tyrosine phosphatases

A major feature of phosphorylation reactions is that they are reversible in physiological conditions. Phosphotyrosines are dephosphorylated by several classes of tyrosine phosphatases, including classical protein tyrosine phosphatases (PTPs), low molecular weight PTPs, and two groups of dual specificity phosphatases (Fauman and Saper 1996; Tonks and Neel 2001). In spite of a lack of sequence similarities in the catalytic domains of these four classes of phosphatases, they share a common catalytic mechanism involving a critical cysteine residue and a similar structural organization. In general PTPs have a high intrinsic activity and their inhibition in living cells leads to a marked increase in total protein tyrosine phosphorylation. The catalytic cysteine residue is very sensitive to oxidation and it is thought that its oxidation by H_2O_2 is a regulatory mechanism of some PTPs. Classical PTPs are subdivided into receptor-like PTPs (RPTPs) and non-receptor-like PTPs (Fig. 11.6). Although many RPTPs have two catalytic domains, the C-terminal one has usually little or no catalytic activity, and its function is unclear. In contrast to RTK little is known about possible ligands that might regulate the activity of RPTPs. An important feature in their regulation appears to be their precise localization. Extracellular domains of RPTPs may concentrate them at specific locations, through poorly understood interactions with proteins of other cells or of extracellular matrix. This class of enzymes appears to play an important role in axon guidance during development (Van Vactor 1998). Among the non-receptor-like PTPs, some possess a SH2 domain which targets them to activated growth factor receptors (Fig. 11.6) (see above). Although in general PTPs tend to oppose tyrosine kinase signalling, in some cases they can activate specific tyrosine kinases, as discussed above in the case of Src.
11.5 **Role of protein tyrosine phosphorylation during development of the nervous system**

Since receptors for virtually all growth factors acting on neurons are either RTKs or associated with tyrosine kinases, it is not surprising that tyrosine phosphorylation is a major signalling pathway during neuronal development. Growth factors that are active on neurons include molecules that are also well characterized in other cells, such as EGF, FGF, or IGF-1, and factors that are specific to neurons. Among the latter category neurotrophic factors which act on Trk receptors have been extensively studied (see above). The signalling mechanisms of Trk receptors include the activation of PLCγ, the Ras-ERK pathway, and PI3-kinase (Huang and Reichardt 2001). Another type of RTK plays a specific role in synapse formation at the neuromuscular junction (Sanes and Lichtman 2001). During development the clustering of nicotinic acetylcholine receptors is due to agrin, a large heparan sulfate proteoglycan secreted by nerve terminals. Agrin binds to MusK, a tyrosine kinase present at the plasma membrane of muscle cells. Both agrin and MusK are necessary for the clustering of acetylcholine receptors, which is mediated by its interaction with a cytoplasmic protein, rapsyn.

Protein tyrosine phosphorylation is involved in axon guidance throughout development. The first evidence originated from studies in Drosophila (Van Vactor 1998), but similar results have now been obtained in other species including mammals and Aplysia (Lanier and Gertler 2000; Jay 2001). It is well established that actin polymerization is an important aspect of growth cone progression. Tyrosine phosphorylation controls this process, by directly or indirectly activating proteins involved in actin polymerization/dem polymerization, such as ENA/Vasp. Tyrosine phosphorylation also
participates in the regulation of small GTPases of the Rho family, including Cdc42, Rac, and Rho A that promote the extension of filopodia and lamellipodia, and microfilaments bundling, respectively. Tyrosine phosphorylation can also control cell adhesion molecules such as cadherins. Enzymes that are important in the regulation of tyrosine phosphorylation during neurite extension include protein tyrosine kinases of the Abl and Src families, and several RPTPs. Thus, increased tyrosine phosphorylation in response to specific extracellular clues which activate tyrosine kinases facilitates growth cone progression, whereas decreased phosphorylation through activation or enrichment of tyrosine phosphatases have the opposite effect. Very localized regulation of this balance will have steering effects, inducing the turning of the cone.

Ephrins and their cognate Eph receptors also play an important role during the development of the nervous system, by generating bidirectional signalling between adjacent cells. These proteins mediate contact-dependent cell interactions that regulate the repulsion mechanism involved in the guidance of growth cones (Mellitzer et al. 2000; Klein 2001; Kullander and Klein 2002). They are also critical for topographic mapping, as illustrated in the case of the retinotectal projections (Mellitzer et al. 2000). Repulsive effects seem to result from the fact that activation of Eph receptors inhibits several pathways including those which involve ERK, Abl, Cdc42, and Rac, and antagonizes the effects of integrins engagement. Reverse signalling by ephrins involve phosphorylation by Src family kinases and recruitment of adaptor proteins, such as Grb4, that may allow regulation of the actin cytoskeleton. Interestingly, ephrins can be shed from cell surface allowing cells or their processes to detach from each other, and repulsion can be turned into adhesion by alternative splicing of Eph receptors (Klein 2001).

11.6 Role of tyrosine phosphorylation in the regulation of ion channels and receptors

The role of protein tyrosine phosphorylation in the control of cell growth and differentiation, as well as in the regulation of cell shape and movement is to some extent not specific to nerve cells. On the other hand, work over the last ten years has revealed that tyrosine phosphorylation is also involved in the regulation of ion channels and neurotransmitter receptors that are either specific of neurons or highly enriched in these cells (Smart 1997; Boxall and Lancaster 1998; Swope et al. 1999). Regulation of ligand-gated ion channels by tyrosine phosphorylation has been extensively investigated. As mentioned above, tyrosine phosphorylation is the trigger of nicotinic acetylcholine receptor clustering at the neuromuscular junction. However, this clustering does not result from direct phosphorylation of the receptor (Sanes and Lichtman 2001). Instead, tyrosine phosphorylation of the nicotinic receptor controls the rate of receptor desensitization (Hopfield et al. 1988). The NMDA glutamate receptor (NMDA-R) is also regulated by tyrosine phosphorylation (Ali and Salter 2001). This receptor comprises a combination of NR1 and NR2 subunits. The NR2 subunits
A and B are substrates of Src family kinases, Src and Fyn, which are physically associated with the NMDA-R multiprotein complex. Tyrosine phosphorylation results in an upregulation of the NMDA-R function. Interestingly, protein kinase C also activates NMDA receptors, and this activation appears to be mediated through PYK2/Cakβ and Src family kinases (Fig. 11.7). The GABA-A receptor, a chloride channel which is activated by the major inhibitory neurotransmitter in the adult brain, is also phosphorylated on tyrosine and this phosphorylation increases its function (Moss et al. 1995). Voltage-gated ion channels are also substrates for tyrosine kinases of the Src family and for specific tyrosine phosphatases (Levitan 1999). Several types of K+ channels are regulated by tyrosine phosphorylation, and depending on the channels considered, the effects of phosphorylation can be either an increase or a suppression of their function.

11.7 Role of protein tyrosine phosphorylation in synaptic plasticity

As we have seen above, tyrosine phosphorylation in neurons is controlled by two major types of mechanisms: growth factors directly activate tyrosine kinase receptors, whereas depolarization, classical neurotransmitters, as well as other types of intercellular messengers are capable of enhancing tyrosine phosphorylation through non-receptor tyrosine kinases (Girault et al. 1999b). On the other hand, tyrosine phosphorylation is known to regulate directly or indirectly a variety of cellular functions ranging from ion channel
properties to the organization of cytoskeletal proteins and gene expression. Thus, tyrosine phosphorylation is strategically located at crossroads of signalling mechanisms, and it comes as no surprise that it is implicated in synaptic plasticity (Boxall and Lancaster 1998; Girault et al. 1999b). The first clue came from experiments which demonstrated that non-specific tyrosine kinase inhibitors were capable of preventing long-term potentiation in the CA1 region of hippocampus (O’Dell et al. 1991). Subsequently it was found that LTP was blunted in hippocampus of Fyn knockout mice, whereas mice devoid of Src, Yes, or Abl were indistinguishable from their wild-type counterparts (Grant et al. 1992). The impairment of synaptic plasticity in Fyn −/− mice is unlikely to be secondary to the developmental defects observed in these animals, since they were rescued by transient re-expression of Fyn (Kojima et al. 1997). Interestingly, Fyn knockout mice display other deficits thought to be linked to NMDA-R dysfunction including an hypersensitivity to hypnotic effects of ethanol (Miyakawa et al. 1997). Although these data suggest a more critical role of Fyn than of Src in vivo, other types of studies have implicated Src and the regulation of NMDA-R (Ali and Salter 2001). Indeed, NMDA-R tyrosine phosphorylation is increased in the course of LTP, and PYK2/Cakβ together with Src exert a facilitatory effect on LTP. Therefore it has been suggested that PYK2/Cakβ and Src play a critical role in LTP induction by enhancing NMDA-R function, a process that may be triggered by Ca2+ influx and/or PKC activation (see also Chapter 14).

Receptor tyrosine kinases have also been implicated in the induction of LTP. Most noticeably hippocampal LTP is impaired by reagents that alter BDNF action, as well as in BDNF and TrkB knockout mice (Huang and Reichardt 2001). These effects are observed in the absence of detectable alterations of neuronal circuitry and basal synaptic transmission, strongly indicating that neurotrophins and their receptors are directly involved in the activity-dependent mechanisms that regulate synaptic efficacy. In fact, recent work from several laboratories has demonstrated that the relative contribution of neurotrophins to synaptic plasticity depends on the type of stimuli used, and that it involves pre and post-synaptic actions, as well as immediate and delayed effects (Schuman 1999; Patterson et al. 2001; Kovalchuk et al. 2002). It is remarkable in this context that BDNF and NT-4/5 appear to have excitatory effects similar to those of glutamate and that these effects are blocked by a tyrosine kinase inhibitor (Kafitz et al. 1999).

Ephrins and Eph receptors are also important players in synapse formation and plasticity (Kullander and Klein 2002). In hippocampal neurons in culture, EphB2 interacts with a cell surface proteoglycan, syndecan-2, to induce the formation of dendritic spines, associates directly with NMDA receptors and promotes its clustering and synapse formation upon binding of EphrinB. Moreover, EphB activation increases NMDA-R tyrosine phosphorylation and glutamate-induced Ca2+ transients, through phosphorylation by Src kinases. In spite of these striking effects, in EphB2 −/− mice, hippocampal synapses appear normal indicating the existence of redundant pathways for development. However, several forms of synaptic plasticity are impaired in these animals. Thus, receptor and non-receptor tyrosine kinases appear to be critical modulators of synaptic plasticity in hippocampus, and they appear to exert many of their effects at the level of the NMDA-R.
11.8 Other roles of protein tyrosine phosphorylation in the normal and diseased nervous system

Tyrosine kinases have other roles in the nervous tissue besides those described above. Many of their functions are similar to those they have outside of the nervous system and do not need to be specifically addressed here. However, they are also involved in additional processes that are specific of the nervous system. One striking example is the requirement of Fyn for normal myelin formation (Umemori et al. 1994). This function is specific for Fyn and depends on its kinase activity (Sperber et al. 2001). Myelin defects have also been observed in mice lacking PTPε (Peretz et al. 2000). Thus tyrosine phosphorylation pathways are important regulators of myelin formation.

The involvement of tyrosine phosphorylation in the course of diseases of the nervous system has been also investigated and interesting results have been recently reported. One concerns the mechanism of brain damage in stroke. Src is a mediator of the vascular permeability triggered by vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) that is produced in response to ischemic injury (Paul et al. 2001). This response contributes significantly to the formation of edema. Importantly, the infarct size in experimental stroke was decreased in Src−/− mice, or following administration of Src inhibitors, suggesting that these compounds could be interesting therapeutic leads. The role of non-receptor tyrosine kinases has also been studied in the context of Alzheimer’s disease. It has been shown that paired helical filaments of tau proteins are tyrosine phosphorylated, and, interestingly, that fibrillar amyloid beta-peptides are capable of enhancing phosphorylation on tyrosine of tau and other neuronal proteins via a pathway that includes FAK and Src (Williamson et al. 2002). At present, it is not known whether this mechanism is involved in the pathogenesis of the disease. Finally, it should be mentioned that neurotrophic factors are the subject of intense research, with the hope to prevent cell death or to increase recovery in a variety of neurological conditions. Since the actions of virtually all these factors involve protein tyrosine phosphorylation, molecules that could stimulate specific protein kinases or inhibit specific protein tyrosine phosphatases could be potential therapeutic agents for human diseases. The better knowledge of the proteins and pathways controlling tyrosine phosphorylation is important in this prospect.

11.9 Conclusion

Protein tyrosine phosphorylation is a universal signalling mechanism among multicellular animals to control cell–cell interactions. In the nervous system, in addition to its general role in cell growth and survival, tyrosine phosphorylation is important for specific functions. Through conserved molecular mechanisms, receptor and non-receptor tyrosine kinases appear to function in a coordinate manner in processes that include neurite extension and guidance, topographical organization of brain projections, target-dependent survival, synapse formation, and plasticity. Recent findings also indicate that some of these pathways may be interesting targets for treatment of
human diseases. Since a growing number of drugs that inhibit specific protein kinases are being synthesized by the pharmaceutical industry, this area of investigation will certainly be expanding at a rapid pace.

References

Note that generally the bibliographic list corresponds to reviews, references to original publications can be found therein. Original references are indicated only when such reviews were not available.


This page intentionally left blank
Chapter 12

Mature neurons: Signal transduction-serine/threonine kinases

Renata Zippel, Simona Baldassa, and Emmapaola Sturani

12.1 Introduction

Protein phosphorylation is the most important reversible covalent modification utilized by the cells in response to extracellular signals to regulate biochemical and physiological processes (Hemmings et al. 1989). Many signaling pathways activated by neurotransmitters, hormones, growth factors, cytokines etc. converge on the phosphorylation of downstream protein effectors or other kinases to integrate the stimuli and propagate them in the various cellular compartments.

Phosphorylation is catalysed by a family of enzymes called kinases that transfer the terminal (gamma) phosphate group of ATP to the hydroxyl moieties of serine (Ser), threonine (Thr), or tyrosine (Tyr) residues at specific sites on target protein. This reaction adds negative charges to the protein that can alter its conformation and ultimately its functional activity (Edelman et al. 1987).

However, the phosphorylation state of a protein depends not only on the activity of kinases but also phosphatases that hydrolyse the phosphoester bond. Regulation of these two classes of enzymes and hence, the phosphorylation state of the different substrates (enzymes, structural proteins, ion channels, transcriptional factors etc.) is one of the most widely used mechanism to achieve fine-tuning of the cellular signaling both in the non-neuronal and in neuronal systems (Hunter 1995).

The kinases can be divided into two large families, Ser/Thr kinases and Tyr kinases, that originate from a common ancestral gene. In this chapter we will describe some of the principal classes of Ser/Thr kinases relevant for neuronal function mainly considering their role in mature neurons rather than during neuronal development. We will also provide information on some of the neuronal proteins, which are substrates of these enzymes. In the second part of the chapter we will describe some recent researches on some Ser/Thr phosphatases and their role in neuronal signaling.
12.2 Ser/Thr protein kinases

All protein kinases share a common structural design in their catalytic domain that extends also at the three-dimensional structure (Johnson et al. 1996). The cAMP-dependent protein kinase (PKA) catalytic subunit was the first protein kinase characterized at the three-dimensional structure and serves as a prototype for all the protein kinases (Knighton et al. 1991). The PKA kinase core comprises a bilobal scaffold that has an N-terminal lobe mainly composed of β sheets and a C-terminal lobe in which α helixes dominate. A hinge region allows the two lobes to articulate. The catalytic site is at the interface of the two lobes: the Mg-ATP binding site spans both lobes, while the substrate binding site (in the crystal structure identified by a specific PKA inhibitor PKI) is associated mostly with the C-terminal lobe. The two lobes can exist in an open or closed conformation. The open form allows the access of ATP to the catalytic site, while the closed form brings residues in the correct conformation to promote catalysis. The catalysis is carried out by an invariant aspartate present in all kinases (asp166 for PKA), which acts as a base via the hydroxyl group of the amino acid. For many protein kinases (but not all) the activation of the catalysis requires phosphorylation of specific residues in the activation segment, also called the activation loop, that in PKA spans amino acid 184–208 and that is differently positioned in the three-dimensional structure of the active and inactive kinase. In PKA the phosphate of threonine 197 interacts with basic amino acids maintaining the correct orientation and electrostatic environment for the catalytic base to act (Johnson et al. 1996).

Kinases can be divided into dedicated enzymes, if they have a narrow specificity toward substrates, or multifunctional ones, if they have a broad specificity. However, the latter kinases are by no means promiscuous for the different substrates. Recognition of the correct substrate and the appropriate amino acid on the polypeptide chain depends upon characteristic consensus sequences. Usually the amino acid to be phosphorylated is located in loops or in regions that are not organized in secondary structures.

Many different types of Ser/Thr kinases are expressed in the nervous system (see Table 12.1). We will subdivide these enzymes into two major categories:
1. Second messenger-dependent protein kinases;
2. Second messenger-independent protein kinases.

12.2.1 Second messenger-dependent protein kinases

Neurotransmitters, cytokines, hormones, odorants, light, and other extracellular signals induce the formation in the target cell of a second messenger that transmits the external signal. cAMP, calcium, diacylglycerol (DAG), and cGMP are the most prominent. These messengers activate specific kinases that decode the signal into the phosphorylation of proteins that integrate and propagate the external stimuli, although this is not the only mode of action.
All the kinases of this category share a common design (Fig. 12.1): they consist of several functional domains that can reside either on the same polypeptide chain or on separate ones. Each kinase has a catalytic domain, which is intrinsically active, but is kept in the inactive state by a regulatory domain. The regulatory domain consists of an auto-inhibitory region, and of the binding sites for the second messengers. In each case, interaction with the second messenger dissociates the auto-inhibitory site from the catalytic domain thus dis-inhibiting it. Additional regions of the kinases may be responsible for oligomerization or for targeting the kinases to distinct cellular localizations.

12.2.1.1 cAMP-dependent protein kinase (protein kinase A; PKA)

Signaling molecules that stimulate the synthesis of cAMP exert their intracellular effects primarily by activating PKA (Edelman et al. 1987). The holoenzyme, which consists of a tetramer of two catalytic (C) and two regulatory (R) subunits, is inactive. As each R subunit binds two molecules of cAMP its affinity for the C subunit is greatly reduced so that the C subunits dissociate as a free active enzyme. The steady-state level of cAMP determines the fraction of PKA that is in the dissociated active form.
Three isoforms of the C subunit, each of about 40 kDa, and four isoforms of the R subunit, each of 50–55 kDa, have been cloned from mammalian tissues. The three C subunits, designated $C\alpha$, $C\beta$, and $C\gamma$, exhibit a similar and broad substrate specificity.

The four R subunits consist of two forms ($\alpha$ and $\beta$) each of type I and type II proteins. Their common modular structure contains an N-terminal dimerization domain that allows dimerization between the two R subunits, an auto-inhibitory site, and two cAMP binding domains. The holoenzymes always contain two identical regulatory

---

**Fig. 12.1** A schematic view of the different domains of second messenger-dependent protein kinases. The different kinases contain a regulatory domain that encodes specialized functional domains and a conserved catalytic domain kept inactive by the presence of an auto-inhibitory region (black). For details see text.
subunits (PKAI contains RI while PKAII contains RII) that are joined together by two disulfide bonds. The α and β isoforms of the C subunit and all isoforms of the R subunits are expressed in the central nervous system, although with a differential pattern in various areas of the brain (Cadd and McKnight 1989).

Regulatory subunits differ in their regulation and biochemical properties. RII, but not RI subunits, undergo autophosphorylation in the inhibitory domain. This phosphorylation reduces the affinity of RII subunits for the catalytic subunit resulting in a more rapid dissociation and activation upon exposure to cAMP, as well as in a slower reassociation and inactivation. The binding affinity of the regulatory subunits to cAMP is in the order RIIβ < RIIα < RIα < RIβ (Edelman et al. 1987; Taylor et al. 1992). This implies that holoenzymes containing RI or RII subunits decode cAMP signals that differ in intensity and duration: PKAI is activated transiently by weak cAMP signals, whereas PKAII responds to high and persistent cAMP levels. Neurons, which predominantly express PKAII, are adapted to persistent high concentrations of cAMP.

The composition and biochemical properties of PKA isoenzymes account, in part, for differential cellular responses to discrete extracellular signals that activate adenylate cyclase.

Several studies suggest that RIα acts as a buffer for PKA activity (Brandon et al. 1997). For example, when C subunits are overexpressed in cultured cells, RIα increases while, when RII subunits are overexpressed, RIα decreases. In addition when one of the other R subunit types is removed by gene targeting, the RIα shows a compensatory increase. For example there is an increase in RIα level in the nervous system of mice lacking RIβ or RIIβ, due to a reduced rate of RIα degradation. The association with the C subunits protects RIα from proteolytic degradation (Amieux et al. 1997).

Protein kinase A activity is present throughout the neuronal cell. However, the kinase is highly compartmentalized within the cell, largely via several forms of anchoring proteins, termed A kinase anchor proteins (AKAPs) (Rubin 1994; Colledge and Scott 1999; Feliciello et al. 2001). Through an amphipatic helix AKAP tightly binds a large hydrophobic surface of the RII dimers and thereby tethers the inactive PKA holoenzyme to specific subcellular sites. A single species of neuronal AKAP is abundantly expressed in the brain and is highly conserved in mice (150 kDa), bovines (75 kDa), and humans (79 kDa). This prototypic neuronal AKAP targets PKAII to the postsynaptic densities keeping the protein kinase in close proximity to the signal-transduction proteins it phosphorylates to regulate synaptic transmission (Colledge and Scott 1999). The important role played by AKAPs is indicated by experiments showing that peptides corresponding to the RII-binding site of AKAP disrupt PKA-mediated regulation of AMPA-type glutamate receptors in neurons and of L-type voltage dependent calcium channels (VDCC) in skeletal muscle cells (Sim and Scott 1999).

The RI subunits are generally found in the cytosolic fraction although this assignment is not absolute. While anchoring of PKA to AKAPs via the RII subunit represents an extremely strong association, some AKAPs have been shown to anchor PKA
through association with RI. Although the binding affinity of RI is much lower than that of RII, the dissociation constant (K_d) is still within the physiological concentrations of RI and AKAPs, so that anchoring PKAII may occur in regions of the cell where PKAII concentration is limited (Sim and Scott 1999).

12.2.1.2 Calcium/calmodulin dependent kinases (Ca^{2+}/CaM kinases; CaMKs)

Physiological elevation of intracellular free calcium is regulated by a diversity of Ca^{2+}-linked receptors and signal transduction systems that either increase influx of extracellular calcium or cause redistribution from intracellular stores. Most of the characterized Ca^{2+}-dependent kinases utilize the calcium-binding protein called calmodulin (CaM) as their calcium sensor.

Three major multifunctional Ca/CaM kinases, termed Ca/CaM kinase I, II, and IV (CaMKs), play a crucial role as second messenger-responsive kinases in neuronal signal transmission. The best characterized both at the structural and functional level is CaMKII (Hanson and Schulman 1992).

CaMKII is highly expressed in the brain where it represents 0.25% of total proteins, accounting for 1% in the cerebral cortex and 2% in the hippocampus. It is highly enriched at synaptic structures and particularly in the postsynaptic densities (PSD). CaMKII consists of two major subunits of 52 and 60 kDa encoded by α and β genes respectively. Additional isoforms are generated by alternative splicing as well as by γ and δ CaMKII genes. All the subunits share a common structure. At the N-terminal end there is the catalytic domain linked to the regulatory domain that partially overlaps the calmodulin-binding region. The association domain that helps to assemble the subunits into holoenzyme is located at the C-terminus of the protein. In this region we find major differences between the various isoforms. A short amino acid insert in some isoforms introduces a nuclear localization signal that targets the holoenzyme to the nucleus.

The holoenzyme consists of 6–12 subunits that through the association domain assemble into a central globular structure, from which the N-terminal catalytic/regulatory domains radially extend (Hanson and Schulman 1992) (Fig. 12.2A).

In the basal state the auto-inhibitory domain renders the kinase inaccessible to the substrates. Binding of calcium/calmodulin displaces the inhibitory domain from the active site, deinhibiting the kinase. Once activated by Ca/CaM, CaMKII can lock itself into the activated state by autophosphorylation on a conserved Thr residue present in the auto-inhibitory domain of all isoforms (Thr^{286} in α or Thr^{287} in β). The phosphorylation of Thr^{286/287} occurs by an intersubunit reaction within each holoenzyme. The catalytic domain of one activated subunit in the holoenzyme phosphorylates Thr^{286/287} in the regulatory domain of a neighbouring subunit that must also have calmodulin bound (Fig. 12.2B). Therefore, assembly of CaMKII into holoenzyme concentrates the subunits and positions them for autophosphorylation.
Autophosphorylation of Thr^{286/287} has two consequences: (a) calmodulin remains bound to the phosphorylated subunit for extended periods of time even at low Ca^{2+} concentrations (trapped state) because the autophosphorylation greatly reduces the calmodulin dissociation (Schulman et al. 1992; Singla et al. 2001); (b) autophosphorylated α and β subunits are rendered Ca/CaM-independent (autonomous) but still retain substantial kinase activity (Hanson and Schulman 1992; Schulman et al. 1992). Both autonomy and calmodulin trapping enable the phosphorylated kinase subunits to remain active beyond the limited duration of a Ca^{2+} spike. The multimeric structure of CaMKII, the intersubunit phosphorylation of Thr^{286/287}, and the resulting calmodulin trapping and autonomous activity are crucial elements that enable the kinase to act as a Ca^{2+} spike frequency detector (De Koninck and Schulman 1998). At low stimulus...
frequency, the time between stimuli is sufficient for calmodulin to dissociate and the kinase to be dephosphorylated. However at higher frequencies, some subunits will remain phosphorylated and bound to calmodulin, so that successive stimuli will result in more calmodulin bound per holoenzyme which will make autophosphorylation and subsequent calmodulin trapping more probable. At a threshold frequency, autophosphorylation and calmodulin trapping become more efficient and a higher level of activation and autonomy will be obtained (Fig. 12.2C).

The essential role of this autophosphorylation was demonstrated with the finding that mutant mice carrying Thr286Ala point mutation in αCaMKII do not exhibit long-term potentiation (LTP), are defective in spatial learning, and have unstable hippocampal place cells (Cho et al. 1998; Giese et al. 1998).

It is well known that activity-dependent stimuli promote translocation of CaMKII to the synapses and binding of the activated kinase to N-methyl-D-Aspartate (NMDA) receptors (Gardoni et al. 1999; Shen and Meyer 1999). Very recently, Bayer et al. (2001) have shown a Ca²⁺/CaM-dependent association of the catalytic domain of CaMKII to NR2B subunits. This association allows some subunits of the holoenzymes to remain active even after the dissociation of Ca²⁺/CaM. Moreover this interaction further facilitates autophosphorylation of CaMKII subunits leading to hyperphosphorylation of the holoenzyme. Interestingly, this manner of CaMKII activation generates an autonomous and CaM trapping state of CaMKII that cannot be reversed by phosphatases.

In addition to the multimeric CaMKII we can also find two other, closely related, monomeric proteins: CaMKI and IV (Hanson and Schulman 1992). There are at least three isoforms for CaMKI and two for CaMKIV. These kinases, too, require Ca/CaM binding to relieve intramolecular inhibition (disinhibition). A second auto-inhibitory mechanism unique to CaMIV is relaxed by the autophosphorylation of Ser12 and 13. However, for the full activation of these kinases, the phosphorylation by Ca/M kinase kinase (CaMKK) on a threonine present in the activation loop of the catalytic domain is also required. This fact introduces in this signaling pathway the concept of a cascade of kinases where all the members of the cascade respond to an elevation of calcium (Soderling 1999; Corcoran and Means 2001). Once activated by phosphorylation, CaMKIV acquires Ca/CaM independence whereas CaMKI remains dependent.

Both Ca/MKI and CaMKIV are highly expressed in the brain but, while CaMKIV is predominantly nuclear, CaMKI is primarily cytoplasmic (Soderling 1999) even if, given the size of the monomeric kinase, it is possible that it may have access to the nucleus by passive diffusion. Moreover, a translocation of this kinase to the nucleus after induction of LTP has been recently described in hippocampal neurons (Ahmed et al. 2000).

Two upstream activators of CaMKI and CaMKIV have been identified: CaMKKα and β which are encoded by two different genes (Soderling 1999). Both are highly expressed in the brain, share 80% similarity, and can phosphorylate CaMKI and CaMKIV in vitro. These kinases, too, are regulated by Ca/CaM, and the auto-inhibitory
mechanism is similar to that of the other CaMKs. Given that CaMKK itself has potentially phosphorylatable residues in its activation loop we cannot exclude the possibility of a CaMK-kinase-kinase although at the moment no CaMKKK has been isolated (Corcoran and Means 2001).

While the ultrastructure of CaMKII allows this kinase to differentiate Ca\(^{2+}\) spike frequencies, the elaborate mechanisms for CaMK cascade activation, described above, probably render the CaMK cascade inadequate to fulfill a role as a neuronal Ca\(^{2+}\) signal detector. However, the inducible phosphorylation of CaMKI and CaMKIV can provide a mechanism for signal amplification.

12.2.1.3 Protein kinase C (PKC)

Neurotransmitters acting through G-coupled receptors activate phosphatidylinositol turnover, causing the production of diacylglycerol (DAG) and release of calcium from intracellular stores that act as second messengers to activate protein kinase C (PKC). The PKC family comprises at least 10 structurally related phospholipid-dependent protein kinases, and most of the various isoforms are expressed in the brain, albeit with a different distribution pattern that also depends on the developmental stage.

All PKC isoenzymes bind lipids with a remarkable selectivity for phophatidyserine. PKC isozymes have been grouped into three subclasses according to their regulatory properties, which are conferred by specific domains in the proteins (Mellor and Parker 1998). The ‘conventional’ PKCs (cPKCs; \(\alpha, \beta_I, \beta_{II}, \gamma\)) are regulated by Ca\(^{2+}\), DAG, or phorbol esters and phosphatidylerine. The ‘novel’ PKCs (nPKCs; \(\delta, \epsilon, \theta, \eta\)) are activated by DAG or phorbol esters and phosphatidylerine but are Ca\(^{2+}\) independent. Finally, the ‘atypical’ PKCs (aPKC) are unresponsive to Ca\(^{2+}\), DAG, and phorbol esters. A related enzyme, PKC\(\mu\) or PKD (the mouse homolog), displays multiple unique features that make it a distant relative of the PKC isozymes. This enzyme also differs from other PKC isozymes in its regulation and substrate selectivity (Newton 1997).

Each of the PKCs isoforms consists of a single polypeptide chain that contains an N-terminal regulatory region and a C-terminal kinase domain (Parker et al. 1986). The regulatory region contains an auto-inhibitory or pseudosubstrate site and one or two membrane-targeting motifs, namely the C1 domain, which is present in all the isoforms and C2 domain which is present in conventional and novel PKCs. The C1 domain binds DAG or phorbol esters in all PKCs except for the aPKCs. The C2 region binds acidic phospholipids and in the cPKCs also Ca\(^{2+}\). While the cPKCs and nPKCs have two copies of this motif in tandem, only a single copy is found in the aPKCs.

Regulation of PKCs isoenzymes requires the removal of the auto-inhibitory pseudosubstrate from the active site. This conformational change is achieved by highly specific binding of DAG and phosphatidylerine to the C1 and C2 domains. These interactions also allow the translocation of PKCs from the cytosol to the membrane causing maximal activation of the enzyme (Newton 1997). However both phosphorylation of PKCs and specific protein–protein interactions are also important for their activation.
Accumulating evidence suggests that PKC is phosphorylated in the activation loop by phosphoinositide-dependent protein kinase1 (PDK1) (Le Good et al. 1998). Phosphorylation by PDK1 is followed by autophosphorylation of two additional residues. All these phosphorylations are necessary for the newly synthesized PKC isoenzymes to obtain a catalytically competent conformation. Moreover, interaction of PKCs with other proteins plays a role in the localization and function of PKC isoenzymes. In the inactive conformation PKC can interact with AKAPs and 14-3-3 proteins, whereas in the active conformation it can bind to proteins called receptors for activated C kinase (RACKs) or to substrates that interact with C kinase (STICKs). Thus, while AKAPs can serve to localize inactive PKC isozymes in specific compartments of the cell, RACKs can function as shuttling proteins of the activated form. It is worthwhile recalling that in neurons one isoform of the AKAP proteins associates also with PKA and calcineurin (see below) and positions each enzyme just below the postsynaptic membrane where it can respond individually to activation signals such as calcium, or other second messengers (Ron and Kazanietz 1999).

In neurons an important role is played by PICK1, a scaffold protein that interacts with the AMPA-type glutamate receptors. This scaffold protein also binds to the C-terminal region of the activated PKCα. Thus in neurons PICK1 functions as a target and transport protein that directs the activated form of PKCα to GluR2 in the spines (Xia et al. 1999) (see below).

12.2.1.4 cGMP-dependent protein kinase (PKG)

Nitric oxide (NO), a very labile signaling molecule that can rapidly diffuse and affect targets in the same cell or in neighbouring neurons is the major activator of guanylate cyclase that produces cGMP. This second messenger activates cGMP-dependent protein kinase (PKG), a dimer composed of two identical subunits of about 75 kDa. PKG shows a more reduced cellular distribution and specificity than PKA and in fact the second messenger actions of cGMP in the regulation of neuronal function are very limited.

12.2.2 Second messenger-independent protein kinases

Many distinct families of protein kinases belong to this category. We will focus only on one specific family that comprises the enzymes involved in the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) cascade. These enzymes have acquired a particular importance in neuronal signaling since in recent years a crucial role in synaptic transmission and neuronal plasticity has been attributed to this cascade.

12.2.2.1 Mitogen-activated protein kinase and MAPK regulating kinases

The MAPK cascade contains at least three proteins that work in series. The last members of this cascade are MAPKs that were first characterized as mitogen-activated
kinases and have been shown to play an important role in cell growth. The same enzymes have been described as microtubule-associated protein kinases for their ability to phosphorylate microtubule-associated proteins. The best-characterized family of MAPKs in the brain are the extracellular signal-regulated protein kinases (ERKs). Many reviews have been published on the molecular basis of ERK activation (Cobb and Goldsmith 1995; English et al. 1999).

Two isoforms of ERKs exist: ERK of 44 kDa and ERK of 42 kDa, both of which are highly expressed in the brain (Ortiz et al. 1995). These kinases are activated by the phosphorylation of both threonine and tyrosine in a conserved threonine–amino acid–tyrosine sequence (T-X-Y) present in the activation loop. This reaction is catalysed by the upstream ERK kinases (MEKS), dual-specificity kinases that phosphorylate ERKs in both residues. This dual phosphorylation is both necessary and sufficient for ERK activation, and ERKs are the only known substrates of MEKs. These properties have been used to create pharmacological tools to investigate the role of ERK cascade in neuronal functions (English et al. 1999).

Activation of MEK is accomplished by a third class of protein kinases, the Raf kinase family. Three members of this family are known; Raf-1 (c-Raf), ubiquitously expressed, B-Raf particularly enriched in brain and testes, and A-Raf which is not detected in the brain. The best characterized mechanism for Raf activation is that of Raf-1. This molecule contains two functional domains: the N-terminal regulatory domain and the C-terminal kinase domain. The small GTPase Ras in its GTP-bound activated form interacts with Raf-1, localizing it to the plasma membrane, where other events are required for full Raf-1 activation. Although at the moment the mechanisms of Raf-1 activation have still not been completely elucidated, phosphorylation on tyrosine residues by yet unidentified kinases (possibly src like kinases) and phosphorylation by PKC have been implicated. Moreover, interaction with the 14-3-3 proteins may play a role in facilitating and stabilizing the active Raf-1 conformation (Morrison and Cutler 1997).

The two isoenzymes expressed in the brain (Raf-1 and B-Raf) have similar regional distribution and are coexpressed in neurons. However their subcellular localization is different: while Raf-1 is mainly localized in the cytosol around the nucleus, B-Raf is widely distributed in the cell body and in neuritic processes suggesting that each one of them has a distinct regulatory function in the neuron (Morice et al. 1999).

The relevant feature of the MAPK cascade is the series of successive protein kinases involved that provide the basis for massive amplification of an initial signal. Moreover, Ras and the other closely related GTPase Rap, both implicated in the activation of this cascade in neurons (Grewal et al. 2000), can themselves be activated by a great variety of external stimuli. Not only neurotrophins acting through tyrosine kinase receptors but also neurotransmitters acting through G protein-coupled receptors and calcium activate the ERK cascade. In addition to the well-characterized SOS, Ras-GRFs, and G3C, that activate Ras or/and Rap, different guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs) have been recently isolated (de Rooij et al. 1998, 1999; Kawasaki et al. 1998;
Most of these molecules are highly expressed in the brain and respond to Ca/CaM, cAMP or calcium, and DAG, allowing the integration of different second messenger systems in the activation of ERK signaling (Fig. 12.3). The relevance of the ERK cascade also depends on the fact that activated ERKs, which in the basal inactive state have a cytoplasmic localization, translocate to the nucleus and phosphorylate specific transcription factors either directly or through their downstream RSK2 kinase target (Xing et al. 1996). Thus the MAPK cascade not only amplifies extracellular stimuli but also integrates many signaling pathways and functions as a shuttle that imports the information into the nucleus.

**12.3 Neuronal substrates of kinases**

A great variety of neuronal proteins are substrates of the kinases described above and of other kinases. Phosphorylation of these many types of proteins allows the regulation of virtually every process in the nervous system. Many proteins are phosphorylated on more than one amino acid residue by different kinases. This may be important to integrate multiple intracellular pathways in order to achieve coordinated regulation of neuronal function.
I will only give few examples of substrates of kinases, but for more details many reviews can be consulted (Nestler and Greengard 1984).

12.3.1 Neurotransmitter release
At the presynaptic locus, protein phosphorylation regulates exocytosis, synapsins (synaptic vesicles-associated proteins) being key substrates of kinases in this process (Greengard et al. 1993). Synapsin I is phosphorylated by PKA and by CaMKII in the N-terminal region. In the C-terminus it is phosphorylated on two other serine residues by CaMKII and both at N- and C-terminus it is a substrate of ERKs. Under resting conditions, dephosphorylated synapsin is thought to anchor synaptic vesicles to the cytoskeleton. Following an action potential, the increase of intracellular calcium activates CaMKII, which phosphorylates synapsin at the C-terminus causing the release of neurotransmitters from synaptic vesicles of the reserve pool.

12.3.2 Ligand-gated ion channels and potassium channels
Protein kinases play a critical role in the induction and maintenance of LTP (see Chapter 14). A series of studies have shown that one particularly relevant substrate of CaMKII is the AMPA receptor that is potentiated during LTP. Phosphorylation of GluR1 subunits of AMPA receptors by CaMKII (either the endogenous receptor in cultured hippocampal neurons and in CA1 pyramidal neurons, or the overexpressed GluR1 subunit in HEK293 cells) results in potentiation of the whole-cell current mediated by AMPA receptor. The non-phosphorylated receptors exist predominantly in the lower conductance states whereas phosphorylation by CaMKII at serine 831 stabilizes the higher conductance (Derkach et al. 1999). Phosphorylation at serine 831 can also be mediated by PKC and it has been shown that AMPA receptor-mediated synaptic currents are similarly potentiated when the PKC catalytic domain is intracellularly perfused in CA1 hippocampal neurons.

GluR1 receptor subunits can be phosphorylated by PKA at serine 845 and their phosphorylation seems to regulate the open probability of AMPA receptors. Interestingly, it has been recently demonstrated that different kinases phosphorylate the GluR1 subunits depending on the past experience of the synapse (Lee et al. 2000).

Also trafficking of AMPA receptors is mediated in part by protein phosphorylation. It appears that phosphorylation of GluR2 subunits at serine 880 differentially regulates its interaction with the PDZ domain-containing proteins GRIP1 and PICK1. While phosphorylation of GluR2 subunits at serine 880 disrupts GRIP1 association, association with PICK1 is unaffected. PKC activation in neurons increases phosphorylation of GluR2 subunit at serine 880 and induces internalization of GluR2 subunits. PKC activation also induces a dramatic mobilization of PICK1 to synapses suggesting that PICK1 interaction with phosphorylated serine 880 of GluR2 may be involved in the internalization of AMPA receptor (Chung et al. 2000).
It has also been found that phosphorylation of ion channels regulates their ability to open or close, thereby mediating the synaptic response to neurotransmitters as well as more general changes in neuronal excitability. In the hippocampus voltage-dependent transient K⁺ channels of the Shaker superfamily (Kv channels) can regulate neuronal excitability and also the magnitude of excitatory postsynaptic potential in response to synaptic activity (Dineley et al. 2001). One of the candidates for this function is the Shaker1-type K channel Kv 4.2, a voltage-dependent K channel localized at dendrites and cell bodies of hippocampal pyramidal neurons. This channel is a substrate of PKA, PKC, CaMKII and has been recently demonstrated to be also phosphorylated by ERKs in the C-terminal cytoplasmic domain both \textit{in vitro} and \textit{in vivo} (Adams et al. 2000). Although it is not clear what is the role of this modification, it has been hypothesized that ERK phosphorylation of the channel might lead to downregulation of hyperpolarizing K⁺ currents resulting in increased pyramidal neuron excitability. As support for a role of MAPKs in the regulation of Shaker-type current it has very recently been demonstrated that GDNF acutely modulates excitability by inhibiting transient Shaker type K channels in midbrain dopaminergic neurons and that this effect is mediated by MAPKs (Yang et al. 2001).

The inward rectifying potassium channel, IRK1, plays an important role in neuronal excitability and its function can be modulated by protein phosphorylation. It is a substrate of PKA and PKC, which can directly modulate its properties. Channel modulation can also be achieved by varying the amount of channel molecules present at the cell surface, and tyrosine phosphorylation of IRK1 has been implicated in the regulation of channel internalization (Wischmeyer et al. 1998). Moreover, we have recently shown that this channel is modulated by the ERK cascade: when ectopically expressed in HEK293 cells a consistent reduction of cell surface associated channels is caused by persistent activation of MAPKs (Giovannardi et al. 2002).

\section*{12.3.3 Transcription factors}

Phosphorylation of transcription factors regulates the expression of specific genes in target neurons, this being the ultimate form of signal transduction and neuronal plasticity.

Activation of the transcription factor cAMP responsive element binding protein (CREB) is thought to be important in the formation of long-term memory in different species. Phosphorylation of serine 133 of CREB is critical for CREB activation allowing its association with the co-activator CREB binding protein (CBP) and thus promoting the transcription of genes with an upstream CRE element. Phosphorylation of CREB at serine 133 is mediated by different neuronal kinases the first one to be characterized being PKA. Also CaMKs and RSK2 phosphorylate CREB at the same serine (see also Chapter 10).

CREB has a nuclear localization, and translocation of the kinases to the nucleus is required to phosphorylate it. This, therefore, prompts the question of how cytoplasmic kinases can phosphorylate nuclear proteins. Persistent activation of PKA can cause
translocation of its catalytic subunit to the nucleus (see below), while ERK translocation has been clearly demonstrated. More intriguing is the explanation of how CaMKs can phosphorylate CREB. CaMKII does not seem to translocate to the nucleus while CaMKIV has a nuclear localization. On the other hand, synaptic activity-dependent phosphorylation of CREB relies mainly on CaMK activity. Deisseroth et al. (1998) have shown that in hippocampal neurons brief bursts of activity cause a swift translocation of calmodulin from the cytoplasm to the nucleus and this event is important for rapid phosphorylation of CREB. A possible target of nuclear calmodulin increase might be the activation of CaMKIV. CREB can also be phosphorylated at serine 142 by CaMKII and phosphorylation of this residue has been shown to block activation of target genes and formation of the CREB–CBP complex in vitro. However substantial phosphorylation of this site has not been observed in vivo and it is not clear whether the inhibitory effect observed occurs in vivo.

12.4 Role of the kinases in synaptic transmission and cross-talk between the different kinase pathways

In mature neurons synaptic activity triggers a long-lasting cascade of events that activate the aforementioned kinases to transmit the signal from the postsynaptic membrane to dendrites, to the soma and to the nucleus and culminate in neuronal gene expression. A very complex network of neuronal kinases, which is often apparently redundant, is utilized to integrate the signal and converge it to final common effectors.

It is widely accepted that calcium is the key signal molecule at the excitatory synapse (Bito 1998). Calcium not only triggers release of neurotransmitters from presynaptic vesicles but is also one of the essential messengers regulating postsynaptic excitability as well as induction and expression of synaptic plasticity (Chawla and Bading 2001).

The majority of research on these aspects has been conducted on hippocampal or cortical cultures that represent a simple but bona fide cellular model to acquire biochemical informations on the various signaling pathways activated during synaptic activity.

In hippocampal neurons electric stimuli cause an influx of calcium mainly through L-type VDCC and NMDA receptors. Calcium can then associate with calmodulin and this complex activates CaMKII and/or the CaMK cascade. These kinases, which elicit changes in a variety of downstream effectors, can be sufficient to transfer information to the nucleus, where phosphorylation of CREB may induce gene expression. However, the Ca/CaM complex can also activate type 1 and type 8 adenylyl cyclases (ACs) leading to the production of cAMP and activation of PKA, whose catalytic subunits can migrate to the nuclei and activate transcription factors.

Postsynaptic calcium influx can activate additional signaling pathways among which is the ERK cascade. Multiple routes for the activity-dependent stimulation of ERKs
have been demonstrated. The Ca/CaM complex can interact with Ras-GRF1 (Zippel et al. 2000) to activate Ras, the upstream regulator of Raf-1 in the ERK cascade. Moreover, several Ras-GEFs activated by calcium and DAG have been identified. It has also been demonstrated that in cortical neurons depolarization induces activation of the cytosolic tyrosine kinase Pyk2 in a calmodulin-dependent manner. Activation of Pyk2 may lead to the activation of the Ras exchange factor SOS.

The situation is even more complicated: in addition to the above-mentioned pathway Ras-Raf-1, Rap1, a small GTPase highly expressed in the brain, can activate the ERK cascade acting as upstream regulator of B-Raf, and many exchange factors for Rap1 directly modulated by second messengers have been recently identified.

In addition, PKA itself can activate the ERK cascade; it has been demonstrated that in PC12 cells, in hippocampal (Grewal et al. 2000) and cortical neurons (Baldassa et al. personal communication), PKA activity is required for the persistent ERK activation induced by depolarization. Moreover we have shown that Rap1 may mediate this effect (Baldassa et al. 2003).

It has previously been proposed that CaMKII positively acts on the ERK cascade: a synaptic GTPase activating protein for Ras (SynGAP), highly expressed in neurons and mainly localized at the postsynaptic densities, has been reported to be phosphorylated by CaMKII (Chen et al. 1998; Kim et al. 1998). While initially this phosphorylation seemed to inhibit GAP activity this does not seem to be the case (Chen et al. 2002).

Finally, stimulation of PKC produces a robust activation of ERKs in both hippocampal and cortical neurons.

All these results highlight the importance of the MAPK cascade and suggest that in neurons it can function as ‘biochemical signal integrator and molecular coincidence detector’ for coordinating responses to extracellular signals (Sweatt 2001a).

Cross-inhibitory interactions between signaling pathways have been demonstrated. It has been shown that in vitro PKA can phosphorylate CaMKK and suppress its ability to activate CaMKIV. Conversely, activation of CaMKIV can inhibit cAMP production by CaMKIV-mediated phosphorylation of type I adenylate cyclase.

A schematic diagram, which is undoubtedly reductive, illustrates the multiplicity and complexity of the signaling network that can be activated by calcium in neurons (Fig. 12.4). In this scheme we have also included calcineurin, a phosphatase activated by calcium/calmodulin and PP1. However for these details, see below.

12.5 Role of the kinases in synaptic plasticity

The ability of the above-mentioned kinases to initiate or maintain synaptic changes that underlie learning and memory might require that they themselves undergo some form of persistent change in activity. These kinases can be described as cognitive kinases because they remain in the activated state also after their second messengers have returned to basal level and because their target substrates modulate synaptic plasticity.
In the pioneering works of Kandel an essential role for PKA has been established in long-term facilitation of the gill withdrawal reflex in *Aplysia* (Schacher *et al.* 1990). At the molecular level, release of serotonin from tail sensory neurons increases cAMP and activates PKA, producing a short-term increase in the phosphorylation of many proteins. However, prolonged or repeated exposure to serotonin leads to an increase in cAMP that persists for several minutes and causes a prolonged dissociation of the catalytic subunits of PKA from the holoenzyme. This allows the catalytic subunits to translocate into the nucleus and to activate several immediate response genes including ubiquitin hydrolase, which is required for the proteolysis of the regulatory subunit of PKA. Cleavage of the regulatory subunit results in persistent activation of PKA even when the second messenger is no longer present.

In higher organisms, particularly in the hippocampal area of the brain, PKA may also function as a cognitive kinase required for the maintenance of LTP (i.e. for the late phase — or phase III — of long-term potentiation, L-LTP — see also Chapter 14) rather than for the induction of LTP (Brandon *et al.* 1997; Dineley *et al.* 2001). In the
CA1 region, the NMDA receptor-dependent LTP is triggered by calcium influx either through NMDA receptors and/or VDCC. In these cells, calcium/calmodulin-dependent adenylate cyclases (AC1 and AC8) generate cAMP waves critical for L-LTP (Poser and Storm 2001). Mice lacking both AC1 and AC8 do not exhibit L-LTP. In addition, mice with a targeted disruption of the regulatory subunit RIIB predominant in the striatum are severely deficient in PKA activity and exhibit changes in gene expression and locomotor behaviour.

PKA also seems to be involved in LTP at the CA3 region of the hippocampus. Tetanic stimulation of the mossy fibers induces a rise in presynaptic calcium and results in activation of Ca/CaM-dependent adenylate cyclase. The consequent activation of PKA elicits a long-lasting increase in transmitter release. Mutant mice lacking type I AC failed to induce mossy fibre LTP.

12.5.2 CaMKII
CaMKII is probably the most efficient cognitive kinase. The unique properties of molecular memory described above allow CaMKII to function as a memory molecule to decode the synaptic input. This kinase plays a key role during the induction of LTP rather than in the maintenance or consolidation of LTP (Fukunaga and Miyamoto 2000). It has been shown that mice lacking αCaMKII are deficient in LTP induction in the hippocampal CA1 region as well as in spatial learning. On the contrary, introduction of an active form of CaMKII into postsynaptic neurons induces potentiation in synaptic transmission that prevents subsequent LTP induction.

12.5.3 PKC
PKC can function as a cognitive kinase: it has been shown that in the CA1 region of rat hippocampal slices, tetanic stimulation triggers activation of PKC required for the induction of LTP. Moreover, it has been demonstrated that a persistent increase in PKC activity is associated with the maintenance phase of LTP. Either phosphorylation of PKC isoenzymes or proteolytic cleavage of the regulatory domains might be responsible for the persistent activation of PKCs in the absence of second messenger signals (Sweatt et al. 1998). Mice in which the brain-specific γ isoform of PKC has been deleted exhibited modest effects on memory, suggesting that other PKC isoforms are involved in mammalian learning and memory. Knockout mice for the β isoforms of PKC, which are highly expressed in the CA1 area of the hippocampus, did not exhibit deficits in hippocampal synaptic transmission or LTP. However, deletion of the PKCβ gene resulted in defects in amygdala-dependent functions such as clued and contextual fear conditioning (Dineley et al. 2001).

12.5.4 MAPKs
Accumulated data have identified a prominent role for ERKs in synaptic plasticity in a wide range of systems (Sweatt 2001a). Pharmacological drugs that specifically inhibit
MEK, the upstream activator of MAPK, have been extremely useful for these studies. Persistent activation of MAPKs and their translocation to the nucleus is required for plasticity-related changes in gene expression, suggesting that MAPKs might be required for the induction of L-LTP while they only modulate early-LTP.

Activation of the ERKs has been demonstrated to be necessary for the induction of both NMDA receptor-dependent and independent LTP in the CA1 area of the rat hippocampus, for the induction of LTP in the dentate gyrus and in the amygdala. ERK activation has also been shown to be required for long-term facilitation of the sensory-motor synapse in *Aplysia*. In addition, compelling evidence for ERK-dependent role in learning and memory comes from behavioral studies in rodents (Mazzucchelli and Brambilla 2000). In three different tasks (fear conditioning, aversive taste learning, and spatial learning), behavioral performance was associated with increased ERK activity while inhibition of ERK signaling specifically impaired learning. Taken together, these and many other findings provide strong evidence for an involvement of ERK activity in synaptic plasticity, learning, and memory. ERK1 knockout mice have been generated: in these mice a dramatic enhancement of ERK2-dependent signaling was observed and both electrophysiological and behavioral analyses revealed that altered modulation of ERK2 signalling affects neuronal plasticity in a region-specific manner. Tetanic stimulation elicits enhanced LTP in the nucleus accumbens but not in the hippocampus or in the basolateral nucleus of amygdala (Mazzucchelli et al. 2002).

### 12.6 Serine threonine phosphatases

For a long time, kinases have been regarded as the main ‘switch on’ molecules while phosphatases were simply considered housekeeping enzymes working constitutively to shut down signals.

It is now clear that in the neuronal system phosphatases play an active role in signaling and in synaptic plasticity. Although the general picture of how phosphates contribute to neuronal functions is not fully understood, it appears that phosphatases might provide an inhibitory constraint in the modulation of neuronal plasticity regulating the activity of a variety of kinases and in counteracting their effects.

The different phosphatases arise from different genes with no homology. In addition, it is impossible to identify consensus sequences for their specificity of substrate recognition. The same phosphatases can dephosphorylate substrates phosphorylated by different kinases. A limited number of multifunctional phosphatases account for most phosphatase activity. We will limit the description to two major phosphatases (PP1 and PP2B) whose role in the neuronal system has been characterized (Winder and Sweatt 2001).

#### 12.6.1 Protein phosphatase2B (PP2B, Calcineurin)

PP2B (Calcineurin) is a calcium/calmodulin-dependent phosphatase highly enriched in the brain. It is a heterodimer composed of A and B subunits. The 60 kDa A subunit
(CnA) has an N-terminal catalytic domain and a C-terminal regulatory domain including an auto-inhibitory region, a calmodulin-binding domain, and a binding site for the 19 kDa regulatory B subunit (CnB). The latter is a calmodulin-like Ca binding protein. Calcineurin is activated by low concentrations of calcium: some activation of calcineurin is attained by the binding of calcium to CnB while stronger activation is obtained by the binding of Ca/CaM to CnA. Additional mechanisms exist for modulating and targeting PP2B activity. At least three PP2B binding proteins have been identified: the calcineurin inhibitor CAIN, AKAP 79, and FKBP12 which is required as an intermediate for FK506-mediated inhibition of calcineurin. FKBP12 promotes the association of PP2B to ryanodine and IP3 receptors allowing this phosphatase to regulate cytoplasmic free calcium. The interaction of CAIN with calcineurin potently inhibits its activity and has been implicated in the regulation of the exocytotic machinery. Finally AKAP 79 binds both PP2B and PKA, bringing them in close proximity for the regulation of receptors and ion channels.

The catalytic subunit of PP2B is expressed at a high level in the hippocampus and is enriched in dendritic spines while it is essentially absent from glia and interneurons in the hippocampus and is not readily detectable in presynaptic terminals. Its active role in hippocampal synaptic plasticity has been described. Bito et al. (1996) have shown that in hippocampal cultures a brief burst of synaptic activity causes a transient phosphorylation of CREB that is not sufficient to activate gene expression. However, if calcineurin activity is inhibited, the same stimuli can induce a persistent CREB phosphorylation similar to that obtained with a prolonged stimulation, leading to the activation of CRE-regulated genes. They suggest that while CaMK activity appears to play a critical role in the phosphorylation of CREB, the maintenance of this state is controlled by the regulation of PP2B. This phosphatase mediates nuclear PPI activation responsible for CREB dephosphorylation.

Further support for the role of PP2B in synaptic functions comes from studies on gene targeting. In mice overexpressing the auto-inhibitory domain of calcineurin LTP, elicited by subsaturating tetanization (but not saturating conditions), was enhanced. On the contrary, mice that overexpress an activated form of PP2B show suppression of LTP elicited by strong stimuli. These and other results suggest that inhibition of PP2B activity facilitates LTP formation (Sweatt 2001b). Interestingly, the manipulation of PP2B activity selectively interferes with forms of LTP that are sensitive to PKA inhibition suggesting that PP2B may compete with PKA for the regulation of specific substrates (see below).

### 12.6.2 Protein phosphatase 1

Several catalytic subunits of PP1, including α, β, γ1, and γ2 isoforms, are present in the brain where they interact with various other proteins acting in subcellular targeting and/or in the regulation of phosphatase activity (Winder and Sweatt 2001). For example, PP1 binds Yotiao, which in turn also binds NR1 receptors and the RII regulatory subunit of PKA, so that PP1 and PKA activity are targeted to the NMDA receptors.
PP1 activity can be regulated in various ways including direct inhibition. At least four proteins, known as PP1 inhibitor proteins (inhibitor 1 (I-1), inhibitor 2 (I-2) dopamine, and cAMP regulated phosphoprotein of 32 kDa (DARP-32) (Greengard et al. 1998), and nuclear inhibitor of PP1 (NIPP-1)), have been identified as regulating PP1 activity in neurons. This regulation depends on the phosphorylation of these inhibitors; however while phosphorylation of I-1 and DARP32 elicits the inhibition of PP1 activity, phosphorylation of I-2 and NIPP-1 has a positive effect on PP1 activity.

A ‘gating’ mechanism for PPI regulation has been proposed in which phosphorylation and dephosphorylation of an intermediary protein control the activity of downstream phosphatases (Winder and Sweatt 2001). I–1 and DARP32 are substrates of PKA and the specifically phosphorylated sites of I–1 (Thr35) and DARP32 (Thr34) are selectively dephosphorylated by PP2B (Greengard et al. 1998).

Thus, signals that activate the cAMP pathway would phosphorylate and activate DARP32 whereas signals that activate calcium pathways would dephosphorylate and inactivate DARP-32. Changes in DARP32 activity would then lead to altered activity of PP1 on target substrates. However, the situation is undoubtedly far more complicated since the type of second messenger and also the intensity, duration, and localization within the neurons may influence the balance between kinase and phosphatase activity.

CaMKII is among the relevant substrates of PP1 (and/or PP2A) activity. Based on in vitro studies, it has been proposed that small increases of intracellular calcium would preferentially activate calcineurin and induce PP1-mediated CaMKII dephosphorylation. However, strong calcium stimuli would activate not only calcineurin and CaMKII but also PKA causing I-1 mediated inhibition of PP1 activity on CaMKII (Greengard et al. 1998).

From the data available it appears that a dynamic interplay between phosphatases and kinases might set the thresholds that determine whether a given neuronal input triggers a long-lasting neuronal change. However, further information is required to fully understand this interplay.

Acknowledgments

We thank Marina Stone for the help in the preparation of the manuscript. The writing of this review was supported by MURST and CNR.

References


This page intentionally left blank
Chapter 13

The cytoskeleton

Javier Díaz-Nido and Jesús Avila

13.1 Introduction

The intricate circuitry of the nervous system is built of billions of neurons, each of which has a complex morphology with numerous long processes that branch and interconnect through synaptic junctions. In this way, the highly asymmetrical shape of nerve cells is crucial for the functioning of brain.

At the beginning of the 20th century, neuroanatomists interested in the generation and maintenance of neuronal morphologies observed a ‘neurofibril network’ which arose in the cell body and extended into the axon and dendrites (Ramón y Cajal 1928). Electron microscopy later showed that ‘neurofibrils’ corresponded to bundles of cytoskeletal fibers similar to those found in all eukaryotic cells (Peters et al. 1976). Within the last 25 years, research has progressed impressively in the analysis of cytoskeletal components through the application of immunochemical, biochemical, and molecular genetic techniques. This has dramatically improved our knowledge of the cytoskeleton (Burgoyne 1991; Kreis and Vale 1993). In particular, the availability of complete genome sequences from a variety of organisms, and the recent technical advances to analyse the functions of many genes in parallel using in vivo or cell-based assays, are rapidly changing the field in a rather profound way (Martin and Drubin 2003).

The cytoskeleton consists of three types of filament structures: microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules. These fibrous structures are assembled from the polymerisation of certain protein subunits. A larger number of additional proteins associate with these filaments, modulating their structural stability and mediating their interaction with other cellular components. The dynamics of the assembly and disassembly of these protein polymers as well as their interactions with other cellular organelles and molecules provide the basis for the understanding of the physiological roles played by the cytoskeleton.

As the word ‘cytoskeleton’ implies, the skeleton of the cell is firstly required to sustain cell shape. The extraordinary morphologies of neurons consequently demand a highly developed cytoskeleton. Indeed, most cytoskeletal components are more abundant in neurons than in any other cell type. Furthermore, some proteins associated with the cytoskeleton appear to be specific for neurons.
Neuronal morphogenesis may thus be viewed as a process in which the relatively simple cytoskeleton of an undifferentiated neuroblast is progressively converted through a series of rearrangements into the complex cytoskeleton of a mature neuron. In this process, both changes in gene expression and post-translational modifications of cytoskeletal proteins take place.

Interestingly, the very sophisticated shapes of neurons are not unalterable during the entire life of an organism but they exhibit a noteworthy plasticity. Thus, neurons may undergo morphologic changes in response to their synaptic input, providing the nervous system with a flexibility of neuronal connectivity which might contribute to learning and memory mechanisms. Other neuron shape variation arise as the consequence of injury or denervation. Obviously, all these modifications in neuronal morphology are carried out through changes in the cytoskeleton.

With the availability of new and improved microscopy techniques that allow the imaging of cytoskeletal proteins within living cells, there has been a change from looking at the cytoskeleton as a rigid structure to seeing it as a dynamic network. Thus, the cytoskeletal system can grow and shrink within distinct cellular microcompartments as a result of the action of specific molecular regulatory elements. Furthermore, the entire cytoskeletal network is always mechanically tensed as a result of contractile forces which are generated by motor proteins. Thus, both changing the level of the tension in the cytoskeleton and modifying specific cytoskeletal proteins may significantly alter the morphology and physiology of cells. The regulation of proteins associated with the cytoskeleton by protein kinases and phosphatases activated in response to certain extracellular signals is particularly relevant in this respect.

In addition to its role in the development, maintenance and modification of neuronal morphology, the cytoskeleton is essential in the intracellular organization of the neuron. Thus, the sorting, distribution, transport, and anchoring of most cellular organelles depends on their interactions with cytoskeletal components. However, this does not merely constitute a passive support system, since the cytoskeletal scaffold is able to orient many of the enzymes and substrates that mediate critical cellular functions, including signal transduction, protein synthesis, transport, secretion, and turnover.

Finally, the significance of the cytoskeleton in neuronal physiology is highlighted by the neuropathological effects of agents that disturb the cytoskeleton. This may be the cause of several toxic neuropathies. Moreover, cytoskeletal abnormalities are also found in several naturally occurring neurodegenerative disorders.

This chapter summarizes the main features of the three major cytoskeletal polymers and reviews some aspects of their contribution to neuronal morphogenesis and plasticity, intraneuronal transport and neuropathology.

13.2 Components of the neuronal cytoskeleton

13.2.1 Microfilaments

Microfilaments are produced by the polymerization of a 43 kDa globular protein called actin. Two actin isoforms, β and γ actin, have been identified in neurons (Choo and Bray...
Actin is referred to as G-actin in its soluble form and once polymerized into microfilaments it is named F-actin. Actin monomers are arranged like two intertwined strings of beads giving a double helical filament of about 6 nm in diameter (see Fig. 13.1). Actin monomers are asymmetric and associate in a particular orientation. This results in the formation of polar microfilaments in which the two ends (the ‘barbed’ or ‘plus’ end and the ‘pointed’ or ‘minus’ end) are different. Actin is an ATP-binding protein that requires ATP in order to polymerize. Polymerized actin hydrolyses ATP rather slowly. One end of the microfilament contains ATP-actin and can incorporate new ATP-actin subunits. The other end contains ADP-actin, which can dissociate from the polymer. Thus, polymerization of ATP-actin occurs preferentially in one end of the microfilaments whereas depolymerization of ADP-actin takes place in the other. This dynamics of actin microfilaments is usually referred to as ‘treadmilling’ (Wegner 1985).

Actin microfilaments are found throughout the neuronal cytoplasm. Oligomers of actin are quite abundant immediately beneath the plasma membrane where they constitute the membrane skeleton (Luna and Hitt 1992). Actin polymers are mainly enriched in presynaptic terminals and in dendritic spines and postsynaptic densities (Ratner and Mahler 1983; Hirokawa et al. 1989; Fifkova and Morales 1992). Within axons, short filaments are associated with microtubules (Fath and Lasek 1988) and are also concentrated in the cortical region under the axonal plasma membrane (Tsukita et al. 1986). In developing neurons, long microfilaments are present within filopodia of nerve growth cones (Gordon-Weeks 1987; Smith 1988; Lewis and Bridgman 1992).

The variety of actin arrangements in different cellular locations as well as their dynamics are controlled by a number of actin-binding proteins (ABPs) (Dos Remedios et al. 2003). Table 13.1 summarizes the major classes of ABPs.
Table 13.1 Major actin-binding proteins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADF/Cofilin</td>
<td>Sequesters G-actin. Severs F-actin. Abundant in growth cones and presynaptic terminals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gelsolin</td>
<td>Severs and caps F-actin. Modulated by Ca(^{2+}) and PIP2. Present in growth cones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WASP/SCAR</td>
<td>Activates Arp 2/3 complex. Promotes actin filament nucleation. Present in growth cones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arp 2/3</td>
<td>Interacts with WASP/SCAR. Controls actin filament nucleation and branching. Present in growth cones</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F-actin stabilizing proteins**

- **Tropomyosin**: Dimer. Present both in dendrites and axons (including growth cones)

**F-actin bundling and crosslinking proteins**

- **α-Actinin**: Dimer. Modulated by Ca\(^{2+}\). Binds vinculin, integrin and catenin. Present in growth cones
- **Amelin**: Bundles F-actin and enhances spectrin binding. Abundant in soma and dendrites of mature neurons
- **Dystrophin**: Dimer. Similar to spectrin
- **Filamin**: Dimer. Crosslinks F-actin into networks. Present in growth cones
- **Fimbrin**: Bundles F-actin. Present in growth cones
- **MARCKS family**: Crosslinks F-actin. Modulated by calmodulin binding and PKC phosphorylation
- **Spectrin (αβ)**: Heterodimer and tetramer. Crosslinks F-actin into networks. Modulated by Ca\(^{2+}/\)calmodulin. Abundant in soma and dendrites of mature neurons. Enriched in dendritic spines
- **Fodrin/Spectrin (αγ)**: Homologous to spectrin. Present in growth cones. Abundant in axons
- **Synapsin I**: Bundles F-actin and enhances spectrin binding. Associated with synaptic vesicles. Abundant in presynaptic terminals
- **Utrophin**: Dimer. Similar to spectrin

**Proteins anchoring F-actin to membranes**

- **Ankyrin**: Anchors spectrin to membrane proteins
- **Catenin**: Binds actin, α-actinin and cadherin
- **Talin**: Binds vinculin and integrin. Present in growth cones
- **Vinculin**: Binds actin, talin and α-actinin. Present in growth cones
A class of ABPs regulates the assembly of actin by distinct mechanisms including the catalysis of actin ATP/ADP exchange, the sequestering of G-actin and the severing or capping of F-actin. Interestingly, the activities of some of these ABPs may be modulated by Ca\textsuperscript{2+} or phosphatidylinositol-4, 5-bisphosphate. Thus, actin dynamics and organization may be modified in response to extracellular signals that induce changes in intracellular Ca\textsuperscript{2+} concentration or stimulate phosphatidylinositol biphosphate hydrolysis. As a case in point, receptors with tyrosine kinase activity phosphorylate phospholipase C-\(\gamma\) that is stimulated to hydrolyse phosphatidylinositol biphosphate tightly bound to profilin. As a consequence of phosphoinositide hydrolysis, profilin is released to the cytoplasm where it promotes actin polymerization (Aderem 1992).

The Arp 2/3 complex is composed of seven proteins and controls actin filament nucleation and branching. The ability of Arp 2/3 to initiate actin filament branching depends on its interaction with proteins of the WASP/SCAR family like N-WASP (Higgs and Pollard 2001). Triggered by the activation of small GTPases (like Rac or Cdc 42), and the binding of phosphatidylinositol-4, 5-bisphosphate, proteins of the WASP family promote the nucleation of new actin filaments and the extension of existing filaments. Interestingly, the activation of N-WASP, which seems crucial for neurite outgrowth, is also regulated by protein tyrosine kinases (Suetsugu et al. 2002).

Profilin-binding protein of the VASP/Ena family are also key regulators of actin polymerization. VASP/Ena proteins associates with the barbed end of actin filaments, thereby preventing the binding of capping proteins and causing the formation of longer actin filaments (Krause et al. 2002). These ‘anti-capping’ proteins are abundant in growth cones and seem crucial for axonal growth. It is thought that VASP/Ena proteins cooperate with profilin to modulate changes in actin dynamics within growth cones in response to the extracellular signals that guide axons during development. Of relevance in this respect is the modulation of actin dynamics by the phosphorylation of VASP/Ena proteins (Loureiro et al. 2002).

The F-actin stabilizing proteins bind along actin filaments, blocking their interaction with other ABPs. For instance, F-actin bound to tropomyosin is resistant to the severing action of ADF (actin depolymerizing factor).

Other classes of ABPs are able to bundle and crosslink F-actin. For instance, fimbrin can make F-actin form bundles of uniform polarity such as those found within filopodia of growth cones.

### Table 13.1 (continued) Major actin-binding proteins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actin-activated ATPases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myosin I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myosin II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myosin V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADF, Actin depolymerizing factor; MARCKS, myristoylated alanine-rich C kinase substrate; PIP2, phosphatidylinositol-4, 5-bisphosphate; PKC, protein kinase C.
The best-characterized F-actin crosslinking proteins are spectrins (Bennett and Baines 2001). These proteins crosslink actin oligomers, forming a network which is attached to the plasma membrane through the interaction of spectrin with ankyrin molecules. Spectrin can also bind directly to certain membrane proteins. Spectrin–actin complexes are the predominant form of the cytoskeleton immediately underneath the plasma membrane. Spectrin binding to actin can be modulated by Ca^{2+}/calmodulin. There are two major forms of spectrin in neurons: αβ heterodimers, which are mainly localized in dendrites (including dendritic spines) and αγ heterodimers, which are referred to as fodrin, and are predominantly localized in axons (Riederer et al. 1986). Fodrin appears first in developing neurons, whereas αβ spectrin is mainly expressed in mature neurons (Riederer et al. 1987). Other proteins somewhat similar to spectrins include filamin, dystrophin, and utrophin.

The MARCKS family of proteins, which are also referred to as GAP43-like proteins, are characterized by the presence of a basic domain that binds acidic phospholipids including phosphatidylinositol biphosphate, calcium/calmodulin, actin filaments and PKC in a mutually exclusive manner. These proteins include MARCKS (myristoylated alanine-rich C kinase substrate), GAP 43 (growth-associated protein 43, also known as B50, neuromodulin or F1) and CAP23 (Frey et al. 2000). In particular, GAP43 and CAP23 are abundant in axonal growth cones and are believed to be crucial for axonal growth and regeneration (Bomze et al. 2001).

Synapsins (I and II) are actin-bundling proteins. Synapsin I is very abundant in presynaptic terminals, and in vitro is able to bundle actin filaments, enhance the interaction of spectrin with actin and bind to synaptic vesicles. These activities are inhibited after synapsin phosphorylation by Ca^{2+}/calmodulin-dependent kinase. Synapsin I seems to favor the association of synaptic vesicles with the actin-rich cytoskeleton of the nerve terminal (see Chapter 6). After presynaptic membrane depolymerization, synapsin I becomes phosphorylated and synaptic vesicles are released from actin filaments. These synaptic vesicles are then free to move to the plasma membrane where they can undergo exocytosis to release their neurotransmitter content (Llinas et al. 1985). Additionally, synapsins also play significant roles during neuronal development (Ferreira and Rapoport 2002).

An important group of ABPs consists of proteins which anchor F-actin to membranes. These include ankyrins, vinculin, talin, and catenin. Spectrins, MARCKs, synapsins, and α-actinin have been mentioned as F-actin crosslinking and bundling proteins but could also be included in this group.

Ankyrins are protein linkers between integral membrane proteins and the spectrin-based cytoskeleton, playing important roles both in signal transduction and in the assembly of specialized membrane domains (Bennett and Chen 2001; Rubtsov and Lopina 2000). Ankyrins are the products of three genes: ANK 1 (ankyrin-R), ANK 2 (ankyrin-B) and ANK 3 (ankyrin-G), but multiple isoforms arise from the alternative splicing of the primary transcripts. There are two ankyrin-R isoforms that are generated by alternative splicing of the transcript of the ANK-1 gene. These proteins are
present in the plasma membrane of cell bodies and dendrites of mature neurons. Two ankyrin-B isoforms arise from alternative splicing of the transcript of the ANK-2 gene. One 440 kDa isoform appears in axons early during brain development and the other 220 kDa isoforms is mainly localized to neuronal cell bodies and dendrites in the adult brain. 440 kDa ankyrin-B is associated with the L1 CAM family of cell adhesion molecules and is essential for the survival of premyelinated axons, at least in the case of the optic nerve. 480/270 kDa ankyrin-G isoforms are concentrated at axon initial segments and nodes of Ranvier in myelinated axons. Ankyrin-G seems to associate with voltage-gated sodium channels as well as neurofascin and NrCAM cell adhesion molecules (Bennett and Lambert 1999).

Vinculin, talin, and α-actinin form a complex that anchors F-actin to integrins. Integrins are transmembrane proteins that function as receptors for extracellular matrix proteins. These actin-binding protein complexes also bind signalling proteins that are implicated in the signal transduction pathways responsible for integrin-induced changes in cell behavior (Clark and Brugge 1995).

Catenins are involved in the association of F-actin with the cytoplasmic domains of the Ca\(^{2+}\)-dependent cell adhesion molecules referred to as cadherins.

Finally, some ABPs are actin-activated ATPases that transduce the chemical energy of ATP into mechanical energy. These actin-dependent motor proteins are involved in growth cone motility (see Section 13.3.1) and in the intracellular transport of organelles along actin filaments (see Section 13.5.4.3).

Summarizing, a large variety of ABPs may modulate actin assembly and organization. Moreover, ABPs are regulated by second messengers, phospholipids, protein kinases, and other signalling proteins responding to specific extracellular signals. Thus, the actin cytoskeleton is tightly connected to signal transduction pathways (Meyer and Feldman 2002).

13.2.2 Intermediate filaments

Intermediate filament proteins (IFP) are a multigene family of polypeptides able to polymerize into filaments about 10 nm in diameter (Herrmann and Aebi 2000). These proteins share a similar three-domain molecular structure: a variable amino-terminal ‘head’ domain, a relatively conserved central ‘rod’ domain, and a variable carboxyl-terminal ‘tail’ domain. The ‘rod’ domain contains heptad of hydrophobic amino acids with a tendency to adopt a two-chain coiled-coil α-helical configuration. Based on their amino acid sequence homologies, IFP are catalogued into six classes as shown in Table 13.2.

Interestingly, these proteins show a cell type-specific expression. At different stages of differentiation, neuronal cells express distinct IFP. Neural stem cells of the central nervous system express nestin (a class VI IFP). Before differentiation, neuroblasts and neurons also express vimentin (a class III IFP), which is gradually replaced by neurofilaments. Neurofilament triplet proteins (NF-L, NF-M, and NF-H, class IV IFP) are expressed by differentiating and mature neurons. Most neurons express relatively low levels of
NF-L and NF-M at the time of neurite outgrowth. After neuronal maturation, NF-H is expressed and a parallel up-regulation of NF-L and NF-M occurs. Neurofilaments are much more abundant in axons than in dendrites. In fact, neurofilaments are the most prominent cytoskeletal elements within large myelinated axons. Often the number of neurofilaments is an order of magnitude higher than the number of microtubules. Neurofilament numbers may determine the diameter of large myelinated axons and, consequently, the speed of nervous impulse conduction (Julien 1999).


Some developing neurons in the central nervous system also express α-internexin (NF-66, a class IV IFP), which persists within small calibre axons in the adult brain. α-Internexin is also present within dendrites and dendritic spines within hippocampal neurons. Peripherin (a class III IFP) is expressed by some developing neurons of the peripheral nervous system and is down-regulated during maturation, although it is maintained at low levels in certain neurons (Nixon and Shea 1992).

Intermediate filaments are far more stable than microfilaments or microtubules. However, they exhibit a certain degree of dynamics which generally involves lateral exchanges of subunits (see Fig. 13.1). Class III intermediate filaments are more dynamic than class IV IFP. The transition from class III to class IV IFP during neuronal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Proteins</th>
<th>Mass (kDa)</th>
<th>Distribution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Acidic cytokeratins</td>
<td>40–64</td>
<td>Epithelial cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Basic cytokeratins</td>
<td>52–68</td>
<td>Epithelial cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Vimentin</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>Mesenchymal cells Immature neuronal and glial cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desmin</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>Muscle cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GFAP</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Astroglia cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peripherin</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>PNS neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>NF-L</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>Neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NF-M</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>Neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NF-H</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>α-internexin (NF-66)</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>CNS neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Lamins</td>
<td>62–72</td>
<td>All cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Nestin</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>CNS neural stem cells</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CNS, central nervous system; GFAP, glial fibrillary acidic protein; NF-L, neurofilament, low molecular weight; NF-M, neurofilament, middle molecular weight; NF-H, neurofilament, heavy molecular weight; PNS, peripheral nervous system.
development therefore implies a stabilization of the cytoskeleton. The persistence of class III IFP in certain neurons may be correlated with their higher plasticity. For instance, axons from adult olfactory sensory neurons which are able to regenerate maintain the expression of vimentin as their major IF.

Dynamics of class III intermediate filaments is controlled by phosphorylation. Cyclic AMP-dependent protein kinase and PKC phosphorylate sites on the head domain of class III IFP impeding the polymerization of phosphorylated subunits and inducing the depolymerization of assembled filaments (Inagaki et al. 1989).

Several results indicate that neurofilaments are not entirely stable at least in immature growing axons. Thus, a slow lateral subunit exchange of NF-L has been observed in growing axons. This dynamic behavior declines after axonal maturation (Okabe et al. 1993).

Isolated NF-L proteins are able to polymerize in vitro. Subunit exchange is observed in these homopolymers. As for class III IFP, phosphorylation of the 'head' domain by cAMP-dependent protein kinase favors NF-L disassembly. However, homopolymerization of NF-L may not occur in vivo. Thus, NF-L is unable to form polymers in transfected cells lacking other intermediate filaments. NF-L can only polymerize if the cells express vimentin, NF-M or NF-H (Lee et al. 1993). In contrast, α-internexin (NF-66) is the only class IV IFP able to assemble in the absence of other intermediate filament proteins (Ching and Liem 1993). Accordingly, neurofilament triplet proteins are obligate heteropolymers in vivo. Perhaps NF-L/NF-M copolymers such as those found in growing axons still retain some dynamic behavior, whereas NF-L/NF-M/NF-H polymers such as those found in mature axons are almost completely stable.

Neurofilaments are extensively phosphorylated at sites on the 'tail' domains of NF-M and NF-H. Most of these sites correspond to repetitive Lys-Ser-Prof motifs and their phosphorylation may be catalysed by proline-directed protein kinases such as mitogen-activated protein kinases, stress-activated protein kinases, cyclin-dependent kinase 5, and glycogen synthase kinase 3. Phosphorylation mainly occurs when neurofilaments have entered the axon and continues throughout axonal transport. This gradual phosphorylation is associated with the slowing of neurofilament transport and with the integration of the neurofilaments into a stationary structure (see Section 13.5.2). The large number of phosphorylated residues on the tail domains of NF-M and NF-H possibly increases the electrostatic repulsion between filaments as a consequence of the huge number of negative charges. This extended conformation may be responsible for the increase in interfilament spacing and axonal calibre induced by myelination (see Section 13.3.2). Furthermore, phosphorylation protects neurofilaments against proteolysis by calcium-activated proteases like calpain. Thus, this type of neurofilament phosphorylation favors the stabilization of the axonal cytoskeleton (Grant and Pant 2000).

Curiously, mice with null mutations in neurofilament genes express subtle phenotypes but no gross abnormalities of the nervous system (Julien 1999). Mice with null mutations in the mid-sized neurofilament gene (NF-M) have axons with a diminished
calibre but lack any overt behavioural phenotype (Elder et al. 1998). However, those animals suffer a progressive motor axonal atrophy in the lumbar ventral roots of the spinal cord after aging. Mice with null mutations in both NF-M and NF-H genes develop atrophy in ventral and dorsal roots as well as hindlimb paralysis with aging. This demonstrates that the presence of neurofilaments is crucial for the structural integrity of certain axons during aging (Elder et al. 1999).

13.2.3 Microtubules

Microtubules are hollow fibers with a diameter of 24 nm. They are formed by 13 longitudinal strands (protofilaments) arranged in a helical configuration. Each strand is composed of aligned globular heterodimers consisting of \( \alpha \)-tubulin and \( \beta \)-tubulin subunits (Amos 2000). This leads to a polarized polymer with one end having exposed mainly \( \alpha \)-subunits and the other end mainly \( \beta \)-subunits. As described for actin microfilaments, one end of the microtubule (the ‘plus’ end) polymerizes faster than the other (the ‘minus’ end) (Howard and Hyman 2003).

There are different genes coding for distinct isoforms of \( \alpha \)- and \( \beta \)-tubulin. In mammals six genes for \( \alpha \)- and six genes for \( \beta \)-subunits have been found. Some of these gene products are specific for neurons (Sullivan 1988). A \( \gamma \)-tubulin encoded by a different gene has also been described. This tubulin subunit is not found within microtubules but appears to be localized at the centrosome where it presumably functions as a seed for the initiation of microtubule polymerization (Oakley 1992).

Further tubulin isoforms are generated on assembled microtubules as the consequence of post-translational modifications. There is acetylation of \( \alpha \)-tubulin, phosphorylation of a neuronal-specific \( \beta \)-tubulin, and polyglutamination of both \( \alpha \)- and \( \beta \)-tubulin. These chemical modifications seem to occur preferentially on stable microtubules.

Tubulin is a GTP-binding protein. Soluble GTP-tubulin has the ability to polymerize into microtubules. Once tubulin is incorporated into the polymer, the GTP bound to \( \beta \)-tubulin is hydrolysed to GDP. When the proportion of GTP-tubulin at a microtubule end decreases below a threshold level, the microtubule starts to rapidly depolymerize. After this, there is the possibility that the microtubule may again incorporate GTP-tubulin and stop depolymerizing. This behavior of microtubules has been referred to as ‘dynamic instability’ and describes well the properties of polymers assembled from purified tubulin in vitro (Kirschner and Mitchison 1986). However, microtubules are less dynamic in vivo than they are in vitro. There are also differences in the behavior of microtubules in distinct cell types and at different stages of development. For instance, a progressive microtubule stabilization is attained during the maturation of axons and dendrites (Baas et al. 1991).

Microtubules are distributed as bundles throughout the neuronal cytoplasm, although their organization differs in axons and dendrites (see Section 13.3.3). Microtubules are crucial elements in the generation and maintenance of neuronal morphology. Thus, both axons and dendrites shrink back to the cell body after treatment of cultured neurons with microtubule-depolymerizing drugs. Microtubules
serve also as tracks for bidirectional transport of various organelles and macromolecules between cell bodies and neurite tips (see Section 13.5.1).

The dynamics of microtubules as well as their interactions with other cellular components are regulated by microtubule-binding proteins. Table 13.3 shows the main types of microtubule-binding proteins.

Some microtubule-binding proteins promote the assembly of tubulin into microtubules and remain bound to the microtubule surface, resulting in microtubule stabilization. These proteins are quite abundant and were the first microtubule-binding proteins identified, being named microtubule-associated proteins (MAPs). MAPs bind to the carboxyl-terminal domain of tubulin, a domain implicated in the regulation of tubulin polymerization possibly through its interaction with the GTP-binding domain.

Table 13.3 Major microtubule-binding proteins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assembly-promoting and microtubule-stabilizing proteins</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMW-Tau</td>
<td>Present in the peripheral nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMW-Tau</td>
<td>Abundant in axons of the central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contributes to microtubule stabilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP-1A</td>
<td>Abundant in dendrites of mature neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP-1B (MAP5)</td>
<td>Present both in axons and dendrites. Contributes to neural migration and initial neurite outgrowth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP-2A, B</td>
<td>Present in cell bodies and dendrites (including dendritic spines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP-2C, D</td>
<td>Present in axon, dendrites and glial cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP-4</td>
<td>Present in glial cells and in immature neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCX</td>
<td>Contributes to neuronal migration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLS1</td>
<td>Contributes to neuronal migration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Microtubule end-binding protein</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIP-170</td>
<td>Attachment of microtubules to endosomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APC</td>
<td>Attachment of microtubules to cell cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EB1</td>
<td>Attachment of microtubules to cell cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Microtubule-destabilizing proteins</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OP18/stathmin</td>
<td>Highly abundant. Favors microtubule destabilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Microtubule-activated ATPases</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyneins</td>
<td>Move organelles from ‘plus’ to ‘minus’ ends of microtubules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinesins</td>
<td>Move organelles from ‘minus’ to ‘plus’ ends of microtubules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proteins anchoring microtubules to membrane receptors</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gephyrin</td>
<td>Binds glycine receptors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
of the tubulin molecule (Padilla et al. 1993). MAPs are a heterogeneous group of proteins that show developmental stage-specific expression as well as subcellular-specific compartmentalization. Interestingly, MAP functionality can be regulated by phosphorylation and dephosphorylation (Tucker 1990; Avila et al. 1994; Cassimeris and Spittle 2001). There are two major groups of MAPs: the MAP1 and the MAP2/MAP4/tau protein families.

MAP1A and MAP1B are encoded by different genes, but show extensive amino acid sequence homology. These proteins are much more abundant in neurons than in other cell types. MAP1B (also called MAP5) is the first MAP expressed by neurons during differentiation and is particularly abundant in growing axons. The expression of MAP1B diminishes after neuronal maturation, and the remaining protein is localized both in axons and dendrites of adult neurons. Null mutant mice lacking MAP1B die during the early embryonic stages, whereas hypomorphous mutant mice expressing low levels of MAP1B exhibit gross neuronal abnormalities including defects in neuronal migration and in axon formation (Edelmann et al. 1996; Gonzalez-Billault et al. 2000, 2001; Takei et al. 2000). Thus, MAP1B seems to play an essential role in neuronal morphogenesis.

MAP1B is highly phosphorylated in vivo. There are at least two modes of MAP1B phosphorylation. One is catalysed by proline-directed protein kinases including glycogen synthase kinase-3 (GSK-3), mainly takes place in growing axons, and practically disappears after axonal maturation (Mansfield et al. 1991). Interestingly axons from regenerating neurons express this phosphorylated MAP1B (Dieterich et al. 2002). The other mode of MAP1B phosphorylation is catalysed by casein kinase 2 and is maintained both in axons and dendrites of mature neurons (Ulloa et al. 1994). As for MAP1A, its expression is up-regulated during neuronal maturation, and it is abundant in dendrites and is also in vivo phosphorylated.
MAP2, MAP4, and tau proteins share a homologous tubulin-binding domain that is different from that present in MAP1A or MAP1B. MAP2, MAP4, and tau are each encoded by a single gene, but considerable heterogeneity arises from alternative splicing of primary transcripts.

MAP2 isoforms include high molecular weight proteins MAP2A and MAP2B and low molecular weight proteins MAP2C and MAP2D. MAP2C is expressed in the embryonic brain and it is down-regulated during brain maturation. In contrast, MAP2A appears only after brain maturation. MAP2C is present in neuronal cell bodies, dendrites and axons as well as in glial cells, whereas high molecular weight MAP2 is a neuronal-specific protein selectively localized in dendrites and neuronal cell bodies (Tucker 1990). The compartmentalization of high molecular weight MAP2 into dendrites may be due to the selective transport of the corresponding mRNA into dendrites (Garner et al. 1988). In addition to its association with microtubules, MAP2 is associated with actin in dendritic spines (Fifkova and Morales 1992). Binding of MAP2 to tubulin and actin is regulated by phosphorylation. MAP2 can be modified by cAMP-dependent protein kinase, Ca\(^{2+}\)/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase, PKC and proline-directed protein kinases including mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAP kinases) and GSK-3 (Sanchez et al. 2000). MAP4 proteins are mainly expressed in nonneuronal tissues. In the brain, MAP4 is present in glial cells and very immature neurons.

Low molecular weight tau proteins are found in the central nervous system whereas additional high molecular weight tau proteins are present in the peripheral nervous system. In brain, tau proteins are particularly abundant within axons, although some tau is also present in neuronal cell bodies and dendrites. The association of tau with tubulin may also be regulated through phosphorylation by several protein kinases such as cAMP-dependent protein kinase, Ca\(^{2+}\)/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase, PKC, casein kinase 1, casein kinase 2, and proline-directed protein kinases including mitogen-activated protein kinases, stress-activated protein kinases, cyclin-dependent kinase-5, and glycogen synthase kinase-3 (Muñoz-Montaño et al. 1997; Shahani and Brandt 2002). In vivo, tau phosphorylation by GSK-3 is especially prominent in embryonic tau as compared with adult tau. It is plausible that tau dephosphorylation at these sites favors binding of tau to tubulin and therefore contributes to microtubule stabilization during axonal maturation (Ferreira et al. 1993). Interestingly, tau protein becomes hyperphosphorylated under certain pathological conditions (Buee et al. 2000; Shahani and Brandt 2002).

Interestingly, all these MAPs may play partially redundant and synergistic functions during neuronal development. Thus, suppression of the expression of one particular MAP has a relatively minor effect whereas the suppression of more than one MAP (MAP1B/MAP2 or MAP1B/Tau) has a dramatic effect on neuronal morphogenesis (Takei et al. 2000; Gonzalez-Billault et al. 2002).

In addition to these conventional and abundant MAPs, other microtubule-binding proteins have been described. These include doublecortin (DCX) and LIS1, which are
the products of two genes involved in neuronal migration. Mutations in these genes give rise to neuronal migration arrest, cerebral cortex malformation, and disruption of neuronal morphology. DCX seems to be a classical MAP which is able to stabilize microtubules, and LIS1 might be a microtubule-end binding protein which also associates with the microtubule motor dynein (Feng and Walsh 2001).

Whereas conventional MAPs bind all along the microtubule surface, other microtubule-interacting proteins bind exclusively at microtubule ends, particularly at the ‘plus’ ends. These plus-end-binding proteins, also known as plus-end tracking proteins (+TIP), form multiprotein complexes that are thought to regulate microtubule dynamics, mediate the anchoring of microtubules to the cellular periphery and mediate the delivery of proteins to cell ends (Galjart and Perez 2003). Major +TIPs include CLIP-170 (cytoplasmic linker protein-170), APC (adenomatous polyposis coli gene product) and EB1 (end-binding protein 1). These +TIPs may also interact with other proteins including conventional MAPs, like MAP1B or tau, and microtubule-dependent motor proteins like dynein, facilitating the anchoring of microtubules to the cell cortex (Allan and Nathke 2001). These multiprotein complexes are also regulated by phosphorylation and the role of GSK-3 is quite significant in this respect (Allan and Nathke 2001).

A different type of microtubule-binding protein is Op18/stathmin. This 17 kDa protein was initially discovered as a protein which becomes up-phosphorylated in response to a variety of extracellular signals. It is now clear that Op 18/stathmin has the ability to bind tubulin and favor rapid microtubule depolymerization (Belmont and Mitchison 1996). Another type of microtubule-binding protein with microtubule severing activity has recently been described. It is not known whether these proteins are present in neurons (Shiina et al. 1995).

Other microtubule-binding proteins are microtubule-activated ATPases, also called motor proteins. Kinesin, kinesin-related proteins, and cytoplasmic dynein are involved in the transport of cell organelles and other macromolecular complexes along microtubules (see Section 4.5.4).

Microtubules are important not only for the organization of organelles within the cytoplasm but also for the clustering of protein complexes within membranes. Proteins anchoring membrane proteins to microtubules play an essential role in this respect. As a case in point, gephyrin links glycine receptors of postsynaptic membranes to microtubules and microfilaments (Kirsh and Betz 1996). MAP 1B seems to be responsible for the anchoring and clustering GABA-C receptors and this linkage to the cytoskeleton may modulate the sensitivity of the receptors (Hanley et al. 1999; Billups et al. 2000). Thus, the binding of membrane receptors to the cytoskeleton may control the functional properties of the receptors (see Section 13.4).

In a more general way, it is now considered that microtubules play a crucial role in the regulation of signal transduction. First, microtubules are affected by signalling pathways since MAPs, motors, and other microtubule-binding proteins are targets of signal transduction pathways. Second, microtubules seem to be critical for the spatial
organization of signal transduction and also contribute to the transmission of intracellular signals to downstream targets. Thus, microtubules may sequester signalling factors from the cytoplasm and release them under certain conditions. Microtubules may also act as a scaffold to promote the interaction of certain factors, which would otherwise not interact. Finally, microtubules may additionally serve to deliver signalling factors to specific sites in the cell. Among the signalling proteins that interact with microtubules there are many protein kinases, phosphatases, and G proteins (Gundersen and Cook 1999). Of special relevance is the binding of Rho guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF-H1) since this protein modulates Rho GTPase activity and therefore actin dynamics, thus constituting a way of cross-talk between microtubules and the actin cytoskeleton (Krendel et al. 2002).

13.2.4 Interactions of cytoskeletal components

Microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules are not isolated from each other in the neuronal cytoplasm. Indeed, there are a large number of connections between the three types of cytoskeletal structures. Many proteins are involved in these interactions. For instance, spectrin not only binds actin but also ankyrin, membrane proteins, microtubules, and neurofilaments. Certain microtubule-associated proteins have also been reported to bind microfilaments and neurofilaments. Additionally, many membrane organelles and soluble proteins are anchored to the cytoskeleton. The clearest example is the plasma membrane, where the cytoplasmic ‘tails’ of many membrane proteins are bound to cytoskeletal proteins (Kirsh and Betz 1996).

Development of the quick-freeze, deep-etch techniques has allowed the observation of the three-dimensional architecture of the unfixed neuronal cytoskeleton. These images have provided evidence that there is a cytoskeletal network that should be considered as an integrated functional entity (Hirokawa 1982). Figure 13.2 is a schematic drawing of the cytoskeleton beneath the plasma membrane of the squid giant axon as visualized by the quick-freeze, deep-etch technique (Tsukita et al. 1986). The existence of connections between microtubules and microfilaments and between these cytoskeletal polymers and the plasma membrane is apparent.

13.3 The cytoskeleton in neuronal morphogenesis

13.3.1 Neurite growth

An essential event for neuronal morphogenesis is the extension of the neurites that are the hallmark of neuronal cell shape. All neurites, both axon and dendrites, grow at specialized terminal appendages called growth cones, which were first observed by Ramón y Cajal in the embryonic chick spinal cord. Growth cones are primarily involved in the extension of the neurite and in the guidance of the developing neurite to reach its target. Accordingly, growth cones function as sensory devices that decode extracellular signals in order to direct neurite growth through the regulation of intracellular cytoskeletal dynamics.
Typical growth cones appear as fan-shaped or leaf-shaped expansion of neurite tips. Growth cones are characterized by the presence of long thin projections called filopodia, which are embedded within broad expansions named lamellipodia. Microtubules are mostly located in the central portion of the growth cone. Bundled unipolar actin microfilaments constitute the cytoskeleton of filopodia and a network of cross-linked actin predominates within lamellipodia (Lewis and Bridgman 1992).

Neurite outgrowth occurs through the protrusion of filopodia and lamellipodia and the subsequent invasion of the expanded bases of filopodia and lamellipodia by microtubules. The bundling of the invading microtubules constitutes the consolidation of the growth of the neurite. The protrusive activity of lamellipodia and filopodia of cultured neurons is inhibited by F-actin depolymerizing drugs like cytochalasin B, while it persists in the presence of microtubule-depolymerizing drugs like nocodazole or colchicine. In contrast, neurite elongation is blocked in the presence of microtubule-depolymerizing drugs and continues in the presence of F-actin depolymerizing drugs. This indicates the existence of two linked processes during neurite outgrowth that can be uncoupled by different drugs. One is the growth cone motility, which is presumably involved in neurite guidance and depends on actin dynamics. The other process is neurite elongation which depends on microtubules. Under physiological conditions, both processes are connected (Bradke and Dotti 2000; Goldberg 2003).

The molecular mechanisms responsible for the protrusive activity of filopodia and lamellipodia are not entirely elucidated. However, a hypothetical description, known as the 'clutch' model, has been proposed (Mitchison and Kirschner 1988; Smith 1988; Stossel 1993; Lin et al. 1996; Jay 2000). Figure 13.3 shows a schematic drawing...
that explains how forward movement of filopodia and lamellipodia might occur. It is well known that there is a retrograde flow of F-actin in filopodia and lamellipodia. This retrograde flow is particularly robust in immotile growth cones and it is easily observed when neurons are plated on a poly-L-lysine substrate lacking certain extracellular matrix proteins. When a growth cone is on a more permissive substrate, the retrograde F-actin flow slows down and the growth cone advances. This suggests that the advance of the growth cone depends on the coupling of the cytoskeleton to the substrate. Figure 13.3a depicts a growth cone in which the cytoskeleton is not linked with the extracellular substrate. In this situation, motor proteins (presumably myosin molecules anchored to the rigid membrane skeleton) can produce the retrograde

Fig. 13.3 Model showing how anterograde movement of the growth cone may occur when the retrograde flow actin microfilaments ceases as the consequences of anchoring to the extracellular substrate. In (a), actin microfilaments (1) are subjected to ‘treadmilling’: assembling at the ‘barbed’ end (shaded chevrons) and disassembling at the ‘pointed’ end (faded chevrons). There is a retrograde flow of actin microfilaments (1) driven by myosin molecules (2) anchored on to the membrane skeleton (3). In (b), actin filaments become stationary because of their association with anchoring proteins (4) bound to transmembrane protein (5) which are linked to extracellular matrix molecules (6). Addition of new actin monomers to the ‘barbed’ end also occur. Myosin (3) and the membrane skeleton (3) crawl to the leading edge of the growth cone. Reproduced from Mitchison and Kirschner (1988) with permission from Cell press.
movement of actin microfilaments that are undergoing ‘treadmilling’ (see Section 13.2.1). Figure 13.3b depicts the situation in which the cytoskeleton of the growth cone is firmly attached to the extracellular substrate. When this occurs, the actin microfilaments are stationary and the motor protein myosin and the membrane skeleton crawl to the edge of the growth cone. Actin polymerization at the ‘plus’ ends of microfilaments also occurs in parallel, thus leading to growth cone advance.

There is a large number of actin-binding proteins present at the growth cone (see Table 13.1) and their complex interactions make it difficult to understand how these proteins act in a concerted way. It has been suggested that myosin V functions as the motor protein anchored to the membrane skeleton. Talin seems to be involved in the anchoring of actin filaments to the membrane (the ‘clutch’ module), and zyxin promotes actin assembly at the tip, possibly by recruiting proteins from the Ena/VASP family (Jay 2000).

Extracellular signal molecules that control axon extension and guidance are able to modulate growth cone motility through the activation of intracellular signalling factors that regulate actin dynamics (Dickson 2001; Meyer and Feldman 2002; Goldberg 2003; Huber et al. 2003). In particular, proteins of the Rho subfamily of Ras-related GTPases (CDC42 Rac and Rho) are involved in the signal transduction pathways leading to the remodelling of the actin cytoskeleton within growth cones in response to certain extracellular signals. CDC42 primarily stimulates filopodia formation, Rac stimulates the formation of lamellipodia and Rho could participate in growth cone retraction (Dickson 2001; Meyer and Feldman 2002; Goldberg 2003; Huber et al. 2003).

The forward movement of the growth cone is, under physiological conditions, accompanied by neurite extension. This presumably occurs through the translocation and polymerization of microtubules from the central part of the growth cone to the expanded initial portions of the protrusive filopodia and lamellipodia. This microtubule extension may simply be favored by the fact that actin filament density is decreasing at the base of filopodia and lamellipodia when these are advancing. Alternatively, there might be molecules crosslinking actin microfilaments and microtubules that could pull microtubules to the base of filopodia and lamellipodia. Some evidence favors the first possibility, namely, that microtubules tend to extend when not restrained by the retrograde flow of actin microfilaments. Thus, treatment of growth cones with microfilament-depolymerizing drugs stimulates the extension of microtubules (Forscher and Smith 1988; Bradke and Dotti 2000). It has been suggested that the actin filament-severing protein gelsolin and the filament depolymerising family of ADF/cofilin proteins increase actin turnover at the transitional zone between actin filament ‘pointed’ ends and microtubule ‘plus’ ends.

As mentioned above, neurite elongation is completely dependent on microtubules. Both the transport of microtubules from the cell body and the elongation of microtubules contribute to neurite growth (Joshi and Baas 1993; Baas and Ahmad 2001). Figure 13.4 shows that short microtubules destined for the neurites are initiated at the centrosome within the cell body, after which they are released from the centrosome.
and transported into the neurite. It has been suggested that microtubule-dependent
motor proteins like dynein are responsible for catalysing microtubule transport within
growing neurites (Baas and Ahmad 2001). During their transit down the neurite, short
microtubules are elongated. The central region of the growth cone is particularly
enriched in microtubule ‘plus’ ends that are actively polymerizing by incorporation of
tubulin subunits.

In addition to microtubule transport and elongation, the consolidation of the
growing neurite is produced by the bundling of microtubules. Microtubule-associated
proteins are possibly involved in the bundling of microtubules. In particular, an essen-
tial role for MAPs including MAP1B and tau or MAP2 has been demonstrated
(Gonzalez-Billault et al. 2002).

Microtubules in distal neurite regions are more dynamic than those in the proximal
domain, which suggests a progressive stabilization of microtubules during neurite
extension. Different MAPs may stabilize microtubules in axons and dendrites. Thus,
tau proteins are possibly implicated in a partial microtubule stabilization within
growing axons (Harada et al. 1994) and high molecular weight MAP2 protein may
perform a similar role in growing dendrites. Microtubules are not completely stable
in extending neurites because these need a flexible cytoskeleton to allow growth. In
particular, microtubule instability is required for new membrane insertion into the
growing neurites (Zakharenko and Popov 1998). The precise degree of microtubule
dynamics in developing axons may be controlled through the phosphorylation of
MAPs including MAP1B (Ulloa et al. 1994) by kinases like GSK-3 (Goold et al. 1999).
In mature neurites, the cytoskeleton becomes less plastic since the maintenance of
morphology and the transport of organelles are its major functions. Thus, microtubule
stabilization is increased with axonal and dendritic maturation (Baas et al. 1991).
Dephosphorylation of certain sites on MAP1B and tau molecules can contribute to

---

**Fig. 13.4** Model describing the origin of axonal microtubules. Microtubules are nucleated at
the centrosome, then released and transported into the axon where microtubule polymeriza-
tion takes place at the ‘plus’ ends. The growth cone is a major site of microtubule assembly.
permission of The Rockefeller University Press.
axonal microtubule stabilization (Ferreira et al. 1993; Ulloa et al. 1994), whereas the appearance of new MAPs like MAP1A may favor dendritic microtubule stabilization.

13.3.2 Axonal maturation

When axons reach their targets, the cytoskeleton of the growth cone is remodelled and converted into the cytoskeleton of a presynaptic terminal. Motility and extension cease, and an accumulation of synapsin, which crosslinks synaptic vesicles to actin microfilaments, is observed.

Myelination signals a new phase of axonal maturation, characterized by the radial growth of the axon. It is now clear that this increase in axonal diameter is due to the augmented expression and phosphorylation of neurofilaments. Thus, no radial growth of axons is observed in mice with mutant neurofilament genes (Julien 1999). A reduced axonal calibre is also observed in a mutant mouse called trembler in which myelination does not occur as a result of the mutation in the gene-encoding myelin

![Diagram showing the stimulation of axonal neurofilament phosphorylation by myelinating Schwann cells. Putative interactions between Schwann cell membrane and axonal membrane molecules trigger either the activation of a neurofilament kinase (K) or the inhibition of a phosphatase (P), thus leading to an enhanced phosphorylation of the 'tail' domains of NF-H and NF-M. These constitute the lateral projections of the neurofilament polymers and their high degree of phosphorylation may lead to electrostatic repulsion, resulting in a wide interfilament spacing and increased axonal calibre. In nonmyelinated axonal segments, the activity of the phosphatase is higher than the kinase activity, neurofilaments are therefore less phosphorylated, and a narrower interfilament spacing and a reduced axonal diameter are observed. Reproduced from De Waegh et al. (1992) with permission from Cell Press.](image-url)
basic protein. *Trembler* axons have an increased density of neurofilaments that are closely spaced and underphosphorylated. This suggests that NF-M and NF-H tail domain phosphorylation augments interfilaments spacing, contributing to radial growth (see Section 13.2.2). Underphosphorylation results in narrow spacing, increased density, and reduced axonal calibre. Interestingly, this is not only observed in *trembler* axons but also in normal axons at the nodes of Ranvier. Thus, myelination seems to control NF-M and NF-H tail domain phosphorylation (see Fig. 13.5). This indicates that Schwann cell–axon interactions may trigger a signalling pathway that controls a neurofilament kinase or phosphatase (De Waegh et al. 1992).

### 13.3.3 Neuronal polarity

Axons and dendrites differ in their morphology, rate of growth, organelle content, and cytoskeletal composition and organization (see Table 13.4). It is plausible that the differences between the cytoskeleton of axons and dendrites are responsible for the differences in their morphology, rate of growth and organelle content (Craig and Banker 1994; Bradke and Dotti 2000; Scott and Luo 2001).

The formation of axons and dendrites follows a stereotyped pattern in cultured embryonic hippocampal neurons (Dotti et al. 1988; Bradke and Dotti 2000); after plating, the cells extend lamellipodia (stage 1). Several short neurites arise from these lamellipodia (stage 2). One of them elongates very rapidly, becoming the axon (stage 3). After a few days, the remaining short neurites begin to grow slowly to become dendrites (stage 4). Finally both axons and dendrites mature (stage 5).

The initiation of fast axonal growth (stage 3) marks the generation of neuronal polarity. A segregation of certain proteins into the nascent axon at this stage has been observed. One of these proteins is neuromodulin, which may have a regulatory function on axonal growth cone motility. Differential protein phosphorylation may also

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 13.4 Major differences between axons and dendrites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Axons</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform calibre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Few branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of polyribosomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abundance of neurofilaments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform polarity of microtubules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrow spacing between microtubules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abundance of tau protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence of αγ spectrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highly phosphorylated NF-M and NF-H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
contribute to the development of neuronal polarity. For example, MAP1B phosphorylated by GSK-3 is mainly localized to growing axons, as shown in Fig. 13.6 (Mansfield et al. 1991; Ulloa et al. 1994; Goold et al. 1999). Interestingly, laminin, an extracellular matrix protein that stimulates axonal growth, also promotes MAP1B phosphorylation (Di Tella et al. 1996).

An important event in the establishment of neuronal polarity is the appearance of microtubules with mixed polarity (see Fig. 13.7). Within the axon, all the microtubules have a uniform polar orientation with their ‘plus’ ends pointing toward the axon terminal. In contrast, dendritic microtubules are oriented with their ‘plus’ ends toward the dendrite tip or the cell body (Baas et al. 1989). All microtubules destined for axons or dendrites are probably initiated at the centrosome, released, and then transported into axons and dendrites. Thus, the uniform polarity of axonal microtubules and the mixed polarity of dendritic microtubules must arise from differences in their transport systems (Sharp et al. 1995; Baas 1999).

The distinct microtubule patterns within axons and dendrites may constitute a structural basis for organelle distribution in the neurons, as it has been hypothesized that certain organelles, including polyribosomes, are preferentially transported toward the ‘minus’ ends of the microtubules, which would facilitate their transport into dendrites.
The cytoskeleton in neuronal plasticity

Both in the developing and adult nervous systems, neurons can undergo structural modifications in response to certain extracellular signals. These modifications may range from the outgrowth of collateral ramifications from neurites, which establish new synapses, to alterations of pre-existing synapses, which include changes in the shape of dendritic spines and more subtle modifications of postsynaptic densities and presynaptic terminals. Some synaptic changes may be associated with learning (Greenough and Bailey 1987; Bailey and Kandel 1993; Montague 1993).

Rearrangements of the neuronal cytoskeleton have been proposed to play a crucial role in these synaptic remodelling events (Fifkova and Morales 1992). Such changes may be triggered by posttranslational modifications of cytoskeletal proteins, mainly through phosphorylation and dephosphorylation. According to this view, certain extracellular signals initiate transduction pathways that modulate cytoskeletal protein phosphorylation, which leads to the structural rearrangements underlying synaptic plasticity. In fact, some preliminary evidence has shown a correlation between MAP2 phosphorylation and certain examples of synaptic plasticity (Sanchez et al. 2000).

A great deal of attention has been focused on dendritic spines, as these specialized structures are postsynaptic sites. Actin provides the main structural basis for cytoskeletal organization within dendritic spines, which mostly lack microtubules and intermediate filaments (Halpain 2000; Matus 2000). Recent evidence has demonstrated...
a role for actin rearrangements in a form of synaptic plasticity (see also Chapter 14). Thus, long-term potentiation (LTP) of synapses in the hippocampal dentate gyrus is associated with the phosphorylation of cofilin, which gives rise to an increase in F-actin within spines, thus leading to the growth and strengthening of synapses (Fukazawa et al. 2003).

Cytoskeletal modifications may not only affect neuronal connectivity through morphological changes but might also control neuronal physiology through the modulation of neurotransmitter receptors and ion channels which are anchored to the membrane skeleton (Rosenmund and Westbrook 1993; Billups et al. 2000).

13.5 The cytoskeleton in intraneuronal transport

13.5.1 Axonal and dendritic transport

Although all eukaryotic cells need active systems to generate intracellular movement of organelles, protein complexes, and mRNAs, neurons have a much more pronounced demand and challenge since they are highly polarized cells with processes of significance length. All neuronal mRNA synthesis and most proteins synthesis takes place in the cell body. Specific transport systems allow the delivery of macromolecules from the cell body to axons and dendrites. The fact that axons and dendrites each receive a number of unique proteins (see Section 13.3.3) calls for the existence of molecular sorting mechanisms. Furthermore, certain mRNAs are transported into dendrites where they contribute to local protein synthesis (Steward and Banker 1992).

Dendritic transport has not been so thoroughly studied as axonal transport. For this reason we will focus on axonal transport. The necessity for an axonal transport mechanism was first appreciated by Ramón y Cajal (1928) who established that the integrity of the axon depends on the neuronal cell body. When a peripheral nerve axon is severed, the segment which is disconnected from the cell body degenerates, while the remaining portion of the axon regenerates. Both axon regeneration in peripheral nerves and axon outgrowth in immature neurons take place as a result of materials continuously supplied from the cell body to the axon.

Axonal transport has been mainly studied by radioisotopic labelling methods. For instance, in the visual system, radiolabeled amino acids injected into the vitreous humor are incorporated into proteins by the retinal ganglion neurons. Labeled proteins are then transported down the axons constituting the optic nerve. The movement of labelled proteins is analysed by removing the optic nerve, sectioning it into segments and measuring the distribution of radioactivity within these pieces at different times after injection.

The kinetics of axonal transport that emerge from these studies are rather complex, indicating the existence of distinct sets of conveyed proteins according to their rates of transport. These groups of proteins move as coherent waves down the axon at different rates, with no exchange of proteins between them. This has led to the proposal that transported proteins move as parts of cytological structures (Tytell et al. 1981).
Four main components of axonal transport have been identified:

(i) Slow component A. This group of proteins moves at a rate of 0.2–1 mm day\(^{-1}\) (0.002–0.01 µm sec\(^{-1}\)) and consists primarily of polypeptides associated with neurofilaments and microtubules.

(ii) Slow component B. This is a quite complex group of proteins comprising more than 100 polypeptides moving at 2–8 mm day\(^{-1}\) (0.02–0.08 µm sec\(^{-1}\)). It seems to correspond to the transport of microtubules and actin microfilaments including their associated proteins. Some of these are metabolic enzymes which bind to actin microfilaments.

(iii) Intermediate component. This corresponds to mitochondria, which are conveyed along microtubules at a rate of 50–100 mm day\(^{-1}\) (0.6–1.2 µm sec\(^{-1}\)).

(iv) Fast component. This is a rather complex group of membrane-associated proteins moving at a rate of 200–400 mm day\(^{-1}\) (2.4–4.8 µm sec\(^{-1}\)) and corresponds to the movement of most membrane organelles along microtubules.

Rates of axonal transport presumably depend on the specific mechanochemical properties of the motor proteins implicated and on the hindrance opposing the movement of organelles and other macromolecular complexes. This hindrance depends on the degree of cross-linking of cytoskeletal polymers and the presence of specific cytoskeletal-associated proteins. Thus, there are differences in the axonal transport components among distinct neuronal types. Curiously, the transport velocities of the slow components in axons from the peripheral nervous system are faster than those in axons from the central nervous system. Moreover, a novel component of axonal transport referred to as slow component C has recently been described in peripheral axons and consists of proteins moving at a rate of 7–9 mm day\(^{-1}\). This corresponds to some proteins associated with tubulin and actin, including the mode-I phosphorylated isoforms of MAP1B. It has been suggested that this relatively less slow transport of phosphorylated MAP1B may account for the high concentration of this protein in the distal ends of growing axons (Ma et al. 2000).

13.5.2 Slow axonal transport

The molecular mechanisms of slow axonal transport are not entirely understood. It used to be generally accepted that cytoskeletal proteins assembled in the cell body and that cytoskeletal polymers were the moving elements in slow axonal transport. According to this ‘structural hypothesis’, cytoskeletal polymers entered the axon and there was a continuous movement of the cytoskeletal scaffolding along the axon to the synaptic terminal where microtubules and neurofilaments would be disassembled and proteolyzed. Alternatively to this model, cytoskeletal proteins may be transported down the axon as subunits, oligomers, or small polymers and serve as precursors for a stationary axonal cytoskeleton constituted by highly crosslinked polymers (Nixon 1991). Current evidence favors this latter view.
The existence of moving and stationary cytoskeletal elements is particularly clear for neurofilaments. Highly phosphorylated NF-H and NF-M isoforms (see Section 13.2.2) are associated with stationary neurofilaments. Thus, it is plausible that non-phosphorylated neurofilaments are assembled in the cell body and enter the axon as moving oligomers or polymers which become progressively phosphorylated and integrated into a stationary cytoskeleton (Nixon and Sihag 1991). Interestingly, it has been demonstrated that fluorescently tagged NF-M moves in a rapid, intermittent and highly asynchronous manner within axons of cultured neurons. This has raised the possibility that the slow rate of neurofilament transport in vivo may merely be the result of rapid movements driven by a fast motor protein interrupted by prolonged pauses (Wang et al. 2000). Accordingly, all the components of the slow axonal transport would correspond to protein complexes exhibiting bursts of fast movement interspersed with variable periods of non-motility. This view is consistent with recent studies indicating an implication of motor proteins similar to those mediating fast organelle transport (see Section 13.5.4) in slow axonal transport (Shea and Flanagan 2001; Xia et al. 2003). It has been suggested that kinesin might be involved in the initial transport of neurofilament subunits into and along axons. As these neurofilament proteins undergo progressive phosphorylation during axonal transport, they might dissociate from kinesin and associate with other neurofilament subunits, eventually formed a large bundled macro-structure unable to translocate. The reversibility of the phosphorylation of neurofilament proteins as well as the reversibility of the interactions of these proteins with kinesin might contribute to the observed cycles of rapid movement and pauses (Shea and Flanagan 2001; Ackerley et al. 2003).

13.5.3 Fast axonal transport

Membrane organelles move along axonal cytoskeletal polymers (mainly microtubules but also actin microfilaments). Fast axonal transport actually comprises an anterograde (from the cell body to the axon tip) and a retrograde (from the axon tip to the cell body) component (Grafstein and Forman 1980). For instance, synaptic vesicles move anterogradely, while endocytic and prelysosomal vesicles move retrogradely. The major function of the fast anterograde axonal transport is the conveying of membrane organelles required for presynaptic events at the axon ending. In developing neurites, anterogradely moving vesicles support the membrane extension which occurs at the growth cone. The retrograde component seems to perform two essential functions. First, it facilitates membrane recycling, since it conveys prelysosomal organelles from the nerve ending to the cell body. Second, it provides a retrograde pathway for the transmission of information through the transport of receptors associated with membrane vesicles. These receptors can convey signalling molecules from the axon tip to the neuronal cell body. For example, the retrograde transport of nerve growth factor and its receptor is well documented (Reynolds et al. 2000).

It now seems clear that axonal microtubules constitute the tracks for organelle transport over long distances whereas actin filaments provide movement to local sites
along the axon and within the presynaptic terminal (Atkinson et al. 1992; Langford 1995). There is a bidirectional movement of organelles on microtubules, whereas transport on actin filaments is mainly (if not exclusively) unidirectional (toward the ‘barbed’ end). However, little is known about the coordination of the microtubule-mediated and microfilament-mediated movements of a given organelle (Huang et al. 1999).

13.5.4 **Molecular motors**

Membrane organelles and other macromolecular complexes (collectively referred as cargoes) move along microtubules or microfilaments through their association with molecular motors. These motor proteins are microtubule-dependent ATPases (kinesin, kinesin–related proteins, and cytoplasmic dynein; see Fig. 13.8) and actin-dependent ATPases (myosins) (Hirokawa 1998; Goldstein and Yang 2000; Miki et al. 2001; Karcher et al. 2002).

Conventional kinesin, also named as kinesin I, was discovered in the axoplasm of the squid giant axon as a microtubule-dependent organelle motor (Brady 1985). Kinesin I holoenzyme is a tetramer consisting of two heavy chains (110–130 kDa) and two light chains (60–80 kDa). Kinesin heavy chains have microtubule-activated ATPase activity and are able to move organelles from the ‘minus’ to the ‘plus’ ends of microtubules. The kinesin molecule appears as a long rod with a pair or globular ‘head’ domains at one end and a ‘fan-shaped tail’ at the opposite end. Kinesin binds ATP and microtubules through the ‘head’ domains and presumably interacts with specific protein cargoes through the ‘tail’ domain.

Molecular genetic techniques have allowed the identification of several kinesin-related proteins in different organisms. Kinesin-related proteins show homology to the ‘head’ domain of conventional kinesin and are highly divergent in the ‘tail’ domains. It is thus plausible that the different tails may be responsible for the interaction of different motors with distinct membrane organelles (or macromolecular complexes) (Terada and Hirokawa 2000).

![Fig. 13.8 Microtubule-dependent motor molecules. Scheme shows kinesin (a ‘plus’ end-directed motor protein) and dynein (a ‘minus’ end-directed motor protein).](image-url)
Most kinesin holoenzymes are 500 kDa or smaller in size and, similarly to kinesin-I, contain between one and four copies of a heavy chain bearing the motor domain, as well as associated accessory subunits (Goldstein and Yang 2000). There are at least 45 genes in the human genome that code for kinesin-related heavy chains, which are referred to as kinesin superfamily proteins (KIFs). Of these, the expression of 38 KIFs has been detected in brain tissue (Miki et al. 2001). KIFs can be grouped according to the position of the globular motor domain: N-kinesins (NH$_2$-terminal motor domain type), M-kinesins (middle motor domain type), and C-kinesins (COOH-terminal motor domain type). Of the 45 human KIFs, there are 37 multimeric N-kinesins, 2 monomeric N-kinesins, 3 M-kinesins, and 3 C-kinesins.

Current evidence suggests that distinct KIF proteins are able to transport specific membrane organelles and macromolecular complexes. For instance, kinesin-I (KIF5B) can transport lysosomes, mitochondria and specific subsets of axonal vesicles bearing amyloid precursor protein (APP), GAP43 and low density lipoprotein (LDL) receptors. KIF1A transports a subset of synaptic vesicle precursors containing synaptoophysin whereas the highly homologous KIF1B largely transports mitochondria. Kinesin-II (KIF3A/B) transports vesicles bearing fodrin as well as cytosolic choline acetyl transferase. KIF17 is able to move vesicles bearing NR2B, an NMDA-type glutamate receptor. In juvenile neurons, KIF4A translocates vesicles containing L1 cell adhesion molecule whereas KIF2A transports vesicles bearing $\beta$gc (an IGF-1 receptor relative).

The diversity of the non-motor tail domains of KIF proteins as well as the presence of accessory subunits within native kinesin holoenzymes are thought to give rise to specific interactions with transmembrane and scaffold proteins that might link kinesins to their particular cargoes. For instance, KIF13 binds directly to $\beta$1-adaptin, which interacts with clathrin and serves as a linking protein to vesicles bearing the mannose-6-phosphate receptor. KIF17 interacts through mLin-10 protein with vesicles bearing NMDA-type glutamate receptor. Curiously, one motor protein may bind to different cargoes through distinct linking proteins. Thus, kinesin-I light chains may bind to JIP, a group of proteins which forms a scaffold for c-Jun NH$_2$-terminal kinase (JNK, a member of the stress-activated protein kinase family) as well as serve as a link to membrane organelles bearing LDL receptors (ApoER2, LRP, and megalin). This linkage may serve to localize not only membrane proteins but also cytoplasmic signalling molecules, thus providing a targeting mechanism for the spatial regulation of signalling pathways at appropriate cellular domains (Verhey et al. 2001). On the other hand, kinesin-I light chains may also interact with APP, which links kinesin with membrane organelles bearing $\beta$-secretase, presenilin-1, synapsin-I, GAP-43, and the neurotrophin receptor Trk A (Kamal et al. 2001).

Interestingly, the association of kinesin with membrane organelles may be subjected to distinct regulatory mechanisms. Thus, either association with hsc70 chaperones or phosphorylation of kinesin light chains by glycogen synthase kinase-3 release kinesin-I...
from membrane organelles, thus inhibiting their anterograde axonal transport (Tsai et al. 2000; Morfini et al. 2002).

13.5.4.2 Dyneins

Dyneins (formerly referred to as cytoplasmic dyneins) are very large protein complexes of approximately 1–2 MDa which contain two or three dynein heavy chains of 500 kDa, and several intermediate chains of 74 dDa, light intermediate chains of 50–60 kDa and light chains of 8–29 kDa. Each dynein heavy chain bears a motor domain with microtubule-activated ATPase activity. All dyneins tested so far can convey organelles and other cargoes from the ‘plus’ ends to the ‘minus’ ends of microtubules (King 2000). Thus, dyneins may participate in retrograde axonal transport as well as in dendritic transport of organelles and other macromolecular complexes.

There are at least three dynein heavy chain genes in mammals. Whereas the cargo specificity of kinesin is believed to largely depend on ‘tail’ diversity encoded by different kinesin genes, dynein cargo interactions might be influenced by the diversity of dynein-associated polypeptides. In a similar way to kinesins, dynein complexes may also attach to cargoes by both binding to scaffolding proteins and by direct binding to transmembrane proteins.

Interestingly, an activator of dynein-catalysed organelle transport has been identified as dynactin, a 1.1 MDa protein complex consisting of 10–11 distinct polypeptides which include p150-Glued and the filament-forming actin-related protein ARP1 (Karki and Holzbaur 1999). It has been shown that the p150-Glued subunit binds to the 74 kDa dynein intermediate chain (DIC) and to microtubules. In this way, dynactin increases the run length of dynein-driven movements, acting as a processivity factor for the dynein motor on the microtubule (King and Schroer 2000). Furthermore, the ARP1 subunit of dynactin seems to interact with spectrin, which then binds to acidic phospholipids, thus providing a linkage between dynein and membrane vesicles (Muresan et al. 2001). Finally, dynactin may also play a crucial role in coordinating the bidirectional movement of organelles since p150-Glued not only binds DIC but also interacts with KAP, a protein which is a component of kinesin-II complex (Deacon et al. 2003; Gross 2003).

It has been shown that dynein, dynactin and kinesin-II may remain associated with membrane vesicles undergoing either anterograde or retrograde movements, indicating that their activities have to be properly controlled. For instance, dynein must be inactive during anterograde transport. However, little is known about the possible regulation of dynactin activity and its influence on kinesin and dynein motors and only a role for phosphorylation has been suggested (Reese and Haimo 2000).

A direct interaction of the dynein complex with transmembrane proteins may be important for the retrograde delivery of neurotrophic signals from the synaptic endings to neuronal cell bodies (Reynolds et al. 2000). Of interest in this regard is the reported association of Trk neurotrophin receptors with the 14 kDa light chain of
dynein (Yano et al. 2001). Curiously, some neurotropic viruses like Herpes simplex 1 also use retrograde axonal transport to propagate the infection within the nervous system (Bearer et al. 2000) and this may also depend on the interaction of specific viral proteins with the dynein motor complex (Ye et al. 2000).

In addition to its role in intracellular transport of membrane organelles and other macromolecular complexes within mature neurons, dynein seems to play crucial roles during the development of the nervous system. Neuronal migration is an important event since neurons are formed in specialized proliferative zones but ultimately move to reside in distinct layered structures or organized nuclei (Rivas and Hatten 1995). During migration, a cell extends a process into which the nucleus is translocated. This nuclear movement, referred to as nucleokinesis, seems to be mediated by dynein in coordination with other microtubule-interacting proteins including LIS1 and NUDEL (Morris 2000; Sasaki et al. 2000; Feng and Walsh 2001). Finally, axonal extension and retraction, which are essential for proper axonal pathfinding, are essentially dependent on the movement of cytoskeletal polymers forward and backward. It has been suggested that dynein is also responsible for the transport of tubulin anterogradely down the axon (Baas and Ahmad 2001).

13.5.4.3 Myosins
Myosins are the motor molecules responsible for the movement of organelles along actin microfilaments. In particular, myosin V, which is very abundant in brain and has been localized in axons of cultured neurons seems to be implicated in the trafficking of synaptic vesicles containing synaptophysin (Prekeris and Terrian 1997).

13.6 The cytoskeleton in neurodegenerative diseases
Defects of the cytoskeleton may be a common feature contributing to neurodegeneration in many neurological diseases, which are characterized by the aberrant accumulation of certain cytoskeletal proteins. Disruption of the normal neuronal cytoskeleton may interfere with intraneuronal organelle transport and signal transduction, thus initiating a cascade of events including mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress that ultimately leads to the loss of synapses and the death of neurons (McMurray 2000; Stamer et al. 2002). The contribution of cytoskeletal alterations to neurodegeneration has been thoroughly examined for some neurological disorders including Alzheimer’s disease (AD), tauopathies, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), and type II (axonopathy) of Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease (CMT).

13.6.1 Alzheimer’s disease (AD)
Alzheimer’s disease (AD) is the most prevalent cause of dementia in mid to old age. Clinically, patients with AD show a progressive deterioration of all cognitive functions. Histopathologically, AD is characterized by the presence of two kinds of abnormal protein deposits, amyloid plaques and neurofibrillary tangles, in specific areas of
the patient brains, and finally by the atrophy of affected brain regions, which results from extensive losses of synapses and neurons (Ritchie and Lovestone 2002). Amyloid plaques are extracellular deposits of the Aβ peptide, which is derived through proteolysis from APP (amyloid precursor protein). Neurofibrillary tangles (NFT) are intraneuronal aggregates of fibrils constituted by hyperphosphorylated tau protein, which is also found in degenerating neurites (neuropil threads and dystrophic neurites).

The most widely accepted hypothesis on the pathogenesis of AD is the so-called ‘amyloid cascade’ hypothesis, which proposes that the processing of APP to give rise to Aβ is the primary event in the pathogenic process. Then, the accumulation of Aβ peptide would lead to alterations in signal transduction, with the over-activation of protein kinases including GSK-3, CDK-5, and stress-activated protein kinases and the subsequent hyperphosphorylation of tau. Hyperphosphorylated tau would dissociate from microtubules and give rise to NFT formation, synaptic degeneration, and neuronal cell death (Alvarez et al. 2002; Mudher and Lovestone 2002). Supportive of this view is the fact that the overexpression of pseudohyperphosphorylated tau, a mutant tau protein in which phosphorylatable serine/threonine residues are substituted with glutamate to mimic hyperphosphorylation, leads to neuronal cell death (Fath et al. 2002). Furthermore, comparison of the effect of Aβ peptide on cultured neurons prepared from wild-type, tau knock-out and human tau transgenic mice suggests that tau plays a major role in Aβ-induced neurotoxicity (Rapoport et al. 2002). However, little is known about the mechanisms underlying tau-induced neurodegeneration. It has been speculated that a conformational change in tau that is induced by hyperphosphorylation promotes aberrant interactions with other proteins, thus causing cytoskeletal disruption and blockade of intraneuronal organelle transport (Alonso et al. 1997).

### 13.6.2 Tauopathies

Tauopathies comprise a group of heterogeneous dementias and movement disorders characterized by prominent intracellular fibrillar tau inclusions and neuronal degeneration in the absence of β-amyloid deposits. These tauopathies include progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP), corticobasal dementia with parkinsonism linked to chromosome 17 (FTDP-17), and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis/parkinsonism/dementia complex (ALS-PDC) (Lee et al. 2001). The identification of several autosomal dominant mutations in the tau gene which are responsible for some cases of inherited frontotemporal dementia (FTDP-17) has conclusively demonstrated that tau abnormalities can cause neurodegeneration. Whereas some mutations may decrease the association of protein phosphatase 2A with tau which thereby becomes hyperphosphorylated (Goedert et al. 2000), other mutations may directly cause a conformational change in tau protein which becomes ‘neurotoxic’ (Garcia and Cleveland 2001). Interestingly, it has been suggested that the ‘neurotoxic’ form of tau may be oligomeric since NFT or other large visible tau aggregates merely correspond to a late and severe stage in the
neurodegenerative process (Wittmann et al. 2001). Thus, a ‘toxic gain of function’, presumably involving aberrant interactions with other proteins which would lead to cytoskeletal disruption, may be a common mechanism of tau-induced neurodegeneration both in AD and tauopathies.

13.6.3 **Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)**

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) is characterized by the selective degeneration of motor neurons and the progressive atrophy of skeletal muscles resulting in eventual paralysis. Approximately 10% of ALS patients are inherited cases, whereas 90% of ALS cases are sporadic. Both sporadic and inherited cases share common pathological features such as the abnormal accumulation of neurofilaments within cell bodies and in the proximal part of axons of degenerating motor neurons (Julien 2001).

Some inherited cases of ALS are linked to autosomal dominant mutations in the gene coding for superoxide dismutase 1 (SOD1). Neurofilament inclusions within motor neurons have been described in ALS patients with SOD1 mutations and in transgenic mice expressing the mutant SOD1 forms. It has been suggested that mutant SOD1 may catalyse the oxidative damage of neurofilaments, thus driving neurofilament aggregation in motor neurons. Alternatively, neurofilament inclusions may merely arise from defects in slow axonal transport. Thus, mutant SOD1 may aggregate into insoluble protein complexes which interfere with slow axonal transport.

The appearance of neurofilament inclusions, the so-called spheroids, within axons may further block axonal transport, thus exacerbating the pathology. In contrast, large accumulations of neurofilaments in neuronal cell bodies that are induced in transgenic mice overexpressing NF-H may diminish the progression of the disease (Julien 2001). This protective effect of NF-H overexpression may be mediated by the formation of perikaryal neurofilament aggregates that act as phosphorylation sinks for CDK5, thus reducing the detrimental hyperphosphorylation of tau and other proteins (Nguyen et al. 2002). These results raise the possibility that tau abnormalities may also contribute to ALS pathogenesis. However, no filamentous tau aggregates have been isolated from transgenic mice overexpressing mutant SOD1.

13.6.4 **Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease type 2 (CMT-2)**

Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease (CMT) is an axonopathy primarily affecting motor neurons although sensory neurons may also degenerate. Some mutations in the gene coding for NF-L may lead to disrupted neurofilament assembly and axonal transport (Mersiyanova et al. 2000). Another form of CMT seems to be caused by mutation in the motor domain of KIF1Bβ (Zhao et al. 2001). This demonstrates that defects in axonal transport may underlie peripheral axonopathies.

It is tempting to speculate that the disorganization of the cytoskeleton and the subsequent failure of intraneuronal transport of organelles and other macromolecular complexes may be the proximal cause of synaptic dysfunction and neuronal cell death
in many different neurodegenerative diseases. Of course, there might be many diverse molecular mechanisms triggering this cytoskeletal disruption in particular sets of neurons in distinct neurodegenerative disorders.

References


Neurones possess the ability to alter certain aspects of their biochemical and morphological character in response to changes in their local environment or their level of activity. This plasticity presumably allows them to adapt and survive in their altered circumstances, or to assume a different functional role. Neurones are far from being unique in this respect, and many, perhaps the majority, of different cell types in the body show some degree of plasticity. However, it can be argued that neurones have brought this particular part of the repertoire of cellular response to its highest level of sophistication. The plastic changes observed in neurones following a stimulus can be short or long-lasting, subtle or dramatic. A large number of different mechanisms can be invoked, and the changes that are induced can occur in isolation or be part of a complex, coordinated response.

In mature neurones, attention has focussed on the plasticity that underlies the processes of learning and memory, in particular the ability of specific synapses to alter the efficiency of their neurotransmission. A number of experimental models have been developed and characterized across a wide range of species, and it has become clear that a number of features are common to some or all of the paradigms.

14.1 Experimental models of neuronal plasticity

14.1.1 Hippocampal long-term potentiation

Long-term potentiation (LTP) was first observed in the hippocampal formation, a brain region with a role in the processes of learning and memory. While it has since become clear that LTP can be detected in many different brain regions, the likelihood remains that the phenomenon provides a basis for a learning-like change in the properties of networks of neurones (Bliss and Collingridge 1993). Activity-dependent changes in the efficiency of synaptic transmission are observed in particular pathways: typically a brief high-frequency burst of stimulation results in a potentiation of transmission that can last for many days \textit{in vivo}. During this time, a number of temporal components can be identified, each caused by the activation of distinct intracellular mechanisms (Bliss and Collingridge 1993).

At the synapses of two of the major hippocampal pathways — the perforant path/dentate gyrus synapses, and the Schaffer collateral/CA1 synapses — the induction of
Fig. 14.1 Schematic diagram of two cellular mechanisms where high-frequency firing of afferent fibres leads to a sustained enhancement in synaptic efficiency. (A) Under normal (low) rates of firing, the Mg$^{2+}$ block of the NMDA receptor (NMDA-R) prevents any Ca$^{2+}$ influx into the post-synaptic spine. Synaptic transmission is mediated by Na$^{+}$ influx through AMPA receptors (AMPA-R). Higher firing rates produce sufficient depolarization to relieve the Mg$^{2+}$ block, and the ensuing Ca$^{2+}$ influx through the NMDA receptor activates calcium-dependent enzymes in the spine to alter synaptic properties. The induction of LTP in the CA1 region of the hippocampus is thought to follow such a mechanism.
LTP is dependent on activation of the NMDA class of glutamate receptor (see Chapter 8). This receptor has the unique property of allowing Ca$^{2+}$ influx in a manner that is subject to a voltage-dependent block by Mg$^{2+}$ ions. If high-frequency afferent stimulation results in sufficient release of glutamate from the presynaptic terminals, there will be enough post-synaptic depolarization (mediated by non-NMDA glutamate receptors) to remove the Mg$^{2+}$ blockade, and the NMDA receptor will allow influx of Ca$^{2+}$ ions (Fig. 14.1A).

At another major hippocampal synapse — the mossy fibre/CA3 synapse — induction of LTP is not dependent on activation of NMDA receptors, but rather on the kainate class of glutamate receptor (Bortolotto et al. 1999). It also appears that metabotropic glutamate receptors (Conquet et al. 1994) and opioid receptors (Morris and Johnston 1995) are involved. Indeed, peptide neurotransmitters would be particularly convenient mediators of synaptic plasticity, since there is a great deal of evidence, from both the peripheral and central nervous systems, that peptides which coexist with conventional neurotransmitters may only be released by high-frequency nerve activity. It is easy to imagine opioid peptides, which are present in the mossy fibres, playing a role in the LTP that follows high-frequency mossy fibre firing (Fig. 14.1B). At this synapse, the intracellular pathways transducing the stimulus for plasticity may involve primarily cAMP elevations, rather than Ca$^{2+}$ (Huang et al. 1994).

The mechanisms involved in hippocampal LTP are unlikely to be unique to that brain region or experimental paradigm. Indeed, there is a great deal of evidence that similar mechanisms operate in many of the other forms of neuronal plasticity that have been studied, such as LTP in the basal ganglia (Kombian and Malenka 1994), long-term depression (LTD) in the hippocampus, cerebellum, or basal ganglia (Nakazawa et al. 1993; Kombian and Malenka 1994), or the sensitisation to excitatory stimuli that occurs during limbic system ‘kindling’.

14.1.2 Limbic system kindling

In limbic system kindling, electrodes are chronically implanted in regions of the limbic system such as the hippocampus or amygdala. A daily or twice-daily stimulus is then applied, at a constant level which initially has no overt behavioural effect. Over a period of few weeks, this same stimulus starts to produce a behavioural response, eventually leading to a generalized seizure. Once this sensitization phenomenon, or kindling, has occurred, the same stimulation will continue to produce a seizure whenever

**Fig. 14.1** (B) Neuropeptides (for example opioid peptides), stored in a separate population of vesicles, coexist with glutamate in the afferent fibres. Under normal (low) rates of firing, only glutamate is released, and AMPA (or kainate) receptors mediate synaptic transmission. Higher rates of firing result in peptide release as well, and the post-synaptic (or pre-synaptic) peptide receptors (Peptide-R) then activate G-proteins (G) and alter the activity of cAMP-dependent enzymes to affect synaptic properties. The induction of LTP in the CA3 region of the hippocampus is thought partially to follow such a mechanism.
it is given, even if no stimulation has been given for a number of days or weeks. The sensitivity of the kindling procedure to blockade by antagonists of the NMDA receptor, along with the ability of NMDA and related agonists to precipitate seizure activity, both in vivo and in vitro, has provided strong evidence that NMDA receptors are involved at some stage in the plastic process.

The kindling procedure is widely used as an experimental model for epilepsy, and the biochemical and morphological changes observed in the hippocampi from kindled animals are similar to those detected in the brains of patients with temporal lobe epilepsy.

14.1.3 Cerebellar long-term depression

Purkinje cells in the cerebellum receive synaptic input from both climbing fibres and parallel fibres. Simultaneous stimulation of both inputs results in a long-lasting depression of transmission at the parallel fibre synapses, and the phenomenon has been suggested to form the basis of cerebellar motor learning and memory. In this case, NMDA receptors are not involved: rather, it is the AMPA class of glutamate receptor, most likely in association with metabotropic receptors (Conquet et al. 1994) and nitric oxide release (Nakazawa et al. 1993), that provides the initial stimulus.

14.1.4 Invertebrate models

The marine snail Aplysia has been exploited to study the cellular mechanisms underlying plastic phenomena because of the relatively large size of its neurones and the simplicity of the nervous system which they form. A simple reflex, where a gill is withdrawn following a stimulus to its body, is enhanced by an unconditioned stimulus to another part of the body. Serotonin released from an interneurone by the unconditioned stimulus raises cAMP levels and PKA activity in the sensory neurone involved in the reflex. Morphological changes, including presynaptic varicosity outgrowth, also seem to play a role in the consolidation of the synaptic plasticity (Glanzman et al. 1990).

Studies of Drosophila melanogaster (fruitfly) with learning deficits in simple behavioural tasks (i.e. avoiding flying towards odours associated with electric shocks) have identified various gene mutations which are presumably affecting memory processes and the associated synaptic plasticity (Nighorn et al. 1991; Tully et al. 1994).

14.2 Temporal phases of synaptic plasticity

A particular combination of neurochemical events at the postsynaptic membrane, probably combined with specific events at the presynaptic terminal, is sufficient to trigger the plastic response. The key components of the triggering events have been relatively well characterized in recent years. A separate series of neurochemical events are then required to sustain the plastic response. It has gradually become clear that there are three sequential but distinct components to the maintenance of synaptic plasticity (Fig. 14.2). The initial phase (phase I), lasting from shortly after the initiating
stimulus for up to 3 hours or so, according to the experimental model, is dependent on covalent modification of existing proteins (i.e. phosphorylation, nitrosylation). The intermediate phase (phase II) is dependent on the synthesis of new protein via mRNA translation, but is not dependent on gene transcription. This phase is apparent between around 2 and 8 hours after the triggering stimulus, according to the experimental model. In contrast, the slowest but most sustained phase (phase III) is dependent not only on the synthesis of new protein, but also on gene transcription and the synthesis of new mRNA.

The evidence suggests that these three phases can be observed in all the different models of neuronal plasticity, whether derived from aplysia (Barzilai et al. 1989, Ghirardi et al. 1995), helix (Schilhab and Christoffersen 1996), hermissenda (Crow et al. 1999), lamprey (Parker and Grillner 1999), drosophila (Xia et al. 1998) or hippocampal LTD (Manahan-Vaughan et al. 2000) as well as LTP in the amygdala (Bailey et al. 1999), and in the dentate gyrus (Otani et al. 1989) CA1 (Frey et al. 1996a; Nguyen and Kandel 1997) and CA3 (Huang et al. 1994) regions of the hippocampal formation. Hence these three sequential and mechanistically distinct phases are likely to represent a general feature of sustained plasticity.

14.3 **Ca²⁺ as the trigger**

The involvement of NMDA receptors in many forms of neuronal plasticity suggests that Ca²⁺ influx may be the initial stimulus that activates the intracellular processes contributing to neuronal plasticity. This is consistent with the fact that many of the
intracellular mechanisms thought to be important for neuronal plasticity are dependent on elevations in intracellular Ca\textsuperscript{2+} (see below). However, the spatial and temporal pattern of Ca\textsuperscript{2+} influx may be critical for determining the changes that occur. Influx of Ca\textsuperscript{2+} through voltage-gated channels in hippocampal neurones, for example, produces a different temporal profile of raised intracellular Ca\textsuperscript{2+}, compared to NMDA receptor activation, and a distinct series of transcriptional responses (Bading \textit{et al.} 1993; Hardingham \textit{et al.} 1999). This is discussed in detail in Chapter 10.

For those forms of synaptic plasticity that are independent of NMDA receptors, cAMP elevation may be a key factor. In both mammalian and invertebrate models, those forms of neuronal plasticity which are not dependent on NMDA receptors are frequently observed to involve adenylyl cyclase (Alberini \textit{et al.} 1994; Huang \textit{et al.} 1994). However, since cAMP is also important for NMDA receptor-dependent plasticity, local increases in cAMP, resulting from activation of Ca\textsuperscript{2+}-dependent adenyl cyclase, may be a crucial downstream mediator of the plasticity resulting from Ca\textsuperscript{2+} influx.

### 14.4 Rapid, transient plasticity

We have what appears to be a relatively comprehensive understanding of the signalling events that contribute to the induction of synaptic plasticity. A number of neurotransmitter receptors, structural molecules, and signalling intermediates have been linked to synaptic plasticity, and an overview of these is provided in Table 14.1. In particular, various protein kinases are involved at an early stage, although, in general, the effects of phosphorylation are relatively short-lived, and the original properties of the protein are later restored by dephosphorylation (through the action of protein phosphatases).

### Table 14.1 Molecules implicated in early phases of LTP — (either activation observed during early LTP, or LTP compromised by specific antagonists or gene knockout). Those from this group where altered synthesis is also observed after LTP induction are indicated. Space limitations preclude citing of individual references, but many excellent reviews of the mechanisms of early LTP are available

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Molecule</th>
<th>Synthesis elevated after LTP</th>
<th>Molecule</th>
<th>Synthesis elevated after LTP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Receptors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>α adrenoceptors</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDA R1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>β adrenoceptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDA R2s</td>
<td></td>
<td>SHT Rs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMPA GluRs</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Cannabinoid CB1 Rs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kainate Rs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dopamine Rs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mGluRs</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Opioid Rs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mAChRs</td>
<td></td>
<td>trkB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 14.1 (continued)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Molecule</strong></td>
<td><strong>Synthesis elevated after LTP</strong></td>
<td><strong>Molecule</strong></td>
<td><strong>Synthesis elevated after LTP</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Channels</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>CamKII</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP3/ryanodine Rs</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>CamKIV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-type channels</td>
<td></td>
<td>calcineurin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cGMP-gated channels</td>
<td></td>
<td>NOS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acid-sensing ion channel</td>
<td></td>
<td>MEK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Structural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>RasGAPs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCAM</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>PYK2 (CAKβ)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1 CAM</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Src</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integrins</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fyn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syndecan-3</td>
<td></td>
<td>SGK</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenasins</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Kit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNK1</td>
<td></td>
<td>PI3 kinase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuroplastin</td>
<td></td>
<td>mTOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telencephalin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lim kinase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSD-95</td>
<td></td>
<td>proteasome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tropomodulin 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presynaptic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIM1</td>
<td></td>
<td>NGF</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rab3a</td>
<td></td>
<td>BDNF</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complexins</td>
<td></td>
<td>NT4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Signalling</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Arachidonic acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenyl cyclase</td>
<td></td>
<td>PAF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guanyl cyclase</td>
<td></td>
<td>MHC complex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cAMP PDE</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKC</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intercellular mediators</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDNF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NT4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arachidonic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MHC complex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transcription</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREB</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zif268 (egr1)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C/EBP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Determination of the molecular structures of neurotransmitter receptors has, in all cases, revealed potential sites for phosphorylation (see Chapters 8, 9). In many studies using G-protein-coupled receptors, it has become clear that receptor phosphorylation is associated with a decreased responsiveness, providing a likely mechanism for the
well-characterized phenomenon of desensitization (Chapter 9). Here then is a clear example of how activation of protein kinases can give rise to an altered neuronal sensitivity that outlasts the original stimulus. It is now clear that ionotropic glutamate receptors can show increased responses after phosphorylation by protein kinases, and this is thought to be one of the major mechanisms for rapid synaptic plasticity at glutamatergic synapses. Phosphorylation of cellular substrates at the synapses can also recruit hidden receptors, sequestered intracellularly, to the synaptic membrane (see below) (Liao et al. 1999). In addition, phosphorylation of cytoskeletal components is known to result in plasticity in neuronal morphology (see Chapter 13). The rapid rearrangements of synaptic architecture that have been detected during hippocampal LTP may therefore also be driven by the activation of kinases.

In many cases, not unique to neurones, the kinases function in cascades, where the phosphorylation of the several kinases in sequence broadens and prolongs the functional consequences of the original stimulus. Such cascades can involve serine/threonine kinases, tyrosine kinases, or both. The intracellular control of the phosphorylation state of vast numbers of different proteins must therefore be seen as a dynamic and extraordinarily complex regulatory process. These aspects of neuronal function are covered in detail in Chapters 11 and 12, but some specific details should be considered with regard to neuronal plasticity.

While they have widespread effects in a number of different cell types, five serine/threonine kinases have been particularly linked to hippocampal LTP (Soderling and Derkach 2000): cAMP-dependent protein kinase (PKA), cGMP-dependent protein kinase (PKG), mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAP kinase, aka extracellular signal-regulated kinase or ERK), protein kinase C (PKC), and calcium/calmodulin-dependent protein kinase II (CamKII) — the latter being found only in the central nervous system. Mutant mice lacking functional type I (Ca²⁺-stimulated) adenylyl cyclase show deficits in memory tests and in hippocampal LTP (Wu et al. 1992), suggesting that the convergence of Ca²⁺ and cAMP signalling by this enzyme has an important function in hippocampal plasticity. The induction of hippocampal LTP can also be prevented by selectively inhibiting the action of PKA, PKG, PKC, or CamKII (Bliss and Collingridge 1993), or ERK (English and Sweatt 1997). These studies have been more or less confirmed by the generation of null recombinant mice lacking the corresponding kinases (Silva et al. 1992; Abeliovich et al. 1994; Huang et al. 1995). This suggests that all of these kinases play a role both in sustaining the earliest phases of LTP, and also in triggering the changes which give rise to the slower, more sustained phases. The fact that LTP can be more or less completely blocked by inhibition of an individual kinase suggests that they each fulfil some critical role in synaptic potentiation.

The molecular structure of CamKII makes it ideally suited as a switch to convert transient ion fluxes into more enduring changes in neuronal function. Activation of CamKII by Ca²⁺/calmodulin, following NMDA receptor activation, results in autophosphorylation of the enzyme, and the consequent generation of a Ca²⁺-independent form that can maintain the phosphorylating activity in the absence of any
further stimulation (Fukuraga et al. 1995). The high concentrations of CamKII in the synaptic area suggest that the subsequent effects should be dramatic. Indeed, there is considerable evidence that CamKII is vital, not only for hippocampal plasticity, but also for long-term change in other brain regions (Gordon et al. 1996; Mayford et al. 1996; Frankland et al. 2001).

Activation of PKA is also essential for synaptic facilitation in *Aplysia* neurones, while in drosophila, the mutants *dunce* and *rutabaga*, isolated in a behavioural screen for associative learning deficits, are deficient in the function of a cAMP-dependent phosphodiesterase and a Ca\(^{2+}\)/calmodulin-activated adenylyl cyclase, respectively (Nighorn et al. 1991; Levin et al. 1992). The actions of adenylyl cyclase and PKA therefore assume a central role in a wide variety of different models of synaptic plasticity.

The target proteins for plasticity-associated phosphorylation in these models have yet to be conclusively identified, but, at least in the mammalian hippocampus, the glutamate receptor subunits are attractive candidates, since phosphorylation by CamKII, PKC or PKA, and possibly PKG, is known to increase their responsiveness (Dev and Morris 1994; Dev and Henley 1998; Koles et al. 2001; MacDonald et al. 2001).

Tyrosine kinase activation (Chapter 11) is also critical for the expression of hippocampal LTP. Activation of the kinases src, fyn, and pyk2 (cakβ) is necessary for hippocampal LTP (Grant et al. 1992; Lu et al. 1998; Huang et al. 2001). It is thought that tyrosine phosphorylation of NMDA receptor subunits by src, following src activation via PYK2 (which in turn may have been activated by PKC), may contribute to a large part of this effect.

It follows from this clear role of protein kinases in initiating plastic changes in neuronal function that protein phosphatases will be similarly important in regulating the changes that occur. Evidence has been obtained that neuronal phosphatases are essential for normal LTP to occur, and also that the induction of hippocampal LTD may be primarily due to the activation of neuronal phosphatases, with consequent opposite effects on synaptic function to the effects of kinase activation. However, PKA is also required for hippocampal LTD (Brandon et al. 1995).

One key aspect of early-phase synaptic plasticity, dependent on phosphorylation events, is the emergence of previously ‘silent synapses’. Thus, following NMDA receptor stimulation, previously inactive synaptic responses appear, mediated by AMPA receptor activation. It has become clear that AMPA receptors are continuously recycled through the early endosomal compartment, following dynamin-dependent internalization via clathrin-coated pits (Man et al. 2000). Stimulation of NMDA receptors can increase the rate of AMPA receptor reinsertion into the synaptic membrane, and this, combined with morphological alterations in the structure of the synapse, increases the post-synaptic response to subsequent stimulation. It is thought that CamKIIα plays a major role in the AMPA receptor reinsertion process, and may also alter NMDA receptor distribution under the synapse (Gardoni et al. 2001).

Other protein modifications apart from phosphorylation are also likely to play a role in rapid neuronal plasticity. Nitric oxide has been suggested to play a role in
hippocampal LTP (Böhme et al. 1991). Direct nitrosylation or indirect ADP-ribosylation of proteins by nitric oxide can alter their functional properties (Stammler 1994), and altered ADP-ribosylation of hippocampal proteins has in fact been detected following induction of LTP (Duman et al. 1993). Also, protein glycosylation may be regulated by neuronal activity. The neuronal cell adhesion molecule N-CAM is extensively modified by addition of sialic acid polymers, and the properties of the N-CAM molecules are affected by the degree of polysialylation (Doherty et al. 1995). The extent of polysialylation is reported to vary during development and, in the hippocampus, during learning (Doyle et al. 1992; Doherty et al. 1995).

It is generally accepted that a component of hippocampal LTP is expressed presynaptically — that is, the increased efficiency of synaptic transmission is partially due to enhanced neurotransmitter release from the presynaptic terminal (A in Fig. 14.3). This is likely to result from the action of a retrograde messenger — possibly nitric oxide, endogenous cannabinoids, and/or arachidonic acid — released from the post-synaptic dendrite and acting on the presynaptic terminal. Assuming this to be correct, then it can be assumed that the mechanism leading to increased transmitter release involves phosphorylation or some other covalent modification of presynaptic target proteins (Herrero et al. 1992; Meffert et al. 1994).

14.5 Slower, sustained plasticity

In contrast to these earlier phases of neuronal plasticity, which rely heavily on modifications to existing proteins, there is abundant evidence that the later, most sustained phases of LTP are dependent on the synthesis of new proteins (Bliss and Collingridge 1993).

For phase II, the intermediate phase of synaptic plasticity which is not dependent on gene transcription and the synthesis of new mRNA, this is likely to involve enhanced translation of existing mRNAs. This could reflect either increased efficiency of the translational apparatus, or else increased stability of particular mRNAs. Since, for perhaps the majority of cellular proteins, mRNA availability is the rate-limiting step in protein synthesis (Hargrove and Schmidt 1989; Morris 1993; Jacobson and Peltz 1996) increased mRNA stability, and resulting elevated levels of the particular mRNA species, is predicted to increase protein levels. Indeed, it has been shown that the levels of CamKIIα mRNA and MAP2 mRNA increase after the induction of LTP (Thomas et al. 1994b; Roberts et al. 1996, 1998a), and that plasticity-related stimuli increase the stability of these mRNAs in hippocampal neurones, and this then increases the levels of the corresponding proteins (Morris 1997).

It is striking that both CamKIIα mRNA and MAP2 mRNA are members of the small group of mRNAs that are not restricted to the neuronal cell body, but are also found in high levels in neuronal dendrites, in the region of the synapses. Hence the stability of these mRNAs can be modulated locally in the region of synaptic stimulation without the necessity of communicating with the cell body (Kang and Schuman 1996; Huber et al. 2000). The possibility that this is a mechanism of widespread significance is
Fig. 14.3  Cellular sites where neuronal plasticity may be expressed. High-frequency firing in an afferent fibre on the right of the figure induces a number of sustained changes in the presynaptic terminal and the post-synaptic neurone. (A) — a retrograde messenger from the post-synaptic cell enhances the amount of neurotransmitter released from the presynaptic terminal by subsequent action potentials. (B) — transient activation of post-synaptic protein kinases alters the sensitivity of the synapse to subsequent stimulation, partly by phosphorylating receptor proteins. Also, more slowly, morphological changes in the structure of the dendrite occur in the region of the potentiated synapse — most likely an increase in the number and/or shape of the dendritic spines (Moser et al. 1994). Changes in the activity of second messenger systems occur — maybe restricted to the vicinity of the potentiated synapse, maybe extending through a significant proportion of the cytoplasm. In some cases, intracellular messengers are specifically translocated to the neuronal nucleus (C) where activation of TFs takes place, leading to an altered pattern of gene expression. (D) An increase in the efficiency of the next synapse ‘in series’ (‘domino’ plasticity) can occur, due to elevated expression of presynaptic terminal proteins in the neurone post-synaptic to the original stimulus.
supported by evidence that CamKIIα mRNA and MAP2 mRNA levels are increased in other brain regions in association with plasticity (Tighilet et al. 1998; Woolf et al. 1999; Xue et al. 2001).

For phase III, the slowest phase of synaptic plasticity, increased transcription of specific genes underlies the ultimate elevation in protein levels. Considerable attention has focussed not only on the late-response genes which sustain the increased responsiveness, but also on the transcription factors which bind to their specific targets in the genome and switch on (or off) the late-response genes.

14.5.1 Transcription factor families

A group of transcription factor (TF) genes show increased transcription relatively rapidly (15–45 minutes) after the plasticity-inducing stimulus. These genes are classified as immediate-early genes, in that their increased expression is fast, and is not dependent on the synthesis of other proteins.

A large number of TFs have been identified, and many of these have been shown to be expressed in neurones. These various TFs can be divided into a number of families with closely related structures. In relation to neuronal plasticity, much interest has centred on a group of TFs that contain within their protein sequence a region of basic amino acids and also a region containing regularly spaced leucine residues. There is evidence that this latter structure forms a ‘leucine zipper’ to dimerize with another TF of the same structural family, and hence the group of TFs have become known as the bZIP family. While the leucine zipper allows the formation of functional homo- or heterodimers, the basic region is the part of the molecule that interacts with the promoter region of the target DNA. The dimer adopts a three-dimensional conformation reminiscent of a pair of scissors, with the basic region (the blades of the scissors) gripping the DNA (Glover and Harrison 1995; Chen et al. 1998).

This family includes the widely studied c-fos gene, along with other related genes (fosB, fos-related antigen) and the jun proteins (c-jun, junB, junD). A major target of protein dimers formed from these TFs is the AP1 site on genomic DNA, which has the typical sequence TGAGTCa. However, a closely related sequence, TGACGTCA, is known as the cAMP-response element (CRE), and is involved in the transcriptional activation of many genes in response to elevated intracellular cAMP levels. The so-called CRE-binding protein (CREB) can be a component of the dimers that can bind to the CRE, and also has a bZIP structure (see Chapters 3 and 10 for further details). A number of ‘activating transcription factors’ (ATFs) with homology to CREB also belong to this family. One bZIP protein, known commonly as C/EBP, may have a particularly important role in neuronal plasticity (see below).

Another family of TFs adopt a three-dimensional structure with finger-like processes, and contain zinc. Of these ‘zinc finger’ TFs, zif/268 (Milbrandt 1987), also known as egr1, NGF-IA, and Krox24, has been widely studied, and binds to a target sequence of the form GCGGGGGCG. Other members of this family include Krox20 and egr3.
Other TF families with a possible but as yet incompletely explored role in neuronal plasticity include those TFs with a basic-helix-loop-helix structure (bHLH), those with a so-called POU domain, which recognize a DNA sequence of the form \((A/T)_{4,5}T(A/T)TGCAT\), and the rel family related to the inflammatory cell TF NF-κB.

14.5.2 Induction of transcription factors

NF-κB is a transcription factor that is constitutively present in the cytoplasm in many neurones throughout the CNS. NF-κB is present in hippocampal neurones, and can be activated by NMDA receptor stimulation. While definitive evidence for its participation in hippocampal plasticity has not yet been produced, NF-κB is activated in association with long-term memory in the crab (Freudenthal and Romano 2000), and it is possible that NF-κB is involved in many forms of synaptic plasticity. Proteins of the CREB family are also constitutively present in a latent form in neuronal cytoplasm, and are essential for long-term memory in *Drosophila* (Yin *et al*. 1994). CREB can be activated via phosphorylation by various kinases, including PKA and CamKII (see also Chapters 3 and 10), and CREB phosphorylation has been demonstrated to occur in hippocampal neurones after induction of LTP (Moore *et al*. 1996). Activation of CREB family members has been demonstrated in hippocampal LTP (Schulz *et al*. 1999), and a potentially important role for these proteins is supported by evidence that mice with a targeted disruption of the CREB gene lacked the late phase of LTP, and were severely compromised in several tests of associative learning (Bourtchuladze *et al*. 1994; Silva *et al*. 1998). Furthermore, CREB-related proteins, in particular C/EBP, are required for the expression of long-term facilitation in *Aplysia* neurones (Alberini *et al*. 1994). Evidence is also emerging that activation of the CREB-binding protein (CBP) may also be important for the full expression of plasticity (Hu *et al*. 1999) — CBP can be activated by PKA, CamKII, or CamKIV (see Chapter 10). The complexity of the transcriptional control is emphasized by the finding that ATF4 (CREB2) appears to function as a constitutive repressor of synaptic facilitation in *Aplysia* neurones (Bartsch *et al*. 1995), possibly by forming an inactive dimer with C/EBP or CREB. It is clear that the presence of CREB, CREB-related proteins, and NF-κB, in neurones under basal conditions potentially allows their target genes to be induced rapidly after the activating stimulus.

Other TFs need to be synthesized via gene induction before they can affect their target genes. An increased level of the mRNA encoding junB is observed within a few minutes of induction of LTP in the perforant path synapses onto the hippocampal dentate gyrus (Cole *et al*. 1989; Wisden *et al*. 1990). The evidence for other members of the fos/jun family is less clear, but a supramaximal LTP-inducing stimulus, which it has been suggested produces a longer-lasting LTP, results also in increased c-fos expression (Jeffrey *et al*. 1990). Elevated expression of c-jun has also been observed during hippocampal LTP. The c-fos knockout mouse has failed to confirm an important role for fos in hippocampal plasticity.

The closest correlation between TF expression and LTP induction in the hippocampus has been observed for *zif*268. High-frequency stimulation of perforant path
synapses onto dentate granule cells, and of Schaffer collaterals onto CA1 pyramidal cells, results in dramatic increases in zif/268 mRNA levels in the post-synaptic neurone (Cole et al. 1989; Wisden et al. 1990; Roberts et al. 1996). Furthermore, zif/268 is also induced in the rat hippocampus following spatial learning (Fordyce et al. 1994), in the rat visual cortex by light adaptation (Worley et al. 1991), in the monkey temporal lobe by visual associative learning (Okuno and Y. 1996; Miyashita et al. 1998), in the dorsal horn of the rat spinal cord by primary afferent stimulation (Herdegen et al. 1990), in the mouse accessory olfactory bulb following odor presentation (Brennan et al. 1999), and in the forebrain of songbirds by song presentation (Mello et al. 1992). Since these are all conditions resulting in a sustained change in neuronal activity, the evidence is at least suggestive that zif/268 is playing a critical role in the long-term plasticity responses. This is reinforced by the observation that the duration of LTP is correlated with the degree of zif/268 induction (Richardson et al. 1992). However, even then, there are situations when LTP is clearly expressed without any induction of zif/268, and also cases where zif/268 is induced in the absence of any LTP (Wisden et al. 1990; Johnston and Morris 1994e). In the former case, this may be related to the fact that other TFs of this family are also likely to be involved in hippocampal plasticity. For example, egr3 is also induced by LTP (Yamagata et al. 1994a). Nevertheless, the key role of zif/268 in plasticity has been reinforced by the recent report on hippocampal function in zif/268 knockout mice (Jones et al. 2001). These mice exhibit normal early-phase LTP, but late-phase LTP is completely absent. Similarly, short-term memory is unimpaired, while long-term memory is severely compromised.

A working hypothesis of synaptic plasticity, which incorporates many of the above observations (Alberini et al. 1994), proposes that brief activation of protein kinases results in a local phosphorylation of target proteins (B in Fig. 14.3). Stronger stimulation results in the translocation of the activated kinase to the nucleus, where it phosphorylates TFs such as CREB. Upon phosphorylation, these TFs then activate other TF genes, such as zif/268 or c-fos, and after transcription and translation have occurred, the pattern of downstream gene expression can be altered (C in Fig. 14.3) (see Chapters 3 and 10 for a detailed description of the potential signalling pathways involved).

14.5.3 Induction of other immediate-early genes
Apart from these putative TFs, a number of other genes are also reported to be rapidly induced in hippocampal neurones following high-frequency stimulation (Table 14.2). These include the growth factor β-activin (Andreasson and Worley 1995), the spectrin-like ‘arc’, the protease tissue plasminogen activator (tPA — (Qian et al. 1993)), and the prostaglandin synthetic enzyme cyclooxygenase II (cox2 — (Yamagata et al. 1993)). Each of these genes also appears to be induced during limbic system kindling, which may strengthen the idea that they play some significant role in the plasticity process. For β-activin and cox-2, direct evidence that these proteins are necessary for synaptic plasticity has yet to be obtained, although it may be relevant that the tPA knockout mouse is hyporesponsive to seizure stimuli (Tsirka et al. 1995) — implying that tPA
may increase the excitability of hippocampal neurones. In addition, evidence suggests that there are deficits in LTP induction in the CA1 and CA3 regions of the hippocampus from tPA knockout mice (Frey et al. 1996b; Huang et al. 1996). Since tPA is also induced in association with cerebellar LTP (Seeds et al. 1995), it is possible that tPA plays a generally important role in different forms of neuronal plasticity.

Apart from a relatively small subset of these genes, including zif/268 and tPA, the extent to which the association of these various molecules with plasticity is unique to the hippocampus, or even to particular groups of neurones within the hippocampus, remains to be explored. Nevertheless, evidence is accumulating that zif/268, CamKII, and tPA may play some quite fundamental role in the plasticity process.

14.5.4 Induction of late-response genes

The mRNA encoding an IEG is typically induced within 15–45 minutes of the initial stimulus, and then in most cases the level of mRNA expression has returned to normal within a few hours. A number of genes are induced (or suppressed) with a slower time course, the mRNA levels being altered perhaps 2–3 hours after the stimulus, and remaining affected for up to 48 hours. The lag period before induction/suppression presumably reflects the action of induced TFs, which need to be synthesized and modified before returning to the nucleus to alter the transcription of their target genes. These ‘late-response’ genes belong to various functional classes, including protein kinases, peptide neurotransmitters, growth factors, and proteases (Table 14.2).

Table 14.2 Molecules showing elevated expression during the later phases of LTP — (either at the mRNA or protein level). Corresponding references are given for further details. Those from this group where inhibitor or gene-targeting studies have suggested that the molecule is actively involved in the plasticity process are indicated by shading.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Experimental model</th>
<th>Direction of change in expression</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c-fos</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
<td>LTP learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Jeffrey et al., 1990; Worley et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c-jun</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
<td>LTP learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Demmer et al., 1993; Worley et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>junB</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Cole et al., 1989; Wisden et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zif/268</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
<td>LTP learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Cole et al., 1989; Wisden et al., 1990; Roberts et al., 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(egr1)</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
<td>LTP learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;4 hours</td>
<td>Yamagata et al., 1994a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egr3</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;4 hours</td>
<td>Yamagata et al., 1994a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHOP</td>
<td>transcription factor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td></td>
<td>Matsuo et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 14.2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Experimental model</th>
<th>Direction of change in expression</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP3-receptor2</td>
<td>Signalling receptor</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>1–3 hours</td>
<td>Luo et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rheb</td>
<td>GTPase</td>
<td>LTP learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Yamagata et al., 1994b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reps1</td>
<td>GTPase-related protein</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>1–3 hours</td>
<td>Luo et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CamKII-α</td>
<td>protein kinase subunit</td>
<td>LTP learning</td>
<td>increased/decreased</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Mackler et al., 1992; Thomas et al., 1994a; Johnston and Morris, 1995; Roberts et al., 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKC-Mζ</td>
<td>protein kinase fragment</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Osten et al., 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKC-β</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>unchanged</td>
<td>48–72 hours</td>
<td>Thomas et al., 1994a; Meberg et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKC-γ</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased/decreased</td>
<td>2–24 hours</td>
<td>Thomas et al., 1994a; Meberg et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERK-2</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>24 hours</td>
<td>Thomas et al., 1994a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Kinase phosphatase phosphatase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Qian et al., 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raf-B</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>24 hours</td>
<td>Thomas et al., 1994a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDPK</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>1–3 hours</td>
<td>Luo et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pim-1</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Konietzko et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pim-3</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Feldman et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnK</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Kauselmann et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FmK</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Kauselmann et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGK</td>
<td>protein kinase</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&gt;24 hours</td>
<td>Tsai et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDE4B3</td>
<td>phosphodiesterase</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>2–6 hours</td>
<td>Ahmed and Frey, 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCS1</td>
<td>Ca²⁺ binding protein</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>1–3 hours</td>
<td>Genin et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activin</td>
<td>growth factor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Andreasson and Worley, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGF</td>
<td>growth factor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased/unchanged</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>Castren et al., 1993; Patterson et al., 1992</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 14.2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Experimental Model</th>
<th>Direction of Change in Expression</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BDNF</strong></td>
<td>growth factor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>Patterson et al., 1992; Castren et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NT3</td>
<td>growth factor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased, decreased</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>Patterson et al., 1992; Castren et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGF1</td>
<td>growth factor</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>24 hours</td>
<td>Cavallaro et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGF-2-R</td>
<td>IGF-1 receptor</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>1–3 hours</td>
<td>Luo et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cgf1</td>
<td>growth factor?</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>6 hours</td>
<td>Nedivi et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neu</td>
<td>differentiation factor</td>
<td>adhesion-related</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Eilam et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N-cadherin</strong></td>
<td>cell adhesion molecule</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Bozdagi et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcadlin</td>
<td>cell adhesion molecule</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yamagata et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Integrin-associated protein</strong></td>
<td>cell adhesion molecule</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Huang et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCAM</td>
<td>cell adhesion molecule</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>24 hours</td>
<td>Schuster et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tenascin-R</strong></td>
<td>extracellular matrix</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&gt;4 hours</td>
<td>Nakic et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc</td>
<td>cytoskeletal protein?</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Link et al., 1995; Lyford et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcadlin</td>
<td>adhesion molecule</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yamagata et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>actin</strong></td>
<td>cytoskeletal protein</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Fukazawa et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| MAP2     | dendritic cytoskeletal protein | LTP            | increased                         | 24 hours| Johnston and Morris, 1994b; Roberts et al., 1996a;
|          |                           |                    |                                  |        | Roberts et al., 1998a                        |
|          |                           |                    |                                  |        |                                              |
| synaptotopodin | dendritic cytoskeletal protein | LTP            | increased                         | 1–3 hours| Yamazaki et al., 2001                       |
| Narp     | scaffolding molecule?     | LTP                | increased                         | <2 hours| Tsui et al., 1996                           |
| Homer 1a/ | scaffolding molecule      | LTP                | increased                         | <2 hours| Kato et al., 1997                           |
| Vesl     |                           |                    |                                  |        |                                              |
| LIRF / HZfw1 | unknown                  | LTP                | increased                         | <2 hours| Matsuo et al., 2001                         |
| syntaxin | Presynaptic vesicle-      | LTP                | increased                         | 2–5 hours| Smirnova et al., 1993                       |
|          | associated protein        |                    |                                  |        |                                              |
Table 14.2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Experimental model</th>
<th>Direction of change in expression</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SNAP-25</td>
<td>Presynaptic vesicle-associated protein</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Roberts et al., 1998b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synapsin</td>
<td>Presynaptic vesicle-associated protein</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&gt;3 hours</td>
<td>Lynch et al., 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAP43</td>
<td>Presynaptic, growth-associated protein</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>decreased</td>
<td>72 hours</td>
<td>Meberg et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proenkephalin</td>
<td>peptide neurotransmitter</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>24 hours</td>
<td>Johnston et al., 1988; Morris et al., 1994a; Roberts et al., 1997b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prodynorphin</td>
<td>peptide neurotransmitter</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>decreased</td>
<td>24 hours</td>
<td>Johnston et al., 1988; Morris et al., 1994a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tPA</td>
<td>protease</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Qian et al., 1993; Chen et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephrin</td>
<td>protease?</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>decreased</td>
<td>4–24 hrs</td>
<td>Nedivi et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMP</td>
<td>protease inhibitor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>6 hours</td>
<td>Yamagata et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cox2</td>
<td>prostaglandin synthetic enzyme</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>&lt;2 hours</td>
<td>Manahan-Vaughan et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mGluR5</td>
<td>receptor</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>24–48 hours</td>
<td>Manahan-Vaughan et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMPA Receptor R1/R2</td>
<td>receptor subunits</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Nayak et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDA receptor R1</td>
<td>receptor subunit</td>
<td>LTP</td>
<td>increased</td>
<td>48 hours</td>
<td>Thomas et al., 1994b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Considering the function of these different late-response genes, it is clear that a number of genes are affected where the protein will be expressed in the presynaptic terminal of the neurone involved. Such genes include the vesicle-associated proteins syntaxin and synapsin, thought to play a role in exocytosis, and the peptide neurotransmitters (Lynch et al. 1994). The post-synaptic induction of those genes with a presynaptic function has some interesting functional implications. Induction of the presynaptic proteins and the peptide transmitters suggests a kind of ‘domino’ plasticity (Morris and Johnston 1995), where potentiation of a synapse in the hippocampus results, via these changes in gene expression, in potentiation, some hours or days later, of the next synapse ‘in series’ (D in Fig. 14.3). When the first edition of this book was published, one of the unanswered questions posed at the end of this chapter was
whether domino plasticity, postulated on the basis of these changes in gene expression, would actually be shown to occur. In the intervening time, the postulated phenomenon has been shown to be a reality (Yeckel and Berger 1998; Kleschevnikov and Routtenberg 2003).

Evidence is accumulating to suggest that growth factors have an important acute function in modulating hippocampal excitability (Lo 1995). However, a number of growth factor genes are modulated at the transcriptional level following the induction of hippocampal LTP, raising the possibility that the subsequent changes in protein levels may exert a long-lasting effect on neurotransmission. Mice lacking a functional BDNF gene show an impaired ability to express hippocampal LTP (Korte et al. 1995), and reduced sensitivity to limbic system kindling (Kokala et al. 1995). In addition, it has recently been suggested that nerve growth factor is involved in the morphological changes in the hippocampus associated with kindling and temporal lobe epilepsy (Van der Zee et al. 1995). The growth factor-related protein Narp is thought to play a role in AMPA receptor clustering (O’Brien et al. 1999).

It is clear from Table 14.2 that increased expression of various protein kinase genes has been detected following induction of LTP. Considering the importance of phosphorylation reactions for the most rapid phase of synaptic plasticity (Section 14.3 above), altered expression of these genes is likely to have a prolonged effect on the rapid responses to subsequent stimulation, and possibly on the later responses as well. It is notable that a series of components of a single well-defined signalling pathway — RasGRF, RafB, and ERK2 — are all induced after LTP. Increased activity of this pathway could hence be considered as a likely mediator of sustained plasticity. Indeed, induction of RafB expression has also been observed during spatial learning (Richter-Levin et al. 1998). In addition, despite the increased expression of CamKIIα mRNA during phase II of hippocampal plasticity, markedly reduced expression of the CamKIIα gene is observed 24 hours after hippocampal NMDA receptor stimulation (Johnston and Morris 1995), and mice carrying an inactivating mutation in this gene show spontaneous epileptiform seizures (Butler et al. 1995). This provides strong evidence that a reduction in CamKIIα gene expression following plastic change in the hippocampus leads to a prolonged elevation in hippocampal excitability. The mechanistic explanation for this remains unclear.

A picture emerges of functional plasticity that lasts for days, and includes a component affecting the likelihood of further plastic change. Such alterations are probably consolidated by morphological changes, involving the altered conformation of synapses (B in Fig. 14.3) (Moser et al. 1994). The altered expression of proteases and their inhibitors (such as tPA, neuropsin, and TIMP), of molecules modulating cell connection and adhesion (such as the cadherins and NCAMs) and of genes regulating cytoskeletal structure (such as MAP2) (Table 14.2) may be a part of this structural remodelling process. In particular, NCAM expression can clearly have a direct influence on synaptic efficiency by modifying synaptic architecture (Dityatev et al. 2000).
A small group of genes has been identified, where the time course of induction following the generation of hippocampal LTP is exceptionally slow. It is reported that the levels of the mRNA encoding GAP43 — a protein thought to be involved in the function of the presynaptic terminal — are decreased 3 days after the stimulus, but not earlier (Meberg et al. 1993). Similarly, the levels of mRNA encoding certain splice variants of the NR1 subunit of the NMDA receptor are first found to be increased 48 hours after LTP induction (Thomas et al. 1994a).

14.5.5 Relationship between early and late responses

It has proved difficult to link the induction of the above TFs with any of these changes in late-response gene expression. Experiments using transfected cell lines had suggested a possible causal relationship between c-fos induction and increased transcription of the proenkephalin gene, but this has proved not to be the case in CNS neurones (Konradi et al. 1993; Johnston and Morris 1994a). Induction of zif/268 also does not seem to be involved in regulating hippocampal proenkephalin, prodynorphin or CamKII expression (Johnston and Morris 1994e). The best evidence to date linking TF and late response gene induction suggests that zif268 may induce synapsin transcription (Thiel et al. 1994), that c-fos may regulate NGF expression (Hengerer et al. 1990), and that NF-κB regulates induction of NCAM expression (Simpson and Morris 2000). The possible role of the various bZIP family members remains an important target for investigation. However, it is very likely that the pattern of late gene induction can vary according to the particular pattern of afferent activity, and that this in turn is determined by the complement of transcription factors that are activated (Bading et al. 1997; Dolmetsch et al. 1997; Itoh et al. 1997).

It has generally been assumed that increased synaptic efficiency following afferent activity is restricted to the activated synapse, and does not spread to potentiate neighbouring synapses. Although recent evidence suggests that this may be something of a generalization, and that there can be some limited spread of the plasticity to nearby synapses (Engert and Bonhoeffer 1997), it is nevertheless clear that only a small, spatially-restricted number of a neurone’s afferent synapses will be affected during a phenomenon such as LTP. In phase II of LTP, those dendritic mRNAs that are in the immediate vicinity of the activated synapses can be induced to support increased protein synthesis, and there is no conceptual problem in maintaining the input specificity of the potentiation. However, for phase III, gene transcription must take place in the cell nucleus. The question then arises as to how the newly synthesized proteins are transported out specifically to that small region of the neurone’s complex dendritic tree where the plastic response has been initiated. Evidence has been obtained, in both invertebrate and mammalian models, that the activated synapse is ‘tagged’, so that proteins undergoing transport outward along the dendrites can be captured at the site of stimulation (Frey and Morris 1997). The precise mechanisms, and the molecular identity of the tag(s), remain to be identified.
14.6 **Unanswered questions**

Apart from identifying the synaptic ‘tag’, and also the various TFs or combinations of TFs that produce the altered pattern of late-response gene activation observed in hippocampal LTP (Table 14.2), a number of other crucially important issues remain unresolved.

1) To what extent are these long-term changes common to other forms of neuronal plasticity apart from hippocampal LTP? Are there other genes affected uniquely in other paradigms or in other brain areas?

2) What other genes are affected in the hippocampus? Clearly the data summarized in Table 14.2 are unlikely to be complete.

3) How important are the various genes recorded in Table 14.2 for the processes of hippocampal plasticity? Experiments are still largely at the stage of recording the phenomena, rather than directly manipulating the expression of these genes individually and recording the effect on neuronal function.

4) The concept of LTP in the hippocampus is built around the potentiation of transmission at a single synapse. Activating gene transcription in the nucleus of the neuron would appear to endanger that exquisite anatomical specificity. Is Phase III of LTP as input-specific as Phase I and II?

5) How important are various possible post-transcriptional processes (i.e. modulation of mRNA stability/ribosomal availability or efficiency) in regulating gene expression during Phase II of functional plasticity?

6) To what extent are phases II and III of synaptic plasticity dependent on phase I, and phase III dependent on phase II?

An understanding of the molecular mechanisms that combine to generate neuronal plasticity is going to be vital for all aspects of neurobiology. Progress so far has been rapid, and already many of the ingredients have been identified. The challenge is to discover the ones that are missing from the list, and to find out exactly how they are all mixed together to produce the final product.

**References**


Chapter 15

Genetic basis of human neuronal diseases

Mark E. S. Bailey

15.1 Introduction

Since the first edition of this book in 1997, molecular neurogenetics has truly come of age. The rate at which publications in this field are emerging surpasses the ability of even the most dedicated to keep pace. Of 3850 entries in McKusick’s OMIM (Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man; http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Omim/) database that include neurological/neuronal phenotype references, more than 600 are listed as having identified gene lesions. Detailed knowledge of the human and mouse genomes has brought many disorders of the brain and central and peripheral nervous systems within the scope of genetic and clinical research groups worldwide, and technology and methodology for studying the genetic factors involved is largely mature and widely available. Single gene disorders have been succumbing at the rate of several every month. Even the complex disorders, in which both environmental and genetic predisposing factors are acting, are beginning to yield to the barrage of statistical and molecular techniques currently available. Progress in the realm of bioinformatics will undoubtedly speed the process of identifying predisposing genes further over the next few years.

The identification of such genes has the primary benefit of directing the attention of biologists and clinicians of all leanings to the biochemical and cellular pathways affected by the genetic lesion in their efforts to understand the aetiological factors operating in the pathogenic process. Attention thus directed leads to the secondary, but no less important, benefit of increased understanding of normal cellular processes — an illustration of the dictum that one good way to understand a biological process is to disrupt a component and study the consequences. This approach does not always work in a straightforward manner. The gene may encode a novel protein whose function takes many more years to discover. The ‘gene knockout’ in an animal model may not accurately reproduce the disorder, or the mouse (currently the most commonly used model) may not be a suitable model organism (Watase and Zoghbi 2003). The effect of the gene lesion may not relate in a straightforward manner to the pathology of the disorder or to measurable aspects of cellular dysfunction. On the whole, however, identification of the genes responsible for disorders in which neurons are affected has
had a profoundly enhancing effect on understanding of disease processes and often of neuronal functioning.

The typical procedure for identifying causal and predisposing genes has altered somewhat recently, largely because of the availability of the bulk of the human genome sequence and its preliminary annotation (see the following websites with ‘genome browsers’: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genome/guide/human/ and http://www.ensembl.org/Homo_sapiens/). Additional factors have been the construction of accurate, high-density linkage maps (Kong et al. 2002) and their integration with the physical (clone-based) maps and DNA sequence. Such linkage maps are indispensable in the mapping of genes for simple genetic disorders. Other useful developments include the ongoing construction of ‘linkage disequilibrium’ (LD) maps (Dawson et al. 2002). The finding of LD in a human disorder is often indicative of an ancient ‘founder’ mutation that has not (yet) been eliminated by strong natural selection — indeed in some cases disease-associated alleles may be under positive selection for other phenotypes. LD has been, and will increasingly be, useful in the mapping and identification of predisposing and protective genes in complex traits and disorders (Ardlie et al. 2002; Gabriel et al. 2002).

Commonly used strategies for mapping and identifying genes for traits and disorders are illustrated in Fig. 15.1. For straightforward, Mendelian, single gene disorders that are strongly familial, classical positional cloning strategies centred around a ‘genome scan’ are still the method of choice. Delineation of a critical region within which a disease gene must lie is usually followed by identification of ‘positional–functional’ candidate genes (those for which a rationale for their involvement can be evinced). These are then screened for mutations in affected individuals from families showing linkage to that locus, either by sequencing of PCR-amplified genomic DNA, or using a range of sensitive methods for identifying the presence of sequence variants in PCR products (dHPLC, DIGE, heteroduplex analysis, SSCP, and many others). If the positional–functional candidates do not exhibit mutations, other positional candidate genes are screened. Once a mutation has been identified, the usual biochemical, cell biological, and physiological approaches to explaining how the mutation leads to the disease process and pathology are invoked. Animal models, usually involving gene-targeted deletions or ‘knock-ins’ of the human mutation in mice, may be developed to assist in this functional characterization.

Complex disorders, in which multiple genes operating in various combinations act together to influence the risk of developing the disorder, still pose a problem for classical linkage analysis approaches. Alternative methods for disorders that are less often strongly familial have been focused around searching for regions of the genome that tend to be shared more often than expected by affected pairs of relatives (e.g. affected sib-pairs, ASPs). Once identified, these regions may then be subjected to a form of analysis that depends either on LD or on allelic association, comparing the frequency of a gene variant in disease and normal control populations. Both approaches are fraught with difficulties and have enjoyed limited success. In many cases, however,
Fig. 15.1 Overview of strategies used to identify disease genes. Summary of approaches used to identify and characterize human disease genes in the post-genome era, focusing on ‘post-genome’ resources and knowledge base.
ideas about the aetiology of the disorder can direct geneticists to functional candidate
genes, which are then tested in association studies, or screened directly for mutations
or predisposing variants using the same methods as described above. This strategy is
somewhat dangerous, since many sensible candidates often present themselves, but,
again, it has met with some success.

In this chapter, I have summarized what is known about the genes underlying a range
of human diseases where the causative or associated gene is expressed in neurons and
there is a clear primary effect on developing or mature neurons, and have illustrated
how subsequent studies have illuminated both the pathogenic process and normal neu-
ronal functioning. Tables giving details of all neuronal disorders with known genes in
categories covered in this chapter are contained in Tables 15.1–15.14. I have not tried
to cover everything — even taking redundancy of gene function into account, there may
be more than 5000 genetic disorders affecting the nervous system — and several cate-
gories are covered lightly if at all, including the metabolic storage disorders, disorders
involving neurons whose cell bodies or major processes lie outside the brain and spinal
cord, disorders involving primarily tumours of neuronal or neuroblast origin, and dis-
orders in which the primary effect is on glial or other cell function and secondarily on
neurons. The primary literature is now so vast that, for reasons of limited space, in
many places I have cited excellent reviews rather than multiple research papers. The
topics covered have been organized according to a necessarily simplistic view of the
functional ontogeny of the nervous system, from early neurogenesis, migration, and
pattern formation, through neuronal maturation/differentiation and mature neuronal
function, to neurodegeneration and cell death. In the tables, ‘OMIM Number’ refers to
the entry for each disease in McKusick’s ‘Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man’ data-
base (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Omim/), in which a substantial amount of clinical
and molecular information is summarized and referenced.

15.2 Disorders of neural induction, neurogenesis, and
neuronal migration

15.2.1 Early development
A number of developmental disorders are due to failure of neuroectodermal induction
and subsequent processes in rostral morphogenesis. Disorders in this category for
which genes have been identified are illustrated in Table 15.1. A common theme is that
mutations in genes acting early in these developmental pathways tend to produce more
pervasive effects, those acting later to produce more limited phenotypes. There is an
interesting contrast between two types of genes that have pervasive effects. The first set
has these effects because they lie upstream (and hence are expressed earlier in develop-
ment) in a regulatory cascade. For genes in the other set, the explanation has to do with
the fact that they perform different roles at different times in development. For exam-
ple, many homeodomain transcription factors, when mutated, display a phenotype
consistent with defective functioning both in their early developmental role and in
their subsequent, more spatially limited, maintenance role.
Neural tube defects (NTDs), such as spina bifida, and conditions such as anencephaly are thought to be related aetiologically. Genetic involvement has been expected from the increased recurrence risk of NTDs in families of affected individuals. An emerging picture is that disruption of biochemical pathways involving folate and methionine metabolism presents an increased risk of NTDs. A common polymorphism in the \textit{MTHFR} gene, designated 665C->T (previously known as 677C->T), appears to confer increased susceptibility to spina bifida. The polymorphism is associated with an apparently conservative amino acid change (A222V) that in fact renders the enzyme heat labile and presumably leads to functional deficiency. Foetuses that are homozygous for the T allele at this polymorphism seem to be at greater risk of NTDs and of failing to develop to term. Boosting of folate levels in the mother of such a foetus is thought to protect the enzyme against this lability, thus reducing both these risks. The encoded enzyme, 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR), is involved in methionine metabolism and it is not clear at present why other mutations, resulting in MTHFR deficiency, cause a different range of disorders often characterized by microcephaly (reduced brain size) and retarded psychomotor development, amongst other signs. Polymorphisms in other genes involved in folate provision and utilization, for example those encoding 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate dehydrogenase (MTHFD1), methionine synthase (MTR), and methionine synthase reductase (MTRR), also have alleles clearly associated with increased risk of NTDs. Interestingly, several recent studies (Brody \textit{et al.} 2002; Doolin \textit{et al.} 2002) have shown that the risk can come from the maternal genotype at these loci, rather than from that of the foetus, emphasizing the role that maternal factors and the uterine environment play in human development.

Other relatively early processes in neural development, such as regional organogenesis, are also disrupted in human genetic disorders. In benign hereditary chorea (BCH), an early-onset movement disorder mimicking Huntington disease (see Section 15.4.3) in some respects, mutations have been found in \textit{TITF1}, whose product is a transcription factor involved in specification of several tissues and organs occupying ventral locations, including structures lying ventrally in the forebrain, especially the basal ganglia (Breedveld \textit{et al.} 2002). The disrupted development of the basal ganglia in BCH, a dominant phenotype, is presumed to arise from haploinsufficiency i.e. drastic loss of function mutations in one allele result in affected individuals carrying only a single functional allele that cannot provide enough of the gene product for normal function. 

The gene encoding another homeodomain-containing transcription factor, \textit{HESX1}, is mutated in septo-optic dysplasia (SOD), a recessive disorder characterized by developmental failure of several midline brain structures as well as other organs, including the pituitary. \textit{HESX1} is a paired-like class homeodomain protein expressed in various parts of the presumptive prosencephalon at the induction stage, spreading to the telencephalon and finally ventral diencephalon. As referred to above, \textit{HESX1} seems to have an additional role later in development, being expressed in midline structures and in the pituitary gland. The point mutations found in SOD appear to disrupt important residues involved in DNA binding of the homeodomain (Dattani \textit{et al.} 1998), but in
### Table 15.1 Disorders of early neurogenesis, CNS patterning and neuronal migration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neural-tube defects</td>
<td>Neural-tube defect, folate-sensitive</td>
<td>NTDFS</td>
<td>601634</td>
<td>5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase&lt;br&gt;5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>MTHFR</td>
<td>1p36.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MTHFD1</td>
<td>14q24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain morphogenesis</td>
<td>Holoprosencephaly</td>
<td>HPE2</td>
<td>157170</td>
<td>Sine oculis homeobox gene homologue 3&lt;br&gt;Sonic hedgehog&lt;br&gt;TG interacting factor&lt;br&gt;Zinc finger protein of cerebellum 2&lt;br&gt;Patched, Drosophila, homologue of</td>
<td>SIX3</td>
<td>2p21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HPE3</td>
<td>142945</td>
<td></td>
<td>SHH</td>
<td>7q36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HPE4</td>
<td>142946</td>
<td></td>
<td>TGIF</td>
<td>18p11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HPE5</td>
<td>603073</td>
<td></td>
<td>ZIC2</td>
<td>13q32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HPE7</td>
<td>601309</td>
<td></td>
<td>PTCH</td>
<td>9q22.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forebrain midline defects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>187395</td>
<td>Teratocarcinoma-derived growth factor 1</td>
<td>TDGF1</td>
<td>3p23-p21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome</td>
<td>SLOS</td>
<td></td>
<td>270400</td>
<td>7-dehydrocholesterol reductase (7-DHCR)</td>
<td>DHCR7</td>
<td>11q12-q13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chorea, hereditary benign</td>
<td>BCH</td>
<td></td>
<td>118700</td>
<td>Thyroid transcription factor 1</td>
<td>TITF1</td>
<td>14q13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septo-optic dysplasia</td>
<td>SOD</td>
<td></td>
<td>182230</td>
<td>Homeobox gene expressed in ES cells</td>
<td>HESX1</td>
<td>3p21.2-p21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanjad–Sakati syndrome and autosomal recessive Kenney–Caffey syndrome</td>
<td>HRD/AR-KCS</td>
<td></td>
<td>241410</td>
<td>Tubulin-specific chaperone E</td>
<td>TBCE</td>
<td>1q43-q44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>244460</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aniridia, type II</td>
<td>AN2</td>
<td></td>
<td>106210</td>
<td>Paired and homeodomain protein 6</td>
<td>PAX6</td>
<td>11p13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schizencephaly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>269160</td>
<td>Empty spiracles homeobox gene homologue 2</td>
<td>EMX2</td>
<td>10q26.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disorder</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Chromosome</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth/proliferation/</td>
<td>MCPH1</td>
<td>8p23</td>
<td>Microcephalin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progenitor apoptosis</td>
<td>MCPH5</td>
<td>1q31</td>
<td>Abnormal spindle, microcephaly-associated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary, autosomal recessive</td>
<td>MCPH1</td>
<td>8p23</td>
<td>Microcephalin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCPH5</td>
<td>MCPH1</td>
<td>8p23</td>
<td>Abnormal spindle, microcephaly-associated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary, autosomal recessive</td>
<td>MCPH1</td>
<td>8p23</td>
<td>Microcephalin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microcephaly, Amish</td>
<td>MCPHA</td>
<td>17q25</td>
<td>Deoxynucleotide carrier</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microcephaly, Opitz syndrome</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Xp22.3</td>
<td>Midline-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary, autosomal recessive</td>
<td>MCPH5</td>
<td>8p23</td>
<td>Microcephalin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoyerla–Hreidarsson syndrome</td>
<td>HHS</td>
<td>2q22</td>
<td>Dyskerin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuronal migration</td>
<td>Kallman syndrome</td>
<td>8p11.2-p11.1</td>
<td>FGFR1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kallman syndrome</td>
<td>KAL1</td>
<td>Xp22.3</td>
<td>Fibroblast growth factor receptor 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kallman syndrome</td>
<td>KAL2</td>
<td>Xp22.3</td>
<td>Fibroblast growth factor receptor 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hirschsprung disease</td>
<td>HSCR</td>
<td>2q22</td>
<td>Smad interacting protein-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller–Dieker lissencephaly/</td>
<td>MDS</td>
<td>17p13.3</td>
<td>Platelet-activating factor acetylhydrolase, isofom 1b, α subunit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lissencephaly 1 [Subcortical band heterotopia]</td>
<td>LIS1</td>
<td>7q22</td>
<td>Reelin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lissencephaly, X-linked, with ambiguous genitalia</td>
<td>XLAG</td>
<td>Xp22.13</td>
<td>Aristalless homologue, X chr.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lissencephaly, X-linked</td>
<td>LISX</td>
<td>Xq22.3-q23</td>
<td>Doublecortin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lissencephaly syndrome,</td>
<td>LCH</td>
<td>7q22</td>
<td>Reelin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norman–Roberts type [Lissencephaly with cerebellar hypoplasia]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periventricular heterotopia</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Xq28</td>
<td>Filamin A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walker–Warburg syndrome</td>
<td>WW5</td>
<td>9q34.1</td>
<td>Protein O-mannosyltransferase 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fukuyama congenital muscular dystrophy</td>
<td>FCMD</td>
<td>9q31</td>
<td>Fukutin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscle–eye–brain disease</td>
<td>MEB</td>
<td>1p34-p33</td>
<td>Protein O-mannose β-1,2-N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Names and symbols for disorders are taken from the OMIM entry describing them. Names enclosed in [ ] are commonly used synonyms. Disorder symbols are those given in OMIM alongside the name, and correspond to disorder locus, not necessarily to the acronym for the disorder in common use. Locations are given as chromosome with cytogenetic band localization on the p (short) or q (long) arm.
some cases may also cause a phenotype with variable ‘penetration’ (probability of the phenotype being displayed, given that the mutation is present) in the heterozygous state (in the presence of one copy of the mutation only; this mutation thus exerts partial dominance at the genetic level). This suggests that the levels of protein required for normal development are pitched precisely on the edge of the ‘haploinsufficient’ threshold and any mild perturbation of levels of functional protein may result in that threshold being crossed. In these cases it is possible that modifier loci exist, and that one’s genotype at those other loci may affect the penetrance of the normally recessive mutations in HESX1.

Transcriptional specification of particular neuronal populations is not the only organogenesis-stage process disrupted by human mutations. Another well-known set of disorders, holoprosencephaly (HPE) and other forebrain midline defects, is now known to be caused by disruption of intra- and extracellular signalling processes. HPE is characterized by a failure of the developing forebrain to separate into two halves laterally (normally creating the cerebral hemispheres) and consequent lack of proper formation of the ventral forebrain and midline structures of the head and face. With both sporadic and familial forms, HPE is known to be complex, and to date six genes have been reported, SHH encoding sonic hedgehog, SIX3, TGIF, ZIC2, PTCH, and TDGF1, all of whose products are involved in morphogenesis of presumptive forebrain at the midline roofplate. Several signalling pathways are involved, including the nodal/TGF-β pathway, as well as several downstream transcriptional activation/repression pathways, and the interactions between all the components are still somewhat murky, although understanding is accumulating of a hitherto unsuspected convergence of the apparently disparate genetic causes on common downstream pathways (Brown et al. 2001b; Muenke and Beachy 2000). In an excellent review, Ming and Muenke (2002) raise the intriguing possibility that digenic inheritance, the requirement for genetic ‘hits’ at more than one locus, may explain both the small proportion of HPE individuals born with mutations in the known genes and the tendency for the known mutations to be of widely variable penetrance — the mutations are not haploinsufficient or acting in a dominant gain-of-function manner at the molecular level, but may appear to have dominant inheritance in some cases when a mutation in another gene whose product interacts with the first is co-inherited or becomes mutated somatically. Another congenital brain malformation disorder, Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome (SLOS) is caused by mutations in DHCR7, encoding a sterol synthesis enzyme. Links between SHH signalling function and cholesterol modifications are highlighted by the fact that SLOS mutations in some cases involve an HPE phenotype.

15.2.2 Neuronal progenitor proliferation

Microcephaly, defined in terms of reduced overall brain size, is associated with many different disorders of the brain. In some cases, there is no association with mental retardation or incapacity. One such condition is primary autosomal recessive microcephaly (MCPH). This disorder has recently been shown to be caused by null (nonsense) mutations in a novel gene given the name microcephalin, MCPH1, located
on chr.8p23 (Jackson et al. 2002). MCPH1 is normally expressed at high levels in developing forebrain, particularly in neural progenitors in the periventricular zone, and lack of the gene product is assumed to restrict the ability of these cells to proliferate, thus leading to fewer cortical cells than normal. The predicted protein product has a region of homology with the BRCA1-C-terminal domain (BRCT), and this domain is a feature of cell cycle regulatory proteins that respond to DNA repair. The neuronal proliferation failure may be a result either of increased cell cycle times or of apoptotic progenitor loss. It is known that another locus, MCPH5, carries mutations in the ASPM gene (Bond et al. 2002), whose product is related to a Drosophila protein involved in normal spindle function. Together, these findings provide evidence that brain size (and cortical thickness) in man is related to a large extent to cell division rates, and their balance with rates of apoptosis, during cortical development. Other developmental growth failure disorders are also likely to exhibit disrupted spindle function. One such may be Sanjad–Sakati syndrome, involving mutations in the gene encoding the tubulin chaperone protein, TBCE. Another is X chromosome-linked Opitz syndrome, in which MID1, encoding a ubiquitin ligase that is normally involved in targeting a MAP (microtubule-associated protein) phosphatase for degradation, is mutated. Mutations in this gene result in a build up of hypophosphorylated MAPs in the affected cells (Trockenbacher et al. 2001). Such disorders involving microtubule function are numerous and are characterized by generalized or region-specific growth failure as well as the consequences, often, of disrupted cell polarity and Golgi/late endosome compartment dysfunction. Other disorders in which microcephaly is a feature may result from disruptions to mitochondrial function during neurogenesis, as in Amish microcephaly (MCPHA), in which a mitochondrial deoxynucleotide carrier gene, SLC25A19, is mutated (Rosenberg et al. 2002).

15.2.3 Neuronal migration

The neuronal migration phase of neural development is also a rich source of genetic disorders. Migrations are of two types, one involving long-distance travel along pathways laid down in the developing brain, and the other involving more local movement of neuronal cell bodies within spaces already occupied by their neuritic processes. A disorder of long-distance migration is Kallman syndrome, caused by mutations in either the X-linked gene, KAL1, encoding anosmin, or the autosomal gene, FGFR1, encoding a receptor for fibroblast growth factor family members (Dodé et al. 2003). It is thought that the extracellular matrix protein anosmin and FGFR1 interact functionally, and particular loss-of-function (LOF) mutations in either gene (possibly including both haploinsufficient mutations and secondarily LOF dominant negative mutations with effects on receptor dimerization in the latter) are associated with disrupted development of the olfactory regions and migration of multiple neuronal types to the forebrain, including that of prospective GnRH neurons to the hypothalamus. Although KAL1 is located in the pseudoautosomal region of chr.Xp, males only have one functional copy on their X chromosome and in females the gene partially escapes X-inactivation, leading to an increased functional gene dosage in females, which is thought to account for the preponderance of affected males in the X-linked
form of the disorder. Another migration disorder, XLAG, results from particular mutations in ARX, an X-linked gene that also causes lissencephaly (see below). In XLAG, there is a primary migration defect of interneurons from the ganglionic eminence to their normal position in the cortical layer structure, resulting in the aberrant distribution of these neurons in the cortex (Kitamura et al. 2002).

Short range migration defects are seen in a range of disorders characterized by lissencephaly, an absence of the usual highly folded structure of the cortex. Several different phenotypes are known and identified genes, often with partially overlapping phenotypic ranges, include PAFAH1B1 [LIS1], ARX, DCX, RELN, and FLNA. The gene products of all of these are involved in regulation and basic functioning of neuronal migration from the ventricular zone to the other layers comprising the cortical plate, and the mutations causing the human disorders are largely thought to be loss-of-function, leading to reductions in amounts of functional protein produced. In the lissencephaly disorders, either the ability of neurons to migrate along radial glia, or their ability to undergo subsequent nuclear/somal translocation towards the pial surface, is disrupted, leading to inverted, bunched, and hypoplastic cortical layer structures as well as to the existence of extra cells in the subventricular regions. ARX, in addition to its function in interneuron migration (see above), is probably involved in proliferation of neurons throughout the ventricular zone, which is reduced in some forms of X-linked lissencephaly.

The LIS1 gene product appears to interact with both the intracellular dynein motor machinery and microtubules, but its function is still unclear, although several possible models exist (Feng and Walsh 2001; Gupta et al. 2002). Lack of this protein probably causes the pathology mainly through disruption of nuclear/somal translocation, and results in inverted cortical layer structures as the affected neurons are unable to ‘pass’ earlier migrating and more peripherally localized neurons. In a separate, but phenotypically overlapping and similar X-linked lissencephaly, doublecortin, the product of the DCX gene, is also probably involved in microtubule function, but mainly functions towards the leading edge of neurite outgrowth in endocytotic and membrane-synthetic vesicle trafficking (Friocourt et al. 2003). The FLNA gene product, filamin, is an actin network-organizing protein, and mutations probably lead to disruption of neuronal process leading edge motility and signalling functions. Reelin, the product of the RELN gene, is an extracellular protein secreted by Cajal–Retzius neurons in the outer marginal zone. It binds to ApoE and VLDL receptors on the cell membranes of migrating neuronal processes and is thereby probably involved in signalling gradients during neuronal migration towards the pial surface (Jossin et al. 2003).

Migration of cortical neurons and development of other regions, especially cerebellum, are also affected in Fukuyama congenital muscular dystrophy (FCMD), characterized by micropolygyria, in Walker–Warburg syndrome, characterized by cobblestone lissencephaly, and in muscle–eye–brain disease. In all of these, levels of properly glycosylated α-dystroglycan (DAG1) are reduced. This protein is essential for proper functioning of the extracellular matrix and basal lamina formation, and its absence
probably affects functioning of cells at or near the pial surface of the cortex, including the Cajal–Retzius neurons. Fukutin, the FCMD gene product, is an extracellular matrix protein (Hayashi et al. 2001; Michele et al. 2002), whereas O-mannosyltransferase and protein O-mannose β-1,2-N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase, the glycosylation enzymes encoded by POMT1 and POMGNT1, deficient in Walker–Warburg syndrome and muscle–eye–brain disease, respectively, are associated with the Golgi apparatus (Beltrán-Valero de Bernabé et al. 2002; Michele et al. 2002). Mutations in both probably affect the higher-order glycosylation, and thus structural integrity and/or functioning, of DAG1. Little is known about the integration of the various signalling and effector pathways of cortical development that are disrupted in the lissencephalies and other neuronal migration disorders, but the prospects for rapid attainment of understanding are good.

15.3 Disorders of neuronal terminal differentiation and maturation, and of mature neuronal function

A number of disorders exist in which brain malformations are not overt or major, and in which neurons have originated and migrated effectively, but have not executed their full programme of differentiation and maturation (see Table 15.2). In some cases, the affected neurons have undergone apoptosis as a result of their failure to differentiate, or failure to respond to growth factors and survival signals, and are secondarily absent, whereas in others, no evidence for neuronal loss is visible.

15.3.1 Disorders of neuronal maturation

Rett syndrome (RS) is an example of the latter. Characterized by a reduction in postnatal brain growth rate, developmental regression beginning at 9–18 months and followed by relative stagnation, loss of skills and a number of associated features, such as seizures and breathing difficulties, approximately 80% of classic RS cases, almost all of whom are female, are caused by mutations in MECP2, which encodes a member of the methyl-CpG-binding domain family. With an incidence of 1/10 000 or more, RS is the second most common disorder associated with severe intellectual disability in females, after Down syndrome. Around 200 different missense, nonsense, splicing, small insertion/deletion, and large deletion/null mutations (see http://homepages.ed.ac.uk/ skirmis/ for tables and graphics of mutation locations and frequency) have been found so far in the coding portion of the gene, which is located in Xq28 and is subject to X-inactivation. It is therefore assumed that complete loss of function of MECP2 causes the disorder, and this is backed up by gene knockout animal models (Shahbazian et al. 2002), although the mechanism by which some of the apparently ‘milder’ missense mutations exert their effect is far from clear. The immediate downstream effects of this loss of function are still not known, however, despite intense interest in the pathogenic process and much scrutiny of the wild-type protein (Nan and Bird 2001; Shahbazian and Zoghbi 2002). This is partly because the purpose and functioning of methylation of the genome in mammals is not well understood, and partly because it is difficult to
understand how what appears to be a redundant system for regulating transcription at the level of chromatin structure translates into the pervasive neuronal maturation defect seen in RS. Recent studies have suggested two ways in which MECP2, tethered and targeted to methylated regions of the genome, may carry out its known transcriptional repression effector function. Firstly, repression is known to occur via the recruitment of histone deacetylase complexes, and a story of complex interactions between the histone deacetylase and histone methylase machinery is emerging. These latter set up the ‘histone code’ of modifications, largely to histones H3 and H4, that are now known to determine the transcriptional state of chromatin, and theories abound as to how these states are maintained and altered in programmes, such that genes are transcribed at the correct temporal and spatial locations in the body (Kouzarides 2002; Lachner and Jenuwein 2002; Jaenisch and Bird 2003). A picture is emerging of how MECP2 and other MBD proteins work, in the context of rapid recent developments in understanding of chromatin-level regulation. Secondly, MECP2 is able, both in the presence and in the absence of DNA methylation, to nucleate the condensation of nucleosomal chromatin into a novel, very tightly compacted conformation (Georgel et al. 2003). The interplay between DNA methylation, histone modifications and chromatin conformational states, and the transcriptional and DNA replication machineries is on the point of being understood.

Meanwhile, we do not have a clear idea of the normal targets of MECP2 repression in the genome. Candidate genomic entities include genes whose DNA methylation state is normally regulated during postnatal brain development, genes with genomic imprinting mechanisms based on allele-specific methylation, genes on the X chromosome that normally undergo X-inactivation (both the latter unlikely, given what is known about the biology of these systems), and genes transcribed by RNA polymerases other than RNA Pol II, which transcribes most protein-coding genes. Disruption of RNA polymerase III transcription is an attractive candidate, given that no consistent changes in brain protein-coding gene mRNA levels have been observed in the various Mecp2 knockout mouse models analysed thus far (Tudor et al. 2002). Most RNA Pol III-transcribed genes are involved in the construction of the protein translation machinery or in regulatory aspects of translation, and a generalized neuronal translation defect, or perhaps disruption of the special dendritic translation machinery, could explain several of the cellular features of RS. Neurons in many regions, but especially the frontal cortex, have underdeveloped dendritic arborization, small dendritic fields, and fewer dendritic spines, pointing to a generalized lack of neural connectivity without neuronal loss; they also appear to have smaller somata in some studies. Reduced translation rates at a critical point in neuronal maturation might cause this phenotype, but several other potential mechanisms exist, including defective mRNA and protein trafficking via microtubule-based transport systems.

A disruptive effect on RNA Pol III function would also, however, fit in with one persistent idea of the function of methylation in the genome, the ‘genome defence’ hypothesis, in which methylation-based repressor systems are thought to have evolved to protect cells against the ravages of ‘selfish’ transposable elements, which exist in thousands or millions of copies in the genome and in many cases contain transcriptional
promoter sites. Lack of functional MECP2 in RS might enable these promoter elements to escape their repressive chromatin environment and act as a sink for transcription factors, which would then be too dilute to carry out their normal function elsewhere in the genome. A major unanswered question is whether the cellular phenotype in RS is cell-autonomous or not. If it is, approximately half the neurons in a patch of cortex, brainstem, or other involved region should be normal, given the random X-inactivation known to exist in most RS patients and the dominant nature of the disorder (patients are thus heterozygous for normal and mutant alleles). Whether a mosaic pattern of affected and normal cells exists in cortical sections has not been adequately explored.

Rett syndrome shares some features, at least during the regression phase, with another disorder that may result from ineffective neuronal maturation, autism. Autism is a complex disorder, with most cases thought to be polygenic or multifactorial, and the genes involved in these cases are almost completely unknown, although several predisposing loci have been mapped (Folstein and Rosen-Sheidley 2001). In rare cases, single gene disorders may give rise to multiple cases of autism within families, and two genes have been identified recently, the related genes NLGN3 and NLGN4, encoding two members of the neurexin family (Jamain et al. 2003). Both genes are located on the X chromosome and the two presumed loss of function mutations are recessive, so that only males have the disorder in the two affected families. X-linked genes have been implicated in predisposition to autism in view of the overall 4 : 1 bias towards males observed in the disorder, but the genes implicated in this study were not thought to be common monogenic causes in autistic individuals. Neuroligins are cell adhesion molecules expressed on the outer surface of dendrites and are thought to mediate physical and functional connectivity at synapses between presynaptic and postsynaptic neurons. The neuroligins contain EF hand domains, which confer Ca^{2+} sensitivity, and the point mutation observed in one family may disrupt the Ca^{2+}-dependent interaction between neuroligin and its known presynaptic binding partner, a neurexin. Autism is thought to result from defective network construction in certain regions of the frontal cortex, and it is presumed that the neuroligin mutations will disrupt synapse formation in these regions. Further insights are eagerly awaited in view of the intense public interest in autism and its causes.

15.3.2 Disorders affecting neuronal maturation and/or mature function

A large number of other monogenic forms of mental retardation (MR) are caused by mutations in X-linked genes, often affecting only one or a few known patients and thus contributing to causes of MR in the population only to a very limited extent (Chelly and Mandel 2001). These comprise a range of non-syndromic, isolated MR disorders (with loci designated ‘MRX’) and several syndromic forms. The genes mutated in the MRX disorders are varied, but several common themes are emerging, all of which are commensurate with defects in neuronal maturation or mature neuronal function, which can be difficult to tease apart (the disorders covered in the rest of this section may involve neuronal maturation or mature function or both). Neurotransmission defects are involved in some, such as MRX41/MRX48, caused by mutations in GDI1,
which encodes a Rab-GTPase recycling protein important in vesicle trafficking and neurotransmitter release (D’Adamo et al. 1998). Intracellular signalling defects are apparent in MRX30/MRX60/MRX46, involving genes acting in the Rho-GTPase pathway. These are effector proteins responding to several signal transduction mechanisms involving growth factor and repulsive cue receptors, and mostly acting through regulation of neuronal morphogenesis and cellular shape through reorganization of the cytoskeletal actin network. The involvement of PAK/PAK3 kinases in these pathways (Allen et al. 1998) implicates defects in formation of focal complexes and lamellipodia during neurite outgrowth. This process is probably also disrupted in the presence of mutations (in two MRX families) in TM4SF2, which encodes tetraspanin, a member of a family of plasma membrane-localized, 4-transmembrane (TM) region proteins that interact with β-integrins and thereby mediate communication between the extracellular environment and the actin cytoskeleton.

A number of poorly understood mechanisms are implicated in other MRX disorders. In several individuals, the angiotensin II receptor 2 gene, AGTR2, is mutated (Vervoort et al. 2002). The role of this 7TM, G-protein-coupled receptor in postnatal and adult brain is not clear, but it has been suggested to have roles in triggering apoptotic cell death programmes, perhaps as part of the ‘pruning’ process that occurs during network development, as well as a possible role in regulation of neurotransmission efficiency. Another example, MRX34, involves mutations in the gene encoding a member of an IL1 receptor-associated protein family, IL1RAPL (Carrié et al. 1999). The role of this protein is entirely unknown (but assumed not to be related to immune system functions typical of the IL system proteins). Its expression in hippocampus points to learning and memory defects underlying the phenotype in the few known families with deletions encompassing part or all of the gene.

Many disorders of the brain involve, not surprisingly, genes encoding enzymes involved in synthesizing the important molecules of the neuronal plasma membrane, particularly the complex lipid derivatives, glycolipids, and glycoproteins (see below). Several disorders of membrane protein glycosylation exist and genes have been identified in 10 of these so far (listed in Table 15.2). These disorders usually involve severe brain phenotypes as well as effects on other systems, since glycosylated proteins are extremely diverse and widely expressed, but they are included in this section because of their obvious involvement in maturation of neurons, since many proteins involved in neurite outgrowth and in synaptic development are glycoproteins, and many of the complex membrane lipids are linked to oligosaccharides with roles in structural membrane integrity, as well as in membrane protein targeting and anchoring, functioning of protein complexes, and signalling processes. Almost every stage of glycolipid synthesis and processing is represented in the disorders of glycosylation, as well as several stages of glycoprotein oligosaccharide processing, both in the N-linked and the O-linked oligosaccharide pathways (Jaeken and Matthijs 2001). An unusual example of metabolically-based MR, because of the absence of large scale neurodegeneration and the relatively pure cognitive phenotype, was found to be responsible for the MRX63 locus, and involves mutations in
Table 15.2 Disorders of neuronal differentiation and maturation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder category</th>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X-linked mental retardation (XLMR)</td>
<td>Autism, X-linked</td>
<td></td>
<td>300425</td>
<td></td>
<td>NLGN3, NLGN4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rett syndrome</td>
<td>RTT</td>
<td>312750</td>
<td></td>
<td>MECP2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X-linked myoclonic epilepsy with spasticity and</td>
<td>XMESID and MRX54</td>
<td>300382</td>
<td></td>
<td>ARX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xp22.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>intellectual disability and MRX54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mental retardation, aphasis, shuffling gait, and</td>
<td>MASA and CRASH</td>
<td>303350</td>
<td></td>
<td>L1CAM</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adducted thumbs [ MASA syndrome] [ CRASH syndrome]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X-linked mental retardation with epilepsy, rostral</td>
<td>MRX50</td>
<td>300127</td>
<td></td>
<td>OPHN1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ventricular enlargement and cerebellar hypoplasia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-syndromic</td>
<td>X-linked, non-specific mental retardation</td>
<td>MRX41, MRX48</td>
<td>300104</td>
<td></td>
<td>GDI1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MRX34</td>
<td>300426</td>
<td></td>
<td>IL1RAPL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xp22.1-p21.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MRX30</td>
<td>300142</td>
<td></td>
<td>PAK3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Genetic Basis of Human Neuronal Diseases]
Table 15.2 (continued) Disorders of neuronal differentiation and maturation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder category</th>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MRX46</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rac/Cdc42 guanine exchange factor 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>300346</td>
<td>ARHGEF6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tetraspanin</td>
<td></td>
<td>300096</td>
<td>TM4SF2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xp11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Angiotensin II receptor 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>300034</td>
<td>AGTR2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq22-q23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRX63</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fatty acid CoA ligase, long chain 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>300387</td>
<td>FACL4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Xq22.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disorders of</td>
<td>Congenital disorder of lipid-linked</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glycosylation</td>
<td>oligosaccharide assembly and transfer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGla</td>
<td></td>
<td>Phosphomannomutase 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>212065</td>
<td>PMM2</td>
<td></td>
<td>16p13.3-p13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGlc</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALG6*, S. cerevisiae, homologue of</td>
<td></td>
<td>603147</td>
<td>ALG6</td>
<td></td>
<td>1p22.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGld</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALG3, S. cerevisiae, homologue of</td>
<td></td>
<td>601110</td>
<td>ALG3</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dolichyl-phosphate mannosyltransferase 1,</td>
<td></td>
<td>603503</td>
<td>DPM1</td>
<td></td>
<td>20q13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>catalytic subunit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGlf</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mannose-P-dolichol utilization defect 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>604041</td>
<td>MPDU1</td>
<td></td>
<td>17p13.1-p12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGlg</td>
<td></td>
<td>ALG12, S. cerevisiae, homologue of</td>
<td></td>
<td>607143</td>
<td>ALG12</td>
<td></td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disorders of N-glycan processing</td>
<td></td>
<td>GlcNAc-transferase II</td>
<td></td>
<td>212066</td>
<td>MGAT2</td>
<td></td>
<td>14q21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGlib</td>
<td></td>
<td>Glucosidase I</td>
<td></td>
<td>606056</td>
<td>GCS1</td>
<td></td>
<td>2p12-p13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDGlid</td>
<td></td>
<td>β-1,4-galactosyltransferase</td>
<td></td>
<td>607091</td>
<td>B4GALT</td>
<td></td>
<td>9p13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 15.2 (continued) Disorders of neuronal differentiation and maturation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder category</th>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disorders of N- and O-glycan processing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Disorders of N- and O-glycan processing</td>
<td>CDGlc</td>
<td>266265</td>
<td>GDP-fucose transporter1</td>
<td>FUCT1</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Smith–Magenis syndrome</td>
<td>SMS</td>
<td>182290</td>
<td>Retinoic acid induced 1</td>
<td>RAI1</td>
<td>17p11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fibrosis of extraocular muscles, congenital 2</td>
<td>FEOM2</td>
<td>602078</td>
<td>Aristaless homeobox, <em>Drosophila</em>, homologue of</td>
<td>ARIX</td>
<td>11q13.3-q13.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mental retardation, autosomal recessive</td>
<td></td>
<td>249500</td>
<td>Neurotrypsin</td>
<td>PRSS12</td>
<td>4q24-q25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dyggve–Melchior–Clausen dysplasia</td>
<td>DMC</td>
<td>223800</td>
<td></td>
<td>FLJ90130</td>
<td>18q12-q21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Agenesis of the corpus callosum, with neuronopathy</td>
<td>ACCPN</td>
<td>218000</td>
<td>Solute carrier family 12, member 6 [K⁺–Cl⁻ cotransporter, KCC3]</td>
<td>SLC12A6</td>
<td>15q13-q14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Segawa syndrome, autosomal recessive [Dopa-responsive dystonia, autosomal recessive]</td>
<td></td>
<td>605407</td>
<td>Tyrosine hydroxylase</td>
<td>TH</td>
<td>11p15.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Segawa syndrome, autosomal dominant/ Dystonia, progressive, with diurnal variation [Dopa-responsive dystonia, autosomal dominant]</td>
<td>DRD</td>
<td>128230</td>
<td>GTP cyclohydrolase I</td>
<td>GCH1</td>
<td>14q22.1-q22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Specific language impairment</td>
<td>SLI</td>
<td>602081</td>
<td>Forkhead box P2</td>
<td>FOXP2</td>
<td>7q31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mucolipidosis type IV</td>
<td>MLIV</td>
<td>252650</td>
<td>Mucolipin 1</td>
<td>MCOLN1</td>
<td>19p13.3-p13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Griscelli syndrome, type 1</td>
<td>GS1</td>
<td>214450</td>
<td>Myosin VA</td>
<td>MYOSA</td>
<td>15q21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Encodes dolichyl-P-Glc: Man₉GlcNAc₂-pyrophosphate-dolichyl glycosyltransferase.
FAACL4, which encodes a fatty acid-CoA ligase whose function is in the synthesis of arachidonate lipid derivatives (Meloni et al. 2002). Arachidonate is pro-apoptotic when present at increased levels, so loss-of-function mutations in FAACL4 could result in premature cell death through failure to remove excess arachidonate by ligation. MRI findings in patients with mutations in this gene were normal, however, so alternative explanations for the phenotype that do not implicate apoptosis may be required.

An important and well-known glycoprotein illustrates a further class of disorders specifically involving cell–cell adhesion. The L1CAM gene is mutated in several overlapping disorders, together designated CRASH syndrome (corpus callosum hypoplasia, retardation, adducted thumbs, spastic paraplegia, and hydrocephalus), the components of which may co-occur in various combinations (e.g. MASA syndrome — mental retardation, aphasia, shuffling gait, and adducted thumbs, without hydrocephalus), but all involving more or less specific effects on neuronal and brain development. This example illustrates the tendency of clinicians, including clinical geneticists, to be ‘splitters’ and of molecular geneticists, with a more gene-centric view, to be ‘lumpers’ (Fransen et al. 1997), although many other examples of genes giving rise to variable and diverse mutant phenotypes exist.

One such gene is ARX, which encodes a homologue of the Drosophila protein aristaless. One mutant phenotype of ARX has already been referred to above (in relation to lissencephaly). Other phenotypes include XMESID (X-linked myoclonic epilepsy with spasticity and intellectual disability) and phenotypes that include other seizure types, isolated MR, dystonia, ataxia, and autistic features, and combinations thereof (Scheffer et al. 2002; Strømme et al. 2002). A widespread role for this paired-class (PAX-related) homeodomain protein is clear, but its regulatory target genes as a transcription factor are not known in detail. The gene encoding a protein in the same family, ARIX, is mutated in a disorder of ocular movement control, FEOM2 (Engle and Leigh 2002). This protein seems to be expressed in many catecholaminergic neurons and the specificity of the phenotype, resulting from maldevelopment of neurons in particular cranial nuclei involved in innervation of ocular muscles, is not understood.

Two forms of dopa-responsive dystonia (DRD, or Segawa syndrome) are the result of mutations in genes involved in dopamine synthesis, TH (encoding tyrosine hydroxylase) and GCH1 (encoding GTP cyclohydrolase I, which produces a co-factor for TH). A large literature documents the molecular biology of this system (Nemeth 2002). The disorders, which share some of the features of Parkinson’s disease (PD; see below) and are markedly responsive to treatment with the dopamine mimic, L-DOPA, are characterized by pathological features in the substantia nigra pars compacta (SNc) without overt cell loss (unlike PD), and evidence for nerve terminal defects in the striatum, the target of SNc innervation. Maturation of dopamine neurons is not possible in the absence of their main neurotransmitter. The molecular mechanism of dominance in the form of DRD caused by loss-of-function mutations in GCH1 is not clear, but may involve dominant negative effects on the normal allele product, since in some cases enzyme activity is reduced to less than 50%.
15.3.3 Disorders of mature neuronal function

15.3.3.1 Channelopathies

‘Channelopathy’ refers to a set of disorders whose causes are related to ion channel dysfunction. There are more than 400 known ion channels, many of which are expressed in neurons, amongst them the important mediators of membrane potential generation and regulation, action potential generation, responses to neurotransmitters and other signals, other forms of neuromodulation, and physical processes such as cell volume regulation, as covered in other chapters in this book. The disorders comprising the set of channelopathies are predictably varied, but, again, some interesting patterns are emerging (Hübner and Jentsch 2002; Gargus 2003).

The most obvious pattern concerns the association of ‘episodic’ or recurrent, but not continuous phenotypes with mutations in ion channel genes. This can be seen in Table 15.3, in which a range of more or less monogenic epilepsies, other seizure disorders, episodic ataxias, migraines, and MR-related disorders are listed along with the gene symbols and chromosomal localizations of the causative genes. Most of these genes encode ion channels, and most of those are members of gene families covered in other chapters, so their molecular biology will not be dealt with in detail here. Several interesting things can be noted, however. Firstly, there is some, but only limited, overlap between the neuronal channelopathy genes and the neuromuscular/cardiac channelopathy genes (not shown). This is largely because the affected proteins are members of large protein families in which expression of paralogous genes is tissue-specific to a significant degree.

Secondly, most of the disorders for which genes have been identified represent rare monogenic forms of disorders that are common in the population. Extensive genetic heterogeneity is the rule, both at the locus (different genes causing the same disorder), and allelic (multiple mutations within each gene) levels, but so far the genes involved in these disorders have generally not been found to be associated with the common, non-familial forms of the same disorders. This is particularly the case, for example, with the idiopathic generalized epilepsies (IGEs), in which multiple syndromic mixtures of seizure types are represented both within individuals and in different family members. Mutations in GABRA1 have been found (Cossette et al. 2002) in one family with juvenile myoclonic epilepsy (JME), and in another family, CLCN2 mutations have been found (Haug et al. 2003), but neither gene is mutated in many other families nor in sporadic cases of JME, which make up perhaps 1.5% of all epilepsy patients, despite the CLCN2 gene occurring within one of the three largest linkage peaks in a genome scan study involving more than 130 IGE families (Sander et al. 2000).

There is a notable and substantial degree of overlap between the different syndromes in terms of the causative genes, and patterns are visible here too. Different examples of the same epilepsy syndrome (e.g. ADNFLE, BFNC, GEFS+, episodic ataxia/EA) are caused by mutations in paralogous (duplicated more or less recently in evolution) gene family members (e.g. McLellan et al. 2003). In contrast, different epilepsy syndromes
**Table 15.3** Disorders of mature neuronal function — epilepsies and other channelopathies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Gene</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant nocturnal frontal lobe epilepsy (ADNFLE)</td>
<td>ENFL1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENFL3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign familial neonatal convulsions (BFNC)</td>
<td>EBN1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EBN2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized epilepsy with febrile seizures + (GEFS+) GEFS + 2 GEFS + 2 GEFS + 1 GEFS + 3</td>
<td>OMIM 600235, 604233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe myoclonic epilepsy of infancy (SMEI)</td>
<td>SMEI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epilepsy, benign neonatal-infantile</td>
<td>EBN-I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic generalized epilepsy (IGE)</td>
<td>EJM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ECA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EJM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EGMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized epilepsy/episodic ataxia/praxis-induced seizures</td>
<td>EGMA/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epilepsy/episodic ataxia/EA2</td>
<td>EA2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gene**

<p>|    | CHRNA4 | CHRNB2 | KCNQ2 | KCNQ3 | SCN1A | SCN1B | SCN2A | SCN2B | GABRG2 | GABRA1 | CLCN2 | CACNB4 | CACNA1A | ATP1A2 | KCNA1 | GLRA1 | GLRB | ARX | LGI1 |
|----|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|---------|---------|-------|-------|-------|------|-----|-------|
| 2q13 | 1q21   | 2q13   | 8q24  | 2q24  | 19q13.1 | 19q13.1 | 5q34  | 5q34  | 3q26   | 2q22-q23 | 19q13 | 1q23   | 12p13   | 5q34    | 3q26  | 4q11  | Xp22 | 10q24 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>20q13</th>
<th>1q21</th>
<th>20q13</th>
<th>8q24</th>
<th>2q24</th>
<th>2q24</th>
<th>19q13.1</th>
<th>5q34</th>
<th>5q34</th>
<th>3q26</th>
<th>2q22-q23</th>
<th>19p13</th>
<th>1q23</th>
<th>12p13</th>
<th>5q34</th>
<th>4q31</th>
<th>Xq22</th>
<th>10q24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Familial hemiplegic migraine/progressive ataxia</td>
<td>FHM1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 141500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial hemiplegic migraine 2</td>
<td>FHM2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 602481</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episodic ataxia I</td>
<td>EA1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(with absence epilepsy)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperekplexia/spastic paraparesis</td>
<td>STHE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 149400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-linked myoclonic epilepsy with generalized spasticity and intellectual disability (XMESID)</td>
<td>XMESID1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-linked infantile spasms (West syndrome) (ISSX)</td>
<td>ISSX1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 308350</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant lateral temporal lobe epilepsy (EPT)</td>
<td>EPT1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.k.a. autosomal dominant partial epilepsy with auditory features (ADPEAF)</td>
<td>OMIM 600512</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
can be caused by different mutations (in some cases even the same mutation) in a particular gene. For example, mutations in SCN1A, encoding a sodium channel α subunit occur in a generalized epilepsy/febrile seizures mixed syndrome, GEFS+ and in severe myoclonic epilepsy of infancy, SMEI (Escayg et al. 2000, Claes et al. 2001). Finally, different epilepsies or other episodic disorders can be caused by mutations in functionally related genes, for example, GABRG2 in GEFS+ (Baulac et al. 2001; Harkin et al. 2002) and GABRA1 in JME — the GABA_A receptor subunits encoded by these two genes co-assemble in the receptor subtype with the widest distribution and highest levels of expression in the brain.

In contrast, very similar disorders can be caused by mutations in unrelated genes (e.g. EA1 and EA2). Many of the channelopathy disorders are genetically dominant, and this is found to be explained most often by the alteration of channel gating properties in the mutated forms, either opening-probability/inactivation profiles or ion flux properties, which change membrane voltages and currents even in the presence of the wild-type gene product. Why these disorders are largely episodic in nature is not clear in most cases, since the proteins mainly act in neurons that are continuously active rather than temporally active. In many cases, further study of the functional properties of the channels in the wild-type and mutated forms may reveal the neurophysiological conditions under which the seizure/ataxia/other phenotype becomes visible (e.g. Jentsch 2000). In addition, the identification of rare or common variants associated with the sporadic forms of these disorders is awaited with eagerness, and a number of studies have provided hints in this direction (e.g. Wilkie et al. 2002). The answers will provide not only further understanding of the basic biology of functional neural connectivity, but will also point the way to the development of better treatments with fewer side effects. Furthermore, they will act as a paradigmatic demonstration of whether the ‘common disorder–common gene variant’ hypothesis of complex disorders turns out to be true (Pritchard and Cox 2002; Smith and Lusis 2002), or whether increasing degrees of heterogeneity resulting from rare variants/mutations is the rule (Gargus 2003).

15.3.3.2 Fragile X and myotonic dystrophy

Table 15.4 lists a number of other disorders thought to be mainly associated with disruption of mature neuron function, but without extensive neurodegeneration. Elsewhere in this chapter, examples of neurodegenerative disorders caused by ‘nucleotide expansion’ or ‘dynamic’ mutations are discussed, the so-called ‘polyglutamine/polyalanine disorders’ (see Section 15.4.3). Together with these, fragile X syndrome types 1 and 2, myotonic dystrophy and Friedreich ataxia comprise the set of known triplet (trinucleotide) repeat disorders. Once considered together because of the likely common pathways in the mechanism of mutation in each case (in most, the characteristic repeat tract length changes in post-meiotic/mitotic germ and somatic cells that constitute the mutation are thought to be a result of single or double-strand break DNA repair mechanisms acting on gaps caused by hairpin ‘snapback’ structures
Table 15.4 Disorders of mature neuronal function — other disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fragile X disorders</td>
<td>Fragile X syndrome, type A</td>
<td>FRAXA</td>
<td>309550</td>
<td>Fragile site mental retardation 1</td>
<td>FMR1</td>
<td>Xq27.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mental retardation, X-linked, associated</td>
<td>FRAXE</td>
<td>309548</td>
<td>Fragile site mental retardation 2</td>
<td>FMR2</td>
<td>Xq28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with fragile site, FRAXE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myotonic dystrophy</td>
<td>DM1</td>
<td></td>
<td>160900</td>
<td>DM protein kinase; myotonin</td>
<td>DMPK</td>
<td>19q13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DM2</td>
<td></td>
<td>602668</td>
<td>Zinc finger protein 9</td>
<td>ZNF9</td>
<td>3q22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angelman syndrome</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td></td>
<td>105830</td>
<td>E6-AP ubiquitin-protein ligase</td>
<td>UBE3A</td>
<td>15q11-q13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>155541</td>
<td>Melanocortin-4 receptor</td>
<td>MC4R</td>
<td>18q22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffin–Lowry syndrome</td>
<td>CLS</td>
<td></td>
<td>303600</td>
<td>Ribosomal protein S6 kinase, 90KD, 3; RSK2</td>
<td>RP56KA3</td>
<td>Xp22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narcolepsy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>161400</td>
<td>Hypocretin [orexin]</td>
<td>HCRT</td>
<td>17q21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torsion dystonias</td>
<td>Torsion dystonia 1, autosomal dominant</td>
<td>DYT1</td>
<td>128100</td>
<td>Torsin-A</td>
<td>DYT1</td>
<td>9q34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myoclonic dystonia</td>
<td>DYT11</td>
<td>159900</td>
<td>ε-sarcoglycan</td>
<td>SGCE</td>
<td>7q21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126450</td>
<td>Dopamine receptor, D2</td>
<td>DRD2</td>
<td>11q23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
at break sites (see for an example, Kovtun and McMurray 2001). In terms of clinical phenotype and pathogenic mechanisms acting, however, they form quite separate classes.

Myotonic dystrophy (DM) is generally known as a muscular disorder, but although the brain-specific aspects of the phenotype are understudied, they are present, largely manifesting as alterations in affect and cognitive function (Meola et al. 1999). Both major types of the disorder, DM1 and DM2, are caused by microsatellite repeat expansion mutations. In patients with the adult-onset and congenital forms of DM1, a CTG repeat unit that is normally polymorphic in the population (5—~35 tandem copies of the repeat) is expanded to >50 repeats (and up to >3000 copies). The repeat is located on chromosome 19q in the 3′-untranslated region (3′-UTR) of a protein kinase gene, DMPK, where, as CUG in the primary transcript, it has the effect of disrupting the normal splice pattern of the transcribed mRNA, which may lead to part of the muscle phenotype. The primary pathogenic effect, however, is probably related to the presence of the expanded CUG repeat tract in the primary transcription product, creating a ‘toxic RNA’ effect that acts via a dominant, gain-of-(novel)-function mechanism. Expanded transcripts are retained in the nucleus and form ‘foci’, in which RNA binding proteins such as muscleblind (MBNL) and CUG-bp are sequestered (Miller et al. 2000; Fardaei et al. 2001). This is thought to result in dilution of these and perhaps other proteins and consequently altered function of the gene products normally regulated by them.

Although the toxic RNA idea was speculative and controversial for some time, strong support for it came from the identification (Liquori et al. 2001) of a second expansion, of a CCTG repeat unit, in the ZNF9 gene on chromosome 3q in patients with DM2 (also known formerly as proximal myotonic myopathy, PROMM). The function of this gene does not appear to be directly related to muscle physiology, thus lending weight to the toxic RNA idea as being independent of the function of the gene in which the expansion occurs. In addition, no mutations other than (C)CTG expansions have been identified in any cases of DM. Both muscle and brain abnormalities, including abnormal expression of protein tau (see Section 15.4.2 below), are seen in a transgenic mouse model of DM in which the human DM region with an expanded CTG repeat has been inserted into the mouse genome (Seznec et al. 2001). A third pathogenic mechanism operating in DM1 (but not DM2) is haploinsufficiency of a homeobox gene of the Drosophila sine oculis family, SIX5, that lies immediately downstream of DMPK. The unstable CTG repeat lies within the regulatory regions of this gene, and disruption of Six5 in mouse knockout models results primarily in cataract formation (Klesert et al. 2000), a universal feature of DM1 that is consistent with the expression pattern of SIX5 (Winchester et al. 1999).

Fragile X syndrome, FRAXA, is an X-linked mental retardation syndrome caused by expansion mutations of an unstable CGG trinucleotide repeat located in the 5′-UTR of the FMR1 gene in Xq27.3. In the general population, the CGG repeat is polymorphic, with repeat numbers ranging from 7 to ~60. Towards the upper end of this distribution,
the length of ‘perfect’ (uninterrupted) repeat units is sufficient to result in instability of the repeat in the germline, and occasional mutations involving expansions into the ‘premutation’ range (~60–230 repeats) have occurred, providing a heterogeneous pool of chromosomes in the population with unstable repeats that give rise to the full mutation (230→1300 repeats) only when transmitted through the female germline (reviewed in Jin and Warren 2000). This provides the explanation for the preponderance of affected males, who have mothers with premutations. Affected females with full mutation-length repeats can occur if the X-inactivation ratio is skewed in an inclement fashion, indicating that the mutation acts in a partially genetically dominant manner. The phenotype results from reduced expression of \textit{FMR1} caused by hypermethylation of the CGG repeat, which sits close to the promoter of the gene and just downstream of a normally unmethylated CpG island, in full mutation expanded alleles only. The hypermethylation is associated with transcriptional repression of \textit{FMR1} via a chromatin-based mechanism involving deacetylation and K9 methylation of histone H3 (Coffee et al. 2002; see Section 15.3.1).

There has been considerable progress in understanding the molecular basis for the phenotype in fragile X syndrome in the past few years. The protein encoded by the gene, FMRP, has several RNA binding motifs, two KH boxes and an RGG box. A number of brain mRNAs that bind to FMRP have been identified, many of which possess sequences that form a ‘G quartet’ secondary structure element, and the translation rates of the proteins made from these mRNAs is known in some cases to be reduced (Darnell et al. 2001; Brown et al. 2001a). This translational repression may represent the main function of FMRP (Laggerbauer et al. 2001; Mazrui et al. 2002), but it also participates in transport of the same bound mRNAs from the nucleus to the dendritic translation machinery and associated cytoplasm (reviews: Job and Eberwine 2001, Connolly this volume Chapter 4), indicating that FMRP participates in a complex mechanism for provision of a pool of (a particular subset of) mRNAs for translation at appropriate locations and times. The transport complex has several protein members, some of which directly interact with FMRP, and FMRP can also be found in association with ribosomes. This may explain the severe brain phenotype (other clinical features are also present) in fragile X patients, as well as the fact that neuropathological studies have demonstrated that a downstream effect of lack of FMRP is an increase in the length and density of dendritic spines on many neurons. It is easy to see how deregulated translation of some of the mRNAs complexed with FMRP could, in its absence, lead to aberrant spine morphology and function, a feature of several brain disorders (reviewed in Hering and Sheng 2001).

15.3.3.3 \textit{Angelman syndrome}

Genomic imprinting is a growing area of interest to those interested in human disease pathology, and a number of human genetic disorders are associated with disruption of this process. Imprinted genes are expressed, in the appropriate tissues, only from the chromosome that has originated from one parent — which parent, that is, depends on
the gene and the mechanism of establishing and maintaining the imprint, which in almost all known cases involves the differential methylation of a short CpG-rich region, the differentially methylated region (DMR), which in turn is associated with spreading chromatin-level repression of neighbouring genes. In the common, but inaccurate, parlance, maternally imprinted genes are expressed from the maternally derived chromosome, but not from the paternal chromosome. Several dozen imprinted regions exist in the human and mouse genomes (mostly overlapping in gene content). Angelman syndrome, an imprinting disorder resulting from a disruption of maternal allele-specific expression, serves as a good example of the successful identification of the affected gene in one of these regions, on human chromosome 15q, while its corresponding neuronal disorder caused by disruption of paternal allele-specific expression, Prader–Willi syndrome, has so far proved resistant to all such attempts to narrow down the culprit.

Angelman syndrome (AS) is characterized by severe cognitive impairment, seizures, ataxia, and inappropriate laughter, but there are no recognized pathological features in the brains of affected individuals, so it is assumed to be a disorder of neuronal function, rather than developmental or degenerative. It can be caused by several mechanisms (see Nicholls and Knepper 2001), the majority of cases being associated with deletions of various sizes in chromosome 15q11–q13. While some of the bigger deletions disrupt the function of more than one gene in the region, thus implying that in these cases, the severe type of AS that results can be considered a ‘contiguous gene syndrome’, the majority of cases can be explained by a disorder of imprinting, since AS is only observed when inherited via an unaffected mother. The ‘converse’ disorder, Prader–Willi syndrome, which has quite separate phenotypic characteristics, results from deletions of largely the same region when inherited via an unaffected father. Some cases of AS are due to uniparental disomy (both alleles coming from one parent), corroborating the idea that it is a disorder of imprinting. The shortest regions of overlap (SRO) of deletions causing Prader–Willi and Angelman syndromes are non-overlapping and occur within and ~35 kb upstream of the promoter of the SNURF/SNRPN gene respectively. Short stretches of DNA from both these regions combined are necessary and sufficient to confer allele-specific transcriptional regulation on the whole imprinted region and constitute a bipartite ‘imprinting box’ (Shemer et al. 2000). It is now clear that the results of mutations within these regions are quite different in the two disorders, although the primary mechanism for establishing allele-specific transcriptional competence of neighbouring genes is the same.

Maternal expression of one or two genes in the region is controlled by one of the two SRO/DMRs, and the major imprinted gene affected in AS, UBE3A, was finally identified clearly in non-deletion AS cases through the discovery of several point mutations causing loss-of-function of the gene product, an E6-AP ubiquitin protein ligase (see Fang et al. 1999). The allele-specificity of expression of this gene only occurs in neurons in the brain (Yamasaki et al. 2003), although the gene is widely expressed in other tissues from both alleles, and this specificity is achieved via allele-specific methylation
of the upstream AS SRO/DMR and associated chromatin-level gene repression, as in almost all known cases of imprinting. The mechanism by which the repression leads to allele-specific expression of UBE3A is almost unique, however. UBE3A is transcribed in the opposite orientation to the neighbouring, largely paternally-expressed, genes, but expression of UBE3A primary transcript is possible from both alleles, despite methylation of the DMR on the ‘expressed’ maternal allele. The explanation for this unexpected finding was elucidated with the discovery that the transcript made from the SNURF/SNRPN promoter on the opposing DNA strand is continuous through a number of genes encoding small RNAs, and also through UBE3A itself, and is then processed in such a way as to create an ‘antisense’ RNA capable of repressing UBE3A (Rougeulle et al. 1998). This antisense transcript, which is assumed to interfere with the functioning of UBE3A via an undetermined mechanism, is only expressed from the allele with the unmethylated DMR in neurons (Yamasaki et al. 2003), thus explaining the tissue-specific imprinted status of UBE3A.

15.4 Disorders of apoptotic neuronal cell death and neurodegeneration

15.4.1 Overview of genetic disorders leading to neurodegeneration

The largest group of disorders of CNS neurons, by a considerable margin, includes those that are characterized in the pathology mainly by the occurrence of neurodegeneration. In these disorders, neurons are lost focally, regionally, or throughout the CNS as a result of activation of apoptotic pathways (see Shiels and Davies, this volume Chapter 16). A comprehensive list of degenerative disorders for which the genes responsible have been identified is presented in Tables 15.5–15.14, but for reasons of space, I have limited discussion here to two main classes, the ‘polyglutamine disorders’ and the ‘conformational neuronopathies’. Types of disorder not covered in detail, but representing most of the known examples of neurodegenerative disorders, include disorders of transcriptional regulation, chromatin-level regulation, and DNA replication and repair, such as spinal muscular atrophy (see Lefebvre et al. 1998; Monani et al. 2000), Rubinstein–Taybi syndrome, α-thalassaemia with mental retardation (ATRX), ataxia telangiectasia, and the DNA excision repair disorders including xeroderma pigmentosum and many others (Table 15.10). These illustrate the importance of genome regulation and maintenance in normal cellular function, particularly in finely-balanced cells like neurons.

Another group not covered in detail here are the ‘metabolic storage disorders’. Falling into two main categories, there are the lysosomal storage disorders, mainly resulting from recessive, loss-of-function mutations in genes encoding hydrolase enzymes (Table 15.5) or in genes encoding proteins with functions in transport, targeting and processing of lysosomal proteins (Table 15.6); and the peroxisomal disorders, such as adrenoleukodystrophy and Zellweger syndrome (Table 15.7). These are largely
### Table 15.5 Disorders of neuronal degeneration and death 1 — lysosomal storage disorders, hydrolase enzyme deficiencies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NCL Lipofuscinosis</td>
<td>Neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis</td>
<td>CLN1</td>
<td>256730</td>
<td>Palmitoyl-protein thioesterase 1</td>
<td>PPT1</td>
<td>1p32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLN2</td>
<td>204500</td>
<td>Ceroid-lipofuscinosis, neuronal 2, late infantile</td>
<td>TPP1</td>
<td>11p15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLN3</td>
<td>204200</td>
<td>Ceroid-lipofuscinosis, neuronal 3, juvenile [Batten disease]</td>
<td>CLN3</td>
<td>16p12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLN5</td>
<td>256731</td>
<td>Ceroid-lipofuscinosis, neuronal 5</td>
<td>CLN5</td>
<td>13q22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLN6</td>
<td>601780</td>
<td>Ceroid-lipofuscinosis, neuronal 6; Linclin</td>
<td>CLN6</td>
<td>15q21-q23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Progressive epilepsy with mental retardation [Northern epilepsy]</td>
<td>CLN8/EPMR</td>
<td>600143</td>
<td>CLN8</td>
<td>CLN8</td>
<td>8pter-p22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GM2 gangliosidosis type 2 [Sandhoff disease]</td>
<td>GM2-II</td>
<td>268800</td>
<td>β-hexosaminidase B</td>
<td>HEXB</td>
<td>5q13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GM2 gangliosidosis type AB [Tay-Sachs disease, AB variant]</td>
<td>GM2-III</td>
<td>272750</td>
<td>GM2-activator</td>
<td>GM2A</td>
<td>5q32-q33.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GM1 gangliosidosis type 1</td>
<td>GM1-1</td>
<td>230500</td>
<td>β-galactosidase 1</td>
<td>GLB1</td>
<td>3p21.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucocerebrosidosis</td>
<td>Gaucher disease types II/III</td>
<td>GDII/GDIII</td>
<td>230900 231000</td>
<td>Acid β-glucosidase</td>
<td>GBA</td>
<td>1q21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphatide lipidosis</td>
<td>Metachromatic leukodystrophy</td>
<td>MLD</td>
<td>250100 249900</td>
<td>Arylsulphatase A</td>
<td>ARSA</td>
<td>22q13.31-qter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prosaposin</td>
<td>PSAP</td>
<td>10q22.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphingomyelinosis</td>
<td>Niemann-Pick disease, type A [Sphingomyelin lipidosis]</td>
<td>NPA</td>
<td>257200</td>
<td>Sphingomyelin phosphodiesterase 1, acid lysosomal</td>
<td>SMPO</td>
<td>11p15.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sialidosis</td>
<td>Mucoolipidosis I; Neuraminidase deficiency</td>
<td>MLII</td>
<td>256550</td>
<td>Neuraminidase 1</td>
<td>NEU1</td>
<td>6p21.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neuraminidase deficiency with β-galactosidase deficiency [Galactosialidosis]</td>
<td>GSL</td>
<td>256540</td>
<td>Protective protein for β-galactosidase (galactosialidosis) (cathepsin A)</td>
<td>PPGB</td>
<td>20q13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucoolipidosis</td>
<td>Mucoolipidosis II; I-cell disease</td>
<td>MLII</td>
<td>252500</td>
<td>N-acetylgalcosamine-1-phosphotransferase</td>
<td>GNPTA</td>
<td>4q21-q23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucopoly-saccharidosis</td>
<td>MPS type I [Hurler and Scheie syndrome]</td>
<td>MPS I</td>
<td>252800</td>
<td>α-L-iduronidase</td>
<td>IDUA</td>
<td>4p16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPS type II [Hunter syndrome]</td>
<td>MPS II</td>
<td>309900</td>
<td>Iduronate-2-sulphatase</td>
<td>IDS</td>
<td>Xq28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPS type IIIB [Sanfilippo syndrome B]</td>
<td>MPS IIIB</td>
<td>252920</td>
<td>α-N-acetylgalcosaminidase</td>
<td>NAGLU</td>
<td>17q21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPS type VII [Sly syndrome]</td>
<td>MPS VII</td>
<td>253220</td>
<td>β-glucuronidase</td>
<td>GUSB</td>
<td>7q21.11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycosidosis</td>
<td>β-mannosidosis</td>
<td>MANB1</td>
<td>248510</td>
<td>β-mannosidase A</td>
<td>MANBA</td>
<td>4q22-q25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fucosidosis</td>
<td>230000</td>
<td>α-L-fucosidase 1</td>
<td>FUCA1</td>
<td>1p34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspartylglucosaminuria</td>
<td>AGU</td>
<td>208400</td>
<td>Aspartylglucosaminidase</td>
<td>AGA</td>
<td>4q32-q33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schindler disease</td>
<td>104170</td>
<td>α-galactosidase B</td>
<td>GALB</td>
<td>22q11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disorder type</td>
<td>Disorder</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>OMIM</td>
<td>Gene(s)</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphingolipidosis</td>
<td>Niemann–Pick disease, type C</td>
<td>NPC</td>
<td>257220</td>
<td>Niemann–Pick disease, type C1</td>
<td>NPC1</td>
<td>18q11-q12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NPC2</td>
<td>601015</td>
<td>Niemann–Pick disease, type C2</td>
<td>NPC2</td>
<td>14q24.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Niemann–Pick disease, type C2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Epididymal secretory protein 1]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucolipidosis</td>
<td>Mucolipidosis type IV</td>
<td>MLIV</td>
<td>252650</td>
<td>Mucolipin 1</td>
<td>MCOLN1</td>
<td>19p13.3-p13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sialidosis</td>
<td>Infantile sialic acid storage disorder</td>
<td>ISSD/SD</td>
<td>269920</td>
<td>Sialin</td>
<td>SLC17A5</td>
<td>6q14-q15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Salla disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>604369</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15.7 (continued) Disorders of neuronal degeneration and death 3 — peroxisomal disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>ABCD1</th>
<th>PEX1</th>
<th>PXR1</th>
<th>PEX10</th>
<th>PEX13</th>
<th>PXMP3</th>
<th>PEX3</th>
<th>PEX6</th>
<th>PEX12</th>
<th>ABCD3</th>
<th>PHYH</th>
<th>PEX7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adrenoleukodystrophy (ALD)</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 300100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zellweger syndrome (ZWS1)</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 214100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrenoleukodystrophy, autosomal neonatal form (NALD)</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 202370</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refsum disease, infantile form (IRD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 266510</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refsum disease [Hereditary motor and sensory neuropathy IV (HMSN IV)]</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 266500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondrodysplasia punctata, autosomal recessive (RCDP)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 215100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ indicates that the disorder can be caused by mutations in the indicated gene.
### Table 15.8 Disorders of neuronal degeneration and death 4 — other metabolic disorders, recessive, loss of function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polyglucosan storage</td>
<td>Lafora disease [progressive myoclonus epilepsy]</td>
<td>LD/EPM1</td>
<td>254780</td>
<td>EPM region transcript 2A; laforin</td>
<td>EPM2A</td>
<td>6q24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceramidosis</td>
<td>Farber lipogranulomatosis</td>
<td>228000</td>
<td>N-acylsphingosine amidohydrolase</td>
<td>ASAH</td>
<td>8p22-p21.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sterol synthesis</td>
<td>Mevalonicaciduria</td>
<td>251170</td>
<td>Mevalonate kinase</td>
<td>MVK</td>
<td>12q24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phenykletonuris</td>
<td>PKU1</td>
<td>261600</td>
<td>Phenylalanine hydroxylase</td>
<td>PAH</td>
<td>12q24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-methyl-3-hydroxybutyryl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency</td>
<td>300256</td>
<td>2-methyl-3-hydroxybutyryl-CoA dehydrogenase</td>
<td>HADH2</td>
<td>Xp11.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrullinaemia</td>
<td>CTNL1</td>
<td>215700</td>
<td>Arginosuccinate synthetase</td>
<td>ASS</td>
<td>9q34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesch–Nyhan Syndrome</td>
<td>LNS</td>
<td>308000</td>
<td>Hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyl transferase</td>
<td>HPRT</td>
<td>Xq26-q27.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple syrup urine disease</td>
<td>MSUD</td>
<td>248600</td>
<td>Branched-chain α-ketoacid dehydrogenase E1a/E2 subunits</td>
<td>BCKDE1A</td>
<td>19q13.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guanidinoacetate methyltransferase deficiency</td>
<td>601240</td>
<td>Guanidinoacetate methyltransferase</td>
<td>GAMT</td>
<td>19p13.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canavan disease</td>
<td>271900</td>
<td>Aspartoacylase</td>
<td>ASPA</td>
<td>17pter-p13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pantothenate kinase-associated neurodegeneration [Hallervorden–Spatz disease]</td>
<td>PKAN</td>
<td>234200</td>
<td>Pantothenate kinase 2</td>
<td>PANK2</td>
<td>20p13-p12.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphocysteinuria</td>
<td>272300</td>
<td>Sulphite oxidase</td>
<td>SUOX</td>
<td>12q13.13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-methylglutaconicaciduria, type III [Optic atrophy + syndrome]</td>
<td>MGA III</td>
<td>258501</td>
<td>Optic atrophy 3</td>
<td>OPA3</td>
<td>19q13.2-q13.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 15.9** Disorders of neuronal degeneration and cell death — dominant disorders, with gain of function or toxic proteins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder Category</th>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Triplet repeat disorders</td>
<td>Polyglutamine expansion</td>
<td>Basal ganglia disease, adult-onset</td>
<td>606159</td>
<td>Ferritin, light chain</td>
<td>FTL</td>
<td>19q13.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinobulbar muscular atrophy SBMA</td>
<td>313200</td>
<td>Androgen receptor</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Xq13-q21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Huntington disease HD</td>
<td>143100</td>
<td>Huntingtonin</td>
<td>HTT</td>
<td>4p16.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dentatorubral-pallidolysian atrophy DRPLA</td>
<td>125370</td>
<td>Atrophin-1</td>
<td>DRPLA</td>
<td>12p13.31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 1 SCA1</td>
<td>164400</td>
<td>Ataxin-1</td>
<td>ATX1</td>
<td>6p23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 2 SCA2</td>
<td>183090</td>
<td>Ataxin-2</td>
<td>SCA2</td>
<td>12q24.21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[Machado-Joseph disease]</td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 3 SCA3/MJD1</td>
<td>109150</td>
<td>Ataxin-3</td>
<td>MJD1</td>
<td>14q32.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 6 SCA6</td>
<td>183086</td>
<td>Calcium channel, voltage-</td>
<td>CACNA1A</td>
<td>19p13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gated, α1A subunit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 7 SCA7</td>
<td>164500</td>
<td>Ataxin-7</td>
<td>SCA7</td>
<td>3p21.1-p12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 12 SCA12</td>
<td>604326</td>
<td>Protein phosphatase 2,</td>
<td>PPP2R2B</td>
<td>5q31-q33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regulatory subunit B, β</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PR55B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 17 SCA17</td>
<td>607136</td>
<td>TATA box-binding protein</td>
<td>TBP</td>
<td>6q27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyleucine/Polyalanine</td>
<td>Huntington disease-like 2 HDL2</td>
<td></td>
<td>606438</td>
<td>Junctophilin-3</td>
<td>JPH3</td>
<td>16q24.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expansion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partington X-linked mental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Aristaless homologue,</td>
<td>ARX</td>
<td>Xp21.3-p21.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>retardation syndrome PRTS</td>
<td></td>
<td>309510</td>
<td>X chr.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Oculopharyngeal muscular dystrophy OPMD</td>
<td>164300</td>
<td>Poly(A)-binding protein,</td>
<td>PABPN1</td>
<td>14q11.2-q13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nuclear 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Congenital central hypoventilation</td>
<td></td>
<td>209880</td>
<td>Paired mesoderm homeobox 2B</td>
<td>PHOX2B</td>
<td>4p12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syndrome [Ondine’s curse]</td>
<td>SCA10</td>
<td></td>
<td>603516</td>
<td>Ataxin-10</td>
<td>SCA10</td>
<td>22q13-qter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other repeat disorders</td>
<td>Pentanucleotide expansion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, type 10</td>
<td></td>
<td>603516</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disorder</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>OMIM</td>
<td>Gene(s)</td>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Location</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubinstein–Taybi syndrome</td>
<td>RSTS</td>
<td>180849</td>
<td>CREB-binding protein</td>
<td>CREBBP</td>
<td>16p13.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia-telangiectasia</td>
<td>AT</td>
<td>208900</td>
<td>Ataxia-telangiectasia mutated</td>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>11q22.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia-telangiectasia-like disorder</td>
<td>ATLD</td>
<td>604391</td>
<td>Meiotic recombination 11, <em>S. cerevisiae</em>, homologue of, A</td>
<td>MRE11A</td>
<td>11q21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seckel syndrome</td>
<td>SCKL</td>
<td>210600</td>
<td>Ataxia-telangiectasia and Rad3-related</td>
<td>ATR</td>
<td>3q22-q24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cockayne syndrome, type B</td>
<td>CSB</td>
<td>133540</td>
<td>Excision-repair cross complementing</td>
<td>ERCC6</td>
<td>10q11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrooculofacioskeletal syndrome</td>
<td>COFS</td>
<td>278760</td>
<td>rodent repair deficiency, complementing group 6</td>
<td>ERCC2</td>
<td>19q13.2-q13.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichothiodystrophy</td>
<td>TTD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Excision-repair, complementing defective, in Chinese Hamster Ovary cells,</td>
<td>ERCC4</td>
<td>16p13.3-p13.13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xeroderma pigmentosum, type F</td>
<td>XPF</td>
<td></td>
<td>Excision repair, complementing defective, in Chinese Hamster, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-thalassaemia/mental retardation syndrome, X-linked</td>
<td>ATRX</td>
<td>301040</td>
<td>Helicase 2, X-linked</td>
<td>ATRX</td>
<td>Xq13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal muscular atrophy I</td>
<td>SMA1</td>
<td>253300</td>
<td>Survival motor neuron 1</td>
<td>SMN1</td>
<td>5q12.2-q13.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal muscular atrophy with respiratory distress 1</td>
<td>SMARD1</td>
<td>604320</td>
<td>Immunoglobulin µ-binding protein 2</td>
<td>IGHMBP2</td>
<td>11q13.2-q13.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia–oculomotor apraxia syndrome</td>
<td>AOA</td>
<td>208920</td>
<td>Aprataxin</td>
<td>APTX</td>
<td>9p13.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia, autosomal recessive, with</td>
<td>SCAN1</td>
<td>607250</td>
<td>Tyrosyl-DNA phosphodiesterase 1</td>
<td>TDP1</td>
<td>14q31-q32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axonal neuropathy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Börjeson–Forssman–Lehmann syndrome</td>
<td>BFLS</td>
<td>301900</td>
<td>Plant homeodomain-like finger 6</td>
<td>PHF6</td>
<td>Xq26-q27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15.10 Disorders of neuronal degeneration and cell death — disorders of DNA repair, transcriptional regulation (chromatin disorders) and RNA processing
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spastic paraplegia</td>
<td>Spastic paraplegia 4, autosomal dominant</td>
<td>SPG4</td>
<td>182601</td>
<td>Spastin</td>
<td>SPG4</td>
<td>2p22-p21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spastic paraplegia, hereditary, type 3A</td>
<td>SPG3A</td>
<td>182600</td>
<td>Atlastin</td>
<td>SPG3A</td>
<td>14q11-q21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spastic paraplegia, hereditary, type 10</td>
<td>SPG10</td>
<td>604187</td>
<td>Kinesin heavy chain</td>
<td>KIF5A</td>
<td>12q13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diabetes insipidus, neurohypophyseal type</td>
<td></td>
<td>125700</td>
<td>Arginine vasopressin</td>
<td>AVP</td>
<td>20p13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wolfram syndrome [Diabetes insipidus and mellitus with optic atrophy and deafness]</td>
<td>WFS [DIDMOAD]</td>
<td>222300</td>
<td>Wolframin</td>
<td>WFS1</td>
<td>4p16.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Choreoacanthocytosis</td>
<td>CHAC</td>
<td>200150</td>
<td>Chorein</td>
<td>CHAC</td>
<td>9q21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spastic ataxia of Charlevoix–Saguenay, autosomal recessive</td>
<td>ARSACS</td>
<td>270550</td>
<td>Sacsin</td>
<td>SACS</td>
<td>13q11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis [motor neurone disease]</td>
<td>ALS1</td>
<td>105400</td>
<td>Superoxide dismutase-1</td>
<td>SOD1</td>
<td>21q22.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, juvenile</td>
<td>ALS2</td>
<td>205100</td>
<td>Alsin</td>
<td>ALS2</td>
<td>2q33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Primary lateral sclerosis, juvenile onset; Infantile-onset ascending hereditary spastic paralysis</td>
<td>ALS2</td>
<td>JPLS; IAHSP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Giant axonal neuropathy</td>
<td>GAN</td>
<td>256850</td>
<td>Gigaxonin</td>
<td>GAN</td>
<td>16q24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cerebral ataxia, autosomal dominant</td>
<td></td>
<td>601515</td>
<td>Fibroblast growth factor 14</td>
<td>FGF14</td>
<td>13q34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia 14</td>
<td>SCA14</td>
<td>605361</td>
<td>Protein kinase C, γ subunit</td>
<td>PRKCG</td>
<td>19q13.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myoclonic epilepsy of Unverricht and Lundborg [Progressive myoclonus epilepsy]</td>
<td>EPM1</td>
<td>254800</td>
<td>Cystatin B</td>
<td>CSTB</td>
<td>21q22.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15.12 Disorders of neuronal degeneration and cell death 8 — mitochondrial DNA and respiratory chain disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>TIMM8A</th>
<th>MTTK</th>
<th>MTTL1</th>
<th>MTQ</th>
<th>MTND6</th>
<th>MTND4</th>
<th>MTND1</th>
<th>NDUFV1</th>
<th>NDUF54</th>
<th>NDUF51</th>
<th>NDUF52</th>
<th>NDUF57</th>
<th>SCO2</th>
<th>SCO1</th>
<th>COX10</th>
<th>SURF1</th>
<th>MTATP6</th>
<th>PDHA1</th>
<th>SDHA</th>
<th>BCST1</th>
<th>MTND5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Xq22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disorder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mohr–Tranebjaerg syndrome (MTS) [Dystonia-deafness syndrome]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 304700</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opticoacoustic nerve atrophy with dementia [Jensen syndrome]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 311150</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonic epilepsy with ragged-red fibres (MERRF)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 545000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitochondrial myopathy, encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke-like episodes (MELAS)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 540000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonia, familial, with visual failure and striatal lucencies [Leber optic atrophy and dystonia]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 500001</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leber optic atrophy (LHON)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMIM 535000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15.12 (continued) Disorders of neuronal degeneration and cell death 8 — mitochondrial DNA and respiratory chain disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>TIMM8A</th>
<th>MTTK</th>
<th>MTT1</th>
<th>MTTQ</th>
<th>MTD6</th>
<th>MTD4</th>
<th>MTD1</th>
<th>NDUFV1</th>
<th>NDUF54</th>
<th>NDUF58</th>
<th>NDUF51</th>
<th>NDUF52</th>
<th>NDUF57</th>
<th>SCO2</th>
<th>SCO1</th>
<th>COX10</th>
<th>SURF1</th>
<th>MTATP6</th>
<th>PDHA1</th>
<th>SDHA</th>
<th>BCS1L</th>
<th>MTND5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leigh syndrome, LS</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex I, mitochondrial respiratory chain, deficiency of [NADH:Q(1) oxidoreductase deficiency]</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex IV, mitochondrial respiratory chain, deficiency of [cytochrome c oxidase deficiency]</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardioencephalomyopathy, fatal infantile, due to cytochrome c oxidase deficiency</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuropathy, ataxia, and retinitis pigmentosa (NARP syndrome)</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency [ataxia, intermittent, with abnormal pyruvate metabolism]</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ indicates that the disorder can be caused by mutations in the indicated gene.
characterized by the accumulation of metabolites, usually the substrates for the enzymes encoded by the mutant genes, which are toxic in large quantities and lead to organellar dysfunction and swelling/vacuolation, followed by cell death. Other storage disorders involving accumulation of metabolites within the cytoplasm, such as Lafora disease, also exist (Table 15.8).

Other classes of degenerative disorder occur as a result of mitochondrial dysfunction (Tables 15.12 and 15.13), including disorders of mitochondrial iron homeostasis, like Friedreich ataxia (see Patel and Isaya 2001), and of respiratory chain dysfunction (see Smeitink et al. 2001), which lead to cell death through specific activation, or through energy stress or oxidative stress. Then there are the disorders that result from dysregulation or failure of intracellular signalling and transport mechanisms, such as several of the spastic paraplegias (Crosby and Proukakis 2002), motor neuron disease (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis; see Raoul et al. 2002 for intriguing new evidence about the apoptotic mechanism activated in ALS), some cerebellar ataxias (e.g. SCA14; Chen et al. 2003), and many others (Table 15.11). Justice cannot be done here to the many and varied mechanisms by which genetic lesions lead to activation of apoptotic pathways in these disorders.

15.4.2 Conformational neuronopathies: Alzheimer’s disease, Tauopathies, Serpinopathies, Prion disorders

A number of important disorders have the common characteristic that the neuronal pathology is associated with intra- or extracellular protein aggregates. These disorders, which include Alzheimer’s disease, Pick disease, Parkinson’s disease, and the prion diseases, might be termed ‘conformational neuronopathies’ as a major step in the pathology is the accumulation of whole proteins, or naturally processed protein fragments, synthesized in the neurons that come to adopt a destabilized and non-functional conformation through refolding. Table 15.14 lists some of these disorders.

Alzheimer disease (AD) is characterized by progressive memory loss (dementia) caused by widespread neurodegenerative loss of neurons throughout the brain. Associated with intracellular (neurofibrillary tangles), extracellular (amyloid plaques), and neuronal degeneration-linked (neuritic plaques) pathological signs, AD is considered by many to be a normal consequence of ageing processes, and deserving of its clinical disorder designation only when age of onset is early enough (i.e. presenile dementia). The large majority of cases of AD are ‘sporadic’, or at least are not thought to be the result of a single gene segregating in Mendelian fashion within the family, but progress in understanding the pathogenic mechanisms operating came from the identification, during the early and mid 1990s, of genes harbouring mutations in rare familial forms of the disorder. Mutations in these genes, encoding amyloid precursor protein (APP), and the presenilins 1 and 2, account for a tiny fraction of AD patients. The mutations are generally dominantly acting and of high penetrance with early onset, and all lead to increased production of ‘toxic’ protein fragments from APP (a variety of fragments cleaved at several sites e.g. Aβ1-42, Aβ1-40, Aβ11-42 etc.), the
Table 15.13 Disorders of neuronal degeneration and cell death — other mitochondrial disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Triplet repeat disorder</td>
<td>Friedreich ataxia</td>
<td>FRDA</td>
<td>229300</td>
<td>Frataxin</td>
<td>FRDA</td>
<td>9q13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaemia, sideroblastic, and spinocerebellar ataxia</td>
<td>Anaemia, sideroblastic, and spinocerebellar ataxia</td>
<td>ASAT</td>
<td>301310</td>
<td>ATP-binding cassette, subfamily B, member 7</td>
<td>ABCB7</td>
<td>Xq13.1-q13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spastic paraplegia 7, autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Spastic paraplegia 7, autosomal recessive</td>
<td>SPG7</td>
<td>607259</td>
<td>Paraplegin</td>
<td>SPG7</td>
<td>16q24.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spastic paraplegia 13, autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Spastic paraplegia 13, autosomal dominant</td>
<td>SPG13</td>
<td>605280</td>
<td>Chaperonin</td>
<td>HSP60</td>
<td>2q24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 15.14** Disorders with complex inheritance, polygenic/multifactorial

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder type</th>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>OMIM</th>
<th>Gene(s)</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major affective disorder 1 [Bipolar affective disorder]</td>
<td>MAFD1</td>
<td>125480</td>
<td>Several (disruption or association)</td>
<td>G72/G30</td>
<td>13q32-q33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schizophrenia</td>
<td>181500</td>
<td></td>
<td>Several (disruption or association)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amyloidopathy</td>
<td>Alzheimer disease, familial</td>
<td>AD1</td>
<td>104300</td>
<td>Amyloid precursor protein</td>
<td>APP</td>
<td>21q21.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD3</td>
<td>104311</td>
<td>Presenilin 1</td>
<td>PSEN1</td>
<td>14q24.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD4</td>
<td>600759</td>
<td>Presenilin 2</td>
<td>PSEN2</td>
<td>1q42.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alzheimer disease, sporadic</td>
<td>AD2</td>
<td>104310</td>
<td>Apolipoprotein E</td>
<td>APOE</td>
<td>19q13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FAP</td>
<td>176300</td>
<td>Angiotensinogen converting enzyme, ACE</td>
<td>DCP1</td>
<td>17q23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial amyloid polyneuropathy</td>
<td>Transthyretin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Transthyretin</td>
<td>TTR</td>
<td>18q11.2-q12.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tauopathy</td>
<td>Pick disease (PD);</td>
<td>PSP</td>
<td>172700</td>
<td>Microtubule-associated protein Tau</td>
<td>MAPT</td>
<td>17q21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Progressive supranuclear palsy;</td>
<td>FTLD/</td>
<td>601104</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Frontotemporal dementia;</td>
<td>FTDP-17</td>
<td>600274</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pallidopontonigral degeneration</td>
<td>PPND</td>
<td>168610</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prion disease</td>
<td>Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
<td>CJD</td>
<td>123400</td>
<td>Prion protein</td>
<td>PRNP</td>
<td>20p12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gerstmann-Straussler disease</td>
<td>GSD</td>
<td>137440</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Familial fatal insomnia</td>
<td>FFI</td>
<td>600072</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dementia, Lewy body</td>
<td>DLB</td>
<td>127750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serpinopathy</td>
<td>Encephalopathy, familial, with neuroserpin inclusion bodies</td>
<td>FENIB</td>
<td>604218</td>
<td>Protease inhibitor 12 (Serpin1)</td>
<td>PI12</td>
<td>3q26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synucleinopathy</td>
<td>Parkinson disease (PD)</td>
<td>PARK1</td>
<td>168600/1</td>
<td>α-synuclein</td>
<td>SNCA</td>
<td>4q21-q22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PARK2</td>
<td></td>
<td>600116</td>
<td>Parkin</td>
<td>PARK2</td>
<td>6q25.2-q27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PARK5</td>
<td></td>
<td>191342</td>
<td>Ubiquitin carboxyl-terminal esterase</td>
<td>UCHL1</td>
<td>4p14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PARK7</td>
<td></td>
<td>168600</td>
<td>Nuclear receptor, subfamily 4,</td>
<td>NR4A2</td>
<td>2q22-q23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>606324</td>
<td>Group A, member 2</td>
<td>SNCAIP</td>
<td>5q23.1-q23.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Synphilin-1</td>
<td>DJ-1</td>
<td>1p36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
primary constituents of amyloid plaques. Generation of these fragments from APP occurs via programmed proteolytic degradation of APP inserted into membranes. The identity of the β-secretase, which participates directly in the release of these fragments, was discovered in 1999 by several groups (Sinha et al. 1999; Vassar et al. 1999; Yan et al. 1999), and was important because of the therapeutic potential of inhibiting that pathway. The identity of the γ-secretase, which carries out the final processing step leading to deposition of Aβ, was a mystery, but it is now thought that the presenilins play a fundamental role in this activity, as well as their role in membrane trafficking functions in cells (Kimberly et al. 2003).

The identity of predisposing and protective genes for common, non-familial forms of AD are proving difficult to elucidate, despite some large mapping studies. Genotype at the APOE locus on chromosome 19q has been known for some time to have an influence on AD risk, and is now believed to influence age of onset more than predisposition per se (Meyer et al. 1998); the biology of ApoE and its role in neuronal functioning are discussed in many good reviews (e.g. Herz and Beffert 2000; Mahley and Rall 2000). A PSEN1 promoter polymorphism that influences levels of expression of presenilin 1 also seems to be associated with risk (Theuns et al. 2003), as does the presence of certain haplotypes of DCP1, which encodes the blood pressure modifier, angiotensin converting enzyme, ACE (Kehoe et al. 2003).

The neurofibrillary tangles seen in AD are associated with aberrantly phosphorylated forms of the microtubule associated protein tau, and recently, several related disorders have been shown to be associated with conformational aberrations of this protein. The ‘tauopathies’ (Lee and Trojanowski 1999) are caused directly by mutations in the tau encoding gene, MAPT, and include Pick’s disease and other cases of frontotemporal dementia/pallidopontonigral degeneration with or without supranuclear palsy (Goedert et al. 1998; Pickering-Brown et al. 2000; Tsuboi et al. 2002). The serpin family of serine protease inhibitors is associated with the ‘serpinopathies’ (Lomas and Carrell 2002) and at least one disorder, familial encephalopathy with neuroserpin inclusion bodies, has been associated with mutations in a member of this gene family, PI12 (Davis et al. 1999). Prion diseases, for example familial forms of Creutzfeld–Jakob disease (CJD), were associated with mutations in PRNP on chromosome 20 several years ago, but recent studies have begun to shed light on some of the puzzling aspects of these degenerative disorders, including the role of immune system factors such as complement, and the factors determining strain-specific infectivity of the conformationally aberrant protein-based agent (Johnson and Gibbs 1998; Wadsworth et al. 1999; Klein et al. 2001). Last but not least, success in understanding the aetiology of Parkinson disease (PD) has been striking over the last few years, with the identification of six genes harbouring mutations in different familial forms of the common degenerative disorder characterized by degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra pars compacta (see Table 15.14). The roles of α-synuclein (Polymeropoulos et al. 1997; Sharon et al. 2003), which is deposited in an aberrant conformational state in the Lewy bodies typically present in PD brain (hence the term ‘synucleinopathy’ for this and
related disorders), and the ubiquitin protein ligase, parkin, in protecting against α-synuclein deposition (Chung et al. 2001; Petrucelli et al. 2002; West et al. 2002), and a number of other advances in understanding, particularly of the wider role and functioning in neurons of the ubiquitin-proteasome protein processing apparatus, have occurred in recent years (reviewed in Goedert 2001; McNaught et al. 2001; Dekker et al. 2003).

15.4.3 **Polyglutamine and polyalanine tract disorders**

Similar in many ways to the disorders discussed in the last section, the ‘polyglutamine disorders’ are characterized by aggregation and deposition of proteolytically cleaved fragments of proteins. These disorders, comprising Huntington disease, Kennedy disease (spinal and bulbar muscular atrophy), and most of the spinocerebellar ataxias (generally characterized by loss of purkinje cells), amongst others (see Table 15.9 for a full list), all originate in the expansion of a trinucleotide repeat of the (CAG)n type (the mechanism is probably similar to that operating in myotonic dystrophy and fragile X syndrome). Despite the significant similarities in the phenotypes of at least some of these disorders, there appears to be nothing common to all the genes involved, many of which were novel when identified, their chromosomal locations, their sequences, their detailed expression patterns etc., save the fact that the CAG repeat is located within coding exons in each gene, and is therefore translated into a run of glutamine residues (‘polyglutamine’) in the cognate protein. Such runs are commonly found in transcription factors and other nuclear proteins, but not all the proteins encoded by the polyglutamine disorder genes are found in the nucleus, nor act in this fashion. In another reading frame the repeat encodes a polyalanine tract, and expansions of these repeats can give rise to broadly similar disorders such as Partington syndrome (yet another phenotype associated with mutations in ARX) and Ondine’s curse. An expansion of a related repeat gives rise to a disorder that is almost identical to Huntington disease and is associated with a poluleucine/polyalanine tract expansion in the junctophilin 3 gene on chromosome 16q (Holmes et al. 2001).

The pathogenic mechanism has been hard to tease out. Several mouse models have been created (reviewed in Rubinsztein 2002), the best of which involve ‘knock-ins’, i.e. creating a mouse line with its own expanded repeat in the homologous gene to that mutated in the human disorder, or transgenic insertion of non-essential genes unrelated to the disease gene, but containing expanded, polyglutamine-encoding repeats, because a major requirement is to model the dominant mode of action of these mutations. After several years and many studies, it has become near-dogma that the polypeptide aggregates, composed of polyglutamine-containing fragments of protein cleaved by the caspase/proteasomal apparatus after ubiquitination, that are observed mainly in neuronal nuclei, are pathogenic (e.g. Fan et al. 2001; Li et al. 2000; Yang et al. 2002). However, other studies have provided evidence that these aggregates, or neuronal intranuclear inclusions (NIIs), may in fact be protective against the toxic characteristics of the expanded polyglutamine tracts or the fragments containing them (e.g. Verhoef et al. 2002; Taylor et al. 2003).
Alternatively, there is evidence that the pathology does not depend on the NIIs, signs appearing in subtle form before the NIIs and other aggregates are visible. Disruption of several cellular processes have been implicated, including cAMP-responsive element binding protein (CREB)-dependent transcription (e.g. Shimohata et al. 2000). Other interesting features of these disorders, such as the differences in their cell-type specificity, are currently being teased out through the use of the mouse models and comparative studies using post mortem HD brain samples. A unifying feature of the ‘CNG’-type triplet repeat disorders may turn out to be a result of the mechanism underlying the dynamic nature of the mutations. Expansions resulting from DNA repair processes in post-mitotic neurons (and cell-type specific differences showing up in the details of this process) can probably account for the cell-type specificity, the late onset of the overt phenotype, the progressive quality of the disorders, and the correlation of severity/age-at-onset with inherited repeat size of these disorders — cellular pathology may originate only after the repeat has reached a certain threshold length during the continual process of somatic mutation through repair-induced expansion (Kennedy and Shelbourne 2000). Several good reviews can be consulted for progress in tying all these fascinating aspects of the polyglutamine disorders together (e.g. Cummings and Zoghbi 2000; Ross 2002).

15.5 Conclusion and prospects for understanding complex disorders

As is evident from the size of the tables illustrating the current list of disorders of neurons with identified genes, recent progress in understanding the genetic basis of human neuronal disease has been staggering. Understanding of the aetiology and causes of the common disorders not covered in this chapter, for example schizophrenia (e.g. Millar et al. 2000; Jacquet et al. 2002; Shifman et al. 2002; Stefansson et al. 2003), bipolar affective disorder, panic disorder (e.g. Gratacòs et al. 2001), and other anxiety-related traits, and understanding of the existence of, and basis for, ‘normal’ behavioural tendencies and traits like speech and language efficiency (e.g. Lai et al. 2001), is a revolution in waiting. Gradually these aspects of our biology are succumbing to genomic mapping, association analyses, natural gene deletion/translocation analysis etc., and the promise of the post-genomic era, pharmacogenomics, and rational drug design, may be just around the corner.

Acknowledgements

I would like to express my thanks to Tracey Neilson, who helped with typing part of the manuscript, and to colleagues in the Division of Molecular Genetics of the Institute of Biomedical and Life Sciences in the University of Glasgow for helpful discussions.
References


This page intentionally left blank
Chapter 16

Ageing and the death of neurones

Paul G. Shiels and R. Wayne Davies

16.1 Introduction

The causes of neuronal death are legion, including external environmental stresses such as mechanical damage, infectious disease, toxins, and hypoxia, and internal stresses such as free radical toxicity and genetic variation in protein synthesis, structure, and function. Some of these factors cause acute stress, while others cause chronic stress. All such causes are superimposed on a progressive inability to deal with stress as chronological age increases.

All organisms have evolved ways of handling these stresses. Stress responses need to be viewed from two perspectives, those of cellular mechanism and of organismal biology. Within the cells of each tissue, specific molecular mechanisms exist that sense damage, assess the level of stress and determine the appropriate response; either to try to repair the damage or signal the end of the cell and a need for its replacement. It is important to understand these mechanisms, how they vary between cell types, and which version exists in human neurones. However, these cellular mechanisms are adapted to the particular life strategy that each organism has adopted during evolution. The human life strategy differs considerably from that of a mouse, let alone a fruit fly or a nematode worm. Clearly, the reproductive strategy and longevity of an organism requires adaptations at the cellular and molecular level to make the strategy successful. This aspect is often ignored when considering how neurones age and die, but is key to understanding how an ostensibly post-mitotic cell type responds to damage. Surprisingly, it remains to be factored into current models of neurodegeneration.

The most celebrated model of neuronal death has been the ‘cumulative damage hypothesis’ (Coyle and Puttfarken 1993). This proposes that individual neurones accumulate fibrils and oxidative damage with time, until a damage threshold level is reached and the cell can no longer cope with the biochemical stress and dies. At the level of the organ, this predicts that neuronal death with time can be mathematically represented as a sigmoidal response curve. This model also predicts that the probability of loss of healthy neurones is proportionally dependent on the percentage of damaged neurones at any point in time. Whilst seemingly intuitive, this model has not withstood recent critical scrutiny. A new model, based upon a catastrophic loss of function
as the result of random neuronal loss, has been proposed to explain the observation that neuronal loss, in man, occurs essentially at the same rate over time, and independent of disease state progression (Clarke et al. 2000). Neither of these models considers ageing, at both the level of the cell and of the organ, as a factor to be equated into how neurones die or how this might relate to pathogenesis.

The maintenance of brain function will depend on the continued correct functioning of the organ’s support systems (glial cells, blood supply), on maintenance of individual neurone function and connectivity, and on the replacement of neurones and their connections from stem cells. The extent to which the latter occurs is currently unclear. Both differentiated neurones and stem cells will be subject to ageing processes. Most of our knowledge of these processes derives from studies in non-neural tissues. Senescence has been implicated in the pathophysiology of kidney disease (Halloran et al. 1999; Paul 1999), cardiovascular disease (Fukino et al. 2002), neurodegeneration (Calabrese et al. 2001) and the reduced survival of animals derived by nuclear transplantation (cloning) (Ogonuki et al. 2002). Here we consider what is known about the key molecular systems involved in detecting, signalling, and counteracting the damage associated with ageing, how the known systems may function in neurones and neuronal stem cells, and their relevance to neuronal death.

16.2 Concepts in ageing research

Ageing as defined by Gompertz (1825), constitutes an exponential increase in the likelihood of mortality with time. Chronological ageing manifests as declining organ mass, cellular function, and integrity with time elapsed since birth. It reflects the lifestyle of the organism, life history and the cumulative burden of oxidative insult at the molecular level (Shiels 1999).

Senescence can be applied as a concept at the cellular level or at the physiological (organ/tissue) level. Cellular senescence is studied largely in tissue culture, and the understanding gained experimentally in culture may not be entirely transferable to cells in situ in the context of an organ. Organ senescence has additional components of intrinsic ageing and of effects due to the interdependence of cell types within the organ. Figure 16.1 presents these concepts diagrammatically.

Cellular senescence in culture is characterized by a growth arrest phenotype as a consequence of stress. Typically, it is due to oxidative damage to DNA (both genomic and mitochondrial) in the form of breaks, which lead to destabilization of telomere–nucleoprotein complexes (Shiels 1999; Shiels et al. 1999a, b), and to damage to other cellular components in the form of protein oxidation, lipid peroxidation, and a consequential elevation in cellular responses to stress (Linskens et al. 1995). Significantly, these changes occur independently of the chronological age of the organism at the time of tissue isolation for cell culture. However, cell types can and do vary in their senescence characteristics. It is pertinent to note that such a stress response phenomenon is not limited to replicative cells. If the senescence phenotype is assessed in terms of a standard group of molecular changes (rather than growth arrest), it can also
be seen to occur in post-mitotic cells, such as hepatocytes or neurones. Essentially, this will be determined by the level of stress to which the cell is exposed. Sub-lethal stress will result in ‘stasis’ (STimulation And Stress Induced Senescence; Section 16.5), while lethal levels will result in apoptosis or necrosis, with consequent effect on brain physiology in the case of neurones. This is illustrated in Fig. 16.1 and discussed further below.

Senescence at the level of the organ/tissue will be reflected in declining physiological capacity and a decreased ability to withstand insult. This will be a direct reflection of

---

**Fig. 16.1** Paths to Senescence. Cellular stresses can lead to cell loss through apoptosis or carriage of the damage if it is sub-lethal. Both processes will accelerate physiological senescence. Damage carried as wear and tear will lead to accelerated cellular senescence or to stasis and can lead to pro-inflammatory changes. These overlapping processes will weaken cells so as to predispose them to disease when subject to further stress (e.g. oxidative damage, hydrodynamic stress, trophic stress).
chronological ageing in combination with cellular mechanisms of senescence, influencing both organ function and structure. This is not envisaged as a uniform process, but the degree to which structure and function are affected will be a consequence of the numbers and location of senescent cells within the organ, any decline in mass with chronological age and critically, any cell loss due to insult. Each organ has multiple cell types, including cells in blood and lymph vessels that supply and drain it, that are subject to differential stresses and exist in different molecular states of differentiation. Cellular stresses will lead to cell loss through apoptosis, or to the organ carrying damaged and sub-functional cells if the damage is sub-lethal. Early failure of one cell type will both impose more demand on the remaining functional cells of that type, and have knock-on effects on other cell types as well, leading to accelerated senescence and predisposing to inflammatory changes. An organ will only be as good as its least senescence resistant cell type.

16.3 Damage, repair and disposal

If a cell were not exposed to physical or chemical damage, or if it were able to efficiently sense and repair all damage rapidly and completely, there is no reason why it should not continue functioning indefinitely in a hospitable environment. Unfortunately, both the external environment and the cell’s own metabolism generate damage. The internal damage is widely thought to be due to oxidative stress caused by various free radical species that can be generated by elements of the normal biochemistry of the cell, such as complex III of the electron transport chain in mitochondria, flavoproteins, cytochrome p450 and other oxidases (for a review with a neuronal focus see: Ischiropoulos and Beckman 2003). The electron flow through these processes is tightly coupled to avoid partial reduction of free oxygen, but any interference, such as uncoupling of complex 1 or genetic defects in cytochrome oxidase in mitochondria, can contribute to neuronal degeneration (Swerdlow et al. 1996; Davis et al. 1997). Other enzymes of neuronal relevance that generate free radicals are nitric oxide synthase (NOS) and prostaglandin H synthase. Inflammatory cells also contribute significantly to the free radicals within an organ. The major free radicals present under physiological conditions are reactive oxygen species (ROS), such as superoxide (O$_2$$^{-}\cdot$), hydroxyl radicals (OH$^\cdot$), and alkoxy radicals (RO$^\cdot$), and reactive nitrogen species such as ONOO$^\cdot$, NO$^\cdot$, and NO$_2^\cdot$. Hydrogen peroxide (H$_2$O$_2$) is also produced. Neither superoxide nor hydrogen peroxide is extremely toxic, and it has been argued (Beckman 1994) that the peroxynitrite radical (ONOO$^\cdot$), which can be rapidly formed when superoxide and NO are in the same cellular compartment, and reacts strongly with proteins to form nitrotyrosine, is most likely to mediate neurotoxicity. Peroxynitrite has been shown to inactivate the dopamine transporter in a neuronal cell line in culture (Park et al. 2002); this is a correlate of MPTP killing of dopaminergic neurons. However, the actual source of the free radicals supposed to effect damage remains unclear.
These radicals are used by living systems for many biologically useful purposes, including signalling, enzyme function, phagocytic killing, and regulation (Halliwell 1999). Unfortunately, they can oxidatively damage all major macromolecules of the cell. Cells vary widely in their activity and in their use of glycolysis, mitochondrial, or other electron transport for energy generation, which as we shall see below can be crucial for the level of oxidative damage generated. Certain cells have specialized biochemistry that makes them more vulnerable. A neuronal example is that of dopaminergic neurones, because the degradation pathway of excess dopamine gives rise to o-quinones, which are neurotoxic because of the formation of the dopamine o-hydroquinone free radical, which reacts with proteins to make quinoproteins (Smythies and Galzigna 1998). It is no coincidence that these neurones are the first to die in the face of a variety of stresses.

Cells have several defence mechanisms against free radical damage. In the nervous system there is a need for extracellular antioxidants, because H₂O₂ is produced (e.g. by NOS) and is freely diffusible. The major extracellular antioxidant is ascorbate (Grünewald 1993), which is released with some neurotransmitters (e.g. glutamate). Carnosine is also packaged in synaptic vesicles with transmitter and co-released, while glutathione is released by astrocytes. Some neurotransmitters, such as dopamine, have antioxidant activity at synapses where they are released. Within the cell there are a number of antioxidant defence systems, ranging from low molecular weight agents such as polyphenols, tocopherol, carotenoids, glutathione, bilirubin, ubiquinol, melatonin, and lipoic acid, to proteins, including both iron and copper sequestration proteins (transferrin, lactoferrin, ferritin, haemopexin, caeruloplasmin) and enzymes such as superoxide dismutase, catalase, peroxiredoxins, thioredoxins, glutaredoxins, and glutathione peroxidases, that convert free radicals into harmless chemicals or inactivate them (Halliwell 1999). If damage nevertheless occurs, the cell can either repair the damage, or dispose the damaged molecule. Thus DNA damage sensing and DNA repair mechanisms are crucial, as is their efficient application both in the nucleus and mitochondrion. Currently, we know very little about the DNA repair system of neurons. The mitochondrial DNA of neurons is able to replicate. On the one hand, this means that mitochondrial DNA can be repaired during replication, but on the other hand there is a danger of conversion to the mutant form and propagation of mutant DNA molecules in the population of mitochondria in the cell. Damage to nuclear DNA can only be detected and repaired by mismatch recognition and repair systems in neurons. There are many unanswered questions in this area.

Our knowledge of protein damage recognition and disposal mechanisms also comes from non-neuronal cells, and is patchy. Proteins that are damaged and unable to fold correctly are thought to be recognized by chaperones and tagged by ubiquitin for disposal through the proteasome system. Proteins that are damaged after folding can be removed by the ubiquitinization–proteasome system, or via regular cycling through endosomal compartments, and shunting of damaged molecules into lysosomes for degradation. It is not clear whether these processes are random or partially selective.
Whichever it is, proteins that cycle faster will be less likely to be a source of problems for the cell when damaged, as they will be cleared and replaced. Proteins that remain in place for long periods, such as some components of the postsynaptic density including NMDA receptors, will be more vulnerable, and may require special damage-sensing systems. At the level of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), a molecular response to stress caused by the local accumulation of unfolded or misfolded proteins, which can lead to apoptosis, has been partially characterized. There are two components to this stress response. ER stress sensor proteins called IREs (Kaufman 1999) mediate ER stress signals, recruiting TRAF2 (TNF receptor-associated factor 2), which in turn recruits and activates the proximal components of the c-Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) pathway (Urano et al. 2000). ER stress also leads to the activation of genes of the unfolded protein response (UPR), which either improves protein folding or results in cell death. Components of the UPR are ATF6, BiP, and caspase 12. ATF6 resides at the ER membrane, is processed on induction of ER stress, translocates to the nucleus and activates transcription of the gene encoding the Grp78/BiP chaperone protein. If the response proves unable to repair the cause of the stress, an apoptotic pathway is activated, with caspase 12, which is located in the outer ER component (Nakagawa et al. 2000). Experimentally, this pathway can be induced by tunicamycin, which inhibits N-linked glycosylation.

Clearly, the protein degradation systems of the cell — proteasomes and lysosomes and associated molecules — will be crucial to long-term survival, and we would expect neurones to have active disposal systems. Indeed, partial failure of the ubiquitin tagging system for protein removal results in the eventual death of the most vulnerable neuronal type, dopaminergic neurons. For example, mutations in the parkin gene, encoding an E3 ubiquitin ligase, cause very early onset of Parkinson’s disease, while mutations in the gene encoding UCH-L1 (ubiquitin carboxy-terminal hydrolase) also give rise to Parkinson’s disease. Damaged lipids are also processed in lysosomes. Lysosomes have been reported to be particularly susceptible to free radical oxidative stress (Bahr and Bendiske 2002), and loss of lysosomal as well as proteasomal processing capacity is likely to be a factor in the onset of diseases of ageing involving protein aggregation (Section 16.10 and Bailey, this volume Chapter 15) and ageing itself.

A further disposal mechanism of the cell is the sequestration of damaged cellular components, dangerous chemical constituents, or excess proteins that are difficult to process, in disposal organelles or cellular inclusion bodies. The quinone by-products of dopamine degradation are further converted into the inert neuromelanin polymer, and stored as pigment granules, giving adult human substantia nigra cells their characteristic black colour. It has been suggested (Cheng et al. 1996) that dopamine quinone is normally degraded by 5-cysteinylation and 5-glutathionization, and that only in times of severe oxidative stress, when the cysteine and glutathione pool is depleted, is quinone shunted into neuromelanin biosynthesis. It is likely that the characteristic Lewy bodies of Parkinson’s disease (and some other syndromes) are the cell’s way of...
sequestering a protein — in this case alpha synuclein — that is difficult to clear from the cell. The neurones that sequester alpha synuclein best may survive longest, which is why all remaining dopaminergic neurons have Lewy bodies on autopsy. This certainly applies to triplet repeat diseases such as Huntington’s disease and spinocerebellar ataxia 1 (SCA1), where there is clear evidence that the formation of inclusion bodies containing the polyQ-proteins is not required for the disease process (Saudou et al. 1998; Klement et al. 1998; review Kim and Tanzi 1998). Nevertheless, the occurrence of such inclusions is an indication that something out of the usual requires disposal. Clearly, stress from damaged or unwanted proteins is a significant factor in cellular ageing and pathogenesis (review: McNaught and Olanow 2003). One of the indicators of cellular ageing is the accumulation of a substance called lipofuscin, which is derived from mitochondrial membrane material, in lysosomal compartments (Brunk and Terman 2002).

16.4 **Ageing and the MTR trinity**

Until recently it was not clear which elements of molecular cell biology played the key role in assessing the ageing damage process and making decisions on cell fate dependent on that assessment. From an adult neuronal perspective, achieving long-term cell survival would seem to be the primary goal. However, it is important to remember that for many cell types a mechanism for measuring the age of a cell, allowing it to be disposed of before things go badly wrong, is paramount. Thus, when considering the evidence for ageing detection and decision making systems from various cell types, it should be realized that only a subset of these mechanisms may apply in mature neurones.

A number of distinct, but not mutually exclusive components of ageing damage detection and response exist. The key players are the mitochondrion, telomere nucleo-protein complexes, and the rDNA cluster, which form an interactive trinity. Their interactions integrate energy production, protein synthesis, and DNA integrity. As discussed below, the telomere nucleo-protein complexes are part of the sensor system for DNA damage, the mitochondrion generates energy and plays a major part in apoptotic cell death mechanisms, and rDNA controls energy utilization via ribosome production while being in balance with the telomere for protein complex binding. Any dramatic change in the components of this trinity has drastic consequences for the cell. For example, telomere erosion leads to premature cell death, and rDNA hypersynthesis can produce a sink for the telomere nucleo-protein complex, exposing the telomere with the same consequence. Since defects in any of these components will accelerate ageing, they can be regarded as contributing to the ageing process, and several models of ageing have been proposed with one or the other of the trinity on centre stage. Some molecular components of the DNA damage-sensing system are shown in Fig. 16.2.
Telomeres as molecular triggers for stress responses

Telomeres are nucleoprotein complexes found at the ends of eukaryotic chromosomes. In mammals, they comprise a dynamic complex of proteins bound to stretches of a simple DNA repeat (TTAGGG)\textsuperscript{n} (Moyzis \textit{et al.} 1988). Traditionally, they have been ascribed three roles, namely (i) capping the chromosome to prevent end-to-end attachments; (ii) distinguishing the chromosome end from a damage-related DNA break, thus protecting it from nuclease action; and (iii) ensuring the complete replication of chromosome ends.

The telomeric DNA component of human chromosomes in dividing somatic cells erodes with increasing chronological age. This is due to a combination of incomplete

---

**Fig. 16.2** DNA damage responses: a simplified schematic representation of DNA damage response pathways. Telomerase and the alternative lengthening of telomeres (ALT) system maintain telomere length unless inactive. Telomere erosion in the soma or DNA damage will result in repair complexes being recruited to the site of damage. This will result in up-regulation of relevant genes (e.g. XRCC5, G22P1). Heavy damage will perturb telomere structure resulting in up-regulation of its protein components (e.g. hPOT1) in an attempt to maintain structural integrity. SIRT1, acting as a negative regulator of p53 function, will then act as a surrogate sensor of the level of damage. Too much damage and p53 will be activated via decreased SIRT1 expression setting off an apoptotic cascade. If the damage level is sub-lethal, then the cell will carry it as wear and tear and may enter senescence via p21/p16 activation. The role of free telomere binding proteins (e.g. hPOT1) as direct effectors of this pathway is still unproven.

16.4.1 Telomeres as molecular triggers for stress responses

Telomeres are nucleoprotein complexes found at the ends of eukaryotic chromosomes. In mammals, they comprise a dynamic complex of proteins bound to stretches of a simple DNA repeat (TTAGGG)\textsuperscript{n} (Moyzis \textit{et al.} 1988). Traditionally, they have been ascribed three roles, namely (i) capping the chromosome to prevent end-to-end attachments; (ii) distinguishing the chromosome end from a damage-related DNA break, thus protecting it from nuclease action; and (iii) ensuring the complete replication of chromosome ends.

The telomeric DNA component of human chromosomes in dividing somatic cells erodes with increasing chronological age. This is due to a combination of incomplete
replication of the chromosome ends and nuclease action (Harley et al. 1990; Karlseder et al. 2002). In germ cells and stem cells, however, this is counteracted by the action of the holo-enzyme telomerase, which facilitates the addition of fresh telomeric repeats onto the chromosome end. In somatic cells, telomere erosion is considered to be an anti-neoplastic mechanism that functions as a mitotic clock, which eventually signals cell death. It is worth noting that rodents, with their short lifespans, are not concerned with avoiding neoplasms, and have both long telomeres and telomerase in somatic cells.

Telomere shortening has been causally implicated in human disease and by general implication, the physiological ageing process in higher animals (Harley et al. 1990; Allsopp et al. 1992; Oexle and Zwirner 1997). The reason for this is that telomeric proteins form part of a damage-sensing and signalling system. DNA damage checkpoint proteins, which are highly conserved (e.g. Ku70-Ku80, Mre11-Rad50-Nbs1), detect DNA damage including double-strand breaks, and form signalling cascades that inhibit mitosis in dividing cells and can either facilitate DNA repair or apoptosis, dependent on the level of damage (Fig. 16.2). Telomere nucleo-protein complexes store all the DNA repair system proteins and DNA damage checkpoint proteins for the cell apart from those acting on the DNA at any given time (Nugent et al. 1998; Zhu et al. 2000). Remarkably, these proteins do not recognize telomere ends as double-strand breaks but as special structures to be maintained, and they have also been shown to contribute to telomere maintenance (Khanna and Jackson 2001; Nakamura et al. 2002). As discussed below, the status of the telomere nucleo-protein complex is signalled to the mitochondrion. An inability to respond to, or repair damage properly can result in accelerated ageing. Segmental progeric conditions, such as Werners’ syndrome, Blooms’ syndrome, and Hutchinson–Guilfords’ disease — all result from the dysfunction of an individual telomeric protein. In mice, knock out of the telomerase coding sequence resulted in progressive loss of telomeric DNA and progeria (Blasco et al. 1997). Reintroduction of telomerase reversed both these effects (Samper et al. 2001). Knock out of the double-strand break repair and telomeric-binding protein XRCC5 similarly results in accelerated ageing in mice, highlighting the importance of these structures to cellular and organ integrity.

### 16.4.2 Mitochondrial damage and ageing

Mitochondrial oxidative damage is a strong correlate of ageing. A decrease in mitochondrial respiratory activity and an increase in mitochondrial mutations and fragmentation have been positively associated with increasing age (Harman 1972; Linnane et al. 1989, 1990; Hayakawa et al. 1992). It seems probable that mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA), located as it is close to a major source of free radicals, will suffer oxidative damage first, but there is no direct evidence of this, and we know even less about mitochondria in neurones. The pronounced age-related accumulation of 8-OhdG in mtDNA relative to nuclear DNA (Hayakawa et al. 1992, 1993), and a correlation with a decline in the activity of the mitochondrial electron transfer chain...
(Takasawa et al. 1993) does support such a hypothesis. Oxidative damage to mtDNA may have pronounced effects, as mitochondria in post-mitotic cells maintain the capacity to replicate (Menzies and Gold 1971), potentially allowing the multiplication of mutant genotypes. Respiratory deficiency and degeneration may also arise as a consequence of mitochondrial electron leak and an inability to degrade damaged mitochondrial macromolecules, which accumulate in lipofuscin (Brunk and Terman 2002). These processes may exacerbate physiological senescence, as cells with mitochondrial genomes carrying even low levels (<1%) of loss of function mutations have been proposed to use plasma membrane electron transport as a compensatory mechanism (deGrey 2002). This generates ROS on the outside of the cell and amplifies the effects of oxidant stress (deGrey 2002). The results of elevated stress resulting from mitochondrial mutations have also been observed clinically in patients with mitochondrial myopathy (Ozawa et al. 1995) and in murine models of mitochondrial disease (Esposito et al. 1999). Accelerated telomere erosion has also been observed in human mitochondrial diseases (Oexle and Zwirner 1997). However, while many aspects of this hypothesis seem intuitive, evidence in support of it still remains largely circumstantial. It remains unclear whether mitochondrial DNA, proteins, and lipids are really the primary site of early oxidative damage in the cell. Indeed, evidence from caloric restriction studies in yeast (Section 16.4.3) indicates that emphasizing energy production via the mitochondrial electron transport chain is actually beneficial and increases longevity. However, the role of the mitochondrion in apoptosis, once damage becomes severe, is well established.

16.4.3 rDNA, ageing and Sirtuins

Yeast mutants for the SGS 1 gene, which codes for a RecQ-like helicase, senesce prematurely. The RecQ-like helicase plays a role in recombination-mediated telomere rebuilding. These mutants not only affect telomere maintenance, but also have a dramatic effect on rDNA, demonstrating the link between telomeres and rDNA. What is observed is the accumulation of extrachromosomal rDNA circles (ERCs) in mother cells following successive asymmetric cell divisions (Sinclair et al. 1997). Since the rDNA has the same sequences as the telomere for protein complex binding, the accumulation of ERCs results in competition for telomere-binding proteins and deprotection of the telomeres, leading to cell death (Sinclair et al. 1997). It is not clear how the release of telomere proteins on telomere erosion leads to ERC formation, but this may be due to nucleosome destabilization, increased transcription, and an enhanced opportunity for recombination to occur within the repeat unit, releasing ERCs. In man, mutation in SGS1 orthologues leads to the segmental progerias, Werners', Blooms' and Rothmund–Thomson syndromes (Gangloff et al. 2000). There is currently no evidence for the occurrence of ERCs in man, so the effects of these mutations may relate only to their effect on telomere length maintenance: this is significant since neurones are severely affected in these progerias.
Significantly, nucleolar fragmentation and a disruption of silencing complexes at telomeres accompany the accumulation of ERCs (Sinclair et al. 1997). These complexes are composed of Sir (Sirtuin) proteins, one of which, SIR2, regulates ageing in yeast and enhanced life span due to caloric restriction (Lin et al. 2000; Luo et al. 2001). In man, seven SIR 2 homologues (SIRT 1–7) have been identified. These appear to be NAD-dependent deacetylases. SIRT 1 is a negative regulator of p53, which promotes cell survival under stress (Vaziri et al. 2001). DNA damage is known to induce p53 expression and consequentially potentiate growth arrest. SIRT2 is an NAD(+-) dependent tubulin deacetylase. SIRT3 is an NAD-dependent deacetylase localized to mitochondria (Onyango et al. 2002). SIRT7 may have a role in the control of cell proliferation and is found to be up-regulated in thyroid cancer. The functions of these sirtuins require further study, and the roles of the other three sirtuins remain to be defined.

Recent observations in the nematode worm Caenorhabditis elegans indicate that strains carrying extra copies of the SIR2 orthologue, sir-2.1, exhibit an extended life span, in keeping with the observations in yeast (Tissenbaum and Guarente 2001). It is reasonable to expect that a similar situation will be found in mammals. If there is ERC formation, or indeed amplification of rDNA in any form with ageing, this would reduce the available SIR2 and lead to reduced life span. ERCs have already been detected in a number of metazoans, though they have not been correlated with ageing (Lumpkin et al. 1985). However, a direct correlation in mammals may not be forthcoming readily, given the increased number of sequence homologues for SIR2 and potential multiple functions.

Any direct link is more readily found with respect to caloric restriction (CR), where the NAD dependency of Sir 2 function may link energy production to life span. Interestingly, in yeast CR appears to promote longevity through driving carbon metabolism towards the mitochondrial TCA cycle thus increasing respiration. This results in a reduction in the rate of glycolysis and an increase in the rate of electron transport, with concomitant oxidation of NADH to NAD in mitochondria and the activation of Sir2 (Lin et al. 2002). The role of the mitochondrial electron transport chain is pivotal, as its disruption prevents the CR associated longevity. It should be noted that this implies that the mitochondrial electron transport chain (unless perturbed) is not the source of the free radicals that actually do damage, and that the faster and better it functions the longer the cell lives. Thus the simple expectation that cells with high levels of mitochondrial activity, such as many key neurones in the brain, e.g. cortical pyramidal cells, are necessarily more at risk may not be true.

Importantly, CR does not appear to increase resistance to oxidative stress during the replicative life span in yeast. Reactive oxygen species (ROS) do, however, appear to affect survival of stationary phase yeast and post-mitotic dipteran and nematode cells. These observations are relevant to ageing in mammals, where increases in anti-oxidant enzyme levels associated with CR may no longer per se be viewed as a direct cause of
the longevity, but of CR driving carbon into the TCA, thus increasing respiration. Gene expression profiling in mouse appears to support this scenario (Lee et al. 1999).

16.5 Comparative biology of ageing

Contemporary models of ageing have been formulated from in vitro observations on replicative cells and extrapolated to the level of the organism. This is not a straightforward process and is complicated by the comparative biology of the organisms used to derive the respective models. Rodent models of ageing, however, may provide a powerful paradigm of how post-mitotic human cells age.

Human replicative senescence is characterized by incremental telomere erosion, which acts as a counting mechanism for determining when a cell should enter growth arrest. Growth arrest is reached after a finite number of cell divisions, a point termed the Hayflick limit (Shay and Wright 2000). This is postulated to minimize the proliferation of mutated cells that may give rise to tumours in a long-lived mammal such as man.

Rodents, however, with a high metabolic rate and associated short lifespan, have a different telomere biology. Their telomeres are typically much longer than man (terminal restriction fragment lengths of 20–150 kb versus 5–20 kb for man) and their somatic cells express the enzyme telomerase. Murine cells do not show replicative senescence in culture. They do, however, undergo growth arrest. This is not based upon telomere shortening, but culture stresses producing a ‘stasis’ phenotype that mimics replicative senescence, as described for human cells. The term stasis corresponds to Stimulation And Stress Induced Senescence, not replicative senescence. It is a term formulated to reconcile seemingly conflicting human and murine in vitro data on growth arrest phenotypes (Wright and Shay 2002). Its translation to a neuronal setting seems appropriate as it does not involve replicative processes. In this respect, rodent models of ageing, remain valid for the study of stress responses and their effect on cell and organ function. Common stress response pathways exist despite the differing telomere biology.

The involvement of neuronal stasis in neurodegenerative processes requires critical testing. Recent data from Atm–/– (ataxia-telangiectasia mutated) and Terc (telomerase RNA component) –/– deficient mice indicates that telomere dysfunction has a critical influence on organ homeostasis and ageing, providing strong in vivo support for such a hypothesis (Wong et al. 2003). Atm has a central role in signalling the presence of double-strand DNA breaks, and in the co-ordination of the appropriate checkpoint response functions, linked in part to ATM-directed phosphorylation of p53 and many DNA damage response proteins (Kastan and Lim 2000). This shows the central role of DNA damage sensing in controlling ageing damage. Atm–/– mice show only modest neuronal and premature ageing effects, much less than in man. However, mice doubly mutant for Atm and the telomerase RNA component Terc show dramatically accelerated telomere erosion, genomic instability, and progressive neurodegeneration; most significantly, this occurs in conjunction with depleted neural stem cell reserves and impaired cell function (Wong et al. 2003). The additional Terc–/– mutation is required to move the phenotype into the range of the human Atm–/– syndrome, reflecting the
different somatic expression of telomerase in these species. These mice displayed compromised organ function, accelerated physiological senescence, and premature death.

16.6 **Telomere binding protein-links to mitochondria and rDNA**

The functional triumvirate of the telomere, mitochondrion and rDNA allows the cell to tie in damage responses to energy production and utilization. The common bonds between the three appear to centre on p53.

The telomere acts as a sink for DNA repair proteins, such as XRCC5 and G22P1, damage signalling components, such as the Sirtuins and damage checkpoint regulators such as ATM. In response to genotoxic insult, these proteins un-dock initiating damage signalling and facilitate repair (Fig. 16.2). The degree of protein loss from the telomere may act as an indicator of damage levels, initiating apoptosis, growth arrest, or repair. How this is actually achieved remains unproven and a number of hypotheses exist. These either espouse that (i) critically shortened telomeres are unable to recruit sufficient telomeric proteins to form a functional cap, thus exposing a free broken DNA end to nuclease action, or (ii) it is the shortened telomere repeat stretch *per se*, or a resulting increase in the availability of free telomeric proteins arising through loss of substrate sites, that engenders the necessary signals.

Recent observations indicate that for replicative senescence, the critical factor is the length of the single-strand telomeric overhang (Stewart *et al.* 2003). It is conceivable however, that these hypotheses are not mutually exclusive and that both loss of sequence and availability of free telomeric proteins contribute to damage responses and pathogenesis.

Loss of SIRT 1 from the telomere results in activation of p53 (Langley *et al.* 2002). Human SIR2 deacetylates p53 and antagonizes PML/p53-induced cellular senescence (Vaziri *et al.* 2001). G22P1, the partner of XRCC5, suppresses Bax and prevents apoptosis, unless damage is sufficiently great. As a consequence, these two protein families tie the telomere directly to the mitochondrion and to the initiation of damage responses. It is pertinent to note that XRCC5 knock out mice exhibit neurodegeneration, ataxia, limb rigidity, and tremor as a consequence of accelerated physiological ageing (Karanjawala *et al.* 2002). A further link may be via the activity of SIRT3, which localizes to the mitochondrion, and appears to be a NAD(+) dependent histone deacetylase analogous to SIRT1 (Onyango *et al.* 2002).

The activities of sirtuins also tie in the regulation of ribosome production to telomere and mitochondrial responses to damage, via p53 activation, as p53 forms part of a complex interacting with ribosomal proteins L5 and 5SrRNA (Marechal *et al.* 1994).

16.7 **How does telomere biology link to apoptosis and necrosis?**

Two principal mechanisms are thought to contribute to neuronal loss, these being apoptosis and necrosis. The molecular mechanisms underpinning these processes are
still incompletely understood. Apoptosis occurs as a consequence of genotoxic insult, leading to mitochondrial dysfunction and destabilization of telomere nucleo-protein complexes. The former is well documented in neurobiological literature. The latter, by virtue of a more traditional association with replicative cell biology, has been neglected.

What these processes share in common with senescence is that they use the same damage signalling and sensing mechanisms. In essence they may represent one end of a spectrum of damage responses, dependent upon the degree of damage accrued by the neurone.

16.7.1 Neuronal apoptosis

Apoptosis (Fig. 16.3) is a set of programmed and ATP-dependent cell death pathways, and results in the formation of apoptotic bodies containing the degraded contents of the dead cell, with no resultant inflammatory response. Apoptosis in neurones is typically a p53 dependent process, resulting from cellular stress, inclusive of trophic factor withdrawal and the action of ROS. Typically, these potentiate loss of mitochondrial membrane integrity and thus the release of cytochrome c into the cytosol with

![Fig. 16.3](image-url) Apoptotic pathways in mammals. Lethal stress initiates a number of possible mechanisms to effect cell death responses. Typically, these are p53 dependent but may be dependent on (cytochrome c mediated), or independent of (AIF mediated) caspase action.
consequent activation of the apoptosome. Cytochrome c release is regulated by the antagonist actions of the pro- and anti-apoptotic gene families, typified by Bax and Bcl-2 respectively. Of these, Bax is upregulated during p53-mediated damage responses, while Bcl-2 is repressed (review: Hengarter 2000).

ROS can trigger the expression of p53-induced genes (PIGs) and multiple signalling cascades, inclusive of PKC MAPKs PLCs, tyrosine kinases, ras and PLC in neurons (Yuan and Yanker 2000). Activation of signalling cascades is complex and may in part determine how the neuron assesses the nature, level, and response to the stress.

A further level of complexity is determined by the composition of the apoptosome. Mammals have at least 14 caspases, two of which appear critical to the functioning of the neuronal apoptosome, namely caspase 9 and caspase 3. Cytochrome c release from the mitochondrion, results in the formation of the cytochrome c-Apaf-1-caspase 9 complex. This induces caspase 9 activation and in turn, caspase 3 activation, resulting in apoptosis. The importance of these two caspases is emphasized by the fact that murine null mutants for either caspase 3 or caspase 9 display extensive neuronal defects as a consequence of improper regulation of neuronal apoptosis during development (Kuida et al. 1996, 1998). Significantly, Apaf-1 null mutants show a similar phenotype (Cecconi et al. 1998). We note that adult neurones may not necessarily use the same apoptosis system.

Neurones also employ a caspase independent form of apoptosis. Apoptosis-inducing factor (AIF) is a mitochondrial effector of apoptotic cell death. AIF is a flavoprotein of relative molecular mass 57,000, with homology to bacterial oxidoreductases (Susin et al. 1999). It normally resides in the inter-membrane space of the mitochondria. Induction of apoptosis results in AIF translocation to the nucleus, where it causes large-scale DNA fragmentation and cell death.

Critically for neurones, commitment to apoptosis is dependent on the nature and level of stress and the ability of the cell to respond to it. The latter will be influenced extensively by cell type, chronological age, and developmental status. Chronologically old cells will be less robust by virtue of cumulative oxidative insult. Cell type may be influential in this respect, as cells with higher metabolic requirements may have an enhanced level of oxidative damage products (but see 16.4.3 above). Differential sensitivity to stress during development, with changes in the degree of damage that triggers apoptosis, is also a well-documented feature of neurones (Pettmann and Henderson 1998; Romero et al. 2003).

16.7.2 Necrosis

Necrosis (Fig. 16.4) results from extreme adverse stimuli that precipitate significant changes in the cellular microenvironment (e.g. exposure to toxins, ischaemia) leading to cell death. This type of cell death is not as controlled as apoptosis, and does not give rise to apoptotic bodies within the cell. The extent of cell loss due to necrosis is typically large and does not exhibit cell specificity. Significantly, necrosis results in complete disintegration of the affected cells, release of the intracellular contents to the extracellular medium and an associated inflammatory response.
It is not known whether there is a link between the telomere DNA damage sensing system and necrosis. It seems likely that a strong stress or a combination of stresses will release the telomere bound-proteins very rapidly, with dramatic effects on the mitochondrion and cellular DNA.

Neuronal necrosis appears to be effected by an increase in cytosolic Ca$^{2+}$, which activates lytic enzymes, such as calpains, and influxes the mitochondrion, inhibiting the respiratory cycle and the energy production processes (Kim et al. 2003) Changes in the mitochondrial status associated with the excessive increase in mitochondrial Ca$^{2+}$ leads to an increase in the production of ROS. Concomitant with these processes is the activation of nitric oxide synthase (NOS) which in turn leads to nitric oxide (NO) production. A consequence of this is that NO and ROS combine to produce peroxinitrite radicals. These are excessively toxic agents that mediate extensive cell damage. The necrosis system is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 16.4.

16.8 **How might stasis contribute to pathogenesis?**

Given the key actions of cell cycle regulatory proteins in classical damage response pathways and their role as effectors in neuronal death, it would be surprising to find...
neurones fixed in a terminally differentiated state. A more likely situation would be to find that neurones had the capacity to re-enter the cell cycle, albeit a capacity that did not allow completion of that cycle. Such a situation would facilitate dynamism at telomeric nucleo-protein complexes, and thus damage detection, assessment, and repair involving telomeric proteins.

Precedent for such a hypothesis can be found in a study of hippocampal neurones, which have been postulated to be arrested at cell cycle stage G1 (Nagy et al. 1998). Cerebral hypoxia has also been proposed as a trigger for neuronal cell cycle re-entry in Alzheimer’s disease (AD) and cerebro-vascular disease (Smith et al. 1999). In support of this assertion, nuclear cyclin B expression has been detected in these circumstances (Nagy 2000), indicative of the cell cycle G2/M transition point having been reached. A link between DNA damage and AD has previously been reported (Christen 2000), which is in keeping with reports indicating that patients with segmental progerias, due to mutations in genes involved in DNA repair such as WRN, develop AD-like brain pathology (Leverenz et al. 1998; Shiels 1999).

Aberrant cell cycle activation has also been implicated in neuronal cell death (Rideout et al. 2003). Indeed, proteosomal dysfunction, implicated in Lewy body diseases, can be abrogated through the use of cyclin-dependent kinase (cdk) inhibitors. The possibility remains, however, that rather than the cell cycle activation being aberrant, it is in fact a consequence of stress responses being effected.

A direct prediction of this would be that cytological stress markers would, in the absence of replicative senescence, accumulate independently of cell cycle stage. Furthermore, it may be possible to discriminate between stress responses dependent on the nature of the stress or its level. Sub-lethal stresses, for example, lead to stasis phenomena without loss of telomeric DNA. Lethal stress, resulting in apoptosis, will result in telomere loss and thus a detectable drop in mean terminal restriction fragment lengths (mTRFs). Precedent for this has been established in kidney allograft studies (Joosten et al. 2003; Shiels and Jardine 2003). A critical component of this hypothesis is the level of damage that is potentially communicated by the extent of cytochrome c release from stressed mitochondria. Previous observations have already indicated that a discrete level of cytochrome c in the cytosol is required to overcome anti-apoptotic checks and initiate death responses (Scorrano and Korsmeyer 2003). The possibility exists that the threshold level of cytosolic cytochrome c may be cell specific and tied to levels of anti-apoptotic factors in the cell, or the number of mitochondria in the cell. It is worth noting that this might be a factor in the apparent susceptibility of epithelial cells in the kidney to oxidant stress, as these cells have an unusually large mitochondrial complement. By extrapolation, neuronal cell types with high mitochondrial numbers, or low-level anti-apoptotic defences, might similarly show susceptibility to oxidant stress and thus preferentially contribute to pathogenesis. It will be interesting to determine if this is indeed a factor in disease such as Parkinson’s.

How such activities might contribute to pathogenesis remains somewhat tenuous and requires experimental testing. An extrapolation to loss, or diminution, of cellular function due to stress, overlapping with cell loss at the level of the organ, is an intuitive
link to disease susceptibility. Superimpose this upon genetic background and natural loss of function with chronological age and one has the basis for a progressive neurodegenerative disorder that shows increasing prevalence with age. Similarly, accelerated neurodegenerative conditions associated with segmental progerias affecting DNA repair, are in keeping with this hypothesis.

This scenario would also predict that dysfunction of other genes involved in DNA repair might result in neurodegeneration. In support of this, disruption of XRCC4, DNA ligase IV (Frank et al. 2000) and atm, both result in neurodegeneration or neurodevelopmental problems in the mouse (Klocke et al. 2002; Wong et al. 2003).

16.9 Neuronal stem cells

Why do neurodegenerative processes occur when there are stem cell populations present in the brain? Are there insufficient stem cells to effect repair, or do stem cells senesce in vivo with increasing chronological age?

Little direct experimental information is available to address these questions, though some data from the atm/terc double knock-out mouse are pertinent; this again involves DNA damage sensing, signalling, and repair machinery. Disruption of both atm and Terc leads to a reduction in the neural stem cell compartment in the adult brain and a decreased ability of the neural stem cells to proliferate (Wong et al. 2003). In addition there is an increased rate of apoptosis in such animals in conjunction with accelerated physiological and cellular senescence. These results clearly demonstrate that telomere maintenance is essential to preserve neural stem cell reserves, and indicates that these reserves are indeed subject to ageing processes.

Haemopoetic stem cells (HSCs) also show a limited replicative capacity in both mice and humans, despite being telomerase positive (Allsopp et al. 2003). Serial transplantation experiments in mice have demonstrated that sustained telomerase activity, even at elevated levels, is insufficient to maintain extended transplantation capacity. These data are indicative of telomere-independent mechanisms having a potential involvement in stem cell differentiation and subsequent expansion.

One possible explanation for these observations is that HSCs and other adult stem cells (ASCs) may exhibit inherent asymmetric cell kinetics; i.e. the products of a division are not equivalent, one being recognizable as a mother cell that is still a stem cell, the other as a daughter that is already differentiated. The end result of asymmetric cell kinetics in postnatal somatic tissues, is a limitation in replicative potential, hence senescence. Such a kinetic system will enable cell renewal in adult tissues and maintain mass. In vitro this may pose a barrier to the expansion of neuronal stem cells, through a dilution of ASCs with serial passaging. In vivo, this could imply that there is a limited number of ASCs with a limited expansion potential, as observed for HSCs. Thus with specific neurological insults, degenerative disease may occur in the brain despite the presence of stem cells. This is envisaged as being dependent on the size of the individual’s stem cell pool, and the nature and level of insult (mutation/genotoxin) and must
be factored in conjunction with increasing chronological age. Interestingly, genes involved in determining the rate of asymmetric cell kinetics include p53 and p21, which have a long-established role in the DNA damage responses and telomere-based senescence processes (Sherley 2002).

16.10 Major genetic triggers of neuronal death

Among the many ways that neuronal death can be caused, genetic defects are particularly instructive to study since they provide defined molecular starting points for the eventual neuronal death process. Moreover, certain mutations have been shown to cause particular patterns of neurodegeneration in man, which are recognized clinically as important diseases. The effects of all these mutations becomes increasingly severe with age, due both to long-term exposure of the cells to the effect of the mutant protein, and to interaction of these effects with the ongoing ageing process. Indeed, family history and age are the most important predictors of the probability of an individual coming to suffer from one of the major neurodegenerative diseases.

Many other mutations in man and experimental animals cause neurodegeneration (Jockusch and Schmitt-John, this volume Chapter 2; Bailey, this volume Chapter 15). Many of them, e.g. the mouse weaver mutation, are in ion channels, which is not very instructive as this is a relatively non-specific trigger of cell dysfunction. One interesting case is that a loss of function mutation in the brain-specific signal pathway enzyme PKC\(\gamma\) has been shown to be responsible for a parkinsonian phenotype involving degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the rat (Craig et al. 2001). This is amenable to biochemical study since the molecular consequences of the mutation are defined. Interestingly, work in progress (Wright S, Shiels P, Davies RW, Payne AP, unpublished) indicates that this mutation may also alter cell senescence properties, providing another link between senescence and neurodegeneration.

Here we focus on the two major neurodegenerative disease of ageing, Alzheimer’s disease and Parkinson’s disease, and briefly consider polyglutamine diseases.

16.10.1 Alzheimer’s disease

The most important neurodegenerative disease, in terms of prevalence, is Alzheimer’s disease (AD). The onset of this disease is clearly age dependent, although different variants of AD have characteristic probability distributions of onset at particular ages. A great deal of evidence shows that there is likely to be a single primary mediator of toxicity in this disease, which is the beta-amyloid (A\(\beta\)) family of peptides. A\(\beta\) is derived by proteolytic processing from the amyloid precursor protein (APP), and is a normal component of neurons (Cherny et al. 1999). Known mutations that give rise to this disease include triplication of chromosome 21 (Down’s Syndrome), mutations affecting proteolytic processing and mutations affecting APP levels (Bailey, this volume Chapter 15). All result in increased levels of A\(\beta\) or a proportional increase in the more toxic A\(\beta\)\(_{42}\) form. Even mutations in other genes which lead to AD have
been shown to mediate their effects via modulation of Aβ production, e.g. presenilin 1 and 2 mutations which affect the γ-secretase APP processing enzyme. It is now widely accepted that all genetic causes that remain to be discovered are likely to act in one way or another via stimulation of abnormal Aβ production, localization or handling.

The mechanism of Aβ toxicity is not understood. Aβ is certainly toxic to cells in culture, with a range of effects, but non-physiologically high levels must be used. In transgenic mice expressing human familial AD mutant forms of APP in the brain, subtle changes in synaptic efficacy are detectable, which have been proposed to lead to stress. However, these transgenic mice do not get AD symptoms other than mild plaque formation, so something more dramatic must happen in the human brain. Aβ may modify protein processing (e.g. of cdk5), and this has been proposed to link to abnormal phosphorylation of tau and cytoskeletal damage. Aβ induces apoptosis via a caspase 12 dependent pathway in cultured cortical neurons (Nakagawa et al. 2000): this pathway is also induced by ER stress (Section 16.3). Particularly interesting is the evidence that Aβ generates cytotoxic H₂O₂ through the reduction of Cu²⁺ and Fe³⁺ using O₂ as the substrate (Huang et al. 1999a, b). Aβ also binds and is precipitated by Zn²⁺ and Cu²⁺, but there is ten times less of this in the brain extracellular fluid. Thus a current hypothesis (review: Bush and Tanzi 2002) is that Aβ is normally internalized and destroyed by neurones, but that any tardiness in this system is liable to give rise to local precipitation of Aβ by high concentrations (300 µM) of Zn²⁺ ions at or near synapses. Similarly, anything that elevates extracellular Zn²⁺ or Cu²⁺ levels, such as reductions in mitochondrial function affecting Zn²⁺ recycling, or malfunction of Cu²⁺/Zn²⁺ binding proteins such as ApoE and α2-macroglobulin, would also exacerbate the situation. The amyloid plaques that thus form act as depots for release of the toxic form of Aβ (which would otherwise be cleared), which produces locally high levels of H₂O₂ and thus oxidative stress. This is supported by the marked decrease in Aβ deposition in the brains of mice lacking the synaptic ZnT3 transporter (Lee et al. 2002), with concomitant improvement in behavioural and general health parameters. Thus while Aβ may have other actions that contribute to cytotoxicity, it seems likely that one clear mode of toxic action by this peptide is to add to the local ROS free radical load wherever amyloid plaques form. This is therefore very congruent with general ageing processes, and the efficiency of cellular damage sensing and repair mechanisms will determine relative survival under these particularly stressful circumstances. One potential link between general ageing and Alzheimer’s disease would seem to be any gradual reduction in mitochondrial function, as this will reduce Zn²⁺ recycling and enhance the risk of plaque formation in those who are susceptible.

16.10.2 Parkinson’s disease

The second most frequent neurodegenerative disease associated with age is Parkinson’s disease (PD). The state of knowledge concerning the molecular triggers of PD is less advanced than for Alzheimer’s disease. However, a consensus is emerging that gives alpha synuclein toxicity the central role in at least a proportion of PD cases. Gain of
function mutations (Ala30Pro, Ala53Thr) in this protein clearly precipitate the disease in an age-dependent manner, and contribute some cases of familial PD. Strikingly, when wild-type or human mutant alpha synuclein is expressed in all neurons of the Drosophila brain, preferential death of dopaminergic neurones is observed (Feany and Bender 2000), indicating that excess alpha synuclein can be a specific toxin for dopaminergic neurons in unrelated species, and strengthening the hypothesis that overproduction or malfunction of this protein is central to all forms of PD. While juvenile forms of Parkinson’s disease can be caused by mutations in parkin, which seemed initially to be a component of a non-specific protein disposal system, evidence is increasing that parkin is responsible for controlling the ubiquitination of a subset of cellular proteins, among them alpha synuclein, thus tying them together. It has been reported that parkin binds alpha synuclein, and that this interaction is disrupted by parkin mutations, while parkin also protects catecholaminergic neurones in primary culture from toxic effects of alpha synuclein and proteasome inhibition (Petrucelli et al. 2002: review, Feany and Pallanck 2003). Parkin loss of function mutations do not show neurodegeneration in Drosophila, but do show apoptosis in muscle cells and early mitochondrial dysfunction (Greene et al. 2003), indicating that there is a link between proteasome system function and mitochondrial function.

Alpha synuclein is ubiquitously expressed in the brain, and is present in significant amounts in presynaptic axon termini. It has proved to be a difficult protein to assign a clear function to. It has some similarity to 14-3-3 proteins, and has been proposed to have some chaperone activity. Its best known property is a tendency to aggregate, and it has been shown that the familial mutant forms aggregate more rapidly and easily. The relevance of aggregation to toxicity is not established, but it is thought that it may result in the proteasome being unable to degrade the protein efficiently, leading to local accumulations and proteasome stress. Geldanamycin, which is an inhibitor of Hsp90, relieves alpha synuclein toxicity in Drosophila. Hsp90 is an inhibitor of other chaperones, and this result has been interpreted as indicating a need for chaperone function in the correct folding or clearance of alpha synuclein. Indeed, overexpression of the chaperone Hsp70 rescues Drosophila dopaminergic neurones from alpha synuclein toxicity (Auluck et al. 2002). In differentiated (neuronal) PC12 cells, mutant alpha synuclein expression has been shown to decrease proteasome activity without cell toxicity, and to increase the sensitivity to apoptotic cell death in the presence of sub-lethal levels of proteasome inhibitor (Tanaka et al. 2001).

Are there any links between alpha synuclein overexpression and oxidative stress? Alpha synuclein knock-out mice revealed one actual function of the protein: it acts to inhibit the refilling of the rapidly releasable pool of synaptic vesicles at nerve terminals (Abeliovich et al. 2000). A separate study of another alpha synuclein knock-out mouse strain (Cabin et al. 2002) indicated that alpha synuclein is normally required for the genesis, localization and/or maintenance of some subset of vesicles that make up the reserve or resting pools of presynaptic vesicles. There is evidence that it is a regulator of phospholipase D2 activity (Jenco et al. 1998; Ahn et al. 2002), which is a key component
in signalling for vesicle production at membranes. Another interesting result is that alpha synuclein KO mice are resistant to MPTP (MPP+) toxicity (Dauer et al. 2002). MPP+ kills dopaminergic neurones by inhibiting complex 1 of mitochondria. The experimental evidence indicates that resistance in the absence of alpha synuclein may be due to increased vesicular uptake and storage of MPP+, so that by inference alpha synuclein would inhibit dopamine storage; direct action of alpha synuclein at the mitochondrion may also occur. From these and other data it has been hypothesized (Lotharius and Brundin 2002) that mutations in alpha synuclein might lead to impaired dopamine storage in vesicles, which would increase the concentration of cytoplasmic dopamine, thus in turn increasing the oxidative stress on the neurone due to the increased risk of toxic dopamine o-hydroquinone radicals. Moreover, mutant alpha synuclein (and very high levels of the wild-type protein) has been shown to enhance dopamine toxicity and increase H2O2 induced nitrite production in neuroblastoma cells (Wersinger and Sidhu 2003). It should be noted that normal low levels of alpha synuclein have been reported several times to be neuroprotective, and human alpha synuclein expressed from the tyrosine hydroxylase promoter in transgenic mice confers protection against paraquat toxicity (Manning-Bog et al. 2003). Recently it has been shown that oligomerization of alpha synuclein is dependent on oxidation of tyrosine by free radicals, and that oligomerization of mutant alpha synuclein is more sensitive to free radical oxidation (Kang and Kim 2003; Krishnan et al. 2003; Norris et al. 2003; Yamin et al. 2003). To the extent that oligomerization and fibrillogenesis are important to toxicity, this would link ageing to alpha synuclein specific effects.

16.10.3 Polyglutamine diseases

Many rarer neurodegenerative diseases of ageing are due to the incorporation of polyglutamine repeats within proteins due to CAG triplet repeat expansion (Bailey, this volume Chapter 15). It is clear that the polyglutamine causes toxicity, not the host protein, but little is known about the mechanism. As for alpha synuclein, polyglutamine neurotoxicity can be modelled in Drosophila (Kastemi-Esfaranjani and Benzer 2000). Alpha synuclein and polyglutamine toxicity also have in common that they are ameliorated by parkin (Tsai et al. 2003). Proteasome inhibition and resultant protein stress, interference with transcription, protein sequestration (e.g. of normal binding partners of the host protein) into aggregates, and mitochondrial membrane insertion causing an electron leak all have some experimental support. It is particularly interesting that the eventual mode of cell death caused by polyglutamine is not standard apoptosis, since TUNEL staining shows no evidence of DNA fragmentation. The term ‘black cell death’ is used for this form of cell death that is neither apoptosis nor necrosis. It is possible that this state corresponds to stasis as defined above.

16.11 Conclusion

Studying neuronal senescence offers a new perspective on how neurones die. It allows the integration of cellular damage responses with specific neuropathological stresses,
and also allows neuropathological processes to be considered in the contexts of organ senescence and chronological ageing. Most importantly, it promises to open up new avenues for therapeutic intervention.

At this time, we do not have much directly acquired knowledge about the molecular mechanisms of senescence in neurones. However, the indications are that at least a subset of the knowledge being acquired from experimental studies on other cell types will be applicable in neurones. The recent data on the atm−/− terc−/− mouse (Section 16.5) shows very clearly that both adult neurones and neuronal stem cells must maintain telomeres, and must sense DNA damage and respond to it correctly using the ATM system. The occurrence of neurodegeneration in XRCC5 knock-out mice emphasizes the importance of DNA repair for neurones. Since terc−/− mice are mutated in the RNA component of telomerase, this enzyme must be involved in telomere maintenance in mice. In man, we know from the progeric diseases, which are due to mutations in a RecQ-like helicase, that recombinational mechanisms play a part at least in telomere maintenance in human neurones. It should be noted that different types of neurones may vary considerably in the efficacy of their DNA damage sensing and repair systems. Evidence for variation in these systems comes from differential amplification of (CAG)n repeats in different neurones of mouse and human brains with increasing age, which is probably due to differences in DNA repair systems (P. Shelbourne, pers.comm.).

In the senescence context, the genotoxic (and environmental) factors that precipitate specific variants of neurodegenerative disease can be viewed as adding extra stresses for the neuron’s damage control and response system to deal with. We are beginning to get closer to understanding the molecular mechanisms of these stress factors in some major diseases (Section 16.10) but we have not yet achieved integration with the mechanisms of neuronal senescence. In order to treat these diseases, we must address two questions: how to maintain adult neurones in a functional state for as long as possible despite genotoxic stress, and how to stimulate or enable the replacement of lost neurones from stem cells. It is currently not clear how important adult neuronal stem cells are for most regions of the brain: we do not know the stem cell pool size, nor how much replacement occurs, nor how fast this occurs, nor how the stem cell compartment responds to neuronal dysfunction and loss. Another problem is senescence of stem cells themselves.

In vivo data show that stem cells do undergo senescence, and this may be a factor in the progression of neurodegenerative diseases in adults. This will also apply to stem cells that are introduced artificially in cell replacement therapeutic strategies. Therefore, senescence is a barrier to be overcome for stem cell therapy, although this may sound heretical for a multi-potent cell type that can be propagated indefinitely in cell culture. It should be noted that standard rodent cells can be propagated indefinitely in cell culture because they are telomerase positive, but typically end up in STASIS due to culture shock. With stem cells, p53-dependent asymmetric cell kinetics may also influence this process, again tying together cellular stress responses and proliferation.
Thus senescence needs to be taken into account in any cellular replacement approach to therapy. Expansion of cells in vitro to reach requisite numbers for transplantation will, by virtue of culture stress, result in the accumulation of damage and result in premature senescence. This remains a problem for neural allografts and xenografts, and even the use of nuclear transplantation does not escape this problem.

The ability to isolate and propagate neural stem cells and to develop neurones from other stem cell sources does, however, offer substantial hope for the treatment of neurodegeneration. Critically, these cells will also provide an important resource for the testing and development of novel chemical and biological therapeutics. A better understanding of neuronal and stem cell damage responses and associated telomere biology will be crucial in formulating these therapeutic strategies. This knowledge is also fundamental to understanding the neuronal ageing process and its interaction with the molecules that trigger major neurodegenerative diseases.

References


Index

NB: page numbers in bold refer to illustrations and tables

acetylcholine receptor (AChR)
  beta2 nAChR subunit gene 35–6, 50
  nAChR 185, 187–8
  nAChR group, structure 202–4
  subunit alpha/beta 50
actin-binding proteins (ABPs) 320–1, 322–3
axon growth cones 334
acts 373
microfilaments 318–23
action potentials, Loligo 104
beta-actin 370, 372
adenylyl cyclases (ACs) 305–6, 364
adrenoleukodystrophy 417
ageing and death of neurons 439–66
comparative biology 450–1
damage, repair and disposal 442–5
genetic triggers of neuronal death 457–60
mitochondrial damage 447–8
'MTR trinity' 445–50
necrosis 453–4
neuronal stem cells 456–7
polyglutamine diseases 460
rDNA, ageing and sirtuins 448–50
'telomere binding protein 451
telomeres
  link to apoptosis and necrosis 451–4
  molecular triggers for stress responses 446–7
  see also apoptosis
agrin 192
binding to MusK 282
AGTR2 400
alkaline phosphatase (AP), as reporter 32
alpha-actinin 323
alternative splicing 36, 192–3
Alzheimer’s disease (AD) 24–5, 346–7, 424–8, 457–8
NRTKs 287
amelin 320
AMPA receptors 169, 374
and calcium 78, 194–5
down-regulation by insulin 96–7
genes 186, 188
long-term depression (LTD) 92–4
long-term potentiation (LTP) 92–4
Na+ influx 358
postsynaptic 97
postsynaptic targeting 92–4
protein trafficking 303–4
splicing, flip and flop 193
subunits Glu1–4 196–7
  see also glutamate receptors; postsynaptic density (PSD)
amyloid precursor protein (APP), APP-YFP 85, 424–8, 457–8
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) 25, 348
Angelman syndrome 409, 411–13
aniridia 392
ankyrins 320, 322–3
antagonists 185–6
antibody-coupled beads, proteins of interest investigations 80
API complex 86
Aplysia
  CREB, long-term memory 58–9
  models of neuronal plasticity 360
  synaptic facilitation 365
  apoptosis-inducing factor (AIF) 453
  apoptosome 453
  apoptotic neuronal cell death 413–29
  and necrosis, neuronal loss 451–4
  see also neurodegenerative diseases
  apoptotic pathways 452
  arc, hippocampal neurones 370, 373
  arcadlin 373
  Apix/Phox2 transcription factors see Phox2
  transcription factors
  arrestin 201, 220, 235–6
  artemin 274
  ARX 404
  aryloxyalkylamine antagonists 226
  ASPM 395
  ataxias 124–8
  Friedreich ataxia 408–11, 425
  spinocerebellar type 1 (SCA1), CAG repeats 24, 445
  see also episodic ataxias
  ataxin-1, gene sequence 24
  ATH-5 44
  ATM 451
  ATPR 186
axon growth cones 331–4
  actin-binding proteins 334
  model, anterograde movement 333
  plasmalemma precursors (PPVs) 155–6
axon growth/development 337–9
  Kv channels 82
  Nav channels 82
  polarity 81–2, 331–9
  protein trafficking 82–6
  PTPs 284
axon and dendritic transport 340–1
  fast axonal transport 342–3
  intermediate component 341
  molecular motors 343–5
  slow axonal transport 341–2
axonal initial segment (AIS) 75–6
diffusion barrier 80
axon maturation 336–7
myelination signals 336
axonal microtubules 335
axonal pathfinding 21
axons
properties, vs dendrites 337
reticular theory 340–1

bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs) 18, 33

basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) transcription factors 43–4
Olf-1 50–1
TFs 369

Bassoon protein 146, 147

BDNF 373, 375

beta-blockers 226

Bloom’s syndrome 447, 448

botulinum neurotoxin (BoNT) 149

brain damage, stroke, VEGFs 287

brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) 373, 375

C-fos induction 55
CRE binding proteins (CREBs) 254
Ras activation 171

c-fos
Ca2+ regulation 56
induction by BDNF 55
C/EBP transcription factors 58
Ca2+ channel disease, episodic ataxia type-2 125–7
Ca2+ channels 76, 120–4
secondary structure 106
types 121
voltage-gated Ca2+ channels 120–4
Ca2+ regulation
C-fos 56
ion channel activation 55–7
loss of homeostasis, cerebral ischemia 176
Ca2+ signaling 249–69, 305–6
Ca2+ as intracellular second messenger 120, 250
Ca2+-responsive DNA regulatory elements and transcription factors 252–3
cAMP response element (CRE) 252
CRE binding proteins (CREBs) 252–62
activation mechanisms 254–8
activation requiring crucial phosphorylation event 254–7
physiological importance 253–4
uncoupling CREB phosphorylation from CREB-mediated transcription 257
CREB binding protein (CBP), in CREB-mediated transcription 257
decoding 258–62
ERK cascade, synaptic transmission 305–6
gene expression control 251–2
model for nuclear Ca[s][2+] [s]-regulated transcription, regulation of CBP 258
nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) 253
to nucleus 57
phosphorylation of CREB (on serine 133) 255–6
 serum response element (SRE) 253
synaptic plasticity in nervous system 250–1
as trigger of neuronal plasticity 361–2
Ca2+-responsive elements (CaREs) 57
Ca2+-calmodulin dependent kinases (CaMKs) 169–72, 177, 196–8, 253–6, 296–9, 308
CaMKII
as cognitive kinase 308
as switch/signaling protein 169–72, 177, 196–8, 296–9, 308–5
CaMKII-alpha 372, 375
parallel activation of CaM kinase and ERK1/2 pathways 256
Ras-ERK1/2 (MAP kinase) cascade 256, 301–2

Caenorhabditis neuron lineages 47
POU domain transcription factors 45–7
SIR2 449
CAG repeats, spinocerebellar ataxia type 1 (SCA1) 24
calcineurin (protein phosphatase-2B) 309–10
and PKA 26
calnexin 198
caloric restriction, and life span 449
cAMP-dependent protein kinase 293–8
catalytic subunit 292
see also protein kinase A
carnosine 443
casein kinases 293
caspase 444
catenins 320, 323
channelopathies 421
cerebellar granule neurons (CGNs) 84
cerebellar Pinceau, K+ channels 117
cerebral ischemia 176
cGMP, and nitric oxide 300
cGMP-dependent protein kinase G (PKG) 300
channelopathies 124–7, 405–8
table 406–7
chaperonins 198–9
see also NSF
Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease 23
type 2 (CMT-2) 348–9
chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT), as reporter 32, 34
cholinergic gene locus 36
chondrodysplasia punctata 417
chorea, benign hereditary (BHC) 391
chromatin disorders, transcriptional regulation 420
clathrin, endosomes 201
Clathrin coats, membrane retrieval and neurotransmitter loading 150–1
coatamer proteins (COPs) 79
cognitive functions, memory formation, mouse genetic model 25–6
color vision 53
conditional mutations, mouse genetic model 20–1
contactin-associated protein (Caspr2) 116
corpus callosum agenesis 403
cox2 374
CRASH syndrome 401, 404
CRE binding proteins (CREB), long-term memory 58–9, 369
activation mechanisms 254–8, 259
activation requiring crucial phosphorylation event 254–7, 304–5
BDNF 254
D. melanogaster long-term memory 58–9, 369
in dendrites 89
long-term memory 58–9
mutant overexpression 55
phosphorylation 56–7, 304–5
physiological importance 253–4
uncoupling CREB phosphorylation from CREB-mediated transcription 257
CREB binding protein (CBP) in CREB-mediated transcription 257, 429
neuronal plasticity 369
Creutzfeld–Jakob disease 427
Cys-loop superfamily 184
cytoskeleton 317–55 components
interactions 331
intermediate filaments 323–6
microfilaments 318–23
microtubules 326–31
intraneuronal transport 340–6
axonal and dendritic transport 340–1
molecular motors 343–5
proteins 166–7, 169–72
death of neurons see ageing; apoptosis
dendrite growth 81, 331–6
dendrites
miRNAs 366–7
properties, vs axons 337
dendritic transport 340–1
diabetes mellitus model, streptozotocin-diabetic rat 176
DMPK 410
DNA
core promoter element 252
pre-initiation complex (PIC) 252
DNA damage, responses 446
DNA repair, transcriptional regulation (chromatin disorders) and RNA processing 420
dopa-responsive dystonia, Segawa syndrome 403, 404
dopamine, degradation 444
dopamine beta-hydroxylase (DBH) 39–41, 50, 52
dopamine D2 and D4 receptors 226
doublecortin (DCX) 329
Drosophila melanogaster behavioural model 1–14
basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) transcription factors 43–4
CNS functional analysis 5–7
CREB, long-term memory 58–9, 369
enhancer-trap reporters 5
functional genomics and proteomics 10
GAL4/UAS selective ablation 7
neuroinformatics and high-throughput technologies 8–10
molecular modelling 10
resources and tools 8–10
StandardBrain system 9
neurophysiology 7–8
RNA interference (RNAi) phenocopying 6–7
shibire mutation 8, 155
targeted expression systems 7
targeted suppression of neuronal activity 5–6
transgenic reporters (FRET) 8
Dyggve–Melchior–Clausen dysplasia 403
dynactin 345
dynamin
Dros. shibire mutant 155
endocytosis 151
dynamin-interacting proteins 151
dyneins 327, 330, 345–6
dystrophin 320
Elk 277
embryonic stem cells, gene trapping, random mutagenesis 18–19
endocytosis
dynamin 151
postsynaptic removal of receptors 96–7
endoplasmic reticulum (ER) chaperones 77–8
retention/export signals 78
stress sensor proteins (IREs) 444
transport, trans-Golgi network 77–9
enhancer-trap reporters 5
Ephrin receptors 274, 284
Ephrin/EPH pathway 171
epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) 271, 272
epilepsy, table 406–7
episodic ataxias type-1 124–5
type-2 125–7
ERK-2 372
ethylnitrosurea (ENU), screening projects, induced random (murine) mutations 17–18
etorphine 232
ETS domain 48
extracellular signal-regulated protein kinases (ERKs) activation by protein kinase A (PKA) 306
ERK1/2 (MAP kinase) cascade 256, 301–2
INDEX 471
isoforms 301
MEKs 301
extrachromosomal rDNA circles (ERCs) 448–9

familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (FALS) 25
FERM, janus kinases (JAKs) 278
FGFR1 395
fibers see microtubules
filopodia 332–3
GFP transfection 81–2, 84
fimbrin 321
FLNA 396
fluorescent resonance energy transfer (FRET)
Drosophila transgenic reporters 8
LRET 107
FMRI/2 409
FMRF 411
focal adhesion kinase (FAK) 281
fodrin 172
fragile X disease, FMR1 protein 88, 408–11
free radical damage 443
Friedreich ataxia 408–11, 425
Fukutin 397
Fukuyama congenital muscular dystrophy (FCMD) 396
Fyn
knockout mice, long-term potentiation (LTP) 286
myelin formation 287

G22P1 451
G-protein coupled inward rectifiers 120
G-protein receptor kinase 235
g-protein-coupled receptors (GPCR) 183–7, 215–47
cell-type specific factors 230–4
levels of receptor expression and signal amplification 231–3
receptor splice variants 230
restricted localization 233–4
specificity of receptors for G-protein subtypes 233
families
  - glucagon-like family 223–4
  - mGlur/GABA_A family 224
  - rhodopsin family 221–3
  - rhodopsin-like subfamily 224–6
  - genetic polymorphisms 223
  - heterodimerization 221–3
  - mGlur family–receptor–ligand interactions 224–6
  - non G-protein mediated pathways 220
  - orphan receptors 215
  - receptor–G-protein cycle 218–19
  - receptor–G-protein interactions 226–34
  - receptor–ligand interactions 224–6
  - regulation of function 234–40
  - arrestin 235–6
desensitization/resensitization 234–6
long-term down-regulation mechanisms 239–40
molecular mechanisms of internalization 238
phosphorylation 235
receptor trafficking 236–9
regulator of G-protein signaling (RGS) family 240
structural features 220–6
structural features of receptors involved in G-protein activation 227–30
constitutive activity 229–30
multiple active conformations–stimulus trafficking 230
receptor conformational change 227–9
subtypes and pathways 216–18
superfamily 215–20
types and second messenger pathways 219–20
GABA transporters (vGATs) 48, 153
GABAB receptors
  - alternative splicing 36, 192–3
  - assembly 77–8
  - glycosylation 198
  - clustering 80–1
  - endocytosis 96–7
ER 77
genes 185, 188
  - group members 184
  - maintenance by Plic-1 90, 201
  - postsynaptic targeting 90–1
  - tyrosine phosphorylation 285
GABA_A-associated protein, GABARAP 90–1
GABA_ receptors 183
GABA_C receptors 183
GAL4/US8 responsive genes, Drosophila 4
beta-galactosidase (lacZ) 21
color vision 53
GABA(A)R 191
Pit-1/LacZ transgene 46
  - as reporter 32, 39
GAP43 46–7, 87, 374, 376
GAP43-like proteins 322
gelsolin 172, 320
gene expression 29–73
  - alternative splicing 36
  - beta2 nAChR subunit gene 35–6
  - Ca²⁺ regulation of ion channel activation 55–7
  - cellular expression patterns 30
  - cholinergic gene locus 36
  - coexpression of ion channel subunits 50
  - control at protein level 251–2
  - growth factors 54–5
  - ion channel subunit coexpression 50
  - molecular mechanism, REST/NRSF action 38
  - neuron-restrictive silencer 34–8
  - neuron-specific regulatory elements 29–34
  - neurotrophin receptor gene promoters 41–2
  - numbers of neuronally expressed genes 29, 59–60
olfactory neurons 50–1
promoter/reporter DNA constructs 31–4
regulation 30–1
REST/NRSF, as master regulator 36–8
sensory cell locus control regions 53–4
silencer elements 34–8
sodium channel 34–5
specifying neurotransmitter phenotypes as synexpression groups 48–50
transcriptional level 38–54
Arix/Phox2 transcription factors 39–41
basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) transcription factors 43–4
LIM domain transcription factors (TFS) 45
neuronal functions 51–4
population-specific transcription factors 38–43
POU domain transcription factors 45–7
regulation of learning processes 57–9
synexpression groups 47–51
see also population-specific transcription factors
transmitter release-related protein (SNAP-25) 41–2
gene trapping, mutagenesis of ES cells 18–19
genome defense hypothesis 398
gephyrin 200, 327, 330
GFP tagging 98
gial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) 274
beta-globin, conservation of locus 53
glucagon-like family, GPCRs 223–4
glutamate receptors at synapses 169
genes encoding 184–7, 186
GluR1 receptor subunits 303
mGluR/GABA<sub>Ka</sub> family, GPCRs 224, 226
PDZ-binding domains 80, 193
polarized distribution 83
RNA editing 193–5
structure 204–5
see also AMPA; kainate; NMDA
glutamate transporters 153
glutamic acid decarboxylase, transcriptional regulation 48
glycine receptors 23–4
genes 185
gephyrin-associated 330
lateral movement 98
glycosylation, GABA<sub>Ka</sub> receptor assembly 198
glycosylation disorders 402
green fluorescent protein (GFP)
gephyrin 98
synaptobrevin 82
synaptophysin 85
transfection of neurons 81–2, 84
Griscelli syndrome 403
growth factors, gene expression 54–5
growth hormone, GHF-1 (Pit-1) 46
growth-associated proteins (GAPs), GAP43 46–7, 87
GTP-binding proteins 326
GTPase activating proteins (GAPs) 240
guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs) 302, 331
H<sup>+</sup> gradient, neurotransmitter release 148–9
H<sup>+</sup>-ATPase, vesicular/vacuolar 152
heparin, GRK 236
HESX1 391, 394
hippocampal neurons
LTP 251, 357–9
and memory 251
prenatal ablation 177
Hirschsprung disease 393
histone, deacetylation 38
histone acetyl transferase (HAT) 257
historical perspective
acetylcholine hypothesis of neurotransmission 140
ion channels 103–5
neurons and synapses 139–41
reticular theory of axons 340–1
HLH see basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH)
transcription factors
holoprosencephaly 392, 394
homer proteins
1a 373
IEGs 84
Hoyeraal–Hreidarsson syndrome 393
Huntington’s disease (trinucleotide repeat disorder) 408–11, 425, 445, 460
5-hydroxytryptamine receptor (5HT3R) 185
see also serotonin
hyperekplexia (startle disease) 24
IGF1 373
IGF2R 373
immediate early response genes (IEGs) 54, 58, 251
homer 1a 84
LTP induction 251, 370
Inhibitor-1 (DARPP) 171
insulin, down-regulation of AMPA receptors 96–7
insulin receptor 272
insulin-like growth factor (IGF) receptor 272
intermediate filament proteins (IFPs) 324
intermediate filaments 323–6
alpha-internexin 324
intracellular transport neurodegenerative diseases 421
intraneural transport 340–6
invertebrates, models of neuronal plasticity 360
ion channel receptors 183–213
ion channels 103–37
channelopathies 124–7
coexpression of subunits 50
gating currents 105–7
historical aspects 103–5
molecular characterization of Kv channels 109–10
voltage sensor 105–7
see also ligand-gated ion channel receptors
IP3-receptor2 372
ischemic brain damage, loss of Ca homeostasis 176
isoprenaline 225

janus kinases (JAKs) 278
Jimpy mouse 22

K⁺ channel disease, episodic ataxia type-1 124–5
K⁺ channels 109–18, 303–4
axonal development 82
inactivation mechanisms 113–16
potassium selectivity 111–13
secondary structure 106
Xenopus oocytes as heterologous expression system, cloned ion channels 110–11
KATP channels, assembly 77
Kv channels
ataxia 124–5
Shaker-like 109, 116–18, 304
kinase receptors
genes 186
Q/N editing 195
RNA editing 193–5
Kallman syndrome 393, 395
KcsA channel, homology to VGCC 104
Kenney–Caffey syndrome 392
kinase inducible domain 257
kinesin superfamily proteins (KIFs) 344
kinesins 327, 330, 343
Kir (inwardly rectifying) channels
and cell excitability 118–20
protein trafficking 77
knock-outs, mutagenesis in mouse model 19–20
transcriptional control 190
translational control 195
transmembrane topologies 189
see also signal reception
LIM domain transcription factors (TFS) 45
limbic system kindling 359–60
linker (MAGUK) proteins 166–7, 172–3, 197, 200
lipid rafts, postsynaptic targeting 89, 234
alpha-liprins 146
LIS1 329, 396
lissencephaly 329, 393, 396
LoLigo
action potentials 104
giant axon 332
long-term depression (LTD) 92–4
experimental models 360
long-term potentiation (LTP)
alphaCAMKII 170
AMPA receptors 92–4, 303
experimental models 357–9
learning tasks 176
functional synaptic plasticity 154–5, 306–7
Fyn knockout mice 286
hippocampal neurons 251, 357–9
induction by receptor tyrosine kinases 286–7, 303
PKA function 307–8
temporal phases 360–1
early phases, molecules implicated 362–3
later sustained phases, molecules implicated 366–8, 371–4
luciferase, as reporter 32
lysosomal storage disorders
hydrolase enzyme deficiencies 414–15
transport defects 416
MAGUK (linker) proteins 166–7, 172–3, 197, 200
MAP2 373
MAP see microtubule-associated proteins; mitogen-activated proteins
MCPhl 394–5
MECP2 397
megalin 86
MEKs 301
memory
CREB, mouse genetic model 25–6, 58–9
hippocampal neurons 251
long-term, efficiency of synapses 153–7
synaptic plasticity 154–7
transcriptional regulation 57–8
memory loss
diabetes mellitus model 176
MAM-treated rat model 177
mental retardation disorders
autosomal 403
X-linked 399–404, 401–2
–associated with fragile site 409
metabolic storage disorders 414–18
metabotropic receptors 183–7
defined 183
mGLuR/GABAB family, GPCRs 224, 226
see also G protein receptors; glutamate receptors
microcephaly 393, 394–5
microfilaments 318–23
microtubule-associated proteins (MAPs) 327, 328–31, 335–6
microtubule-dependent molecular motors 343–5
microtubules 326–31
axonal, origin 335
plus-end tracking proteins (+TIP) 330
tracks 84, 85
MID1 395
minichromosomes see bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs)
mitochondrial damage, ageing 447–8
mitochondrial DNA and respiratory chain disorders 422–3
mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) 301
ERKs, synaptic plasticity 308–9
MAPK cascade 256, 301–2
MAPK regulating kinases 300–302
serine/threonine kinases 308–9
see also ERKs; Ras-ERK1/2
mnd2 25
MNR-2 45
models
cerebellar long-term depression 360
hippocampal long term potentiation 357–9
invertebrate models of neuronal plasticity 360
limbic system kindling 359–60
modifier genes, wobbler (mouse) 25
molecular motors 343–5
morphine 232
morphogenesis of neurons 331–9
mosaic analysis with repressible cell marker (MARCM) 5
motor proteins 330
mouse genetic model 15–28
behaviour control, cognitive functions and memory formation 25–6
classical mutants and positional cloning 16–17
comparative genomics 16
CREB, long-term memory 58–9
gene trapping, random mutagenesis of embryonic stem cells 18–19
hereditary neurodegenerative diseases, natural and transgenic models 24–5
modifier genes 25
mutagenesis
conditional mutations 20–1
embryonic stem cells, gene trapping 18–19
ethylnitrosourea (ENU) screening projects 17–18
excitability and ion channels 23–4
knock-ins, human “pathogenes” 20
knock-outs 19–20, 25
myelin formation and stability 22–3
neural development and pathfinding 21–2
site-specific deletion 19
quantitative trait loci (QTL) 25
transgenes 18
mRNAs, in dendrites 366–7
MTHFD1 391
MTHFR 391
Munc-13, Munc-18 147–8
MusK, agrin binding 282
mutagenesis
ethylnitrosourea (ENU) screening projects 17–18
methods in mouse model 18–21
myelin
deficiency 22
formation, Fyn 287
proteolipid protein (PLP) 22–3
stability, mouse genetic model 22–3
myelin basic proteins (MBPs) 32
myelination signals, axonal maturation 336
myosins 346
myotonic dystrophy 408–11
myristoylated alanine-rich C kinase substrate (MARCKs) 320, 322
N-cadherin 373
N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive fusion protein (NSF) complex with GluR2 175
NSF-associated proteins, SNAP-25 91, 92
Na+ channels 107–18
9 types 108
axonal development 82
inactivation 107–9
secondary structure 106
three-D structure 108–9
type II voltage-gated 34–5
Na+/H+ exchange factor (NHERF) 220
Narp 373, 375
NCAM 373, 375
NCAM promoter 41
necrosis 451–4
nerve induction, disorders of 390–7
neuronal silenter element (NRSE/RE1) motif 34–8, 190–2
see also RE1/NRSE motifs
neural tube defects (NTDs) 391, 392
neuregulin 192
neurite growth 81, 331–6
see also axons; dendrites; polarity
neurodegenerative diseases 24–5, 175–6, 346–8, 413–29
cellular signaling and intracellular transport disorders 421
conformational neuronopathies 424–8
DNA repair, transcriptional regulation and RNA processing 420
dominant disorders with gain of function or toxic proteins 419
lysosomal storage disorders
hydrolase enzyme deficiencies 414–15
transport defects 416
metabolic disorders, recessive, loss of function 418
mitochondrial DNA and respiratory chain
disorders 422–3
peroxisomal disorders 417
polyglutamine and polyalanine tract disorders
428–9
strategies used to identify genes 389
tables 414–17
neurofilament triplet proteins 323–6
neuroinflammatics, high-throughput technologies,
*Drosophila* 8–10
neurokinin receptor (NK1) 225
neuroligins 82, 173, 399
neuromodulin 337
neuron-specific regulatory elements 29–34
neuronal ablation, hippocampal neurons, MAM rat
model 177
neuronal apoptosis see apoptosis
neuronal cytoskeleton see cytoskeleton
neuronal diseases: 387–437
of apoptotic neuronal cell death 413–29
see also neurodegenerative diseases
of early neurogenesis 392–3
of mature neuronal function 405–13
of neural induction 390–7
early development 390–4
of neuronal maturation 397–9
of neuronal maturation and/or mature function
399–404
of neuronal migration 395–7
of neuronal progenitor proliferation 394–5
of neuronal terminal differentiation 397–413
strategies used to identify genes 389
table 401–3
neuronal gene expression see gene expression
neuronal migration diseases 395–7
neuronal plasticity 357–85
Ca²⁺ as trigger 361–2
cellular sites 367
experimental models 357–60
cerebellar long-term depression 360
hippocampal long term potentiation 357–9
invertebrate models 360
limbic system kindling 359–60
rapid transient plasticity 362–6
role of cytoskeleton in 339–40
slower sustained plasticity 366–8
induction of late-response genes 371–6
induction of other immediate-early genes 370–1
induction of transcription factors 369–70
relationship between early and late
responses 376
transcription factor families 368–9
temporal phases of synaptic plasticity 360–1
unanswered questions 377
neuronal stem cells 456–7
neuronal terminal differentiation diseases 397–413
neuronal function disorders 405–13
neuronal maturation disorders 397–9
neuronal progenitor proliferation diseases 394–5
table 401–3
neuronopathies, conformational 424–8
neurons
historical perspective 139–41
intraneuronal transport 340–6
morphogenesis 331–9
morphology 76, 79–81
plasticity 339–40
polarity 82–6, 337–9
development 81–2
polarity signals 86–8
axonal targeting 86–8
trafficking 75–101
see also protein trafficking
transport proteins and pathways 90–4
neuron-specific regulatory elements 29–34
neuropsin 374, 375
neurotransmitter release 141–53
Ca²⁺ as intracellular second messenger
120, 250
H⁺ gradient 148–9
historical 139–41
learning and synapses 153–7
membrane retrieval and neurotransmitter
loading 150–3
pathways of secretion 141–3
see also synapses; synaptic vesicles
neurotransmitters, phenotypes 48–50
neurotrophin (NGF)
nurite outgrowth 54
receptor gene promoters 41–2
neurturin 274
NF-kappaB 369
nitric oxide
and cGMP 300
hippocampal LTP 366
nitric oxide synthase (NOS)
PSD binding 171, 174
and ROS 442, 454
NMDA receptors 167–9, 173–4, 374
assembly 77
genesis 186, 187
and ischemia 176
mediation of Ca²⁺ influx 250
Mg²⁺ block 358
NR1 subunit 193
PDZ recognition site 193
postsynaptic density (PSD) 173–5
postsynaptic targeting 91
regulation by tyrosine phosphorylation 285
synaptic complex 201
see also glutamate receptors
nodes of Ranvier 75–6
Na⁺ channels 108
NRTKs, schema 280
NSF see N-ethylmaleimide-sensitive fusion
protein
nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) 253, 261
olfactory epithelium 53
olfactory marker protein (OMP) 50–1
olfactory neurons 50–1
opioid receptor 232
Opitz syndrome 393, 395
orphan receptors 215

P2X receptor, structure 205
P21 activated kinases (PAKs) 293
Parkinson’s disease 424, 444, 458–60
Pelizaeus–Merzbacher disease 23
peripheral myelin protein-22 (PMP22) 23
peroxisomal disorders 417
persephin 274
Pet-1, ETS domain trf 48
phenocopying, RNA interference (RNAi) 6–7
phosphoinositide-dependent PK1 (PDK1) 300
phosphoproteins, synapsin family 144–5
phosphotyrosine-binding (PTB) domains 276
Phox2 transcription factors
Arix/Phox2 39–41
classification of Phox2 40
noradrenergic induction 53
Piccolo protein 146, 147
Pick disease 424
PICK-1, scaffold protein 300
PKC-beta 372
PKC-gamma 372, 457
plasma membrane proteins 166–9, 199–200
see also AMPA; glutamate; NMDA receptors
plasmalemma precursors (PPVs) 155–6
Plic-1, GABA_A receptor maintenance 90, 201
polarity of neurons 82–6, 337–9
development 81–2
signals 86–8
polyalanine disorders 428–9
polyglutamine expansion disorders 419, 428–9, 460
population-specific transcription factors 38–42
Arix/Phox2 transcription factors 39–41
cascades 42–3
positional cloning, mouse genetic model 16–17
postsynaptic density (PSD)
components, functional interactions 173–4
excitatory, structural features 165–73
preparation 165–7
proposed functions 174
PSD-95 81, 87
structure and CNS pathophysiology 175–7
Syn-GAP 170
synaptic plasticity 174–5
postsynaptic removal of receptors 94–8
lateral diffusion 97–8
mechanism and pathways available 94–6
receptor endocytosis 96–7
postsynaptic signaling, glutamate release 307
postsynaptic structures 165–81
cytoskeletal proteins 166–7, 169–72
experimental models of LTP and learning tasks 176
hippocampal neuron investigations 177
linker proteins 166–7, 172–3, 197
plasma membrane proteins 166–9
signaling proteins 166–7, 169–72
streptozotocin-diabetic rats 176
see also specific receptors
postsynaptic targeting 88–94
AMPA receptors 92–4
GABA_A receptors 90–1
mRNA targeting 88–9
NMDA receptors 91
via lipid rafts 89, 234
potassium see K+ channels
POU domain transcription factors 45–7
Prader–Willi syndrome 412
prion disorders 424–8
prodynorphin 374
proenkephalin 374
profilin 320, 321
progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP) 347
promoter analysis, promoter/reporter DNA constructs 31–4
promoter/reporter DNA constructs 29–34
protein kinase A (PKA) 235, 292, 293–8
balance with calcineurin 26
ERK cascade activation 306
function in LTP 307–8
structure 293–4
protein kinase C (PKC) 235, 299–300, 308
RACKs and STICKs 300
protein kinase G (PKG) 300
protein phosphatases
neuronal plasticity 365
PP-1 310–11
PP-2B 309–10
protein trafficking 75–101
in axonal development 82–6
polarity signals
axonal targeting 86–8
dendrite targeting 86
postsynaptic removal of receptors 94–8
postsynaptic targeting 88–94
regulated ER transport to trans-Golgi network 77–9
and synapse formation 81–2
transport proteins and pathways 90–4
proteolipid protein (PLP) 22–3
PTP see tyrosine phosphatases (PTPs)
quantitative trait loci (QTL), mouse genetic model 25
Rab3-interacting molecules
RIM1 and RIM2 146
and LTP 155
Raf-1 and B-Raf 301
rapsyn 192, 200
Ras 170–1
Ras-ERK1/2 (MAP kinase) cascade 256, 261
pathway 259, 260, 282
RasGAPs 171
REI/NRSE motifs 33, 34–8, 48
reactive oxygen species (ROS) 442
receptor endocytosis 96–7
receptor protein tyrosine phosphatase RTPalpha 117
receptor tyrosine kinases 272–8
activation and signaling mechanisms 275–8
Refsum disease 417
regulator of G-protein signaling (RGS) family 240
reporter genes, Lacz 20–1
REST/NRSF action 38
as master regulator 34–8
molecular mechanism 38
Rett syndrome 397–9
Rho guanine nucleotide exchange factor, and GTPase 331, 400
rhodopsin, structure 220
rhodopsin family
 genetic polymorphisms 223
GPCRs 221–3
RNA editing, ligand-gated ion channel receptors 193–5
RNA interference (RNAi) phenocopying (Drosophila) 6–7
Sanjad–Sakati syndrome 392
scaffold protein 200
 PICK-1 300
Yotaio 171, 310
SCG10 30
schizencephaly 392
Schwann cells, axonal neurofilament phosphorylation 336
second messengers
 Ca2+ 120, 249–50
pathways, types of GPCRs 219–20
second messenger-dependent PKs 292–300
second messenger-independent PKs 300–302
Segawa syndrome 403, 404
semaphorin 6A 21
senescence pathways 441
STASIS 441, 450, 454–6
see also ageing; apoptosis
sensory cells, locus control regions 53–4
septo-optic dysplasia 391, 392
serine/threonine kinases 292–302
Ca2+/calmodulin dependent kinases (CaMKs) 169–72, 177, 196–8, 255–6, 308
activation by RTKs 277
CaMKII 169–72, 177, 196–8, 296–9, 308
cAMP responsive element binding protein (CREB) 304–5
cGMP-dependent protein kinase G 300
hippocampal LTP 364
major classes 293
MAPKs and MAPK-regulating kinases 300–302, 308–9
neuronal substrates of kinases 302–305
ligand-gated ion channels 303–4
neurotransmitter release 303
transcription factors 304–5
protein phosphatases 1 and 2B 309–10
second messenger-dependent PKs 292–300
second messenger-independent PKs 293, 300–302
synaptic plasticity 306–9
synaptic transmission 305–6
serine/threonine phosphatases 309–11
serotonin 5-hydroxytryptamine receptor (5HT3R) 185
serotonin1A receptor 26
serpinopathies 424–8
sodium response element (SRE) 253
SGK 372
SGLT 448
SH2, SH3 domains 275, 276
Shaker-like Kv channel 109, 116–18, 304
ataxia 124–5
Shank proteins 169
shiverer mouse 22
signal reception
 G protein-coupled receptors (GPCR) 215–47
ligand-gated ion channel receptors 183–213
signal transduction, serine/threonine kinases 291–315
signaling proteins 166–7, 169–72
silencer elements 34–5
see also neuron-restrictive silencer; REST/NRSE
Sirtuin proteins 448–9
SIRT1-3 446, 451
site-specific deletion mutagenesis 19
sliding helix 105
SMAD 54
Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome 392, 394
Smith–Magenis syndrome 403
SMN 24
SNAP receptors (SNARES) 148–50, 156–7
lipid rafts 89
SNAP-25 41, 156–7, 374
NSF-associated proteins 91, 92
VAMP2 89, 148
SNARE hypothesis, synaptic vesicles 146, 148–9
 spectrin 172, 322
spinal muscular atrophy 24
spinocerebellar ataxia type 1 (SCA1), CAG repeats 24, 445
Src domains
c-terminal Src kinase 280
NRTKs, schema 280
Src-homology-2 (SH2) 275, 276
Src-homology-3 (SH3) 276
startle disease 24
STASIS (stimulation and stress-induced senescence) 441, 450, 454–6
storage disorders, tables 414–17
superoxide dismutase (SOD-1) 25
survival motor neuron (SMN) gene 24
synapse to nucleus Ca\(^{2+}\) signaling 249–69
see also Ca\(^{2+}\) signaling
synapses
formation 81–2
functional synaptic plasticity 154–5
historical perspective 139–41
and memory
functional synaptic plasticity 154–5
morphological synaptic plasticity 155–7
“remodeling” 154
schematica 143, 144
silent synapse hypothesis 175
synapsins 320, 322, 374
family of phosphoproteins 144–5
synaptic plasticity
Ca\(^{2+}\) signaling 250–1
functional 154–5
morphological 155–7
role of kinases 306–9
temporal phases 360–1
working model 370
synaptic transmission, serine/threonine kinases
305–6
synaptic vesicles
docking and priming 145–8
fusion 148–50
loading by neurotransmitter transporters 151–3
membrane retrieval 150–3
SNARE hypothesis 146
storage and mobilization 143–4
SVs and LVs 141
synaptobrevin, GFP tagging 82
synaptobrevin-TIR chimera 87
synaptogogmin II 30, 150
synaptophysin, GFP tagging 85
synaptopodin 373
synexpression groups (specifying neurotransmitter
phenotypes) 48–50
syntaxin 147–8, 373
synteny 16
alpha-synuclein 445, 458–60
talin 320, 323
targeted suppression of neuronal activity
(Drosophila) 5–6
TATA binding protein 257
TATA box 190–1
tau proteins 287, 329
LMW and HMW 329
tauopathies 347–8, 424–8
telencephalin 83
telomere binding protein, links to mitochondria
and rDNA 451
telomeres
link to apoptosis and necrosis 451–4
molecular triggers for stress responses 446–7
tenascin-R 373
tetanus neurotoxin (TeNT) 149
TIMP 374, 375
tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), hippocampal
neurones 370, 374, 375
TNF receptor-associated factor-2 444
tomosyn 148
torsion dystonia 409
toxic proteins, dominant neurodegenerative
diseases 419
trans-Golgi network, ER transport 77–9
transcription factors 59–60
phosphorylation 304–5
various stages of development 60
transcriptional activators and repressors 31–54
homeobox-containing dopamine beta-
hydroxylase (DBH) 39–41
see also gene expression
transcriptional regulation (chromatin)
disorders 420
transgenes, mouse genetic model 18
transgenic reporters, FRET, Drosophila behavioural
model 8
transmembrane receptor protein kinases 293
transmitter release-related protein 41–2
trembler mouse 23, 336
trinucleotide repeat disorders 408–11,
425
CAG repeats 445, 460
trkA/NGF receptor 42, 274
tubulin 326
tyrosine hydroxylase
detection 49
mRNA 30
tyrosine kinases
EphA4 21
non-receptor tyrosine kinases (NRTKs)
170, 278–81
cytokine receptor 279
elements 278
examples 278
FAK 281
PYK2 281
receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) 272–8
activation and signaling 275–8
examples 274
Ig domains 272–4
trkA/NGF receptor 42, 274
tyrosine phosphatases (PTPs) 282
examples 283
RTPalpba 117
tyrosine phosphorylation 271–89
in development of NS 282–4
ion channel and receptor regulation 284–5
NMDA receptor regulation 285
normal vs diseased NS 287
synaptic plasticity 286–7
UAS elements 4
electrical silencing (Drosophila) 6
UBE3A 413
ubiquitin, tagging 443
ubiquitin ligase 444
unfolded protein response (UPR) 444

vascular endothelial growth factors (VEGFs), in stroke 287
vesicle-associated membrane protein (VAMP2) (SNARE protein) 89
vesicles, plasmalemma precursors (PPVs) 155–6
vesicular acetylcholine transporter (VACHT) 48–9, 152–3
vesicular monoamine transporters (VMATs) 152–3
vinculin 320, 323
voltage-gated Ca\(^{2+}\) channel disease 125–7

Walker–Warburg syndrome 393, 396
weaver mouse 23
Werner’s syndrome 447, 448
wobbler (mouse modifier gene) 25

XLAG 396
XRCC5 451

yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs) 18
Yotaio, scaffold protein 171, 310

zif/268 mRNA 369–71
zinc finger proteins 59
REST/NRSF 34–8
transcription factor (NRSF) 191